

FOUR BOOKS
OF
CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

BY
WILLIAM RAINEY HARPER, PH.D.
LATE PRESIDENT OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO
AND
HERBERT CUSHING TOLMAN, PH.D.
PROFESSOR IN VANDERBILT UNIVERSITY

NEW YORK :: CINCINNATI :: CHICAGO
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

Copyright, 1891 and 1908, by
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

CAESAR, 4 BOOKS

E - P 11

PREFACE.

THE Latin language is exhibited by Caesar in a richness and purity which no Roman writer has excelled. No Latin author repays the careful study of advanced Latin scholarship more satisfactorily than Caesar, and for this reason it is a misfortune, perhaps, that the Commentaries are relegated to the preparatory school. On the other hand, in no writer are the great principles of the language so constantly reviewed, thus forming a sure foundation for classical scholarship.

This new edition of the text is the result of an endeavor to present the facts of the language and explain and illustrate the subject-matter in a manner different from the traditional method, which has been, we think, too closely adhered to in the past. The justification for a new text-book of Caesar will be found, it is hoped, in the features of this work which distinguish it from previous editions. These are the following:—

1. The indication in the text of every new word by full-faced type, thus furnishing the student a clear idea of the vocabulary which he is expected to have made his own.

2. The insertion of "Topics for Study," based upon the portion read, which are added after every chapter of the first four books. By means of these topics the grammatical principles will be constantly reviewed.

3. Examples of inductive studies and lists of topics for investigation, which the teacher is expected to assign from time to time to the pupils to be worked out in a measure independently.

4. Word-lists containing in convenient order those words of which a knowledge is necessary for any satisfactory reading of the text.

5. An indication in the vocabulary of the number of times each word occurs, in order that the student may estimate for himself the vocabulary-value of each word.

6. Notes, intended not only to furnish information in reference to what is obscure, but also to compare idioms, phrases, and petrified expressions as they occur in "Caesar." Occasional references are given to other Latin authors, in order that the student may extend his horizon and obtain a broader conception of the genius of the language.

7. Grammatical references placed beneath the text, rather than in the notes; for it is believed that in practical work such a position will render them more helpful. In the first book these references have been made very full, and are designed to reflect the phenomena of the language as they are met with in the text.

8. Prose composition based on special chapters of "Caesar." This has been added as the surest method of enabling the student to apply the principles which he has learned. The requirements in Latin composition adopted by most colleges for admission — the translation into Latin of connected passages of English prose — demand such preparatory training.

9. An introduction, including the life of Caesar, history of Gaul, Germany, and Britain, and a sketch of the method of Roman warfare, so arranged that the facts present themselves

in a continuous narrative and can be referred to by references from the text. The student is thus enabled to see the relation of any one fact to those which precede and follow it.

10. Indicated quantities in the text of the first five books.

11. Numerous illustrations inserted in the body of the text.

The Latin text is based upon Kraner's edition, with various modifications. The corrected spelling of Latin words has been introduced, consistent with their etymology: thus, *contio* (con and ventio) for *concio*; *condicio* (con and dico) for *conditio*. The authors, however, recognize a Latin word *conditio* (con and do = Skt. $\sqrt{\text{DHA}}$, *put*), but believe that this differs from the above both in meaning and etymology. Nothing is more common in the manuscripts than the confusion of *tio* and *cio*, and in all cases we have followed the true orthography as shown in the best Latin inscriptions. It must be remembered that one good Latin inscription is more valuable in determining the correct spelling of a word than a host of manuscripts.

The bases of grammatical reference are the grammars of Harkness, Mooney, Allen and Greenough, Gildersleeve, Bennett, and Lane and Morgan. *Donald*

In the preparation of this book much help has been derived from the German editions of Kraner and Holder, from Duruy's "History of Rome," from Rüstow's "Heerwesen und Kriegführung Caesars," from which the "Roman Art of War" has been chiefly taken, and from various sources, which it would be vain to attempt to acknowledge. Credit is due to Profs. F. J. Miller and Lewis Stuart, Dr. George Scott, Dr. Hanns Oertel, and Mr. F. L. Palmer, for many favors. The authors would express thanks to Prof. Isaac B. Burgess, who has read the advance sheets and given many valuable suggestions.

That our work has many faults we are as fully aware as the severest critic can be, and we will receive gratefully all suggestions and corrections which may make it more efficient in imparting interest and help in the study of Caesar.

WILLIAM RAINEY HARPER.

HERBERT CUSHING TOLMAN.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

GENERAL INTRODUCTION:	PAGES
Life of Caesar. — Caesar as a writer. — Description of Gaul. —	
Topography of Gaul. — Description of Germany. — Britain. —	
Druidism. — Roman Art of War	1
INDUCTIVE STUDIES	51
FOUR BOOKS OF THE GALLIC WAR	65
IDIOMS	321
NOTES	325
EXERCISES IN LATIN COMPOSITION	411
WORD LISTS	424
VOCABULARY, INCLUDING GEOGRAPHICAL AND PROPER NAMES . .	431

LIST OF MAPS.

	FACING PAGE
GAUL (double page)	65
HELVETIORUM CLADES	87
ARIOVISTI CLADES	109
AD AXONAM PUGNA	119
NERVIORUM CLADES	133
ADUATUCORUM OPPIDUM	135
IN BRITANNIAM TRANSGRESSUS	175

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

	PAGE
Bust of Caesar in Vatican	3
Bust of Caesar in National Museum at Naples	7
Bust of Caesar in British Museum	9
Bust of Caesar in Campo Santo at Pisa	11
Bust of Caesar, Pontifex Maximus, in Vatican	14
Gallic Axes and Arms	18
Gallic Trumpet	19
Gallic Coins	19-20
Roman Soldier in Armor	30
Pilum, Gladius, Sarcinae, Scutum	32
Aquilifer, Vexillum, Signum	33
Buccina, Tuba	34
Ballista, Catapulta	47
Testudo, Aries	48
Gallic Helmets	85
Tabernaculum	99
Miles Levis Armaturae	103
Agger (Perspective View)	122
Agger (Ground Plan)	123
Pons in Rheno factus	169

GENERAL INTRODUCTION.

LIFE OF CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR.

The foremost man of all this world.

SHAKSPEARE.¹

Great Julius, whom now all the world admires.

MILTON.²

1. Introduction. — In the study of history, events naturally group themselves around some centre, — an important war or a decisive battle, a great empire or a powerful city, a distinguished family or an illustrious man. Caius Julius Caesar was such a centre, —

“velut inter ignes
Luna minores.”³

Marius, Sulla, Pompey, and Cicero were great in particular parts ; Caesar was full orb'd. He was orator and general, Rome's peerless master of prose and her greatest statesman. From the study of his character and achievements is to be obtained the clew to guide the student through the labyrinth of Rome's civil war (B. C. 133–131), and the best preparation for the study of the regal, republican, and imperial history of the “greatest of the nations.”

2. Events preceding Caesar's Birth. The Gracchi. Marius. — The first part of the second century before Christ was conspicuous for the wars of conquest. Hispania (Spain), Macedonia, Achaia, Asia, and Africa were conquered between B. C. 200 and B. C. 133. While the State had been greatly enriched, the plebeians were kept poor. The pat-

¹ Jul. Caesar, iv. 3.

² Par. Reg. iii. 39.

³ Hor. Od. I. xii. “As the moon among lesser stars.”

ricians had all the property as well as all the power. The plebeians did the hard work and the greater part of the fighting; the patricians held the offices and enjoyed the fruits of victory. Then came the civil wars. The Gracchi brought forward wise laws intended to alleviate the gross injustice of the times, but a violent death was the "guerdon of their toil." For Rome, corrupt and misgoverned, the crisis came in the war with Jugurtha. The success of Caius Marius in this war (B. C. 106) was a triumph for the party of the people. The same general's success in driving back the Cimbri and Teutones (B. C. 102, 101) added to his influence and to that of the party which he represented. Marius, however, was more successful as soldier than as statesman. Caesar's boyhood and youth were passed while the great struggle was going on between the popular and patrician parties, headed respectively by Marius and Sulla.

3. Ancestry. — The Caesars were an ancient and aristocratic family, which for eight generations had been prominent in the commonwealth. They were a branch of the Julian Gens (*Gens Iulia*), claiming descent from *Iulus*, son of Aeneas.¹

4. Birth. — Caius Julius Caesar (GAIUS IVLIVS CAESAR) was born July 12, B. C. 100,² six years after his illustrious contemporaries Pompey and Cicero.

5. Education. — Caesar received the usual education of the patrician youth and was especially apt in Greek and grammar.

6. Home Life. — The early home life was quiet and pleasant. His mother Aurelia was a fine example of the Roman matron and exerted a strong influence over her son. His love and reverence for her are honorable to both.

7. Personal Appearance. — Caesar's personal appearance in youth is thus described by Suetonius: "A tall, slight, handsome youth, with

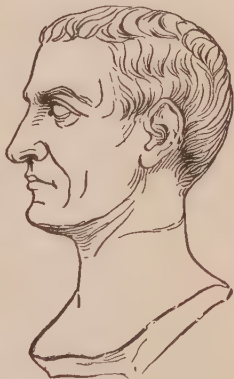
¹ Vergil elaborated this tradition in the *Aeneid*.

² Mommsen argues for B. C. 102

dark piercing eyes, a sallow complexion, large nose, lips full, features refined and intellectual, neck sinewy and thick. . . . He was particular about his appearance, used the bath frequently, and attended carefully to his hair. His dress was arranged with studied negligence." ¹

8. Caesar's First Office. (B. c. 87.) — At the age of thirteen, Caesar was appointed priest of Jupiter (*flamen dialis*) through the influence of Marius.

9. Marriage with Cornelia. (B. c. 83). — In B. c. 84 Caesar's father died. In the following year Caesar married Cornelia, daughter of Cinna, at that time the leader of the Marian party. This alliance bound him more closely to the party of the people. On the other hand it aroused against him the hatred of Sulla, who, returning victorious from the war with Mithridates, made himself master of Rome. Sulla ordered him to divorce Cornelia, which Caesar refused to do. This necessitated an exile among the Sabines until friends secured his pardon. Suetonius tells us that Sulla exclaimed to the patricians interceding for him, "The youth for whom you plead will one day overthrow the aristocracy, . . . for in this young Caesar there are many Mariuses." ²



FROM BUST IN VATICAN.
AGE, 35 YEARS.

10. Caesar, a Soldier. — Though free to appear in Rome, Caesar considered it advisable to go to Asia. Here he laid the foundation of his military knowledge, serving with distinction under Marcus Minucius Thermus. In the siege of Mytilene he was honored with a "civic crown" ³ for saving the life of a fellow soldier.

¹ Quoted by Fronde, Caesar, Chap. 8.

² Sulla proclamavit: "eum, quem incolumem tanto opere cuperent, quandoque optimatium partibus, quas secum defendissent, exitis futurum; nam Caesari multos Marios inesse." — Suetonius, Div. Iulius, i. 1.

³ The civic crown (*corona civica*) was a chaplet of oak leaves. To obtain one was

11. Caesar, an Orator. — Caesar returned to Rome on hearing of Sulla's death (B. C. 78). The next year he conducted the prosecution against Dolabella under charges of extortion while Proconsul of Macedonia. So skilfully was the evidence massed and so eloquent the plea of the young orator that Dolabella, though defended by Hortensius, the greatest advocate of the day, would have failed of acquittal but for the influence of the senatorial party and the partisanship of senatorial judges. This case gained for Caesar a wide reputation for eloquence and forensic power, which led soon after to an invitation from the Archaicans to conduct a similar case against Caius Antonius. Discerning his abilities in this direction, Caesar went to Rhodes and studied under Apollonius Molon, the skilful orator and still more skilful teacher of oratory.

12. The Pirate Episode. — When Caesar was on his way to Rhodes (B. C. 76), he was captured by pirates, who demanded twenty talents for his release. At this Caesar laughed, and saying he would give fifty (*i. e.* about fifty thousand dollars), added that when at liberty he would return and crucify every man of them. He kept his word.

13. Caesar, Military Tribune (B. C. 74). — After a short stay at Rhodes, Caesar went to Asia, where, having raised a small body of troops, he displayed ability as commander in some successful encounters in Caria with the troops of Mithridates. Being elected Pontiff the same year (B. C. 74) he returned to Rome, where, shortly after, the people elected him Military Tribune. This was his first election to office by the votes of the people.

14. Caesar, Quaestor (B. C. 68). — The six years following (B. C. 74–68) were important. Pompey, hitherto a strong supporter of the senatorial party, had been estranged, and was now engaged in strengthening the party of the people. The power of the tribunes was restored, judges were no longer selected only from the senate, and the Sullan constitution was repealed (B. C. 70). To the success of all these measures Caesar contributed a very great and a very rare honor. See Article *Corona Civica* in Smith's Dict. Class. Antiq.

tributed largely by his eloquence. He served as Quaestor during the year B. c. 68, in which year, his aunt Julia, the widow of Marius, and his wife Cornelia, daughter of Cinna, died. He pronounced funeral orations for both, and took occasion to extol the former chiefs of the popular party; busts of Marius were carried in the funeral procession of Julia, and the people loudly applauded alike the eulogies and the courage of Caesar. These religious duties performed, he went to Further Spain on his official duty as Quaestor.

15. Caesar's Marriage with Pompeia.—The year following (B. c. 67), Caesar married Pompeia, and was thus brought into more intimate relations with Pompey, her cousin. During the next two years he cordially supported Pompey's measures and the Gabinian and Manilian laws, by which almost absolute power was given to that great leader.

16. Caesar, Curule Aedile.—In B. c. 65, Caesar was Curule Aedile. To amuse the people with public shows, to adorn the city with new public buildings, monuments, and the like, were the chief duties and opportunities of this office. The lavish magnificence of Caesar dazzled the people, and his consequent popularity was unbounded.

17. Caesar, Pontifex Maximus.—Two years later (B. c. 63) he was elected Pontifex Maximus, which office placed him at the head of the State religion. Doubtless his election was due in great measure to his popularity; still he did not hesitate to use large sums of money in bribery. On the morning of this election, he told his mother Aurelia, as she affectionately wished him success, that he would come back Pontifex Maximus or he brought back a corpse.

18. Conspiracy of Catiline.—In December of this year, Caesar opposed as unconstitutional the execution of those convicted of participation in the conspiracy of Catiline, advocating however their perpetual imprisonment. This has been taken to imply Caesar's complicity in the conspiracy; but inherent probability, the public testimony of Cicero, and the utter failure of efforts to convict are all in his favor, and the prin-

ciple that a man is innocent until he is proved guilty should hold in history as in law.

19. Caesar, Praetor. — During the year of his Praetorship (B. c. 62), Caesar had many opportunities of exhibiting the qualities of coolness, courage, and self-reliance. It was in this year that a serious charge brought against the reputation of his wife Pompeia led to the now famous saying, "Caesar's wife must be above suspicion."

20. Caesar, Proprætor (B. c. 61). — On the expiration of his term as Praetor, Caesar was in debt to the extent of two hundred and fifty million sesterces (about ten million dollars). Before he was allowed to leave Rome for Further Spain, he was compelled to pay a considerable part of this debt. This he did with money obtained from Crassus, who had confidence in the political promise of his creditor. In Spain, Caesar found himself for the first time in command of a Roman army, and soon gave evidence of his ability to handle troops and manage provincials. His successes were voted a triumph by the senate, and his soldiers proclaimed him Imperator. If he sent large sums of money to Rome, he did not forget to keep a considerable amount for his own use.

21. Caesar, Consul (B. c. 59.) — A poet interprets the spirit of Caesar's ambition thus, —

"Better be first, he said, in a little Iberian village
Than be second in Rome;"¹

but manifestly he thought it best to be first in Rome. After an absence of about a year in Spain, Caesar returned and offered himself as candidate for the consulship. He was elected, and entered upon the duties of his office in B. c. 59. His colleague was Marcus Bibulus, who had been associated with him in the Aedileship and Praetorship.

22. The First Triumvirate. — After his election Caesar, Crassus, and Pompey entered into an alliance for personal, political, and in their

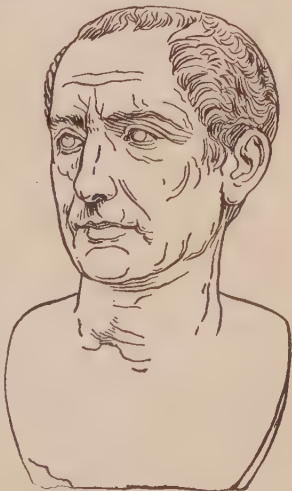
¹ Longfellow's Courtship of Miles Standish.

thought patriotic purposes, which is commonly known as the "First Triumvirate." Crassus and Pompey were friends to Caesar but not to each other; Caesar brought them together. Pompey married Caesar's daughter Julia, which served to strengthen the bond of their common interest. Caesar married Calpurnia, daughter of Calpurnius Piso, his successor in the consulship. During Caesar's consulship all classes of the people were benefited, abuses at home and abroad were corrected, and his administration was both successful and popular. Caesar was practically sole consul, for Bibulus' service consisted chiefly in lending his colleague the "helpful aid of his opposition."

23. Caesar, Proconsul (B. C. 58). — The senate, in order to limit Caesar's already too great influence, had assigned the forests and public lands in Italy for proconsular provinces. The people, however, passed the Vatinian law, which gave to Caesar the government of Gallia Cisalpina and Illyricum for five years, with three legions. The senate, in hope of thus getting rid of him, of its own accord added Gallia Transalpina and another legion.

24. Campaigns in Gaul (B. C. 58-51).

— Early in the spring of B. C. 58, Caesar set out from Rome and entered upon that career of conquest vividly described in his "Commentaries on the Gallic war," the study of which we are about to take up. The task before him was not an easy one. Rome had good cause to remember the men of Gaul. Many times since the battle of Allia and the sack of Rome had they struck terror to Roman hearts. Caesar's arrival in Gaul happened at a critical time in the history of the Gallic tribes, much disturbed among themselves and threatened by the Germans. Caesar by his clear-sighted-



FROM BUST IN NATIONAL MUSEUM
AT NAPLES. AGE, ABOUT 40.

ness, unfaltering confidence in himself, decision of character, and marvelous readiness for every emergency, together with the discipline of his armies, made of apparently insuperable difficulties aids to the most brilliant success. In his first campaign the Helvetians and the Germans under Ariovistus were conquered, and central Gaul brought into subjection. The military and executive ability seen in the governor of Spain were more conspicuous in the governor of Gaul. One of his most remarkable traits—that which most amazed the Gauls and in later times most excited the admiration of his distinguished admirer and imitator, Napoleon—was the rapidity with which he resolved and the almost greater rapidity with which he executed his resolves. A good illustration of the character of Caesar in which all the qualities just mentioned are exhibited is thus related by the good Captain in Longfellow's "Courtship of Miles Standish."

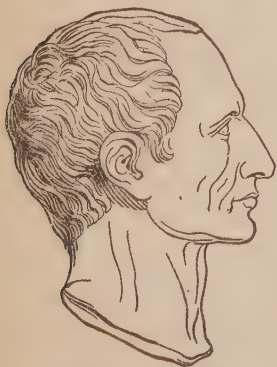
"Now do you know what he did on a certain occasion in Flanders,
When the rear-guard of his army retreated, the front giving way too,
And the immortal Twelfth Legion was crowded so closely together
There was no room for their swords? Why he seized a shield from a soldier,
Put himself straight at the head of his troops, and commanded the captains,
Calling on each by his name, to order forward the ensigns;
Then to widen the ranks, and give more room for their weapons;
So he won the day, the battle of something—or other.
That's what I always say; if you wish a thing to be well done,
You must do it yourself, you must not leave it to others."¹

25. At Lucca (B. C. 56.)—In B. C. 56, Caesar invited Pompey and Crassus to meet him in Lucca. The leading men of Rome were present. Among these were two hundred senators and so large a crowd of distinguished officials that one hundred and fifty lictors are said to have been seen in the streets of the town. The programme here arranged included the following: Pompey and Crassus to be consuls the following year; Pompey to be governor of Spain for five years; Crassus to have Syria for his proconsular province; Caesar to have his term of office in Gaul extended to ten years, and thereafter to be consul.

¹ For incident here recorded, see De Bel. Gal. ii. 25.

26. Organizing Gaul (B. c. 50). For eight years Caesar was busy in Gaul. He found it easier to conquer the Gallic tribes than to keep them in subjection. Finally he succeeded in convincing them that further resistance would be useless, and represented to the chiefs the great advantages of becoming a part of the Roman republic. Admiration of Caesar, together with the strength of his personality influenced the chiefs to determine upon peace and friendly terms with Rome. Caesar now busied himself in organizing the new territory, fully expecting on his return to Rome at the expiration of his command to enter upon a second consulship according to the terms of the Lucca agreement.

27. Caesar and Pompey. — Crassus perished in a battle against the Parthians (B. c. 53), leaving Caesar and Pompey joint administrators of



FROM BUST IN BRITISH
MUSEUM. AGE, ABOUT 45.

the Lucca programme. Caesar's success in Gaul, however, excited the jealousy of Pompey. The senatorial party, too, had gratified Pompey's vanity by their attitude toward his appointment as sole consul in B. c. 52. In B. c. 50 matters had gone so far that the consul Marcellus, doubtless at Pompey's instigation, proposed in the senate that Caesar give up his command in November of that year. This the tribune Curio vetoed. Caesar, hearing of the movement against him, was not dismayed. January 1, B. c. 49, a letter written by him was read in the senate, in which he expressed readiness to lay aside his military power if Pompey would do the same. After a stormy session, a resolution was passed to the effect that unless Caesar disbanded his army he would be declared an enemy of the republic. The tribunes vetoed this resolution, but their veto was disregarded.

On January 7 the senate resolved that the consuls provide for the safety of the republic. This was a proclamation of martial law. The crisis had come. Marcus Antonius and Quintus Cassius, the tribunes

who advocated Caesar's interests, were driven from the senate and fled in disguise. Pompey proceeded to hold levies for raising an army, thinking that Caesar's soldiers were disaffected and that Caesar would not dare to offer resistance. Caesar, however, on learning the decree of the senate, addressed his soldiers frankly, protesting that he and his armies had served the State loyally for nine years, and had done much for the safety of the State and nothing to imperil it. The soldiers showed their unbounded affection and enthusiasm for their leader by volunteering to serve without pay.

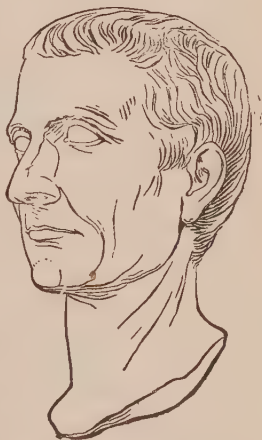
28. Beginning of the Civil War.—Caesar forthwith crossed the Rubicon, the boundary of his province, to claim by force of arms the rights of which the senate sought to deprive him. At Rimini he met the expelled tribunes, and also envoys from Pompey who desired to gain time by a proposed conference. Caesar promptly dismissed these latter, throwing the blame of the civil war now begun on Pompey and the senate. As Caesar advanced, city after city yielded, and in three months he was master of Italy.

29. The Feeling at Rome (B. C. 48).—The events of the following year cannot be declared here. A letter from Cicero to Atticus (viii. 13), however, shows the popular feeling of the time:—

“Observe the man into whose hands we have fallen. How keen he is, how alert, how well prepared! By Jove, if he does not kill any one and spares the property of those who are so terrified, he will be in high favor. I talk with the tradesmen and farmers. They care for nothing but their lands and houses and money. They have gone right round. They fear the man they trusted and love the man they feared; and all this through our own blunders. I am sick to think of it.”

30. Battle of Pharsalus.—After various contests, not always in Caesar's favor, a decisive battle was fought at Pharsalus in Thessaly, August 9, B. C. 48. Pompey's forces far outnumbered Caesar's; but effeminate nobles, the flower of Pompey's army, were no match for Caesar's veterans. By this victory Caesar became practically master of Rome.

31. Death of Pompey. — Pompey was soon after murdered in Egypt, whither he had fled after the battle. In the death of his great rival Caesar had no part and took no pleasure. When the head of the murdered man was brought to him by those who hoped thus to win his favor, he turned away in horror. Not unlikely he then recalled Pompey only as Rome's idol and Caesar's friend. It may be said here that Caesar seems to have accepted civil war not because he delighted in it, but because it was inevitable. Humanity and self-defence compelled him to the issue. He became master of Rome not by invading the capital and slaughtering his personal enemies, but by meeting hostile forces on the field of battle at a distance from the city.



FROM BUST IN CAMPO SANTO
AT PISA. AGE, ABOUT 45.

32. Caesar in Egypt and Pontus. — Caesar, following Pompey to Egypt, was detained by certain disputes concerning the succession to the throne of that country. He then proceeded into Pontus against Pharnaces, son of Mithridates. August 2, B. C. 47, a battle was fought near Zela, where Caesar gained an easy victory. His dispatch to the senate after this battle was the famous "Veni, Vidi, Vici."¹

33. Return to Rome. — Returning to Rome, Caesar found great tasks awaiting him. Dictator now and absolute, he did not use office or power for unworthy purposes or for personal ends. His aim was to restore public confidence and credit.

34. Battle of Thapsus. — While Caesar was thus engaged, his enemies Cato and Scipio collected a large army in Africa, which was defeated in the decisive battle of Thapsus. This battle was fought April 6, B. C. 46, and at once ended the war and the hopes of the senatorial party.

¹ I came, I saw, I conquered.

35. Caesar's Triumphs. — Returning from Africa, Caesar celebrated with characteristic lavishness and splendor four triumphs, — one for his victories in Gaul, another for those in Egypt, the third for Zela, and the fourth for the Juba victories in Africa. No triumph of course was given for victories in civil war. To celebrate these triumphs there were splendid banquets, still more splendid entertainments in the circus and amphitheatre, and a generous distribution of corn and money. Caesar furnished “bread and circuses” (*panem et circenses*) without stint. The forty days of thanksgiving decreed by the senate were made such to the holiday-loving Romans by the seemingly careless but really purposed extravagance of the man who had just been made dictator for ten years.

36. Caesar's Reforms. — Caesar now gave himself to the work of reform with zeal, energy, and wisdom. The laws which had been passed in his first consulship (*Leges Iuliae*) were now enforced. The calendar, heretofore in the hands of the pontifices and now three months in advance of the real time, was corrected.¹ This reform was a benefit not only to his country but to the whole civilized world, and the Julian calendar was in use for nearly sixteen hundred years. He improved the personnel of the senate by removing all persons convicted of bribery or fraud, and by supplying their places with men of merit. The membership of this body was also greatly increased. This increase may have been partly due to a desire on Caesar's part to reward those who had proved themselves faithful to his interests, but probably more to a wise and really conservative view of “the needs of the times.” All questions of importance were to be submitted to the senate. This careful consideration bestowed upon the calendar and senate he gave to every thing affecting the public welfare.

37. Battle of Munda (March 17, B. C. 45). — While engaged in these plans and measures, Caesar was called to Spain to quell a formidable insurrection instigated by the two sons of Pompey, Cneius and Sex-

¹ For example August 9, the date of the battle of Pharsalus in the corrected calendar is June 6.

tus. It was the end of the year B. C. 46 when Caesar set out, but not until March 17 of the following year was the decisive battle at Munda fought. Caesar's troops in this battle were at first driven back; defeat seemed inevitable, but the day was retrieved when the great Dictator in person rallied the broken lines and led them back to victory.

The Pompeian party was now utterly and forever crushed, and Caesar's military career ended. After settling affairs in Spain, Caesar returned to Italy in October. Many honors were now conferred upon him. He was made Imperator for life, and nominated Pater Patriae; the month Quinctilis received the new name Iulius (July); his head appeared on the new coinage; he was proclaimed a god.

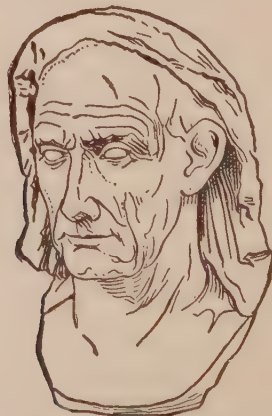
38. Caesar's Ambitions.—Caesar was ambitious, but nobly so. Thus far he had used his position for the advantage of his country. His great offices were used for large service to the State. His plans for promoting the welfare of the citizens, correcting abuses in legislation and administration at home and in the provinces, for beautifying the city and extending the Empire were not to be completed in the life-time of any single man, and it did not require the prophet's vision to see that Caesar's new order of things would be followed by anarchy if no provision were made for its continuance and completion during his life-time. It was the hereditary element in kingship which was attractive to the statesman of large and enlightened views and purposes. The anarchy following his death and the power seized by a rude and rapacious soldiery under the elective system are proofs alike of the great Dictator's patriotism and foresight in seeking the kingly office. On the feast of the Lupercalia (Feb. 15, B. C. 44), his colleague Antony publicly offered him a royal diadem. The disposition of the people, however, was such that Caesar declined it, and saying that the Romans had no King but Jove, ordered it to be placed on the head of the statue of Jupiter Capitolinus.

39. Conspiracy.—Many great and important changes were wrought by Caesar and in a marvellously short space of time. While busy with these a conspiracy was formed against his life. The leading spirits in this plot were Cassius and Brutus; their associates probably did not number

a hundred in all. "The conspiracy began in spite," says Mr. Browning, "and continued in folly."

40. Caesar's Death (March 15, B. C. 44). — The story of his murder is graphically told by Shakspeare, and is familiar. Caesar fell in the senate-house at the feet of the statue of Pompey on the Ides (15th) of March, B. C. 44. His murderers were men on whom he had conferred many and great favors. Men who could receive offices and gifts from the great and generous Caesar and treacherously conspire to murder their benefactor might pretend to, but could never have been animated by, a noble patriotism. So perished the greatest of Romans, — one of the greatest men, if not the very greatest man, of all antiquity. Caesar was great in planning and accomplishment; great as statesman, orator, soldier, historian; great by natural power and acquisition; great in thought and action; princeliest among his fellows, the admiration of all succeeding times.

"Truly a wonderful man was Caius Julius Caesar."



FROM BUST IN VATICAN. CAESAR
REPRESENTED AS PONTIFEX MAXIMUS.
AGE, ABOUT 55.

41. Principal Events in the Life of Caesar.

B. C.

- 100. Caesar's birth (July 12).¹
- 87. Flamen Dialis.
- 84. Death of Caesar's father.
- 83. Marries Cornelia.
- 80-78. Serves with the army in Asia.
- 77. Prosecutes Dolabella unsuccessfully.
- 76-75. Studies oratory at Rhodes.
- 74. Military tribune.
- 68. Quaestor.
- 67. Marries Pompeia.
- 65. Curule Aedile.
- 63. Pontifex Maximus (Catiline's Conspiracy).
- 62. Praetor.
- 61. Proprætor in Spain.
- 60. First Triumvirate formed.
- 59. Consul. Marries Calpurnia.
- 58. Proconsul in Gaul: *First Campaign*: He conquers the Helvetii and Ariovistus.
- 57. *Second Campaign*: He conquers the Belgæ, including the Nervii.
- 56. The Triumvirate meet at Lucca. *Third Campaign*: He conquers the Veneti and Aquitani.
- 55. *Fourth Campaign*: He conquers

B. C.

- the Usipetes, Germans, etc., and crosses into Britain.
- 54. *Fifth Campaign*: Second Invasion of Britain.
- 53. *Sixth Campaign*: He subdues the rebellious states of Gaul.
- 52. *Seventh Campaign*: He checks a second insurrection of the Gauls under Vercingetorix.
- 51. *Eighth Campaign*: The whole region is subdued and made subject to Rome.
- 50. Ninth year of command. He organizes the newly acquired territory. Breaks openly with Pompey.
- 49. Crosses the Rubicon. Civil war begun.
- 48. Conquers Pompey at Pharsalus.
- 47. Puts down rebellion in Egypt. Subdues Pharnaces.
- 46. Defeats the senatorial party at Thapsus. Appointed Dictator for ten years. Reforms the calendar.
- 45. Defeats the sons of Pompey at Munda. Emperor for life.
- 44. The conspiracy. Assassinated in the senate-house (March 15).

"Julius Caesar, whose remembrance yet
Lives in men's eyes, and will to ears and tongues
Be theme and hearing ever."

SHAKESPEARE, *Cymbeline*, Act iii. Sc. i. lines 2-4.

¹ Mommsen, 102.

CAESAR AS A WRITER.

42. The style of Caesar is compared by Cicero to the unadorned simplicity of an ancient Greek statue. This opinion of one who was not in sympathy with Caesar may be regarded as exceeding praise. Cicero also remarks that this exquisite purity was obtained by constant study and a thorough knowledge of the Latin language. Caesar inserts no word but what has an important mission, without any regard to embellishment. A perfect equality of expression pervades his writings. The narrative is clear and easy.

43. The commentaries were doubtless hastily written on the spot where the battles were fought, and were mere outlines which he perhaps hoped some day to fill out. Therefore we admire all the more the purity and neatness of Caesar's style, which have not been surpassed by any Roman writer, and easily pardon a deficiency of vigor.

44. The writings of Caesar which remain are seven books of the Gallic and three of the Civil war. The eighth book of the Gallic war was written by Aulus Hirtius, who was personally present with Caesar. Besides the works that have come down to us Caesar wrote other books, of which only fragments remain.

45. As an orator Cicero places him among the first, and Quintilian says that he spoke with the same spirit with which he fought, adding that if he had given his attention to the arts of peace, he would have rivalled Cicero in eloquence.

GAUL.

46. The comparative study of language throws a light upon the origin of the early inhabitants of Gaul. From the great family to which Hindu, Persian, Roman, Greek, and Teuton belonged, the Celts have separated. As the Vedas of India reflect the primitive creed or the

Aryans, so the system of the Druids undoubtedly must contain an impress, however small, of the religious thought of that ancient people.

47. The language of the Celts is not lost, for it lives in literature and is still spoken in the heart of Brittany, Wales, and in the north of Scotland, and in Ireland. Some standing ruins give evidence of monuments that have passed away.

48. The Celtic race had diffused itself over the valleys and hills of France, including the western districts of Germany and Switzerland, and from thence occupied the southern part of England. In spite of the difference in language and manners (B. G. i. 1), there seems to have been a bond of union which joined the tribes in mutual interest.

49. All ancient writers agree that Gaul was well peopled. Agriculture undoubtedly was practised. "Gallic oxen especially were of good repute in Italy," so Varro tells us. Plautus mentions the "Gallic ponies." Varro again says: "It is not every race that is suited for the business of herdsmen; neither the Bastulians nor the Turdulians are fit for it. The Celts are the best, especially as respects beasts for riding and burden."

50. The art of building vessels had attained great progress among the Celts. They seem to be the first nation that regularly navigated the Atlantic ocean. Although in Caesar's time they used in the Channel a sort of portable leathern skiff, yet the peoples on the west coast, and especially the Veneti, sailed in large clumsy ships, propelled by leathern sails, and not by oars.

51. Marine fishing and the collection of the eggs of sea-birds were prosecuted on such an extensive scale that it probably gave rise to the statement in Caesar's time that "certain tribes at the mouth of the Rhine subsisted on fish and birds' eggs." The tolls of the river and seaports were important factors of commerce in certain cantons, as those of the Hædui and Veneti. The peculiar skill of the Celts in imitating any model and executing any instructions is observed by Caesar.

52. The implements of the Gauls for a long time were only stone axes bound to wooden handles by leathern bands, flint arrow-heads and



GALLIC STONE AXES.



GALLIC ARMS OF BRONZE.

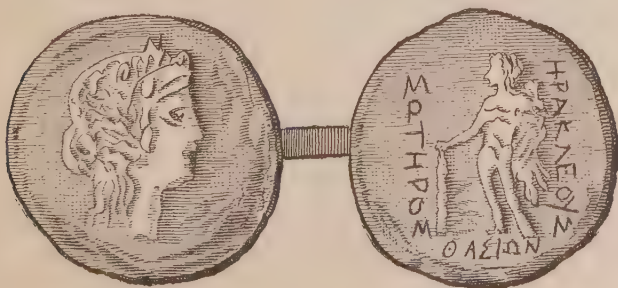
knives. Arms of bronze and iron are of a later period, and belonged to those tribes which were the nearest to Italy. Specimens of these earliest weapons are given.

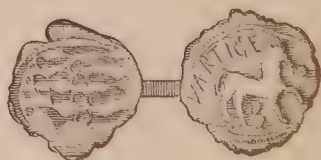
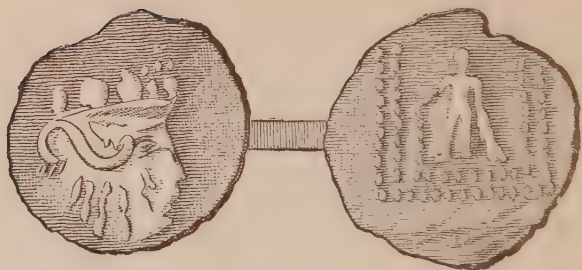


GALLIC TRUMPET.

53. The art of procuring metals had been developed to such an extent that miners played an important part in the sieges. The character of the country refutes the opinion prevalent among the Romans, that Gaul was one of the richest gold regions in the world.

54. The arts exhibit a remarkably low state when compared with the mechanical skill in the use of metals. The party-colored and brilliant ornaments show a lack of proper taste which the Gallic coins confirm with their simple, curious, and rude representations. On a great number is seen a wild boar or a horse without bridle, the symbol of liberty and war. The magnificent staters of Philip II. of Thasos were imitated, but in unskilled hands they lost all beauty of design. These coins of Macedon, however, gave an impulse toward producing varied pieces of curious types on which the likenesses of ambitious chiefs were stamped. Specimens of Gallic coins are given. See Illustrations.





55. The art of poetry on the other hand was highly valued by the Celts, and was intermingled with the religious and political institutions. Science and philosophy, although hampered by the theology of the country, received appreciation among them. The knowledge of writing was confined to the priests. In Caesar's time the Greek writing was made use of, but in the southern districts the Latin was predominant. (B. G. i. 29. "In castris Helvetiorum tabulae repertae sunt litteris Graecis confectae." The documents written were not in the Greek *language* but in the Greek *characters*). The coins also show Greek writing.

56. The clan-canton was the basis of the constitution of the State, with its prince, its council of elders, and its freemen capable of bearing arms. In the time of Caesar this cantonal constitution still existed unaltered among the insular Celts, and in the northern cantons of the mainland. We cannot say that this Gallic clanship contained only those descended from a common ancestor, for Caesar (B. G. i. 18) tells us that Dumnorix, by his liberality, gained clients every day, hence introducing a foreign element into the clan. The general assembly held the supreme authority; the prince was bound to conform to its decrees; the common council, which numbered in certain clans six hundred members, appears to have the same importance as the Senate of Rome under the kings. A revolution had occurred, before the time of Caesar, among the Arverni, Haedui, Sequani, and Helvetii, which set aside the royal authority and gave the power into the hands of the nobility.

57. Some words which Caesar uses in his Commentaries would lead us to suppose that in some cases a great council of entire Gaul assembled. However, we cannot take this to mean anything more than a confederate alliance, which Caesar, perhaps, interpreted as national unity.

58. The assemblies take precautions against hasty movements. "In the cantons," says Caesar, "which are considered the best regulated, it is a sacred law that he who learns anything of interest to the city should inform the magistrate of it, without telling it to any other person, since experience has shown that imprudent and uneducated men are often

alarmed by what is false, take extreme measures, and even go into crime. The magistrates conceal what is proper, and reveal to the multitude what they think is good for them to know. It is only in this assembly that public affairs are discussed."

59. There were two classes, the nobles and the freemen. The nobles compelled the freemen, who were oppressed by debt, to borrow from them, and to give up their freedom, *de facto*, as debtors. It was the privilege of the nobility to surround themselves with a number of mounted servants called *ambacti*, and thus to form a state within a state. Resting upon the support of these troops the nobles could overthrow the legal power, and break down the commonwealth. If in a clan which contained eighty thousand men a single chief could muster ten thousand retainers, not counting the bondmen and the debtors, he easily became more powerful than the rest of the nobles. Thus the state could no longer preserve the old cantonal constitution, and the other nobles accordingly gave themselves over as clients to this more powerful one among his fellows.

60. The cavalry was the principal force in the military system of the Celtic people. Among the Belgae, and still more in Britain, the war-chariot appears with great efficiency. These warriors, on horseback and on foot, were formed from the nobility and its vassals. It is characteristic of their mode of fighting that at the moment of beginning a conflict with an enemy of which they made little account, they swore individually that they would keep aloof from house and home if their army should not charge at least twice through the enemy's line.

61 Caesar calls them *equites*, and this cavalry was much esteemed among the Roman legions. "When any war is declared all the nobles take arms and surround themselves with a number of servants and clients in proportion to their birth and their wealth." Some of these clients dedicated their lives to their chief. They were called *solduri* among the Aquitani. "The *solduri* enjoy all the good things of life with those to whom they have consecrated themselves in friendship. If their chief dies, they

are unwilling to survive him, and slay themselves. It never has happened within the memory of man that one of those who had dedicated themselves to a chief by such an agreement refused to die with him." (B. G. iii. 22).

62. The infantry was far inferior to the cavalry. The large shield was the principal defensive and the long lance was the chief offensive weapon, preferred to the sword. A long line of wagons carried the baggage of the army, and a barricade of these wagons was made at night which poorly corresponded to the intrenched camp of the Romans. Certain cantons, as the Nervii, had infantry of exceptional efficiency, but these had no cavalry and perhaps were an immigrant German tribe, and not Celtic. "The Celt," says Caesar, "dares not face the German in battle." So unwarlike did Caesar consider the Celtic infantry that after having become acquainted with them in his first campaign, he never employed them again in connection with the Roman infantry.

63. A Spirit of National unity was manifesting itself in various ways and gaining strength with the decline of the individual cantons. Amid the feudal strife there were those who were willing to gain the independence of the nation at the cost of the independence of the several cantons.

64. A league of the Belgae we find in northeastern Gaul in Caesar's time. In central Gaul two parties were ambitious for the hegemony, the one led by the Haedui, the other by the Sequani. These confederacies subsisted side by side. The impulse of the nation toward unity found undoubtedly a sort of gratification in such unions as these.

65. The character of this union was of the loosest kind. The Belgian confederacy alone seems to have been bound firmly together. The contests for the leadership made disruptions in every other league.

66. The condition of women in Gaul indicates an advance in civilization. They were free in their choice of a husband, and brought a dowry with them. The man advanced an equal amount. The whole, with

whatever increase there might be, went to the survivor. (B. G. vi. 19). The husband however had the power of life and death over both wife and children. No son could address his father in public until he was of an age to bear arms.

67. "The funerals," says Caesar, "considering the civilization of the Gauls, are magnificent and costly ; and they cast into the fire all things which they think are dear in this life ; and a little while before this time, slaves and clients, who surely had been loved by the dead, were burned together with them." (B. G. vi. 19).

68. The estimate of human life was even lower among the Gauls than among the Romans. The stories of the old Gallic customs show the great indifference which the people felt toward their own life and that of others. Tilting by way of sport, fighting for life at feasts, selling themselves to death for a fixed sum of money or a number of casks of wine, accepting the fatal blow with willingness on a shield before the eyes of the Gallic people (a practice which outdid even the Roman gladiatorial shows) were frequent among them.

69. In regard to their dress and customs, Diodorus says : "Some of them wear coats of iron-mail, others fight naked. Instead of swords they wear great sabres suspended on the right side by chains of iron or brass. Some have gold or silver girdles. They also use pikes, the heads of which are a cubit long and about two palms broad. Their swords are scarcely less in size than the javelin of other nations, and the *sauniae* (heavy javelins) which they hurl have blades longer than their swords. Of these some are straight, others curved in order to tear the flesh and enlarge the wound when drawn out."

70. The dress of the Gauls differed from that of the Romans. They wore breeches tightly fitting on the legs, called *braccae*. A tunic covered the upper portion of their bodies, over which was thrown a *sagum*, a band of cloth light in summer, and thick in winter. On their feet they wore wooden-soled shoes (*gallicae*).

71. The personal appearance of the Gauls Diodorus again describes: "They are tall, possessing fair skin and light hair. Some of them shave their beard, while others allow it to grow long. They take their meals sitting on the skins of wolves and dogs. By their side are smoking caldrons and spits, on which are quarters of meat. The brave are honored by being offered the best morsels. Every stranger who comes to them is invited to the feast, and not until after the meal do they ask him who he is and what he wants. Then come long stories, for the Gauls desire to hear as well as see. These feasts, however, are often stained with blood; words beget quarrels; and as human life is despised, they challenge one another to single combat.

Their aspect is terrifying; they have loud rough voices, say little, and express themselves in riddles.

"A violent race," say the ancients, "who make war on mankind, Nature, and the gods. They shoot their arrows against heaven when it thunders; they take arms against the tempest; they march sword in hand upon overflowing rivers, or the ocean in its wrath."

RELIGION. (SEE DRUIDISM.)

TOPOGRAPHY OF GAUL.

72. Free Gaul (*Libera Gallia*), which Caesar refers to (B. G. i. 1), was that part not yet subdued by the Romans. The southern country had become a Roman province as early as 120 B. C., and to this conquered region Caesar gives the appellation *provincia*, or *provincia nostra*.

Ancient Gaul was bounded on the west by the Atlantic, on the north by the Rhine, on the east by the Rhine and the Alps, and on the south by the Pyrenees. The greatest breadth was 600 English miles, but much diminished toward each extremity, and its length was from 480 to 620 miles. It corresponds in some degree with the kingdom of France under Napoleon, which was 650 miles long from east to west and 560 broad from north to south. Three great nations comprised the Gauls, known as the Belgae, the Celtae, and the Aquitani. The Romans applied to the inhabitants of the country the general name Galli.

The Gauls proper, or Celtae, as they called themselves, occupied the central parts, extending from the Sequana (Seine) on the north to the Garumna (Garonne) on the south. The Belgae were in the north, between the Sequana and Lower Rhine. The Aquitani dwelt in the south, in the territory between the Garumna and Pyrenees, and intermingled with the Spaniards. Of these nations the Belgae were the bravest, but the Celtae the more numerous and indigenous. The Aquitani were of a race cognate to the Spanish tribes, while the Belgae were largely intermixed with the Germans.

The entire population of the country may have been about seven million.

73. The Aquitani probably spoke a language of Iberian origin. The Belgae and the Celtae used merely different dialects of the same language, the former Celtic mixed with German, the latter pure Celtic (B. G. i. 1).

GERMANY.

74. The science of language establishes the German races in the great family to which belong the Hindu, Roman, and Celt. The Teutonic language lives in its representatives, although the original speech has passed away without a literature. It is with peculiar interest that we study the early history of the Germans, who were our progenitors; and it is a matter of regret that no more writings of Latin authors concerning them have come down to us.

75. The Romans first met the Germans in 113 B. C., when they came upon the Roman confines and made invasions in Gaul and northern Italy, until checked by Marius. At that time they were under the appellation of Teutones and Cimbri.

76. Upon the Celts the Germans had exerted a pressure more violent even than that of the Romans on the south. All the land to the east of the Rhine was lost to the Celts. The Boii were wandering in search of a resting-place, and the land formerly possessed by the Helvetii was claimed by the Germans.

77. They were designated Germans when Caesar began his conquest of Gaul. It is not strange that the Celts being threatened with danger from two national foes should seek the one as a protection against the other.

78. Ariovistus attempted to establish the power of the nation which dwelt across the Danube in Gaul, but was defeated by Caesar and compelled to cross the Rhine (B. G. i. 53).

79. Caesar crossed the Rhine twice, not with the intention of conquest, but to prevent the frequent invasions of the Germans into Gaul.

80. Of the German tribes dwelling nearest the Rhine Caesar had an accurate knowledge, but the Suebi, he was told, inhabited the rest of Germany, and were divided into a hundred districts, which sent annually a thousand men each to seek booty. They lived by hunting and fishing, and devastated their borders to prevent foreign invasion. This stratagem was employed by the Germans on an extensive scale, and the neighborhood for miles was laid waste to guard against hostile attacks.

81. The appéarance of the Germans, Roman writers declare, was as follows: A people with fierce blue eyes, yellow hair, strong frame, and gigantic height, who are inured to cold and hunger, but not heat and thirst, friendly, faithful, warlike, and ready to sacrifice life for liberty, dwell beyond the Rhine.

82. With the arts of civilization the Germans are represented to have been unacquainted; and they were ignorant of agriculture and the use of letters, living in the forests and supporting themselves by the chase.

83. The government was by the people in the majority of tribes, but some obeyed the limited authority of kings without giving up individual rights.

84. In battle it was the duty of a commander to be as valiant as possible, and the duty of his soldiers not to be inferior to him. It was considered a disgrace to survive the fall of the commander, but to protect him was the motive of every soldier.

85. The estimate of women was high among the German tribes, and polygamy was permitted only to princes in order to extend their influence in neighboring tribes.

86. They worshipped the sun, moon, earth, fire, and imaginary beings controlling the events of life, whose will the priests divined by mysteries. Their temples were caves of the earth.

BRITAIN.

87. In regard to Britain little was known before the time of Caesar, who endeavored to reduce it, but his attempts were ineffectual. Ostorius in the reign of Claudius subjugated the southern part; and Agricola in the reign of Domitian increased the Roman sway there. Britain remained a Roman province until A. D. 426, when the assistance of the troops was demanded by Valentine III. against the Huns. The Britons under the Roman power became so effeminate that they were unable to drive away the inhabitants of the north; and the Saxons, who were invoked to aid them, subdued the country.

Britain abounded in Roman walls, traces of which remain to-day. The race to which the Britons belonged was the Celtic.

DRUIDISM.

88. Druidism was an impress of the Indo-European faith. As the sky became the first deification of the Aryans (cf. Jupiter = *Dyans pita*, *divus* = heavenly, hence divine, the old idea lingering on in "sub divo" out of doors), so the Druids first worshipped the stars, the sun, and the forces of nature, and these phenomena became personified. Bel became the sun-god; Kirk, the wind from the valley of the Rhone; Tarann, the thunder.

89. The deities of the Sanskrit pantheon lingered on in the system of the Druids. Much importance was attached to kine in both religions. In the Veda one of the most fertile sources of metaphors is the cow-stall; and likewise the forms of bulls and oxen obtained a great vogue in Druid worship. Many ceremonies, as religious bathing, etc., exhibit a striking correspondence.

90. The Druids formed a distinct caste by themselves, possessing great authority. They were regarded as the interpreters of the will of heaven and the diviners of the secrets of the earth.

91. The power of the Druids was supreme in the government of the state. According to Caesar they appointed the chief magistrates, and these acted as was agreeable to the will of the priests. Justice was administered by them, and whoever opposed their decisions was excommunicated.

92. The Druids gave oral instruction to pupils, who learned from them verses of hidden meaning amounting to many thousand; but they wrote nothing, and the songs of the early bards have passed away.

93. A belief in a life beyond the grave was taught by them. This was more clear and definite to them than the Latin faith in the vague existence of the Manes. The mistletoe was a sacred plant, the rarity of which caused it to become the holiest object in Nature. The oak was also venerated. Human sacrifices were frequently offered to the gods.

94. Such is a brief description of the religious system among the Gauls and Britons.

95. Caesar refers to the Druids in the following passages. *Druides*, vi. 14; *Druidum*, vi. 13 (twice); *Druidibus*, vi. 13; *Druides*, vi. 21; *Druidibus*, vi. 16, 18.



THE ROMAN ART OF WAR.

96. The Organization of the army. — The Roman army of the late republic consisted of (*a*) legions; (*b*) auxiliary infantry; (*c*) cavalry; (*d*) artillery; (*e*) staff and staff troops.

97. The Legions. — It was both the duty and the right of every Roman citizen to serve in the army. But after the social war the number of Roman citizens had increased to such an extent that only a part was needed. We find therefore at the end of the republic the armies changing into an organization of professional soldiers who were mostly led by the hope of gain. The higher classes remained at home, unless, indeed, some one was driven by natural inclination or anticipations of ascending to a high rank. The levy (*dēlectus*) was held in Italy in the name of the consuls, in the provinces in the name of the proconsuls.

98. Number of soldiers. — The number of soldiers in a legion, at Caesar's time, may be estimated as amounting to 3,000 or 3,600. It was the custom to form a new legion (*legio tironum*) rather than to fill out vacancies in the old ones (*legiones veteranae*), unless their number was diminished to an extraordinary degree. (Cf. B. G. vii. 1, 7.)

99. Divisions of the Legions. — Each legion was divided into ten cohorts (300 to 360 men); each cohort into three maniples (100 to 120 men); each maniple into two platoons (50 to 60 men) [*ordines* = platoons].

100. Officers. — The officers of the legion were the six military tribunes (*tribuni militum*). Each maniple was under the command of

two centuries (*centurio prior* in charge of the first platoon and *centurio posterior* in charge of the second platoon).

The *centuriones* of the first maniple of a cohort were called *pili*, those of the second *principes*, those of the third *hastati*, — names which are an apparent survival of the older organization. The *centurio prior* (*pilus prior*, *principilus*) of the first maniple of the first cohort of the first legion had the highest rank. The centuries of the first maniple of a legion occupied an exceptional position, and took part in the council of war (B. G. v. 28).

101. The tribuni militum. — The *tribuni militum* were men of higher social position who, after having served a short time in the *cohors praetoria*, were appointed military tribunes.

The difference between the centuries and the *tribuni* was the same as that between non-commissioned officers and commissioned officers, — centuries being very rarely promoted to the rank of *tribuni militum*.

102. Clothing. — Clothing, armor, and equipment were the same for all legionaries. They wore the military cloak (*sagum*) and the cuirass (*lorica*) of leather, the helmet of either brass (*cassis*) or



PILUM.



GLADIUS.



SARCINAE.



SCUTUM.

leather (*galea*), greaves (*ocreae*), the wooden, iron-plated shield (*scutum*), and the sword (*gladius*). Their characteristic weapon was the spear

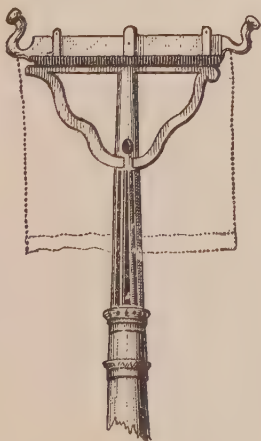
(*pilum*), the iron of which bent when the missile struck, since only the end was hardened: this made it useless to the enemy and prevented an easy removal. (B. G. i. 25).

Besides these each soldier carried entrenching tools (saws, spades, axes, etc.), cooking vessels, and spare clothing, and his ration of food ($1\frac{2}{3}$ pounds for a day).

For convenient carrying, the baggage—about 30 to 45 pounds—was packed in bundles (*sarcinae*) and fastened to a small board which rested on the top of a forked pole (*furca*).



AQUILIFER.



VEXILLUM.

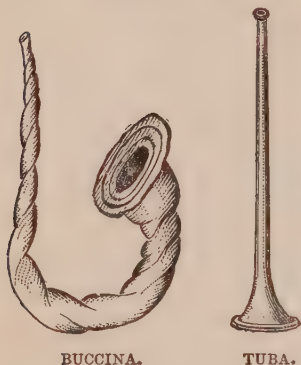


SIGNUM.

103. Standards.— Each legion had as a standard an eagle (*aquila*), entrusted to the *principilus*, first centurion of the first cohort (*aquilifer*). Each cohort had a *signum* (usually an animal).

(*Aquila* therefore sometimes = *legio*, and *signum* = *cohors*.)

104. **Music.** — Two kinds of instruments were used for giving signals to the legionaries: *buccina* (*buccinatores*) = bugle, and *tuba* (*tubicines*) = trumpet, — the latter being more numerous than the former.



105. **Baggage train.** — The heavy baggage of the legions was carried by pack-animals, horses, or mules (*iumenta sarcinaria*, B. G. vii. 45).

The first thing they carried were the leather tents (*tentoria*, *tabernacula*). Ten men formed a *contubernium*, but as two were always on guard-duty it was actually occupied by only eight. Each centurion had a tent for his own use. Making an allowance of two tents for servants, each manipule (one hundred and twenty men) needed sixteen tents, a cohort forty-eight, a legion four hundred and eighty (twelve tents for the *tribuni militum* and their servants excluded). Besides this, a great amount of stakes, tools, etc., was required for pitching camp, which justifies us in assuming one more pack-animal for each cohort ($48 + 1 = 49$).

The weight of a tent was about forty pounds, and as a pack-animal's load can be rated at about two hundred pounds, and as very probably each *contubernium* (ten men) had one mule or horse, it could convey besides the tent sixteen pounds of each soldier's baggage (food, mills, etc.). To this must be added about five servants and three pack-animals for each tribune, their several horses, etc., so that the sum total of animals hardly fell short of five hundred and twenty, — a real *impedimentum* for an army.

106. **The antesignani.** — The *antesignani* were a detachment from the cohorts (three hundred men for each legion) always ready for battle (*expediti*), and serving as vanguard and as light infantry in a hand-to-hand battle.

107. The Auxiliary Infantry. — *Auxilia* were raised by (a) enlistment from allied nations, — slingers from the Balearic Islands, archers from Numidia, and light-armed German troops (B. G. viii. 13); (b) by conscription from barbarian nations of the provinces, — troops which were seldom to be relied upon, and principally used for a show of strength, or for the construction of fortifications (B. G. i. 51; vii. 34); (c) by treaty with allied nations. The number of auxiliary troops is extremely varying. The name for all auxiliary infantry is *alarii*.

108. The Cavalry. — The cavalry in Caesar's army was raised in the manner described above. The soldiers came from Germany, Gaul, and Spain (B. G. v. 26, 46; vii. 13, 55).

As an average its strength was about one-fourth of that of the legions. They doubtless preserved to a certain extent their national organization. Bodies of from two hundred to four hundred were commanded by a *praefectus equitum* (either a native or a Roman, B. G. i. 18; iii. 26; iv. 11; viii. 12, 48). The whole was always under a Roman commander (B. G. i. 52; viii. 48). About four hundred horses made up an *ala* (regiment); the tactical unit of the *ala* was the *turma* (squadron) (32 men + the *decurio* = 33) (B. G. vi. 8; viii. 16, 18).

109. The Artillery. — Artillery was used by the Romans only in defending and attacking fortified places. Its organization is unknown to us. Very likely a number of *fabri* were entrusted with the transportation, construction, and use of the engines.

110. The Staff. — The general staff consists of:—

(a) The general (*imperator*).

(b) Legates (*legati*) were men of senatorial rank assigned to the pro-consuls by the senate. They were the lieutenants of the general, placed at the head of detachments of one or more legions. It was Caesar who first placed a legate at the head of each legion (B. G. i. 52).

(c) The *quaestor*, assigned by lot to the pro-consul as superintendent of the finances of the province. He with a numerous body of assistants

had to provide the army with food, pay, clothing, arms, equipments, and shelter.

(d) Aides-de-camp, and the staff of the quartermaster-general. A number of young noblemen followed the general as volunteers (*contubernales, comites praetorii, voluntarii*). They formed the nobler part of the general's suite (*cohors praetoria*), and served as aides-de-camp, orderly-officers, and were used as aids in the administrative department. If very numerous, they formed platoons by themselves, or joined the body-guard, taking part in the battle. The other part of the *cohors praetoria* was composed of *lictores*, scribes, servants, *apparitores* (orderlies), and *speculatores* (scouts, spies).

(e) Body-guard. This was not a choice troop, but troops which stood in a nearer personal relation to the general. (a) Small bodies of German cavalry (B. G. vii. 13) used as personal escort (*escadrons de service*); (β) *evocati* were those veteran soldiers who having completed their term of service either remained with the army or returned to it at the solicitation of the general. Those men who exercised more influence over the common soldier, with whom they were in every respect on the same plane, than officers and centurions, were of priceless value to a general.

They formed in Caesar's army an organized troop divided into *centuriae*, and were honored by a number of privileges. They had pack-animals and riding-horses, which they used on the march, and could therefore be used as orderlies for important communications or as scouts. In battle they fought near the general, protecting his person and the *vexillum* (standard). They were joined by the *voluntarii*.

(f) Engineers (*fabri*) stood under the command of the *praefectus fabrorum*. They were employed in building bridges, in constructing the winter-quarters, and in repairing the weapons. Thus the *pila*, which once hurled became useless, had to be collected after battle, and were repaired by the *fabri ferrarii*.

111. Pay. — Caesar had fixed the pay of the legionaries at 225 *denarii* (\$45), paid by three instalments (*stipendia*). For food and equipment a reduction was made, which in the provinces however was very low. Be-

sides, booty and gifts of the general increased the income of the soldier considerably.

(The pay of a day-laborer in Rome at that time was about three-fourths of a *denarius* daily.)

The auxiliary infantry very likely received the same pay; the cavalry three times as much, if they brought their horses with them.

112. Discipline. — Better than by fear of punishment order was maintained by constant employment; such were the daily fortification of the camp, the severe guard-duty, and constant practice in the use of weapons. Courage was rewarded by substantial gifts of money. Military crimes (mutiny, desertion, cowardice, abuse of authority) were always severely punished. Violence to the conquered, robbery and plunder, however, were allowed by generals desirous to attach the soldiers to their person.

113. Tactics. — Tactics of a troop comprise: its order of arrangement for battle, — with reference to which every movement and formation are made, — its movements during battle, the order of march, the disposition in the camp, and all evolutions in passing from one to the other.

Because the order-of-battle of a body of soldiers is that of the tactical unit of this body, we have to consider first the order-of-battle of the cohort, as being the tactical unit of the legion.

114. The Order of Battle. — The three maniples arrayed side by side formed the order-of-battle of a cohort. The front of each maniple was 40, that of the cohort 120 feet; each maniple had twelve files. Each man in the front rank (*ordo*, B. G. vii. 62) of the maniple occupied three feet, which were sufficient to throw the *pilum*. For the use of the sword four to six feet were needed, which were gained by the stepping forward of the odd numbers (*laxare ordines*, B. G. ii. 25). Each file consisted of ten men; the maniple had therefore ten ranks; the distance from breast to breast in the file was four feet. The maniple forms then a square, each side forty feet; the cohort a rectangle, 120 feet front by forty feet deep.

115. Offensive order-of battle of the legion. — The legions formed either two (*acies duplex*) or three lines (*acies triplex*); if they were arrayed

in two lines each line consisted of five cohorts ; if in three, the first line of four, each of the two others of three. Between the cohorts of the first line intervals equal to or a little larger than the front of a cohort were left.

The front of a legion in order of battle is 840 feet, its depth 600 feet.

116. Attack. — The Roman legions never failed to take the advantage of a higher place (*superioris loci*, B. G. i. 22, 24, 25 ; ii. 8 ; iii. 4 ; v. 9 ; vi. 40 ; vii. 51), perhaps the slope of a hill, having thus the enemy below them. Under those circumstances more than one rank could hurl the spears (B. G. i. 25). If the distance was greater than about 250 paces to an enemy setting out for attack or greater than 120 paces to an enemy awaiting the onset, the legions first moved forward at an equal pace (*certo gradu*, B. G. viii. 9). At the proper distance they set out at a run (*concursum*) ; the first rank raised the spears (*infestis pilis*), which they hurled at a distance of ten to twenty paces (*emissio pilorum*, B. G. vi. 45), throwing thus the enemy into confusion. If the right moment had passed, and a rapidly advancing enemy had gotten too near, the soldiers had to drop the spears and use their swords (B. G. i. 52).

After they had hurled their spears the soldiers of the first rank drew their swords and rushed forward, taking advantage of the confusion of the enemy (*impetus gladiatorum*, B. G. i. 25, 52 ; vi. 8). The first ranks were now engaged in single combats, while the other ranks hurled their spears over their comrades' heads into the enemy and served as a reserve. They also prevented the enemy from pouring into the intervals and attacking the cohorts in flank, especially at the unprotected right side (*latera aperta*, B. G. i. 25 ; ii. 23 ; iv. 25, 26 ; v. 35). So that the second line, which followed at a distance of about 200 feet and halted when the first had become engaged, could be used as a reserve behind which the exhausted first line after about fifteen minutes could retire.

117. Defensive order-of-battle. — (1) In one line (*acies simplex*).
(2) The circle (*orbis*).

(1) The *acies simplex* was used for defending the walls of a camp. Where a second line and great depth were superfluous, five banks were

enough. In this arrangement a legion would cover 4800 feet without intervals. If this arrangement without intervals was used in the open field, which was done in order to prevent an outflanking or incursions of cavalry, etc., the cohorts retained their normal front and depth, and a legion covered then 1200 feet.

(2) The circle was formed in case an attack on all sides was feared. Small divisions (maniples) formed a solid circle, greater ones (cohorts), a solid square, still greater detachments hollow squares. A legion could form such a hollow square by placing the first, second, and third cohort in front, the eighth, ninth, and tenth in the rear, the fifth and sixth on the left, the fourth and seventh on the right side. The front would be 360 feet, the sides 320 feet, the inner square covering 67,200 square feet.

118. The march of the cohorts.— Order of march (*agmen*) of the cohorts is twofold. (1) Column of maniples (*manipulatim*). (2) Column of centuries (*ordinatim centuriatim*).

(1) Column of maniples was formed from the order-of-battle by facing to the right or left ; the width of the column was forty feet.

(2) Column of centuries. The first maniple (*pilani*) marched forward and the rest followed successively. Its width was also forty feet. In this order Caesar crossed the Rhine. The width could, if necessary, be diminished to twenty feet by doubling the depth. The length of a column of centuries was 120 feet ; of a maniple, 144 feet.

The order of battle was formed —

From the column of maniples by the commands, Halt ! Front ! From the column of centuries by aligning on the right or left after the leading maniples had halted.

119. The march of the legions.— The legions marched in three forms. (1) In simple form (*agmen pilatum*) ; (2) in order-of-battle (*acies instructa*) ; (3) in square (*agmen quadratum*).

In simple column the legions followed each other according to their number, each cohort in column of centuries. The length of a legion was then 1,400 feet ; with double ranks, 2,600 feet. With baggage-train its length was 2,050 feet, or if the road was small 3,900 feet.

The march in order-of-battle was either by lines or by wings. A legion that marches in order-of-battle by lines formed as many columns as the order-of-battle has lines, — in Caesar's army generally three. The cohorts marched in columns of maniples and were able to form the order-of-battle by simply facing to the right or left.

A legion that marched in order-of-battle by wings formed three columns. The cohorts of the right wing (Nos. 1, 5, 8) formed the first, the cohorts of the centre (Nos. 2, 6, 9) the second, the cohorts of the left wing (Nos. 4, 3, 7) the third columns. Each cohort marched in columns of centuries.

Order of march in square (corresponding to the *orbis*): a division of troops in order-of-battle by wings led, followed by the baggage; a similar division marched at the rear; on either side marched a division in cohorts in columns of maniples.

120. Tactics of the cavalry. — The tactical unit of the Roman cavalry was the *turma* (32 horses), arranged in four ranks of eight horses. Front and depth were 40 feet.

Twelve *turmae* formed a regiment (*ala*). The order-of-battle very likely resembled that of the infantry, and consisted of two or three lines with intervals, the front of a line being 440 feet (B. G. iv. 33; viii. 17-19).

A detachment of cavalry served as reserve (B. G. vii. 13).

Caesar not unfrequently strengthened his cavalry by placing German infantry or maniples of *antesignani* in the intervals between two *turmae* (B. G. viii. 13).

The order-of-march of the regiment was in column of *turmae*, each *turma* keeping the order-of-battle. The length of a regiment was then 480 feet, to which the train added about 240 feet.

121. The camps (*castra*). — We have to distinguish two kinds of camps. (1) Summer camps (*castra aestiva*), which were regularly pitched at the evening of each day's march, however long and fatiguing it might have been, and frequently were left the next day. (2) Winter-quarters (*castra hiberna*), where the legions stayed over winter, kept apart from any contact with the inhabitants (B. G. iii. 4), and under a constant

training. As regards the form of the latter, they were hardly different from the summer camps, but they were naturally furnished with more accommodations. The tents (*tabernacula*, *pelles*) of the summer camp, for instance, were replaced by huts (*casae stramenticiae*). (B. G. v. 43.)

The place for the camp — the slope of a hill where there was an easy supply of water and wood was considered the best situation — was selected by a number of tribunes and centurions sent in advance (B. G. ii. 17).

The form of the Roman camp at Caesar's time was a square or a rectangle, the sides of which were as 2 : 3. Its front faced the enemy.

Two streets, running parallel to the front, divided the camp into three parts: the *praetentura*, divided from the *latera praetorii* by the *via principalis*; and the *retentura*, divided from the *latera praetorii* by the *via quintana*.

Either extremity of the *via principalis* was faced by a gate (*porta principalis*, *dextra*, and *sinistra*); and when two gates are mentioned from which a sally is made (B. G. iii. 19; v. 58; vii. 41), these two gates are to be understood. Besides there were two other gates: one facing the enemy in front, *porta praetoria*; the other at the opposite side, *porta decumana*. From the *porta praetoria* a street (*via praetoria*) led to the *via principalis*.

Distribution of the troops: In the *praetentura*, one fourth or one fifth of all the cohorts, one half of the cavalry, and all the *milites levis armorum* (slingers, archers, dartmen).

The middle part of the middle camp is occupied by the *praetorium* (general's quarter), with the tents for the commander and his staff, altars, tribunal (B. G. vi. 3, *suggestus*), etc.

The same place which is occupied by the *praetorium* in the middle camp is taken by the *quaestorium*, with the tents for the quaestor and his staff in the *retentura*. Provisions and booty, foreign ambassadors and hostages, are kept here, along with the rest of the cohorts.

a. The camp was surrounded by wall and ditch. Between the wall and the encampment there was a street about 120 feet broad. The depth of the ditch was generally about seven feet, its breadth nine feet.

It is to be remarked that Caesar expressly states depth and breadth only when they deviate from the common measures.

NOTE.—There are three forms of ditches. (1), scarp (*latus interior*) and counterscarp (*latus exterior*) are inclined (*fossa fastigata*). (2), scarp is inclined; counterscarp, vertical (*fossa punita*). (3), both scarp and counterscarp vertical (*directis lateribus*). Of these the first is decidedly the most common. For the third see B. G. vii. 72; viii. 9.

b. The ditch yielded the material for the construction of the wall (*vallum*). Its height was dependent on the depth of the ditch. In the whole the height can be assumed to be two thirds of the upper breadth of the ditch (cf. B. G. ii. 5; B. C. iii. 63, *erat eo loco fossa pedum XV et vallum contra hostem in altitudinem pedum X*). Its outside was generally turfed (B. G. viii. 9). To make it still more firm and strong, fences of hurdle-work running parallel to the length of the wall were used. Inside steps led up to the top. The ordinary upper breadth of the wall in general was six feet. Broader walls had a rampart (*lorica, loricaula*) of palisades (*valli*) (cf. B. G. v. 40; vii. 72; viii. 9), either all of the same height, or with *pinnae* (as B. G. v. 40; vii. 72), between which intervals were left. Where wall and ditch were of unusual size, or where there were even two ditches, we find the wall crowned with towers (B. G. v. 40; vii. 72; viii. 9).

c. The digging out of an ordinary ditch and the construction of an ordinary wall took from three to four hours.

d. A number of troops — generally one or two cohorts before each gate, and one *turma equitum*, but if required stronger forces, as before Avaricum, two legions (B. G. vii. 24) — kept guard (*excubari, in statione esse*) before the gates of the wall, others on the rampart. The word *excubiae* denotes guards either by night or by day, while *vigiliae* those by night only. The night (from 6 o'clock P.M. to 6 o'clock A.M.) was divided into four watches of three hours each. The signal for changing the watches was given by the *buccinator*.

e. Every evening a watchword (*tessera*) was given by the general, which was made known to the soldiers by the *tesserarii*.

122. Marches. — Every greater distance was divided into day's marches (*itineræ*); two or three days of march were generally followed by a day of rest, the contrary being expressly stated (B. G. i. 41). Every day's march led from a camp to a camp, so that the days of march are not unfrequently counted by camps (B. G. vii. 63).

The armies marched about seven hours (= five Roman hours in summer), from 4 or 5 A.M. to 11 A.M. or 12 M. (*justum iter*, B. C. iii. 76, "normal march"), at a rate of something less than a hundred paces a minute. But marches at a much more quickened pace were not rare (B. G. vii. 40; v. 46, 47; ii. 12).

There are to be distinguished two kinds of marches. (1) Perpendicular marches, where the line of march stands perpendicular to the assumed line of the hostile army, divided into two subdivisions, — (a) advance, (b) retreat. (2) Parallel marches, where the line of march runs parallel to the line of the hostile army or to the line of its march.

123. I. The Advance. When the column is marching forward we have to distinguish, — (1), the van (*primum agmen*); (2), the main body (*exercitus, omnes copiae, agmen legionum*); (3), the rear-guard (*agmen novissimum, agmen extremum*).

(1) The van consisted of light infantry and the greater part of the cavalry. Its object was (a) to delay the march of the hostile army (*novissimum agmen capere, demorari*), giving the main body time to deploy. (b) To reconnoitre the country (*loci naturam perspicere, iter cognoscere*, B. G. i. 15, etc.), and to give news of the enemy. This was done by detachments of cavalry (*exploratores*) sent out in different directions. (c) To select a proper situation for a camp.

(2) In some distance after the van the main body followed, marching in one of the following three forms: —

(a) In column, each legion followed with its baggage, which divided it from the legion next following. A column of five legions, with a breadth of forty feet, requires 10,250 feet length; and a sixth legion would need not less than forty minutes to reach the head and join with the other legions in battle. Legions marching in this form were therefore not ready for battle (*impeditæ*, B. G. iii. 24), and the form was only adopted in a

friendly country. When near the enemy a second form was therefore adopted.

(b) In column, but with the baggage of the whole army assembled. Three fourths of the entire number of legions composed the head, followed by the collected baggage; the rest of the legions (one fourth) formed the rear-guard (*claudunt agmen*) as guard for the baggage (*praesidio impeditis*). As the legions could in this form more easily deploy, they were called *expeditae*. Nevertheless the individual soldier was even here not ready for battle, being of course unable to fight *sub sarcinis*, — i. e., laden with all his personal baggage (*sarcinae*), etc. If therefore an army marching in this form was attacked, the legionaries had to pile their baggage (*sarcinas in acervum comportare, sarcinas conferre*, B. G. i. 24; vii. 18), to draw the shields from their coverings (*tegumenta scutis detrahere*, B. G. ii. 21), to put on their field-badges (*insignia accommodare*, B. G. ii. 21), to put on their helmets (*galeas induere*, B. G. ii. 21), and to get their weapons ready (*arma expeditae, legio armatur*, B. G. vii. 18). Time for this was won by the van.

(c.) The advance in order-of-battle (*acie instructa*) could be adopted only for comparatively short distances (about three hours' way), provided the ground was suitable and the enemy near (B. G. iv. 14). The baggage was left in the camp.

II. The Retreat.

(a) The retreat in column, with baggage massed. For this form of the retreat the baggage was sent out of the camp as early as possible, accompanied by a legion which formed the van-guard, and selected the place for a new camp. Then followed the main body, the cohorts in columns of centuries, as in the advance. The rear-guard left the camp last, following at a suitable distance; it was composed of the greatest part of cavalry and of the *milites levis armaturae* (archers, slingers), often supported by the *antesignani*, or even an entire legion.

(b) When the enemy had numerous cavalry and were on a march through a rebellious country, the retreat in square (*agmen quadratum*) was chosen. As a rule, all the legions formed the square, with the united baggage in the centre. The cavalry, remaining outside the square, skir-

mished around it; if it was unable to resist the enemy, the legions formed the *orbis*.

III. Flank marches. They were made in order-of-battle, and therefore for short distances only, the legions marching in a column of lines (two, *acie duplici*, or three, *acie triplici*). The baggage-train marched either on the side opposite the enemy, or followed each legion (B. G. vii. 34), especially when a considerable obstacle was between the enemy and the Roman army.

124. Crossing a stream. — (1) By fords. This method was preferred by Caesar, as it required no long preparation. When the current was very strong two lines of cavalry were stationed, — one up-stream for breaking its force, one down-stream in order to save men carried from their footing (B. G. vii. 56).

(2) By bridges of every kind. Especially noteworthy is the elaborate bridge with which Caesar twice spanned the Rhine (described B. G. iv. 16–18; cf. also vi. 9). Bridges of boats were used (B. G. vi. 6); they were protected by strong fortifications and forces (*praesidia*).

125. The battle. — 1. The offensive. (*a*) The legions. The normal order for the offensive was the triple line (*acies triplex*), the third line being designed as a reserve. The first line had to attack the enemy and to overthrow them if possible. If it did not succeed, the second line took up the attack, the third line being designed to prevent a flank movement of the enemy (cf. B. G. i. 25), and to be hurled against the hostile army at the crisis of battle (B. G. i. 25). In B. G. i. 49 we see it also employed in pitching a camp.

Where there was no need of a reserve, as in a *coup-de-main*, a double line (*acies duplex*) was sufficient (B. G. iii. 24–26). Where on the other hand both flank movements of the foe were to be feared and a necessity for a reserve was felt, we find a quadruple line (*acies quadruplex*).

(*b*) The cavalry, which was commonly placed at both the flanks of the legions, had to guard against a flank movement of the enemy, to take

if circumstances permitted the enemy in flank, and to distress the fleeing foe (B. G. i. 53; iv. 14; viii. 29). Chiefly if the cavalry consisted of troops which could not be relied upon (B. G. i. 24, 25), and also from other reasons (B. G. i. 52), it was placed behind the first cohorts of the legions.

(c) The light troops were mostly placed at the wings of the legions.

(d) The front of the line-of-battle was divided into the centre (*acies media*) and right and left wing (*cornu dextrum* and *sinistrum*). The most experienced and reliable troops were placed at the wings, and the best of all (the tenth legion in Caesar's army) was stationed on the wing which was to begin the attack.

(e) Before the battle commenced the general personally encouraged each legion (B. G. ii. 20), going through the whole line-of-battle (*acies instructa*).

2. The defensive. The fundamental idea of every defensive method is to delay the enemy's approach by making use of the natural obstacles which the ground affords, to weaken him meanwhile by missiles, and finally to attack him at the weakest point. Now the Roman legions were fit only for a hand-to-hand fight, and their missiles being neither very far-reaching nor very numerous, the principal thing was to select a ground which was most disadvantageous to the approaching battle-line of the enemy, and to increase the natural obstacles by art (as B. G. vii. 56, 62, 63, 64, where we have ditches, pitfalls, etc.). An excellent illustration of a Roman defensive method is given in B. G. ii. 5.

126. The Siege. — Fortified places were assailed —

(a) By blockade (*obsidio*).

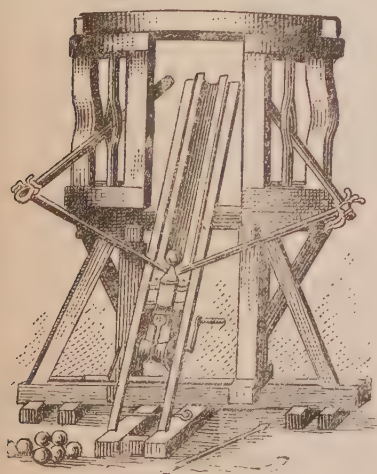
(b) By violent assault (*oppugnatio repentina*).

(c) By formal siege (*oppugnatio*).

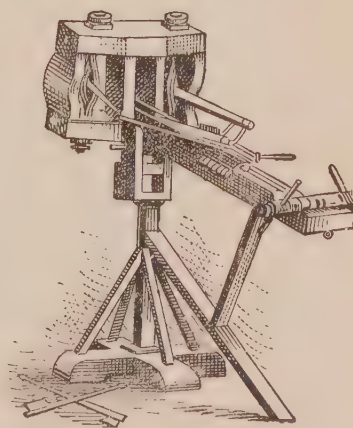
(a) Blockade (*obsidio*) was used against places of great strength which seemed to be poorly provided with provisions, provided their location allowed a complete environment. The most famous blockade is that of Alesia (B. G. vii. 69).

The besieged town was surrounded by fortifications (*circumvallatio*), consisting of redoubts (*castella*) at convenient places, connected by walls (*bracchia, munitiones*). Behind these fortifications the camps of the besieging army were pitched. The stronger the place and the weaker the blockading army the stronger the circumvallation was to be. (Cp. the circumvallation of Alesia with threefold ditches, a wall twelve feet high, etc.) If succor was to be feared, a second line of circumvallation facing outwards was to be built. The army camped then between the two lines (B. G. vii. 74). Small garrisons (*praesidia*) held the redoubts (*castella*), strengthened in day-time by sentries (*stationes*), in night-time by strong pickets (*excubitores*). (B. G. vii. 69.)

(b) Violent assault (*appugnatio repentina*) was used against places with weak fortifications well supplied with provisions; and against strongly



BALLISTA.



CATAPULTA.

fortified places if time pressed. The principal means for a violent assault were scaling-ladders and breaching-huts (*musculi*). Behind hurdles (*crates*) slingers and archers were as near the wall as possible in order to drive the soldiers from the ramparts. After this had been done the legionaries,

formed in several columns, rushed forward, in order to distract the enemy's attention by an attack on several points. At their head were laborers who carried the ladders and material for filling out the ditch. While a number of soldiers tried to climb up the wall, others tried to make a breach in the wall through which the place might be entered.



TESTUDO.



ARIES.

(c) The formal siege (*oppugnatio*) was used against strongly fortified and well-supplied places. It was often combined with (a) blockade (B. G. vii. 11).

127. The Agger. — The principal work for a formal siege was the mound (*agger*). It was begun at a distance of not less than about four hundred feet, the distance being dependent on the power of the hostile missiles. Its height was equal to the wall of the stronghold, or even a little higher. (Before Avaricum it was, for instance, eighty feet.) Its breadth must have been enough for a storming column, — at least fifty feet.

NOTE. — The breadth of the mound before Avaricum ("*pedes CCCXXX*") is incredible. The figures seem to be corrupt.

For the construction of the *agger* the ground had to be levelled by workmen protected by *musculi* (χελώνη χωστρίς), a sort of very strong *vineae* (movable sheds). Those who built the *agger* were guarded by *plutei* (standing shield) against missiles, while others brought the

material in covered galleries composed of a number of *vineae*. Archers and slingers posted behind *plutei* and the artillery in moving towers tried to keep the rampart free from soldiers. In a few cases *turres ambulatoriae* were placed on the mound (*agger*), (B. G. ii. 30, 31 ; viii. 41). The *agger* then was intended to give a firm, smooth roadway for the tower. As a rule, one or two (B. G. vii. 17) moving towers accompanied the *agger*. The *agger* contained much wood-work. (It was frequently set on fire, B. G. vii. 22, 24.) This wood-work was mainly logs (*arbores, materia*). It was not solid, but had holes which admitted draught (cf. B. G. vii. 24, where the mound is set on fire from below). It gradually approached the wall (B. G. vii. 24, *cum murum hostium paene contingeret*). It was erected story after story. The place near to the enemy's wall was filled out by pouring out great masses of rubbish, stones, wood, etc., brought through the galleries left in the middle of each story, after the *agger* had reached the required height.

INDUCTIVE STUDIES.

THE studies will contain (1) examples showing the method of Inductive Study, and (2) a *list of topics* for investigation. The topics may be regarded as review work. The purpose of this work is to give the student an impulse to original research.

I. The CONJUNCTION *cum* in First Book of the Gallic War.

A. OCCURRENCE. Chaps 1, 2, 4, 7, 9, 11, 12, 13 (twice), 14, 16 (twice), 19, 20 (three times), 22, 23, 25, 26 (four times), 27, 31, 32, 33 (twice), 35, 36, 38, 39, 40 (four times), 41, 42 (three times), 43, 47, 50, 52 (twice), 53. In all, forty-six times.

B. CLASSIFICATION.

a. "*cum* — prohibent — *gerunt*," 1. "*cum* — *videbatur*," 40.

From *a* we observe the following; namely, the conjunction *cum* (1) takes the indicative mood; (2) it determines the time of the action, e.g., "*trial had been made at the time when*," etc., 40. Such an indicative is the indicative in its commonest type. This use of *cum* we call "*Cum Determinative*."

b. "*cum* — *conaretur* — *cogerent*," 4.

"*cum* — *nuntiatum esset*," 7.

"*cum* — *exisset*," 12.

"*cum* — *intellegerent*," 13.

"*cum* — *possent*," 13.

"*cum* — *posset*," 16.

"*cum* — *peteret*," 20.

"*cum* — *posset*," 20.

"*cum* — *teneretur* — *abesset* — *cognitus esset*," 22.

"*biduum supererat, cum* — *opoteret*" = *in quo tempore*, 23.

"*cum* — *inflexisset*," 25.

"*cum* — *esset pugnatum*," 26.

"*cum* — *possent*," 26.

"*cum* — *convenissent* — *proiecissent* — *petissent* — *iussisset*," 27.

"*cum* — *contenderent*," 31.

"*cum* — *quaereret* — *posset*," 32.

"*cum* — *occupavissent*," 33.

"*cum* — *vellet*" (*in oratio obliqua*), 36.

"*cum* — *processisset*," 38.

"*cum* — *iussisset*" (*in oratio obliqua*), 39.

"*cum* — *tenuisset* — *fecisset*," 40.

"*cum* — *animadvertisset*," 40.

"*cum* — *mitterentur*," 42.

"*cum* — *fieret*," 42.

"*cum* — *conspexisset*," 47.

"*cum* — *quaeretur*," 50.

"*cum* — *animadvertisset*," 52.

"*cum* — *conversa esset*," 52.

"*cum* — *traheretur*," 53.

From *b* we observe that the subjunctive mood is used without exception. The conjunction *cum* (1) takes the subjunctive mood, and (2) describes or characterizes the time of an action, e.g., "when the state attempted to enforce its right, etc., Orgetorix died," 4; the two *cum*-clauses show the situation, the mysterious circumstances of his death. Such a subjunctive is simply the ordinary subjunctive which is found in all relative clauses of so-called characteristic. This use of *cum* we call "*Cum Descriptive*." We observe furthermore (3) that the tenses employed are the imperfect and pluperfect.

- c. "cum — praestarent," 2.
 "cum — possent," 9.
 "cum — possent," 11.
 "cum — accederent," 19.
 "cum — teneretur," 20.

- "cum — potuissent," 26.
 "cum — appellatus esset," 35.
 "cum — viderentur," 40.
 "cum — intermitteret," 41.
 "cum — polliceretur," 42.

With praesertim

"praesertim cum — divideret," 33. |

Perfect subjunctive with praesertim.

"praesertim cum — suscepit," 16.

From *c* we observe that the conjunction *cum* (1) denotes cause, and (2) takes the subjunctive mood when so used. Also it is seen (3) that the causal idea is sometimes emphasized by the adverb *praesertim*.

- d. "cum — haberet," 43.

Perfect subjunctive.

"cum — pugnatum sit," 26. |

Present subjunctive.

"cum — sint," 14.

From *d* we observe that the conjunction *cum* (1) denotes concession, — i.e., actions notwithstanding which other events occur; and (2) takes the subjunctive mood when so used.

II. INDIRECT DISCOURSE, illustrated by chapter 20 of the First Book.

The exact words of the speaker are as follows: —

A.

"Do not pass any very severe sentence upon my brother. I know that these facts are true, and no one receives more pain on that account than I do. Because, when I could do a great deal by my influence at home and in the rest of Gaul, and my brother Dumnorix very little on account of his youth, by my help he rose to authority and is now using the power and strength thus gained not only to lessen my influence, but almost for my own ruin. Yet I am moved by affection for my brother and by public opinion. If any very severe punishment is inflicted upon him by you, no one will think that it was done without my own desire, since I hold such a place in your friendship. And for that reason it will happen that the affections of the whole of Gaul will be turned from me."

In Latin.

B.

"Noli quid gravius in fratrem statuere. Ego scio haec esse vera, nec quisquam ex hoc plus quam ego doloris capio, propterea quod, cum ipse gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adulescentiam posset, per me crevit; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed paene ad perniciem meam utitur. Ego tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commoveor. Quod si quid ei a te gravius acciderit, cum ipse hunc locum amicitiae apud te teneam, nemo existimabit non mea voluntate factum. Qua ex re fiet uti totius Galliae animi a me avertantur."

The words of the speaker when indirectly quoted are as follows:—

C.

Diviciacus began to implore Caesar not to pass any very severe sentence upon his brother, (saying) that he knew that those facts were true, and no one received more pain on that account than he did. Because when he could do a great deal by his influence at home and in the rest of Gaul, and his brother very little on account of his youth, by his help he had risen to authority, which power and strength he was using not only to lessen his influence, but almost for his ruin. Yet he was moved by affection for his brother and by public opinion. But if any very severe punishment should be inflicted upon him by Caesar, no one would think that it was done without his own desire, since he held such a place in Caesar's friendship. And for that reason it would happen that the affections of the whole of Gaul would be turned from him.

In Latin.

D.

Diviciacus obsecrare coepit ne quid gravius in fratrem statueret. Scire se illa esse vera, nec quemquam ex eo plus quam se doloris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adulescentiam posset, per se crevisset; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed paene ad perniciem suam uteretur. Sese tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commoveri. Quod si quid ei a Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum teneret, neminem existimaturum non sua voluntate factum. Qua ex re futurum uti totius Galliae animi a se averterentur.

From a study of the above we observe the following:—

1. Principal declarative clauses in indirect discourse have their verbs in the infinitive with subjects in the accusative: scire se illa esse vera for ego scio;

quemquam — se — capere for quisquam — ego — capio; sese commoveri for commoveor; neminem existimaturum for nemo existimabit; futurum (esse) for futurum est, erit, or fiet.

2. Unlike the English idiom, which changes the tense of principal verbs in indirect discourse from present to past after a verb of saying containing a past notion, the Latin language employs the present infinitive, the time of which is relative to that of the verb on which the *oratio obliqua* depends. E. g., He said that he knew that those things were true = Dixit scire (not scivisse) se illa esse (not fuisse) vera.

3. The verb in all subordinate clauses is in the subjunctive: posset, crevisset, uteretur, accidisset, teneret, averterentur. From B we see which of these verbs would be in the indicative in the direct narrative.

4. The tense of coepit throws the verbs of the subordinate clauses into the secondary tenses, i. e., imperfect and pluperfect.

5. The imperative becomes the subjunctive: statueret for noli statuere.

6. The first person is changed to the third: ego to se (scire se, se capere, se commoveri, a se averterentur); meus to suus (ad suam perniciem, sua voluntate); ego ipse to is ipse (ipse posset, ipse teneret); haec to illa (illa esse vera); hoc to eo (ex eo plus); hunc to eum (eum locum amicitiae).

7. The second person is changed to the third: statues to statueret (quid statueret); te to Caesare (a Caesare accidisset); te to eum (apud eum teneret).

8. In B we observe that accidisset would be the future perfect in the direct discourse, denoting the action as completed at the future time denoted by existimabit, — a nicety of expression which the English language does not exhibit. Notice the tense used in the *oratio obliqua*.

III. The GERUND and GERUNDIVE in Second Book of the Gallic War.

A. OCCURRENCE of the GERUND. Chaps. 1, 6 (twice), 7, 9, 10, 12, 17, 21 (three times), 24. In all, twelve times.

B. OCCURRENCE of the GERUNDIVE. Chaps. 1, 2 (impersonal construction), 5 (impersonal construction), 7, 8, 9, 10 (three times), 17, 19, 20 (nine times), 21 (five times), 28. In all, twenty-six times.

C. CLASSIFICATION.

a. Genitive of the gerund.

"coniurandi causas," 1.

"consistendi potestas," 6.

"finem oppugnandi," 6.

"studium propugnandi," 7.

"transeundi initium," 9.

"pugnandi causā," 10.

"praedandi causā," 17.

"cohortandi causā," 21.

"pugnandi tempus," 21.

"praedandi causā," 24.

b. Accusative of the gerund.

"ad oppugnandum," 12.

"ad dimicandum," 21.

c. Nominative of the gerundive.

"Caesari omnia erant agenda," 20.

"(milites) arcessendi," 20.

"vexillum proponendum," 20.

"acies instruenda," 20.

"signum tuba dandum," 20.

"milites cohortandi," 20.

"revocandi milites," 20.

"signum dandum," 20.

d. Genitive of the gerundive.

"potiundi oppidi," 7.

"aggeris petendi," 20.

"committendi proelii," 19.

"committendi proelii signum," 21.

e. Accusative of the gerundive.

"non omittendum sibi concilium

Nervii existimaverunt," 17.

"ad defendendos eos," 10.

"ad homines conducendos," 1.

"ad insignia accommodanda," 21.

"ad aciem instruendam," 8.

"ad galeas induendas," 21.

"ad bellum gerundum," 9.

"ad tegimenta detrudenda," 21.

f. Ablative of the gerundive.

"de expugnando oppido," 10.

"in quaerendis suis," 21.

"de flumine transeundo," 10.

"in commemoranda calamitate," 28.

g. Impersonal construction.

"dubitandum non existimavit," 3.

"confligendum sit," 3.

D. CONCLUSION.

From *a* and *d* we learn that the genitive of the gerund and gerundive depends on a noun, like any other genitive on its noun.

The examples in *b* and *e* exhibit a fondness to employ the preposition *ad* with the accusative to express purpose, readiness, and ability.

In the examples in *c* and *g*, and first example in *e*, we see the notion of necessity, duty, or obligation thrust into the gerundive.

From first example in *c*, *Caesari omnia erant agenda*, and first example in *e*, *omittendum sibi*, we observe that the *nomen agentis*, or the principal actor, is put in the dative case.

From *f* it is seen that the ablative with the prepositions *de* and *in* is of frequent occurrence.

The examples in *d*, *e*, and *f* show that when the gerund would have a direct object, the gerundive formation is preferred; when the gerundive is used, the noun,

which would have been the direct object of the gerund, takes the construction which the gerund would have had.

From the first example in *d* and second example in *f* we notice that even dependent verbs and intransitive verbs allow the gerundive formation.

In studying the three following topics the student is expected to deduce as many principles as the classifications admit of.

IV. The ABLATIVE CASE in the Third Book of the Gallic War. Chaps. 16-20.

A. OCCURRENCE. Chaps. 16 (six times), 17 (nineteen times), 18 (seventeen times), 19 (nine times), 20 (sixteen times). In all, sixty-seven times.

B. CLASSIFICATION.

- | | | |
|--|--|---|
| <p>a. "quo proelio," 16.
"militum vocibus," 17.
"magnis praemiis pollicitationibus," 18.</p> | | <p>"quibus angustiis prematur," 18.
"quibus fossas compleant," 18.
"quo plurimum valebant," 20.</p> |
|--|--|---|

Ablative of means.

- | | | |
|---|--|--|
| <p>b. "a barbaris ius conservaretur," 16.</p> | | <p>"ab iis erat provisum," 18.
"ab his sit concessum," 18.</p> |
|---|--|--|

Ablative of Agency. *nomen agentis* always takes the preposition *ab*.

- | | | |
|--|--|---|
| <p>c. "cum his copiis," 17.
"cum Viridovice" (friendly sense), 17.</p> | | <p>"cum tanta multitudine" (hostile sense), 17.</p> |
|--|--|---|

Ablative of accompaniment; always with the preposition *cum*. The classical distinction between the ablative of manner and the ablative with *cum* is, that *cum* thrusts into the ablative the notion of addition or unexpectedness; e. g., *cum celeritate* would denote an additional quality or one which would not be expected.

d. Ablative with preposition *ab*.

1. See b.

2. "ab agri cultura et cotidiano labore," 17.

Ablative of separation.

3. "a Caesare acceperat," 17.		"ab imo acclivis," 19.
--------------------------------------	--	-------------------------------

Ablative of source.

e. Ablative with preposition *ex*.

- | | | |
|------------------------------------|--|--------------------------------|
| 1. "ex quibus exercitum coegerat," | | "ex iis quos habebat," 18. |
| 17. | | "ex tertia parte Galliae," 20. |

Ablative of separation; often equivalent to a partitive genitive. This substitution of a preposition for the ending of the genitive case (cf. *ex his unus* for *horum unus*) is an anticipation of the breaking down of the inflectional system. The substitution of the preposition *de* in this sense is perpetuated in the Romance languages; cf. French *de*.

- | | | |
|---------------------|--|--------------------------------|
| 2. "ex Gallia," 17. | | "duces ex concilio dimittunt," |
| "ex castris," 18. | | 18. |

Ablative of place from which. Notice that *ex* denotes "from the interior of."

3. "ex fuga evaserant," 19.

Ablative of means; originally an ablative of source, but the source was looked upon as the means. A similar confusion of source and means is found in some Greek writers in their use of $\epsilon\tilde{\xi}$ for $\delta\pi\delta$.

f. Tolosa et Narbone," 20.

Ablative of place from which, without a preposition; mostly confined to names of towns.

g. Ablative with preposition *de*.

1. "ea de causa," 17.

Ablative of source; metaphorically.

2. "de navali pugna, de victoria," 19.

de, "concerning."

- h. "in Venetis," 17

"in iis locis," 20.

"in itinere agmen adorti," 20.

"in convalle in insidiis," 20.

Ablative with preposition *in*; place in which.

- i. "spatio duum milium," 17.

"idoneo loco," 17 (like *loco are locis, terra marique, dextra, laeva, etc.*).

"castris sese tenebat," 17.

"duabus portis," 19.

Ablative of place in which, without a preposition; chiefly when the place is regarded also as the means.

- j. "auxilii causa," 18.

"auxilii ferendi causa," 18.

"his rebus adducti," 18.

"opportunitate, inscientia, defatigatione, virtute, exercitatione," 19.

"latitudine, et multitudine," 19.

Ablative of cause.

k. "his paucis diebus," 17.

"proxima nocte," 18.

Ablative of time when.

l. "magno cursu contenderunt," 19.

Ablative of manner.

m. "integris viribus milites," 19.

Ablative of characteristic or quality. The main distinction which can be observed between the ablative of quality and the genitive of quality is, that the genitive denotes the permanent condition, but the ablative the assumption of a new quality or a temporary state.

Notice *viribus* is a temporary condition, while "*omnes gravioris aetatis*" (chap. 16) shows a permanent state.

n. "pro perfuga," 18 (equivalent to a noun in apposition).

Ablative with preposition *pro*.

o. "eo gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit," 16.

"quo diligentius ius conservaretur," 16 for *ut* with comparison.

Ablative denoting degree of comparison.

"uno tempore," 19.

"eodem tempore," 20.

tive degree to explain the comparison = *ut eo*.

"paucis ante annis," 20.

p. "quibus amissis," 16.

"omni senatu necato," 16.

"senatu suo interfecto," 17.

"productis copiis," 17.

"praesertim eo absente" (the idea of cause, emphasized by *praesertim*), 17.

"aequo loco" (with an adjective for a participle; condition strengthened by *nisi*), 17.

"opportunitate aliqua data," 17.

"hac confirmata opinione," 18.

"qua re concessa," 18.

"ut explorata victoria" (*ut as-*

sisting a condition = contrary to fact), 18.

"sarmentis virgultisque conlectis," 18.

"impeditis hostibus," 19.

"exercitu pulso," 19.

"impedimentis amissis," 19.

"re frumentaria provisa, auxiliis equitatuque comparato, multis viris evocatis," 20.

"cuius adventu cognito," 20.

"magnis copiis coactis equitatu," 20.

"equitatu suo pulso," 20.

"insequentibus nostris," 20.

Ablative absolute. Especially common, for the Latin language was handicapped in having no perfect active participle. The present active participle was used with much more exactness than in English, being never employed in the best writers unless the time of the action expressed by it is the same as that of the verb. Hence

to express the past notion conveyed by the present or perfect active participle in English the Latin language must use (1) a clause introduced by *cum*, *postquam*, etc.; or (2) the perfect participle of a deponent verb; or (3) the ablative absolute.

C. Let the student establish as many rules as possible from the above classification.

V. The SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD in the Fourth Book of the Gallic War.

Chaps. 22-31.

A. OCCURRENCE. Chaps. 22 (five times), 23 (seven times), 24 (once), 25 (four times), 26 (once), 27 (five times), 28 (four times), 29 (three times), 30 (once), 31 (twice). In all, thirty-three times.

B. CLASSIFICATION

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>a. "legati qui se excusarent" (qui = ut ii), 22.
 "qui pollicerentur," 22.
 "ut administrarentur," 23.</p> | <p>"ut ea res eveniret," 25.
 "ne tantum dedecus admitteretur," 25.
 "ut ignosceretur petiverunt," 27.</p> |
|---|--|

Subjunctive of purpose.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>b. "quo minus venire possent" (after verb of hindering), 22.
 "uti telum adigi posset," 23.
 "ut nulla cursum tenere posset," 28.
 "sed aliae eodem referrentur," 28.</p> | <p>"ad partem insulae deicerentur," 28.
 "accidit ut esset luna plena," 29.
 "ut navigari commodum posset effecit," 31.</p> |
|--|---|

Subjunctive of result.

- c. "naves quibus reportari possent," 29.

Subjunctive in relative clause of characteristic. This is a true subjunctive of result, the action of the verb being the result of other actions or qualities belonging to the antecedent of the relative; e.g., *nemo est qui noceat* = *there is no one who so conducts himself, or is of such a character, that he harms.*

- d. "quod bellum fecissent," 22. | "questus quod bellum intulissent," 27.

Subjunctive with *quod*, denoting cause on the authority of another than the writer, or an assumed reason.

- e. "ut quae motum haberent" (emphasized by *ut*), 23.

Subjunctive in relative clause expressing cause.

f. "*ut ratio, maritimae res postularent,*" 23.

Subjunctive by the attraction of another subjunctive clause.

g. "*quae cognosset et quae fieri vellet ostendit,*" 23.

Subjunctive in indirect question.

h. "*quae imperasset, facturos,*" 22. | "*quaeque imperasset, facturos,*" 27.

Subjunctive in subordinate clause in indirect discourse. In the direct narrative *imperasset* would have been in the future perfect, to show that the command will be given before the obedience begins.

i. "*dum reliquae naves convenirent, expectavit,*" 23.

Subjunctive with *dum*, denoting futurity and purpose.

j. "*cum esset administratum,*" 23.

"*cum tela conicerent, incitarent,*"

24.

"*reliquae cum essent inutiles,*"
29.

"*cum administraretur,*" 31.

Subjunctive with *cum*, denoting cause.

k. "*cum voce magna dixisset,*" 25.

"*hos cum conspexissent,*" 25.

"*quod cum animadvertisset,*"

26.

"*quae cum appropinquarent et viderentur,*" 28.

"*cum equites intellegerent, cognoscerent,*" 30.

Subjunctive with *cum*, denoting relative time.

l. "*cum mandata deferret,*" 27.

| "*cum pacem petissent,*" 27.

Subjunctive with *cum*, denoting concession.

C. Let the student establish as many rules for the subjunctive mood as he can, based upon the above classification.

VI. WHAT WE KNOW OF THE GERMANS FROM THE TEXT OF CAESAR.

A. For places where the words "*Germania*" and "*Germani*" occur, the student should consult the Geographical Index.

B. Principal facts about this people.

a. The training for war. i. 36.

b. The personal appearance and prowess. i. 39.

c. The method of engagement in cavalry battles. i. 48.

d. The superstition in vogue in regard to the expediency of entering battle.
i. 50.

e. The manner of fighting in battle. i. 52.

f. The method of life; means of protecting their own boundaries; proceedings in time of war; government in time of peace; morality; strength of the nation. vi. 23, 24.

C. Let the student construct an historical account of the Germans by filling out the references given above, and also by further investigation. (See A.)

VII. ADDITIONAL EXERCISES.

In the following topics the places of occurrence in first four books are given to assist the student. The portion of text to be assigned is left to the discretion of the instructor.

1. *debeo. oportet.*

a. *debeo.* — *debeant*, i. 17. *debere*, i. 44, 45. *deberet*, ii. 27. *debuit*, ii. 33. *debuerint*, i. 11.

b. *oportet.* — *oportere*, i. 34, 36, 44; iii. 18, 24; iv. 29. *oportebat*, i. 4. *oporteret*, i. 16, 23, 44, 45 (twice); ii. 20.

2. *licet.*

licet, iv. 1. *liceat*, i. 7. *licere*, i. 42; iii. 10; iv. 8. *liceret*, i. 30, 31, 35, 39.

3. *coepit.*

coepit, i. 20, 26; ii. 10, 12, 23; iii. 3, 21; iv. 7, 14, 25. *coeperunt*, i. 15, 23, 25 (twice), 32, 54; ii. 6, 13, 19, 26; iii. 23, 26, 28; iv. 27, 30. *coeperint*, ii. 5. *coeperant*, i. 26; iii. 12. *coepisset*, iii. 13. *coepissent*, iii. 5, 24. *coeptus est*, iv. 18. *coepti sunt*, ii. 6. *coepita erat*, iv. 18. *coepita essent*, i. 47; ii. 2. Judging from the examples just cited when is *coepisse* used in passive? Note the voice of the complementary infinitive used in last four cases.

4. *proprior* and *proximus.*

propius, i. 42, 46; iv. 9, 11, 28. *proximus*, iii. 7. *proximum*, i. 22, 24. *proximo*, i. 50. *proxima*, i. 40; ii. 12, 35; iii. 18. *proximo*, i. 44. *proximi*, i. 1, 54; ii. 3, 12, 27; iii. 11. *proximas*, i. 12. *proxima* (acc.), iii. 12. *proximis*, i. 3; ii. 33; iv. 25. *proxime*, i. 24; ii. 8, 19; iii. 29.

5. *aut. sive. vel.*

a. *aut*, i. 1 (twice), 13 (four times), 15, 19 (twice), 22, 27, 31 (twice), 34 (twice), 39 (three times), 40 (eight times), 43, 47 (twice), 48, 53; ii. 25, 30, 33 (twice)

iii. 6, 14, 16, 17, 22 (twice), 26; iv. 1, 2, 5, 16, 17, 20 (twice), 24 (twice), 29 (twice), 30.

b. sive, i. 12 (twice), 23, 27 (twice); iii. 13, 17.

c. vel, i. 6 (twice), 19 (twice), 31 (three times); iii. 14; iv. 7 (twice), 16.

6. postquam. cum.

a. postquam, i. 24, 27; ii. 5; iii. 15.

b. cum, i. 1, 2, 4, 7, 9, 11, 12, 13 (twice), 14, 16, 19, 20 (three times), 22, 23, 25, 26 (four times), 27, 31, 32, 33 (twice), 35, 36, 38, 39, 40 (four times), 41, 42 (three times), 43, 47, 50, 52 (twice), 53; ii. 1, 2, 3, 4 (twice), 6 (twice), 8, 11 (twice), 13 (twice), 15, 16, 17 (four times), 19, 20, 22, 24 (three times), 25, 26 (three times), 27, 28, 29 (three times), 33 (twice); iii. 1 (twice), 2 (twice), 3 (twice), 5, 7, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14 (twice), 15 (three times), 16, 17, 20 (twice), 21, 22, 24, 25 (twice), 28, 29; iv. 2, 3, 4 (twice), 5, 6, 7, 11 (twice), 12 (three times), 14, 15 (three times), 16 (three times), 23, 24, 25 (twice), 26, 27 (twice), 28, 29, 30, 31, 32 (twice), 33, 37 (twice), 38.

7. dum.

i. 7, 11, 27, 39, 46; iii. 17; iv. 13, 22, 23, 32, 34.

8. ut. ne.

a. ut, i. 2 (twice), 3 (three times), 4 (twice), 5 (twice), 6 (twice), 7 (twice), 9 (three times), 10, 11, 12, 13 (four times), 16, 19, 20 (twice), 22 (three times), 25 (four times), 26, 28 (twice), 29, 31 (three times), 33 (twice), 34, 35 (twice), 36, 38 (three times), 39 (four times), 40, 41 (twice), 42, 43 (five times), 44 (twice), 46 (twice), 47, 48 (twice), 49, 50, 51, 52; ii. 1, 3, 5, 7, 8, 9 (twice), 10 (twice), 11 (twice), 14, 17 (three times), 18 (three times), 21, 22 (three times), 23, 25, 26, 27 (five times), 28 (twice), 32 (twice), 33 (four times); iii. 2, 3, 4 (twice), 8 (twice), 9, 12, 13 (twice), 14 (three times), 15 (three times), 17 (twice), 18, 19 (three times), 20, 21, 22, 26 (twice); iv. 1, 2 (twice), 3, 11 (four times), 12, 13 (twice), 16 (twice), 17 (three times), 19 (three times), 21 (three times), 23 (three times), 25, 27, 28, 29, 31, 33, 35.

b. ne, i. 4, 9, 13 (twice), 17, 19, 20, 22, 23, 26, 27, 28, 30, 31 (twice), 35, 37, 38, 42 (twice), 43, 46, 49, 51 (twice); ii. 1, 5, 8, 21, 26, 31, 32, 33; iii. 10, 11, 26, 29; iv. 6, 9, 11 (twice), 13, 25.

9. ante

i. 3, 6, 16, 18, 21, 31 (three times), 33, 44, 49, 50; ii. 12, 22, 32, 33 (twice), 35; iii. 20 (twice); iv. 9, 12, 35, 36.

10. apud.

i. 2, 9, 17, 18 (twice), 16, 20 (twice), 31, 33, 40, 47, 50; ii. 2, 4, 7, 14; iii. 9, 21; iv. 1, 2, 8, 13, 15, 18.

In the remaining topics no help is given, as the work should be pursued independently. The student should collect examples from the text, classify them, and establish as many principles or truths as he is able from the material which he has gathered.

11. Conjunctions.

et.

12. { atque. que.

13. The conjunction cum.

14. antequam.

15. Particles.

16. Adjectives.

17. Adverbs.

18. Appositives.

19. The nominative.

20. The genitive.

21. The dative.

22. Dative of agent so called.

23. Two datives.

24. The dative after verbs of persuading.

25. The accusative.

26. The accusative of extent of space and duration of time.

27. The accusative of limit of motion.

28. The ablative.

29. The ablative absolute.

30. The ablative of place.

31. Prepositions.

ab.

32. { de.

ex.

33. { ad. in.

34. The objective genitive.

35. The locative case.

36. The comparative degree.

37. Comparatives and superlatives.

38. Noun formation.

39. Irregular nouns.

40. Collective nouns.

41. Abstract nouns.

42. Compounds.

43. Derivatives.

44. Numerals.

45. Negatives.

46. Classification of verbs.

47. Conjugation

48. Irregular verbs.

49. The infinitive.

50. The supine.

51. The participle.

52. Gerund and gerundive.

53. The subjunctive mood.

54. Subjunctive of result.

55. Subjunctive of purpose.

56. Conditional sentences.

57. Commands and desires.

58. Mixed purpose or result.

59. The imperfect tense.

60. The perfect tense.

61. The present tense.

62. The sequence of tenses.

63. The active voice.

64. The passive voice.

65. Deponent verbs.

66. Impersonal verbs.

67. The periphrastic conjugation.

68. Methods of expressing futurity.

69. Methods of expressing necessity

70. Methods of expressing cause.

71. Methods of expressing concession.

72. Indirect question.

73. Indirect discourse.

74. Construction after verbs of commanding.

75. Construction after verbs of fearing.

76. Verbs of remembering, etc.

77. Relative clauses.

78. Relative adverbs.

79. Conditional relative sentences.

80. Expressions of time.

81. Methods of denoting possession.

82. The Belgæ.

83. The Boii.

- 84. Gaul.
- 85. The Helvetii.
- 86. Ariovistus.
- 87. Dumnorix.
- 88. The Allobroges.
- 89. Britain.
- 90. Helvetia.
- 91. Correlatives.

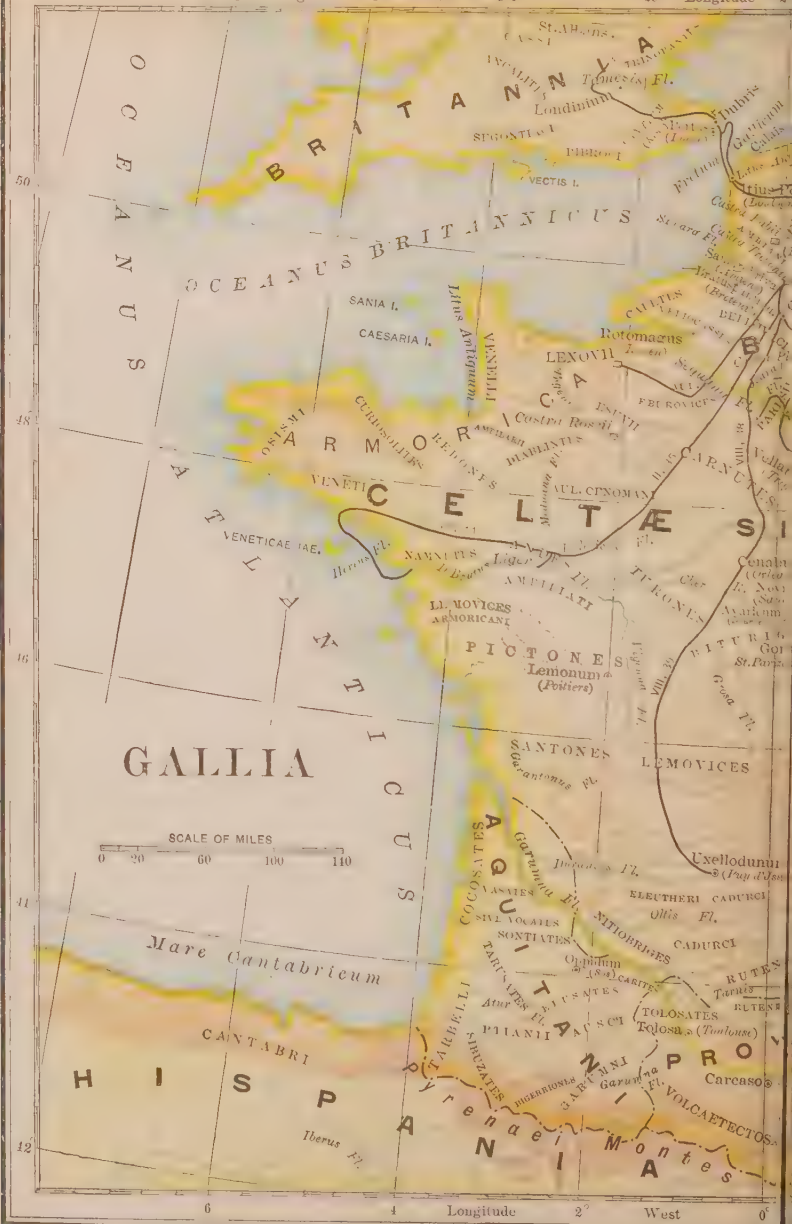
- 92. Classification of clauses.
- 93. The Roman Calendar.
- 94. The predicate.
- 95. The style of Caesar.
- 96. Figures of speech.
- 97. Asyndeton.
- 98. Ellipsis.
- 99. Periphrasis.

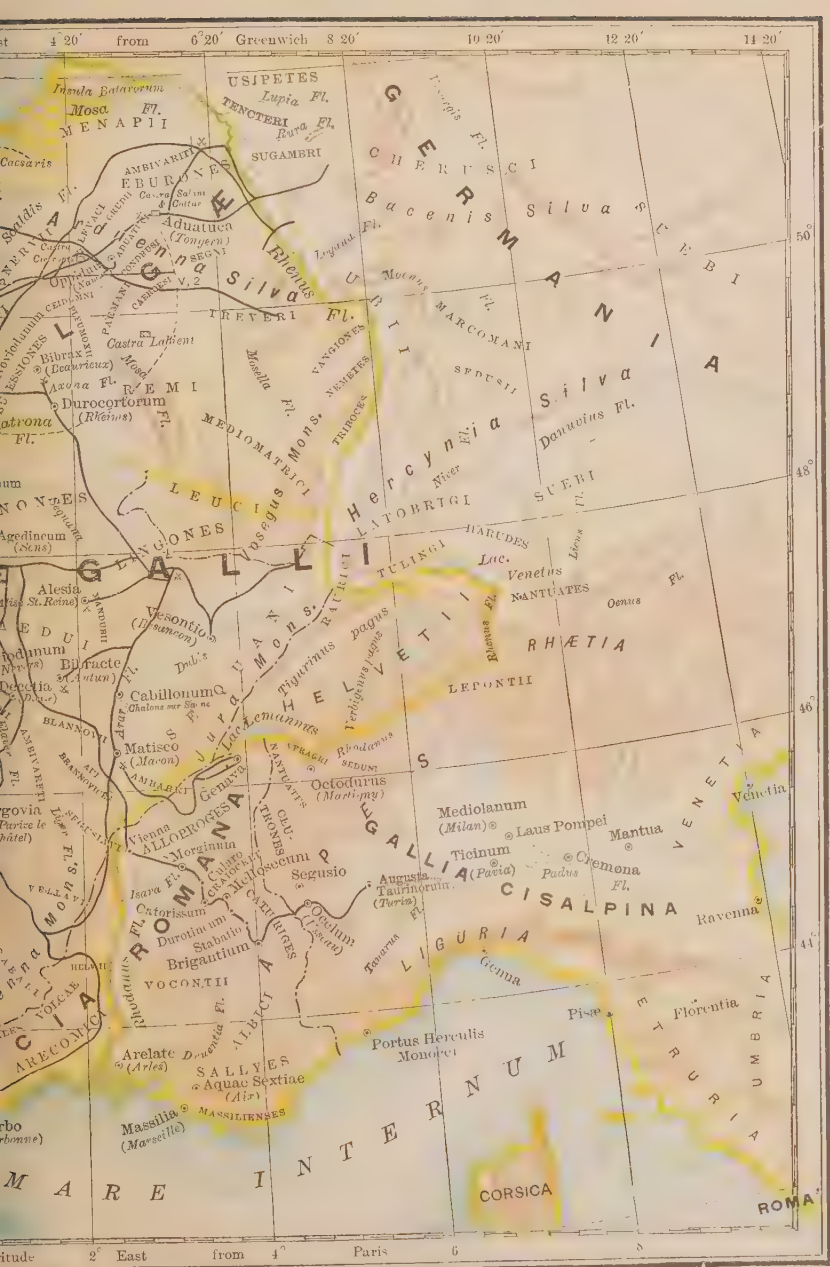
7 40'

5 40' Longitude 3 40' West

1 40'

20' Longitude 2'





C. IULII CAESARIS

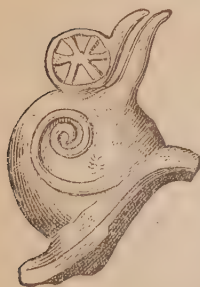
DE BELLO GALlico

COMMENTARIUS PRIMUS.

In the References to Latin Grammars, those to Harkness' Complete Grammar (1898) are given first, followed in parentheses by those to Harkness' Standard Grammar, M. = Mooney, A. = Allen and Greenough, G. = Gildersleeve, B. = Bennett, L. & M. = Lane and Morgan.

1. A word which the student meets for the first time is printed in the full-faced type. (The first occurrence of different stems is also treated in the same way, e. g. *est* and *fuit*.) After its first occurrence every word is put into ordinary type. The student can therefore, by a glance at a page, realize what words he has met already in his reading.

1. DESCRIPTION OF GAUL.



1. ¹Gallia est omnis ²divisa in partēs trēs, ³quārum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitāni, tertiam, quī ipsōrum ⁴linguā ⁵Celtae, nostrā Galli appellantur. hi omnēs ⁶linguā, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt. ⁷Gallōs ab Aquitānis Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Mātrona et Sēquana ⁸dividit. hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitātē provinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs ⁹

mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae ad ¹⁰effeminandōs animōs pertinent important, proximique sunt ¹¹Germānis, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt.

Chap. 1. 1 Intr. 72, and Vocab. — 2 640, 3 (550, N. 2); A. 291, b; G. 438; L. & M. 1012. — 3 441 (397); M. 225, 4; A. 216; G. 367; B. 201, 1; L. & M. 560, 563. — 4 476 (418); M. 247, 1; A. 248, c; G. 401; B. 218; L. & M. 645. — 5 Intr. 48. — 6 480 (424); M. 238, 1; A. 253; G. 397; B. 226; L. & M. 650; Intr. 73. — 7 392, 4 (463, II, 3); M. 175, 2; A. 205, b; G. 211, R. 1; L. & M. 471. — 8 628 (544); A. 300; G. 427; L. & M. 995. — 9 434, 2 (391, 1); M. 214; A. 234, a; G. 359; B. 192; L. & M. 536; Intr. 74, and Vocab.

quā dē causā Helvētīi quoque ¹⁰ reliquōs Gallōs virtūte prae-
cēdunt, quod ferē cotidiānis proeliis cum Germanis conten-
dunt, cum aut ¹¹ suis ¹² finibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsī in
eōrum finibus bellum gerunt. (eōrum ūna pars, quam ¹³ Gallōs
¹⁵ obtinēre ¹⁴ dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; con-
tinētur Garumnā flūmine, Oceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit
etiam ab Sēquanis et Helvētiis flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad
septentrionēs.) Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae finibus oriuntur.
pertinent ad inferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēni; spectant in
¹⁶ septentrionēs et orientem sōlem. Aquitānia ¹⁵ ā Garumnā
¹⁶ flūmine ad Pyrēnaeōs montēs et ad eam partem Ōceanī quae
est ad Hispāniam pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et
septentrionēs.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The geography of Gaul. (2.) The partitive genitive. (3.) The ablative of
specification. (4.) The dative after adjectives. (5.) The preposition regularly used
with the ablative of accompaniment. (6.) The reflexive pronoun. (7.) The idiom
reliquos Gallos. (8.) The impersonal construction. (9.) The different uses of the
preposition *ad* in the chapter.

2-29. THE HELVETIAN WAR.

The ambitious designs of the Helvetii under Orgetorix.

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus et ditissimus fuit
¹⁵ Orgetorix. is M. Messālā et M. Pisōne ¹ cōsulibus ² rēgni
cupiditatē inductus coniūratiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit et ³ civi-
tāti persuāsit ⁴ ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōptis ⁵ exi-

Chap 1. 10 497, 4 (440, 2, n. 1, 2); A. 193; G. 291, r. 2; B. 241; L. & M. 565. — 11 503 (449, 1); M. 434; A. 196; G. 309, 1; B. 244, 1; L. & M. 1042. — 12 464, 1 (414); M. 236, 2; A. 243; G. 390; B. 214, 2; L. & M. 600; 601. — 13 642 (523, 1; 535); M. 268; A. 272; G. 528; B. 331, 1; L. & M. 961. — 14 615 (538); M. 267; A. 270; G. 535; B. 330; L. & M. 971. — 15 467 (415); M. 233; 236; A. 244; G. 390; B. 229; L. & M. 600; 601. — 16 393 (363); M. 179; A. 184; G. 321; B. 169; L. & M. 463.

Chap. 2. 1 489 (431, 4); M. 255; A. 255, a; G. 409; B. 227, 1; L. & M. 639. — 2 440, 2 (396, III); M. 226, 1; A. 217; G. 363, 2; B. 204, 1; L. & M. 571. — 3 426, 1 (385, II); M. 205; A. 227; G. 346, 2; B. 187, II; L. & M. 530. — 4 564, 1 (498); M. 328; A. 331; G. 546; B. 282; L. & M. 893; 894. — 5 545, II; 389, 1 (493, 1; 461); M. 315; A. 286; 205, c, 1; G. 510; B. 267, 1; L. & M. 798; 472.

rent: perfacile ⁶esse, cum virtute ⁷omnibus ⁸praestarent, tōtius Galliae ⁹imperio potiri. id hōc facilius eis persuāsit, quod undique loci nātūrā Helvētiū continentur: unā ex parte flumine Rhēnō, lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānis dividit; alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā lacū Lemannō et flumine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiis dividit. hīs rēbus ¹⁰fiēbat ut et minus lātē ¹¹vagarentur, et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs ¹²bellandī cupidī māgnō dolōre adficiēbantur. prō multitūdine ¹³autem hominum et prō gloriā bellī atque fortitudinis angustēs ¹⁴sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitudinem ¹⁵milia passuum CCXL, in lātitudinem CLXXX patēbant.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The superlative degree. (2.) The ablative absolute. (3.) The objective genitive. (4.) The construction after *persuasit*. (5.) The omission of the verb which governs the indirect discourse. (6.) The dative after compounds. (7.) The case employed after *potior*. (8.) The accusative of extent of space.

The Helvetii make preparations. Orgetorix is chosen to carry out their plans.

3. His rēbus adducti et auctoritāte Orgetorigis permōti cōstituērunt ea quae ad proficiscendum ¹pertinērent com-15 parāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum ²quam māximum numerum coēmere, sēmentēs quam māximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia

Chap. 2. 6 642 (523); M. 392; A. 336; 330, e; G. 650; B. 313; L. & M. 961. — 7 429 (386); M. 202; A. 228; G. 347; B. 187, III; L. & M. 532. — 8 598 (517); M. 355; A. 326; G. 586; B. 286, 2; L. & M. 863. — 9 477 (421); M. 253; A. 249; G. 407; B. 218, 1; L. & M. 646. — 10 534, 1 (468); M. 306, 1; A. 277; G. 231; B. 260; L. & M. 735. — 11 571, 1 (501, I); M. 341, 2; A. 332, a; G. 553, 3; B. 284; L. & M. 891; 892. — 12 450; 626 (399, I; 542, I); M. 226; 289, 2; A. 218, a; 298; G. 428; B. 338, b; L. & M. 998. — 13 503 (449); M. 434; A. 196; G. 309; B. 344, 1; L. & M. 1042. — 14 168, 1; 417 (178; 379); M. 74, 2; 196; A. 94, e; 257; G. 95, r. 3; 335; L. & M. 267; 513. — 15 442 (396, IV); M. 225, 4; A. 216; G. 367; B. 201; L. & M. 559; 560.

Chap. 3. 1 643 (524); M. 405; A. 340; G. 628; B. 324; L. & M. 788; 793. — 2 159, 2 (170, 2); A. 93, b; G. 303, r. 1; B. 240, 3; L. & M. 679.

frūmenti ²suppeteret, cum proximis civitatibus pācem et amicitiam cōfirmāre. ad eas res ⁴cōficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt: in tertium annum profectiōnem ⁵lēge cōfirmant. ad eas res cōficiendās Orgetorix dēligitur. is ⁶sibi lēgatiōnem ad civitatēs suscepit. in eō itinere persuādet ⁶Casticō, Catamantaloedis filiō, Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnum in Sēquanis multos ⁷annos obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmāni amicus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in civitate suā ⁸occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorigi Haeduō. ¹⁰frātrī Diviciaci, quī eō ⁹tempore principātum in civitate ¹⁰obtinēbat ac māximē plēbi acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur, persuādet eīque filiam suam in mātirimōnium dat. perfacile ¹¹factū ¹²esse illis probat cōnāta perficere, proptereā quod ipse suae civitatis imperium ¹³obtentūrus esset: nōn esse dubium ¹⁵quīn tōtius ¹⁴Galliae plūrimum Helvētū ¹⁵possent; sē suis cōpiis suoque exercitū illis rēgna conciliātūrum cōfirmat. hāc orātiōne adducti inter sē fidem et iūsiurandū dant et ¹⁶rēgnō occupātō per trēs potentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs tōtius ¹⁷Galliae sēsē potiri posse spērant.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The superlative with *quam*. (2.) The subjunctive of purpose. (3.) The gerundive construction. (4.) The accusative of duration of time. (5.) The historical present. (6.) The ablative of time. (7.) The datives in this chapter. (8.) The formation *factu*. (9.) The genitive after *potior*.

Chap. 3. 3 568 (497, II); M. 328; A. 317; G. 545, 1; B. 282; L. & M. 891; 892. — 4 628 (544); M. 291; A. 300; G. 427; B. 338, 3; L. & M. 995. — 5 476 (418); M. 247; A. 248, c; G. 401; B. 218; L. & M. 645. — 6 426, 2 (385, II). M. 205; A. 227; G. 346, 2; B. 187, II; L. & M. 530; 531. — 7 417 (379). M. 197; A. 256; G. 336; B. 181; L. & M. 513. — 8 565 (499, 3); M. 333; A. 331; G. 546; B. 282; L. & M. 893; 894. — 9 486 (429); M. 243; A. 256; G. 393; B. 231; L. & M. 630. — 10 534, 1 (468); M. 306; A. 277; G. 231; B. 260; L. & M. 735. — 11 635, 1 (547); M. 302; A. 303; G. 436; B. 340, 2; L. & M. 1007. — 12 613 (535); M. 392; A. 336, 1, 2; G. 650; B. 314; L. & M. 1023; 1026. — 13 236; 643 (233; 524); M. 98, 1 n.; A. 113, b, 1; G. 515; B. 337, 4; L. & M. 355. — 14 443 (397); M. 225; A. 216; G. 367; B. 201; L. & M. 559. — 15 595, 1 (501, II, 2); M. 337; 341, 3; A. 319, d; G. 555, 2; B. 284, 3; L. & M. 910; 913. — 16 489 (431, 2); M. 255; A. 255; G. 409; B. 227; L. & M. 638; 639. — 17 458, 3 (410, V, 3); M. 253; 231; A. 249, a; G. 407, n. 2, d; B. 218, 1. a; L. & M. 646; 593.

The scheme is discovered. Orgetorix is tried, and is rescued by his vassals. His death.

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. ¹mōribus suis Orgetorīgem ex vīculis causam dīcere coēgērunt; ²dam-nātum poenam sequī oportēbat, ut ignī ³cremārētur. ⁴diē ⁵cōstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum milia decem, undique coēgit et omnēs 5 clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum māgnū numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit: ⁶per eōs, nē causam dīceret, sē ēripuit. cum cīvītās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī ⁷cōnārētur multitudinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut Helvētīi arbi-10 trantur, quā ipse sibi mortem ⁸cōnscīverit.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *ex vīculis causam dīcere*. (2.) The participle. (3.) The substantive clause of result. (4.) The distinction between *per* with the accusative and *ab* with the ablative. (5.) The conjunction *cum* in temporal sense. (6.) The preposition *ad* with numerals. (7.) The subjunctive with *quā* after negative clauses. (8.) The intensive pronoun.

The Helvetii nevertheless complete their preparations.

5. (Post eius mortem ¹nihilō minus Helvētīi id quod cōstituerant facere cōnantur, ²ut ē fīnibus suis exeant.) (ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua

Chap. 4. 1 475 (416); M. 254; A. 245; G. 408; B. 219; L. & M. 612. — 2 638, 2 (519, 2); M. 282, Ex. 6; A. 292, Ex. 5; G. 667; B. 337, 2, *b*; L. & M. 1017, *e*. — 3 571, 4 (501, III); M. 337; A. 332; G. 557; B. 284; L. & M. 892; 902. — 4 486 (429); M. 243; A. 256, 1; G. 393; B. 231; L. & M. 631. — 5 135 (123); M. 55, 1; A. 73; G. 64; B. 53; L. & M. 231. — 6 468, 3 (415, I, 1, n. 1); M. 247, 3; A. 246, *b*; G. 416, No. 18. — 7 600, II (521, II, 2); M. 347; A. 325; G. 585; B. 288, *B*; L. & M. 858. — 8 595, 1 (504); M. 341, 3; A. 319, *d*; G. 555; B. 284, 3; L. & M. 910; 913.

Chap. 5. 1 479 (423); M. 248; A. 250; G. 403; B. 223; L. & M. 655 — 2 571, 4 (501, III); M. 341; A. 332; G. 546; B. 284; L. & M. 902.

omnia, ³ numerō ad duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua privāta aedificia incendunt, frūmentum omne, praeterquam quod sēcum portatūrī erant,) combūrunt, ut domum reditiōnis spē sublātā paratiōrēs ad omnia pericula subeunda ⁴ essent, trium ⁵ mēnsū molita cibāria sibi quemque ⁵ domō efferre iubent. (persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrigīs finitimīs uti eōdem ⁶ ūsī cōsiliō oppidis suis vicisque exūstis ūnā cum iīs proficiscantur, Boiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppugnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi asciscunt.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The ablative of degree of difference. (2.) Substantive clauses of purpose. (3.) The accusative of limit of motion. (4.) Verbal nouns. (5.) The ablative absolute. (6.) The gerundive. (7.) The construction after *utor*. (8.) Other verb which the student has met in the text that has the same construction after it.

The two routes offering an egress from the country.

6. Erant omninō itinera duo, quibus ¹ itineribus domō exīre ² possent: ³ ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī ⁴ dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile per- ⁵ paucī prohibēre possent: ⁵ alterum per prōvinciam nostram, ⁶ multō facilius atque expeditius, proptereā quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fuit isque nōnnūllis ⁷ locīs vadō trānsitur. extrēmum oppi-

Chap. 5. 3 480 (424); M. 238; A. 253; G. 397; B. 226; L. & M. 650. — 4 568; 546 (497, 11; 495, 11); M. 328; 316, 1; A. 317; 287, c; G. 545, 1; 511, n. 1; B. 282; 268, 3; L. & M. 893; 804 — 5 462, 4 (412, 11, 1); M. 233, 2; A. 258, a; G. 391; B. 229, b; L. & M. 605; 608. — 6 477 (421, 1); M. 253; A. 249; G. 407; B. 218, 1; L. & M. 646.

Chap. 6. 1 399 (453, 2); M. 450; A. 200; G. 615; B. 251, 3; L. & M. 822. — 2 591, 1 (503, 1); M. 383; A. 320; G. 631, 1; B. 283; L. & M. 836. — 3 393, 4 (364); M. 181, n. 1; A. 184; G. 323; B. 169; L. & M. 463. — 4 591, 1 (503, 1); M. 383; A. 320; G. 631, 1; B. 283; L. & M. 836. — 5 393, 4 (364); M. 181, n. 1; A. 184; G. 323; B. 169; L. & M. 463. — 6 479 (423); M. 248; A. 250; G. 403; B. 223; L. & M. 695. — 7 485, 2 (425, 11, 2); M. 241, 3; A. 258, f; G. 385; B. 228, b; L. & M. 625; 626.

dum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvëtiôrum finibus **Genava**. ex eô oppidô **pōns** ad Helvetios pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē **vel** persuāsūrōs, quod **nōndum** ⁸**bonō** animō in populum Rōmānum ⁹**vidērentur**, existimābant, vel **vī** coāctūrōs ut per suōs finēs eōs **ire** paterentur. omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem ⁵ comparātis diem dīcunt, ¹⁰quā diē ad **rīpam** Rhodanī omnēs ¹¹**convenient**. is diēs erat a. d. V. ¹²**Kal. Apr. L. Pisōne, A. Gabiniō** cōsulibus.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The relative pronoun. (2.) Partitive apposition. (3.) The ablative of quality. (4.) Sequence of tenses. (5.) The Roman reckoning of time.

Caesar attempts to check the march of the Helvetii. They send ambassadors to him.

7. ¹**Caesarī** cum id ²**nūntiātum** esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere ³**cōnārī**, **mātūrat** ab urbe proficīscī et quam ¹⁰**māximīs** potest itineribus in Galliam **ulteriōrem** contendit et ad Genavam **pervēnit**. ⁵prōvinciae tōtī quam māximum potest **mīlitum** numerum **imperat** (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre ⁶**legiō** ūna), pontem, quī erat ad Genavam, iubet **rescindī**. ubi dē **ēius** adventū Helvëtiū **certiōrēs** factī sunt, **lēgātōs** ad eum **mit-** ¹⁵**tunt** nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cūius lēgātiōnis **Nammēius** et **Verucloetius** **prīncipem** locum obtinēbant, quī ⁷dicerent ⁸sibi esse in animō sine **ūllō** **maleficiō** iter per prōvinciam facere, propterea

Chap. 6. **8** 473, 2 (419, II); M. 246; A. 251; G. 400; B. 224; L. & M. 643. — **9** 643, 545, II; (524; 493, I); M. 315; 398; A. 286; 336, B; G. 518; 650; B. 267, 2, 318; L. & M. 803; 804. — **10** 399 (453, 2); M. 450; A. 200; G. 615; B. 251, 3; L. & M. 822. — **11** 590 (497, I); M. 328; A. 317; G. 630; B. 282, 2; L. & M. 893; 835. — **12** 754, 3; 755, n. 2 (642, III, 3; 644, II); M. 501, 4; 498; A. 259, e; 876; G. Appendix; B. 371, d; L. & M. 1169; 1171.

Chap. 7. **1** 424 (384, 1); M. 201; A. 225, e; G. 345; B. 187, I; L. & M. 533. — **2** 600, II (521, II, 2); M. 347; A. 325, Ex. 2; G. 585; B. 288, B; L. & M. 858. — **3** 616, 2 (539, II); M. 266; A. 329, 1; G. 535; B. 329; L. & M. 971. — **4** 158, 2 (170, 2); A. 93, b; G. 303, r. 1; B. 240, 3; L. & M. 679. — **5** 426 (385, 1); M. 205; A. 227; G. 346; B. 187, II; L. & M. 533. — **6** Intr. 98. — **7** 590 (497, I); M. 382, 3; A. 317; G. 630; B. 282, 2; L. & M. 893; 835. — **8** 430 (387); M. 212; A. 231; G. 349; B. 190; L. & M. 542.

quod aliud iter habērent nūllum: rogāre ut eius voluntāte id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod ⁹memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōsulem ¹⁰occisum exercitumque eius ab Helvētiis pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs ⁵inimicō animō datā facultāte per prōvinciam ¹¹itineris faciundī temperātūrōs ab iniuriā et maleficiō exīstimābat. tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum milites quōs imperāverat ¹²convenirent, lēgātis respondit diem sē ad dēlībērandum sūmp-tūrū: sī quid vellent, ad Idūs Apr. ¹³reverterentur.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The dative of indirect object. (2.) The infinitive clause as an appositive. (3.) The relative in purpose clauses. (4.) The dative of possessor. (5.) The idiom *certiores facti*. (6.) The ablatives in this chapter. (7.) The gerundive. (8.) The imperative after a verb of saying. (9.) The Roman legion.

Caesar erects fortifications. The Helvetii attempt to cross the Rhone against his will, but are compelled to desist.

¹⁰ **8.** Intereā eā ¹legiōne quam sēcum habēbat militibusque quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum **influit**, ad montem Iūram, quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiis dīvidit, milia passuum decem **novem mūrū** in **altitū-dinem** ²pedum sēdecim fossamque **perducit**. cō opere per-
¹⁵fectō **praesidia dispōnit**, **castella commūnit**, ³quō facilius, sī ⁴sē **invitō** trānsire ⁵cōnārentur, prohibēre possit. ubi ea diēs quam cōstituerat cum lēgātis **vēnit**, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, **negat** sē ⁶mōre et **exemplō** populī Rōmānī posse iter ulli per

Chap. 7. **9** 476 (420); M. 247; A. 248, c; G. 401; B. 218; L. & M. 645 — **10** 613 (535, 1); M. 268; A. 272; G. 527; B. 331, 1; L. & M. 961. — **11** 626 (544); M. 296; A. 296; G. 427; 130, 8; B. 339; L. & M. 988; 999. — **12** 603, II, 2 (519, II, 2); M. 354; A. 328; G. 572; B. 293, III, 2; L. & M. 921. — **13** 642, 4 (523, III); M. 393; A. 339; G. 652; B. 316; L. & M. 1023.

Chap. 8. **1** 476 (420); M. 247; A. 248, c; G. 401; B. 218; L. & M. 645. — **2** 410, 3 (396, V); M. 223; A. 215, b; G. 365; B. 203, 2; L. & M. 558. — **3** 568, 7 (497, II); M. 328; 331; A. 317, b; G. 545, 2; B. 282, a; L. & M. 908. — **4** 489 (431, 4); M. 255; A. 255, a; G. 409; B. 227, 1; L. & M. 638. — **5** 652 (529, 2); M. 405; A. 342; G. 629; B. 324; L. & M. 793. — **6** 475 (416); M. 254; A. 245; G. 408; B. 219; L. & M. 612.

prōvinciam dare et, si vim facere cōnentur, prohibētūrum ostendit. Helvētiū eā ⁸spē dēiecti nāvibus iūctis ratibusque complūribus factis, alii vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitudō flūminis erat, nōnumquam interdiū, saepius noctū, si perrumpere ⁹possent cōnātī, operis mūnitiōne et militum concursū et tēlis repulsi hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative of instrument. (2.) The genitive of quality. (3.) The regular conjunction in final clauses containing a comparative. (4.) The subjunctive by attraction. (5.) The indirect question. (6.) The different parts of speech for forming the ablative absolute that the student has met with.

Dumnorix prevails upon the Sequani to allow the Helvetii to march through their territory.

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā ¹Sēquanīs invitīs propter angustias ire nōn poterant. hīs cum suā sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Haeduum mittunt, ut ²cō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs ³impetrārent. Dumnorix 10 grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plurimum poterat et Helvētiis erat amīcus, quod ex eā civitāte Orgetorīgis filiam in mātrimonium dūxerat, et cupiditate rēgnī adductus ⁴novīs rēbus studēbat et quam plurimās civitatēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per 15 finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant, Helvētiū, ut sine maleficiō et iniuriā ⁵trāseant.

Chap. 8. 7 643 (524); M. 392; A. 336; G. 650; B. 313; L. & M. 1026. — 8 464 (414); M. 236, 2; A. 243; G. 396; B. 214, 2; L. & M. 600; 601. — 9 649, II, 3 (529, 1); M. 394; A. 334; G. 460, b; B. 300; L. & M. 810.

Chap. 9. 1 489 (431); M. 255; A. 255; G. 409; B. 227; L. & M. 638. — 2 489 (431, 4); M. 255; A. 255, a; G. 409; B. 227, 1; L. & M. 638. — 3 546 (495, II); M. 316, 1; A. 287, c; G. 509, a; B. 268, 3; L. & M. 804. — 4 426 (384, 1, 6); M. 205; A. 227; G. 346; B. 187, II; L. & M. 530; 531. — 5 568 (497, II); M. 328; A. 317; G. 545; B. 282; L. & M. 891; 892.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The mood used with the conjunction *cum* in causal sense. (2.) The historical present. (3.) The construction after *studeo*. (4.) The idiom *plurimum posse*. (5.) The expression for "to marry" used of the man. (6.) The negatives used in purpose clauses. (7.) The anticipation of the part the verb "to have" was to hold in verbal conjugation.

Caesar prepares to defeat this plan.

10. Caesarī renūtiātur Helvētiis esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in **Santonum** finēs facere, quī nōn longē ā **Tolōsātium** finibus absunt, quae cīvītās est in prōvinciā. id sī ¹ fieret, **intellegēbat** magnō cum periculō prōvinciae futūrum ut hominēs **bellicōsōs**, populi Rōmānī inimicōs, locīs patentibus māximēque **frūmentāriis** finitimōs ² habēret. ob eas causās ei ³ mūnitiōnī quam fēcerat **T. Labiēnum** ⁴ lēgātum prae-fēcit, ipse in **Italiam** magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōscribit et trēs, quae **circum Aquilēiam** hiemābant, 10 ex **hibernis** ēdūcit et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per **Alpēs** erat, cum hīs quinque legiōnibus ire contendit. ibi **Centrōnēs** et **Grāioceli** et **Caturigēs** ⁵ locīs **superiōribus** occupātis ⁶ itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. complūribus hīs proeliis pulsīs ab **Ōcelō**, quod est **citeriōris** prōvinciae extrēmum, in finēs 15 **Vocontiōrum** ulteriōris prōvinciae diē **septimō** pervēnit; inde in **Allobrogum** finēs, ab **Allobrogibus** in **Segūsiāvōs** exercitum dūcit. hī sunt **extrā** prōvinciam trāns **Rhodanum** **primi**.

Topics for Study.

(1.) Subordinate clauses in indirect discourse. (2.) The dative after compounds. (3.) The ablative absolute. (4.) Substantive clauses of result. (5.) The ablative of separation. (6.) The comparison of adjectives in *us* preceded by a vowel. (7.) The functions of the *legatus*.

Chap. 10. 1 643; 646 (524); M. 392; 403; A. 336; 337; G. 650; 656; B. 313; 319; L. & M. 1020; 1034. — 2 571, 4 (501, 1), M. 333; A. 329; G. 506; B. 294; L. & M. 804. — 3 429 (386); M. 202; A. 228; G. 347; B. 187, III; L. & M. 531. — 4 Intr. 110, b. — 5 489 (431); M. 255; A. 255; G. 409; B. 227, L. & M. 638. — 6 464 (414); M. 236, 2; A. 243; G. 390; B. 214, 2; L. & M. 600; 601

The Haedui and other tribes complain to Caesar of the devastation of their fields.

11. Helvētīi iam per angustias et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant et in Haeduōrum finēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. ¶ Haeduī, cum sē ¹suaque ab iis dēfendere nōn ²possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt ³rogātum auxilium ¶ ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō ⁴meritōs esse, ut paene 5 in cōnspectū exercitūs nostrī agrī ⁵vāstārī, ¶ libērī eōrum in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expūgnārī nōn ⁶dēbuerint. ¶ eōdem tempore Haeduī, Ambarri, necessārii et cōnsanguineī Haeduōrum, Caesarem certiorē faciunt sēsē ⁷dēpopulātis agrīs nōn facile ab oppidis vim hostiū prohibēre. ¶ item Allobrogēs, quī trāns 10 Rhodanum vicōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, ⁸fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse ⁹reliqū. ¶ ¹⁰quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn ¹¹exspectandum ¹²sibi statuit, dum omnibus fortūnis sociōrum cōsūmp-tis in Santonōs Helvētīi ¹³pervenirent. ¶

15

Topics for Study.

(1.) Causal clauses with *cum*. (2.) The use of the present infinitive after *debeo*. (3.) The time denoted by the infinitive. (4.) The supine. (5.) The passive notion in deponent verbs. (6.) The impersonal construction. (7.) The ablative of means. (8.) The partitive genitive. (9.) The dative of agent. (10.) Temporal clauses with *dum*. (11.) The omission of the verb which governs the indirect discourse.

Chap. 11. 1 494; 503 (441, 1; 449); M. 412; A. 188; 197, *d*, Ex. 2; G. 204, n. 2; B. 236; L. & M. 489. — 2 598 (517); M. 355; A. 326; G. 586; B. 286, 2; L. & M. 863. — 3 633 (546); M. 301; A. 302; G. 435; B. 340, *a*; L. & M. 1005; 1006. — 4 641-643 (522-525); M. 392; A. 330, *c*; 335; 336; G. 648-650; B. 314, 2; L. & M. 961; 1023. — 5 618, 2 (537, 1); M. 260, 1, n.; A. 288, *a*; G. 423, n. 2; B. 270, 2; L. & M. 978; 980. — 6 546 (495, VI); M. 316, 2; A. 287, *c*; G. 513; B. 268, 7, *a*; L. & M. 806. — 7 518, 3 (231, 2); M. 281, 6; A. 135, *b*; G. 220, n. 1; B. 112, *b*; L. & M. 689; 353. — 8 476 (420); M. 245; A. 248, G. 399; B. 220; L. & M. 635. — 9 440, 5, n. (397); M. 225, 2; A. 216; G. 369; B. 201; L. & M. 559; 564. — 10 510 (453); M. 455; A. 180, *f*; G. 610, r. 1; B. 251, 6; L. & M. 843. — 11 237 (234); M. 266; A. 330, *c*; G. 427; B. 337, 7; L. & M. 961; 992. — 12 431 (388); M. 207; A. 232; G. 355; B. 189, 1; L. & M. 991. — 13 603, II, 2 (519, I, 2); M. 354; A. 328; G. 572; B. 293, III, 2; L. & M. 921

The destruction of the Tigurini.

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum influit **incrēdibilī** ¹lēnitātē, ita ut oculis in utram partem ²fluat iūdicārī nōn ³possit. id Helvētiū rati-
bus ac lintribus iūctis trānsibant. ubi per **explōrātōrēs** Caesar
5 certior factus est trēs iam cōpiarum partēs Helvētiōs id ⁴flūmen
trādūxisse, **quārtam** ferē partem **citrā** flūmen Ararim reliquam
esse, dē tertiā **vigiliā** cum legiōnibus tribus ē castris profectus
ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. eos
impeditōs et **inopināntēs** aggressus māgnam eōrum partem **con-**
10 **cidit**: reliquī fugae sēsē ⁵**mandārunt** atque in proximās **silvās**
abidērunt. is **pāgus** appellābātur **Tigurinus**; **nam** omnis cīvitas
Helvētia in **quattuor** pāgōs dīvisa est. hīc pāgus ūnus, cum
domō exisset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōnsulem
interfēcerat et eius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. ita **sive** cāsū
15 **sive** cōsiliō **deōrum immortalium**, quae ⁶pars cīvitatīs Helvētiae
insignem calamitātē populō Rōmānō **intulerat**, ea ⁷**princeps**
poenās persolvit. quā in rē Caesar nōn solum **pūblicās**, sed
etiam **privātās iniuriās ultus** est, quod eius **soceri** L. Pisōnis
avum, L. Pisōnem **lēgātum**, Tigurinī eōdem proeliō quō Cas-
20 **sium interfēcerant**.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative of manner. (2.) The accusative after compounds. (3.) Indirect question. (4.) Subjunctive of result. (5.) The attraction of the antecedent. (6.) The contraction of the perfect. (7.) The idiom *princeps poenas persolvit*. (8.) The deponent verb. (9.) Temporal clauses. (10.) The divisions of the Roman day and night. (11.) The three methods (illustrated in this chapter) of supplying the deficiency caused by the absence of a perfect active participle in the Latin language.

Chap. 12. 1 473, 3 (419, III); M. 245; A. 248; G. 399; B. 220; L. & M. 636. — 2 649, II (529, I); M. 394; A. 334; G. 467; B. 300; L. & M. 810. — 3 570 (500, II); M. 337; A. 319; G. 552; B. 284; L. & M. 962. — 4 413 (376); M. 194; A. 239, b; G. 331, 1, r. 1; B. 179; L. & M. 497; 501. — 5 238 (235); M. 100, 1; A. 128, a; G. 131, 1; B. 116, 1; L. & M. 385. — 6 399 (445, 9); M. 453, 1; A. 200, b, n., Ex. 2; G. 620; B. 251, 4. — 7 497, 3 (442); M. 424; A. 191; G. 325, r. 6; B. 239; 241, 2.

The embassy sent from the Helvetii. Divico speaks.

13. Ille proelio facto reliquas copias Helvetiorum ut consequi¹ posset, pontem in Arare² faciendum curat atque ita exercitum traducit. Helvetii repentinò eius adventum commoti cum id, quod ipsi diebus viginti aegerrimè confecerant, ut flumen transirent, unò illum diè fecisse³ intellegerent, legatos ad eum⁵ mittant; cuius legationis Divico princeps fuit, qui bello Cassianò dux Helvetiorum fuerat. is ita cum Caesare egit: si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis⁴ faceret, in eam partem⁵ ituros atque ibi futuros Helvetios ubi eos Caesar constituisset atque esse voluisset; sin bellò persequi perseveraret,⁶ remissioneretur et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. quod improvisò unum pagum adortus esset, cum ii qui flumen transissent⁷ suis auxilium ferre non possent, ne ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtuti tribueret aut ipsos despiceret. se ita a patribus maioribusque suis¹⁵ dixisse, ut magis virtute quam dolore⁸ contenderent aut insidiis niterentur. quare ne committeret ut is locus ubi constitissent ex calamitate populi Romani et internecione exercitus nomen caperet aut memoriam proderet.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The subjunctive of purpose. (2.) Temporal clauses with *cum*. (3.) The gerundive construction. (4.) The ablative of time. (5.) Subordinate clauses in indirect discourse. (6.) The prepositions in this chapter. (7.) The mood in indirect discourse representing the indicative future (perfect) of the direct. (8.) The sequence of tenses.

Chap. 13. 1 568 (497, II); M. 328; A. 317; G. 545, 1; B. 282; L. & M. 891; 892. — 2 628 (544); M. 295, 2; A. 294, d; G. 430; B. 337, 7, 2; L. & M. 994. — 3 600, II (521, II, 2); M. 347; A. 325; G. 585; B. 288; L. & M. 858. — 4 643; 646 (524); M. 392; 402; A. 336; 337; G. 650; 656; B. 313; L. & M. 1020; 1035. — 5 642 (523, 1); M. 392; A. 336; G. 527; B. 331, 1; L. & M. 961. — 6 462, 4 (523, III); M. 393; A. 339; G. 652; B. 316; L. & M. 1023. — 7 494 (441, 1); M. 78; 412; A. 190, a; G. 204, n. 1, b; B. 86; 236; L. & M. 271; 488. — 8 570 (500, II); M. 337; A. 319; G. 552; B. 284; L. & M. 902.

Caesar's reply.

14. His Caesar ita respondit: ¹eō sibi minus ²dubitātiōnis dari, quod eās rēs quās lēgātī Helvētiū commemorāssent ³memoriā tenēret, atque ⁴eō gravius ferre, quō minus meritō populi Rōmānī accidissent: quī sī alicūius ⁵iniūriae sibi cōn-
 5 sciuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellexeret quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret. ⁶quod sī veteris ⁷contumēliae obli-
 vīscī vellet, ⁸num etiam recentium iniūriarū, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Haeduōs, quod
 10 Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogās ⁹vexāssent, memoriā dēpōnere posse? quod suā victōriā tam insolenter glōriārentur quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās tulisse admirārentur, eōdem pertinēre. cōnsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī
 15 velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. cum ea ita ¹⁰sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ab iīs sibi dentur, utī ea quae polliceantur factūrōs intellegat, et sī Haeduīs dē iniūriīs quās ipsis sociisque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum iīs pācem esse factūrum.
 20 Divicō respondit: ita Helvētiōs ā maiōribus suis institūtōs esse, utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint: eius rei populum Rōmānum esse testem. hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative of cause. (2.) The partitive genitive. (3.) The correlative *quo* — *eo*. (4.) The ablative of difference. (5.) The ablative of means. (6.) The genitive after adjectives. (7.) The genitive after verbs. (8.) Concessive clauses with *cum*. (9.) Interrogative words used in text thus far.

Chap. 14. 1 475 (416); M. 254; A. 245; G. 408; B. 219; L. & M. 612. — 2 442, 5 (397); M. 225, 4; A. 216; G. 372; B. 201, 1; L. & M. 560; 564. — 3 476 (420); M. 247; A. 248; G. 401; B. 218; L. & M. 645. — 4 479 (423); M. 248; A. 106, c; G. 403; B. 223; L. & M. 655; 842. — 5 451, 1 (399, 2); M. 226, 1; A. 218, a; G. 374; B. 204, 1; L. & M. 573. — 6 510, 9 (453, 6); M. 465, 5; A. 240, b, last ex.; B. 185, 2; L. & M. 847. — 7 454 (406, II); M. 227, 1; A. 219; G. 376; B. 206, b; L. & M. 588. — 8 378 (351, 1, n. 3); M. 385, 4; A. 210, c; G. 456; B. 162, 2, b; L. & M. 698; 701. — 9 588, II (516); M. 359, 1; A. 333; G. 525; B. 299, 1; L. & M. 848. — 10 598 (515, III); M. 355; A. 326; G. 587; B. 286, 2; L. & M. 863.

The cavalry of Caesar defeated by the Helvetii. The march of both armies.

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō **movent**. idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat, praemittit, quī ¹videant quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. quī ²cupidiū novissimum āgmen **insecūti aliēnō** locō cum equitātū 5 Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī ³dē nostrīs **cadunt**. quō proeliō sublātī Helvētīi, quod quingentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum **prōpulerant**, audācius **subsistere nōn** numquam et novissimō āgmine proeliō nostrōs **laccessere coepērunt**. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat ac satis habēbat in 10 praesentiā hostem rapinīs, pābulātiōnibus populātiōnibusque prohibēre. ita diēs **circiter quīndecim** iter fēcērunt, utī inter novissimum hostium āgmen et nostrum primum nōn **amplius quīnis aut sēnis** milibus passuum interesset.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The relative clause of purpose. (2.) An equivalent for the partitive genitive. (3.) The force of the comparative. (4.) Collective nouns. (5.) The ablative of instrument. (6.) The accusative of duration of time. (7.) Distributive numerals.

The delay of the Haedui in furnishing grain. Caesar calls a council of their chiefs.

16. Interim cotidiē Caesar ¹Haeduōs frūmentum, quod essent 15 pūblicē pollicitū, ²**flāgitāre**. nam propter frīgora, quod Gallia sub septentrionibus, ut ante dictum est, **posita** est, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs **mātūra** nōn erant, sed nē pābuli quidem satis

Chap. 15. 1 590 (497, I); M. 382, 3; A. 317; G. 630; B. 282, 2; L. & M. 893; 835. — 2 498 (444, 1); M. 426; A. 93, a; G. 297; B. 240, 1; L. & M. 678. — 3 444 (397, 3, n. 3); M. 225, 5, n. 2; A. 216, c; G. 372, r. 2; B. 201, 1, a; L. & M. 559; 563.

Chap. 16. 1 411 (374); M. 192, 2; A. 239, c; G. 339; B. 178, 1, a; L. & M. 552. — 2 610 (536, 1); M. 276; A. 275; G. 647; B. 335; L. & M. 708.

māgna cōpia suppetēbat: cō autem ³frūmentō, quod flūmine Arare nāvibus subvexerat, proptereā ūtī minus poterat, quod iter ab Arare Helvētiū āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. diem ex diē dūcere Haeduī: cōnferri, comportārī, adesse dīcere. 5 ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem instāre quō diē frūmentum militibus mētiri oportēret, convocātis eōrum principibus, quōrum māgnam cōpiam in castris habēbat, in hīs Diviciacō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātū praeerat, quem vergobretum appellant Haeduī, quī creātur annuus et vitāe necisque in suos 10 habet potestātem, graviter eōs accūsāt, quod, cum neque emi neque ex agrīs sūmī posset, tam necessariō tempore, tam propinquis hostibus ab iīs nōn ⁴sublevētur; praesertim cum māgnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscepit, multō etiam gravius quod sit dēstitūtus queritur.

Topics for Study.

(1.) Verbs which admit two accusatives. (2.) Frequentatives. (3.) The "historical infinitive." (4.) The construction after *utor*. (5.) Position of the emphatic word with *ne* — *quidem*. (6.) The dative with compounds. (7.) The ablative with comparatives. (8.) Causal clauses introduced by *quod* on authority of another.

Speech of Liscus.

15 17. Tum dēmum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus quod anteā tacuerat prōpōnit: esse nōnmūllōs quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī privātīm plūs possint quam ipsi magistrātūs. hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitudinem dēterrēre nē frūmentum ¹cōnferant, quod praestāre 20 dēbeant: sī iam principātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia praeferre, neque dubitāre [dēbeant], ²quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānū, unā cum

Chap. 16. 3 477 (421, 1); M. 253; A. 249; G. 407; B. 218, 1; L. & M. 646. — 4 588, II (516, II); M. 357; A. 321; G. 541; B. 286, 1; L. & M. 846; 851.

Chap. 17. 1 596, 2 (505, II, 1); M. 335; A. 331, e, 2; G. 548; B. 295, 3; L. & M. 898. — 2 595, 1 (505, 1); M. 341, 3; A. 319, d; G. 555; B. 284, 3; L. & M. 913.

reliquā Galliā ³ Haeduīs libertātem sint ēreptūrī. ab eisdem nostra cōsilia quaeque in castrīs gerantur hostibus ēnūtiārī: hōs ā sē coērcērī nōn posse: quīn etiam, quod necessāriam rem coactus Caesari ēnūtiārit, intellegere sēsē quantō id cum periculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam, quam diū potuerit, tacuisse. 5

Topics for Study.

- (1.) Subjunctive after verbs of *hindering*. (2.) The time of the infinitive.
 (3.) Result expressed by *quoniam*. (4.) The dative for the ablative of separation.
 (5.) The accusatives in this chapter.

Liscus discloses the treachery of Dumnorix.

18. Caesar hāc orātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Diviciāci frātre, dēsignārī sentiēbat, sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet. quaerit ex sōlō ea quae in conventū dixerat. dicit liberius atque audācius. eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit; reperit esse ¹⁰ vērā: ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter liberālitātem grātiā, cupidum rerum novarum. complūrēs ¹ annos portoria reliquaque omnia Haeduorum vectigalia parvō pretiō redēpta ² habere, propterea quod illō licente contrā licērī audeat nēmō. hīs rēbus et suam rem ¹⁵ familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparasse; magnum numerum equitātis suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habere, neque solum ³ domi, sed etiam apud finitimās civitatēs largiter posse, atque huius potentiae ⁴ causā mātrem in Biturigibus hominī illic nobilissimō ac potentissimō conlo- ²⁰ cāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habere, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquas suas ⁵ nūptum in aliās civitatēs conlocāsse. favere et

Chap. 17. 3 427 (385, II, 2); M. 211; A. 229; G. 345, r. 1; B. 188, 2, d; L. & M. 537.

Chap. 18. 1 417 (379); M. 197; A. 256; G. 336; B. 181; L. & M. 513. — 2 431, 3 (388, I, n.); M. 284; A. 292, c; G. 238; B. 337, 6; L. & M. 1018. — 3 484, 2 (426, 2); M. 242, 2; A. 258, d; G. 411; B. 232, 2; L. & M. 620; 621. — 4 475, 2 (416); M. 218, 1; A. 245, c; G. 408; B. 198, 1; L. & M. 570. — 5 633, 1 (546, 1); M. 301; A. 302; G. 435; B. 340, a; L. & M. 1005.

cupere Helvētiīs propter eam adfinitātem, ōdisse etiam suō
 nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia ēius
 dēminūta et Dīviciācus frāter in antiquum locum grātiaē atque
 honoris sit restitūtus. sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in
 5 spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rō-
 mānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā quam habeat grātiā
 dēspērāre. reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium
 equestre aduersum paucīs ante diēbus esset factum, initium ēius
 fugae factum ā Dumnorīge atque ēius equitibus (nam equitātū
 10 quem ⁶ auxiliō Caesarī Haeduī mīserant Dumnorīx praeerat):
 eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The locative case. (2.) The ablative of cause. (3.) The supine. (4.) Two
 datives. (5.) The ablative of price. (6.) The dative with special verbs. (7.) The
 ablative of characteristic.

Caesar summons Diviciacus, brother of Dumnorix.

19. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis, cum ad hās suspiciōnēs certis-
 simae rēs accēderent, quod per finēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs
 1 tradūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāset, quod ea
 15 omnia nōn modo ² iniussū suō et cīvitātis, sed etiam inscienti-
 bus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Haeduōrum accūsārētur,
 satis esse causae arbitrābātur quārē in eum aut ipse animad-
 verteret, aut cīvitātem animadvertere iubēret. hīs omnibus rēbus
 ūnum repūgnābat, quod Dīviciāci frātris summum in populum
 20 Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem,
 iūstitiam, temperantiam cōgnōverat: nam ³ nē ēius suppliciō
 Dīviciāci animum offenderet verēbātur. itaque prius quam

Chap. 18. G 433 (390, II); M. 206; A. 233; G. 356; B. 191; L. & M. 548.

Chap. 19. 1 588, II; 643 (516, II); M. 357; 400; A. 321; 341, d; G. 628;
 B. 286, 1; L. & M. 846; 793. — 2 143, 1 (134); M. 61, 1; A. 71, b; G. 70, A;
 B. 219, 2. — 3 567, 1 (498, III, n. 1); M. 336; A. 331, f; G. 550; B. 296, 2;
 L. & M. 897.

quicquam ⁴cōnārētur Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet et cotīdīānis interpretibus remōtis, per C. Valerium Procellum, principem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cū summam omnium rerū fidem habēbat, cum eō conloquitur: simul commonefacit quae ipsō praesente in conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorige^a sint dicta, et ostendit quae sēparātīm quisque dē eō apud sē dixerit. petit atque hortātur ut sine eius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō causā cōgnitā statuatur, vel cīvitatē statuere iubeat.

Topics for Study.

(1.) Clauses introduced by *quod* on another's authority. (2.) The partitive genitive. (3.) The construction after verbs of fearing. (4.) Defective nouns. (5.) The subjunctive with *priusquam*. (6.) Subjunctive of purpose.

Diviciacus intercedes for his brother. Caesar pardons Dumnorix.

20. Dīviciācus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus obsecrāre coepit, nē quid gravius in frātre statueret: scire sē¹⁰ illa esse vērā, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, proptereā quod, cum ipse ¹grātiā plūrimū domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adūlescēntiā posset, per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus ac nervīs nōn solum ad minuendā grātiā, sed paene ad perniciem suam ²ūteretur. sēsē tamen et ¹⁵amōre ³frāternō et existimātiōne vulgī commovērī. quod si quid eī ā Caesare gravius ⁴accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum tenēret, nēminem existimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futurum utī tōtius Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur. haec cum plūribus verbis flēns ā Caesare²⁰ peteret, Caesar eius dextram prendit; cōnsolātus rogat finem orandi⁵ faciat; ⁶tantī eius apud sē grātiā esse ostendit, utī et

Chap. 19. 4 605, II (520, II); M. 351; A. 327; G. 517; B. 292; L. & M. 879; 880.

Chap. 20. 1 475 (416); M. 254; A. 245; G. 408; B. 219; L. & M. 612. — 2 643 (524); M. 392; A. 336; G. 650; B. 313; L. & M. 1026. — 3 440, 2, n. 2; (395, n. 2); M. 421; A. 190, b; G. 363; B. 151, 2; L. & M. 554. — 4 644, 2 (525, 2); M. 402; A. 307, f; G. 656; B. 319; L. & M. 788. — 5 565 (499, 2); M. 333; A. 331, b; 546, r. 2; B. 282; L. & M. 893; 894; 778. — 6 448 (404) M. 224; A. 252, a; G. 380; B. 203, 4; L. & M. 576.

rei pūblicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem ēius voluntāti ac precibus condōnet. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in cō reprehendat ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvītās querātur prōpōnit; **monet** ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspiciōnēs vitet, **praeterita** sē Diviciācō frātrī condōnāre dicit. Dumnorīgī custōcēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur scīre possit.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The adjective for the genitive. (2.) Principal clauses in indirect discourse. (3.) Subordinate clauses in indirect discourse. (4.) Change of person in indirect discourse. (5.) The omission of *ut*. (6.) The periphrastic form *faturum esse*.

The preparations for engaging the Helvetii.

21. Eōdem diē ab explorātōribus certior factus hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse milia passuum ab ipsius castris octō, quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēsus quī cōgnōscerent mīsīt. renūtiātum est facilem esse. dē tertiā vigiliā Titum Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et iīs ducibus quī iter cōgnōverant summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid suī cōsiliī sit ostendit. ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. **P. Cōnsidius**, quī rei militāris peritissimus habebātur et in exercitū **L. Sullae** et postea in **M. Crassi** fuerat, cum explorātōribus praemittitur.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The powers of *praetor*. (2.) Relative clauses of purpose. (3.) The *vigiliae*. (4.) The indirect question.

These preparations are rendered useless by the fears of P. Considius.

22. Primā lūce, cum summus mōns ā T. Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castris non lōngius mille et quīngentis passibus

abesset, neque, ut postea ex captivis comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labiēni ¹cognitus esset, Cōsidius equō admissō ad eum **accurrit**, dicit montem, quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit, ab hostibus tenērī: id sē ā Gallicis armīs atque insignibus cōgnōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum ²collem subducit, ⁵aciem instruit. Labiēnus, ut erat ei praeceptum a Caesare nē proelium ³committeret, nisi ipsius cōpiae prope hostium castra



vīsae essent, ut undique unō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, monte occupatō nostrōs expectābat ⁴proeliōque abstinēbat. multō denique diē per explorātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit et montem ā suis tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et



10

15

Cōsidium timōre perterritum quod nōn vidisset prō visō sibi renūntiāsse. eō diē quō cōsuērat intervallō hostēs sequitur et ⁵milia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *equo admisso*. (2.) Substantive clauses. (3.) Dependent clauses in indirect discourse. (4.) Asyndeton. (5.) The idiom *multo die*.

Caesar advances towards Bibracte.

23. Postridiē eius ¹diēi, quod omnīnō biduum supererat, cum exercitui frūmentum mētiri oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, ²⁰oppidō Haeduōrum longe māximō et cōpiōsissimō. nōn amplius milibus passuum XVIII aberat, rei frūmentāriae prōspiciendum

Chap. 22. 1 600, II (521, II, 2); M. 347; A. 325; G. 585; B. 288, B; L. & M. 858. — 2 Intr. 116. — 3 565 (498, 1); M. 328; A. 331; G. 546; B. 282; L. & M. 893. — 4 461 (414, 1); M. 236, 2; A. 243; G. 390; B. 214, 2; L. & M. 600; 601. — 5 417 (379); M. 196; A. 257, b; G. 335; B. 181; L. & M. 513.

Chap. 23 1 446, 5 (398, 5); M. 258, 2; A. 223, e; G. 372, n. 3; B. 201, 3, a; L. & M. 553.

existimāvit: iter ab Helvētiis āvertit ac Bibracte ire contendit. ea rēs per fugitivōs L. Aemiliū, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūtiātur. Helvētiū, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē existimārent, ²eō magis, quod pridīe ³superiōribus locis occupātis proelium nōn commīsissent, sive eō, quod rē frumentariā interclūdī posse cōfiderent, commūtātē cōsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō āgmine insequi ac lacessere coepērunt.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The genitive with *postridie*. (2.) The impersonal construction. (3.) The powers of the *decurio*. (4.) Ablative of degree of difference. (5.) The dative after compounds.

Preparations for battle.

24. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in
 10 proximum collem subducit ¹equitātumque, quī sustinēret hostium impetum, misit. ipse interim in colle
 mediō triplicem ²aciem instrūxit ³legiōnum
 quattuor veterānārū [ita utī suprā]; sed in
 summō iugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citiōre
 15 proximē cōserīpserat, et omnia ⁴auxilia conlocāvit ac tōtum montem hominibus complēvit; intēreā ⁵sarcinās in ūnum locum cōferri et eum ab his quī in superioriē aciē cōstiterant mūniri iussit. Helvētiū cum omnibus suis carris
 20 secūtī impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsi cōfertissimā ⁶aciē reiectō nostrō equitātū phalange factā sub primam nostram aciem successērunt.



SARCINA.

Chap. 23. ² 479 (423); M. 248; A. 250, n.; G. 403; B. 223; L. & M. 655.

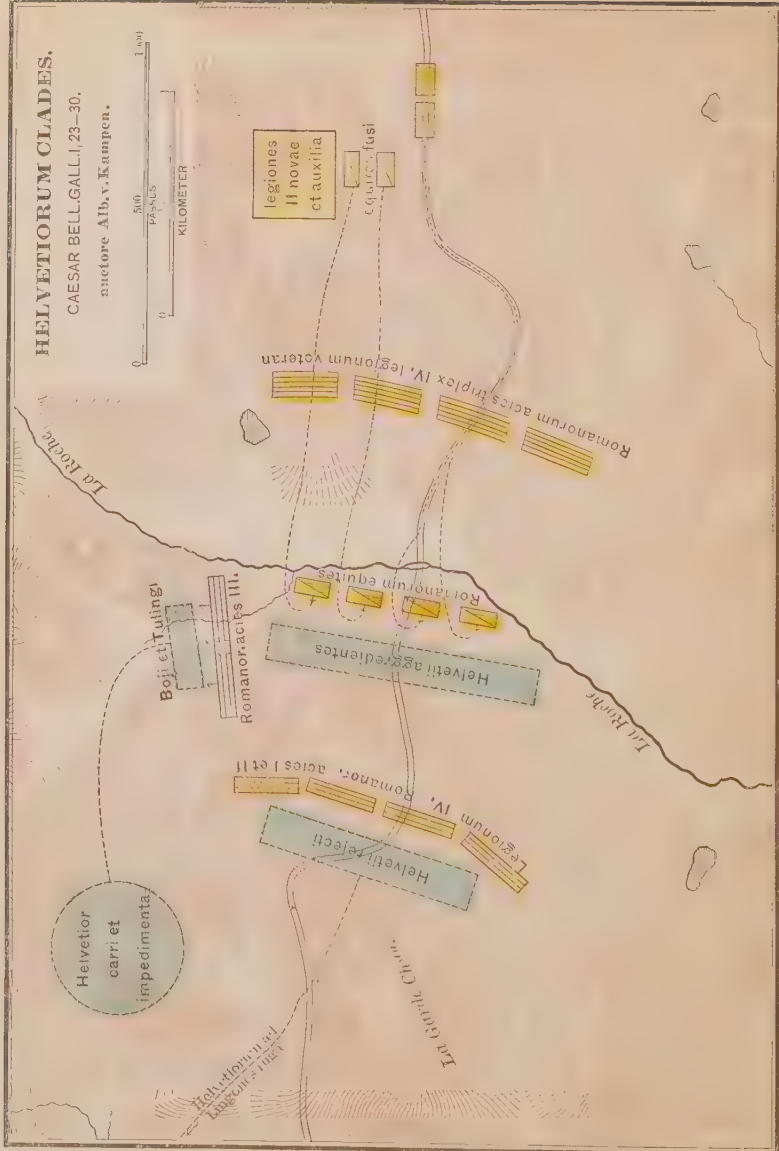
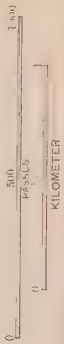
Chap. 24. ¹ Intr. 108 — ² Intr. 115. — ³ Intr. 98. — ⁴ Intr. 107. —

⁵ Intr. 123, 1, 2) &. — ⁶ 473, 3 (419, III); M. 245; A. 248; G. 399; B. 220; L. & M. 636.

HELVETIORUM CLADES.

CAESAR BELL. GALL. I, 23-30.

anctore Alb. v. Kampen.



Topics for Study.

(1.) The Roman legion. (2.) The distinction between *sarcinas* and *impedimenta*. (3.) The Roman cavalry. (4.) Ablative absolute. (5.) The Roman line of battle.

The battle.

25. Caesar **primum** suō, **deinde** omnium ex cōspectū remōtis equīs, ut **aequātō** omnium periculō spem fugae **tolleret**, **cohortātus** suōs proelium commisit. militēs ē locō superiōre **pilis** missis facile hostium phalangem **perfrēgērunt**. eā **disiectā** ¹gladiis **dēstrictis** in eōs impetum **fēcērunt**. Gallis māgnō ad **pūgnam** erat **impedimentō** quod plūribus eōrum ²scūtis **ūnō ictū** ³pīlōrum **trānsfixis** et **conligātis**, cum **ferrum** sē ⁴**inflexisset**, neque **ēvellere** neque **sinistrā** **impeditā** satis **commodē** **pūgnāre** poterant, multī ut diū **iactātō** **bracchiō** **praeoptārent** scūtum **manū** **ēmittere** et **nūdō** corpore **pūgnāre**. **tandem** **vulneribus** **dēfessi** et **pedem** **referre** et, quod mōns **suberat** circiter mille passuum, eō sē **recipere** coepērunt. **captō** monte et succēdentibus nostrīs Boiī et Tulingī, quī hominum ⁵mīlibus circiter XV āgmen, hostium **claudēbant** et novissimīs **praesidiō** erant, ¹⁵ex itinere nostrōs **latere** **apertō** **aggressī** **circumvenire**, et id cōspicātī Helvētiū, quī in montem sēsē **recēperant** **rūrsus** **īnstāre** et proelium **redintegrāre** coepērunt. Rōmānū **conversa** ⁶**signa** **bipartitō** **intulērunt**: **prīma** ac **secunda** acies, ut **victis** ac **submōtis** **resisteret**, ⁷**tertia**, ut **venientēs** ²⁰**exciperet**.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative of manner. (2.) Roman arms. (3.) Causal clauses **PILUM**. with *cum*. (4.) The dative of service (5.) The idiom *pedem referre*.

Chap. 25. 1 Intr. 116. — 2 Intr. 102. — 3 Intr. 102. — 4 598 (517); M. 355, A. 326; G. 586; B. 286, 2; L. & M. 863. — 5 476 (420); M. 247; A. 248, c; G. 401; B. 218; L. & M. 645. — 6 Intr. 103. — 7 Intr. 125, 1) a.

The defeat of the Helvetii.

26. Ita **ancipiti** proeliō diū atque **ācritē** pūgnātum est. diū-
tius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut
coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedīmenta et carrōs
suōs sē contulērunt. nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā
5 ad **vesperum** pūgnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit.
ad multam noctem etiam ad impedīmenta pūgnātum est, proptereā
quod prō **vāllō** carrōs **obiēcerant** et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs
venientēs tela **coniciēbant** et nōnnūllī inter carrōs **rotāsque** **matarās**
ac **trāgulās** **subiciēbant** nostrōsque **vulnerābant**. diū cum esset
10 pūgnātum, impedīmentis castrisque nostrī potitī sunt. ibi Orgeto-
rīgis filia atque ūnus ē filiīs captus est. ex eō proeliō circiter mīlia
hominum **CXXX** **superfuērunt** eāque tōtā nocte continenter iē-
runt: nūllam ¹ partem noctis itinere **intermissō** in finēs **Lingonum**
[diē quārtō] pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera mīlitum et prop-
15 ter **sepultūram** occīsōrum nostrī [**trīduum morātī**] eōs sequī nōn
potuissent. Caesar ad ² **Lingonas** **litterās nūntiōsque** mīsīt nē eōs
frūmentō **nēve** aliā rē **iuvārent**: quī sī iūvissent, sē eōdem locō
quō **Helvētiōs** habitūrum. ipse trīduō **intermissō** cum omnibus
cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The impersonal construction. (2.) Duration of time. (3.) Missive weapons.
(4.) Greek form in accus. plur.

The Helvetii surrender. Six thousand try to escape.

20 27. **Helvētīū** omnium rērum **inopiā** adductī lēgātōs dē **dēditionē**
ad eum mīsērunt. ¹ quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad
pedēs **prōiēcissent** **suppliciterque** locūtī flentēs pācem petissent,

Chap. 26. 1 417 (379); M. 197; A. 256; G. 336; B. 181; L. & M. 513.—
2 109 (68); M. 52, 9; A. 63, f; G. 65, 2; B. 47, 3; L. & M. 180.

Chap. 27. 1 510 (453); M. 455; A. 180, f; G. 610; B. 251, 6; L. & M. 843.

atque eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum expectāre iussisset, **pāruērunt**. eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, **servōs**, quī ad eōs **perfūgissent**, **poposcit**. dum ea **conquīruntur** et cōferuntur, nocte intermissā circiter hominum mīlia VI eius pāgi, quī **Verbigenus** appellātur, sive timōre perterriti nē armīs **trādītis** 5 supplicio ²adficerentur, sive spē **salūtis** inducti, quod in tantā multitudine **dēditiciōrum** suam fugam aut **occultāri**, aut omninō **ignōrārī** posse ³exīstimārent, primā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum **ēgressi** ad Rhēnum finēque Germānōrum contendērunt.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The relative pronoun taking the place of a conjunction with a demonstrative.
 (2.) The construction after verbs of fearing. (3.) Causal clauses with *quod* expressing the thought of some other person than the author.

The return of the Helvetii to their territory.

28. Quod ubi Caesar **resciit** quōrum per finēs ierant, hīs uti **10** conquīrerent et **redūcerent**, sī sibi **purgāti** esse vellent, imperāvit: reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs obsidibus, armīs, **perfugis** trādītis in dēditionem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in finēs suōs, **unde** erant profecti, reverti iussit, et quod omnibus fructibus āmissis ¹domi nihil erat quō **famem to-** 15 **lerārent**, Allobrogibus imperāvit ut iis frumentū cōpiam facerent: ipsōs oppida vicōsque quōs incenderant restituere iussit. id ea maxīmē **ratiōne** fecit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētiī discesserant **vacāre**, nē propter **bonitātem** agrōrum Germāni, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suīs finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trāns- 20 **īrent** et finitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Boiōs, petentibus Haeduīs, quod **ēregiā** virtūte erant cōgnitī, ut in finī-

Chap. 27. 2 567, 1 (498, III); M. 336; A. 331, f; G. 550; B. 296, 2; L. & M. 397. — 3 588, II (516, II); M. 357; A. 321; G. 628; B. 286, 1; L. & M. 851.

Chap. 28. 1 484, 2 (426, 2); M. 242; A. 258, d; G. 411, r. 2; B. 232, 2; L. & M. 620; 621.

bus suis conlocarent concessit; quibus illi agrōs dedērunt, quōsque postea in **parem** iūris libertātisque condiciōnem² atque ipsi erant recēpērunt.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The locative case. (2.) The dative after *impero*. (3.) Compare the construction after *iubeo* with that after *impero*. (4.) The idiom *parem atque*.

The comparative estimate of the number of Helvetii who returned home and the number that had gone forth from their country.

29. In castris Helvētiōrum **tabulae** repertae sunt litteris **Graecis** cōflectae et ad Caesarem **relatae**, quibus in tabulis **nōminatim** ratiō cōflecta erat,¹ quī numerus domō ²exisset eōrum, quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparatim **pueri**, **senēs** **mulierēsque**. quārum omnium rērum **summa** erat **capitum** Helvētiōrum mīlia CCLXIII, Tulingōrum mīlia XXXVI, Latobrigōrum XLIII, Rauracōrum 10 XXIII, Boiōrum XXXII; ex hīs quī arma ferre possent ad mīlia XCII. **summa** omnium fuērunt ad mīlia CCCLXVIII. eōrum quī domum **rediērunt** cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium C et X.



Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative of place. (2.) The form of the interrogative pronoun used adjectively. (3.) Subjunctive in indirect questions. (4.) Agreement of a verb with the predicate noun.

Chap 28. 2 508, 5 (451, 5); M. 465, n. 2; A. 156, a; G. 643; B. 341, 1, c; L. & M. 760.

Chap. 29. 1 184, 1 (188, II, 1); M. 83; A. 104, a; G. 106; B. 90, 2, b; L. & M. 284. — 2 649, II (529, 1); M. 394; A. 334; G. 467; B. 300; L. & M. 810.

30-54. THE WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS.

Ambassadors from almost all parts of Gaul congratulate Caesar and request a council.

30. Belio Helveticorum confectō tōtius ferē Galliae lēgātī, principēs civitātum, ad Caesarem ¹grātulātum convēnērunt: intellegere sēsē, **tametsi** prō veteribus Helveticorum iniuriis populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō **repetisset**, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex **ūsū terrae** Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse, proptereā quod eō **5** conciliō **flōrentissimis** rēbus domōs suās Helvetiū reliquissent, utī tōtī Galliae bellum inferrent ²imperiōque potirentur locumque **domiciliō** ex māgnā cōpiā dēligerent, quem ex omnī Galliā **oportūnissimum** ac **fructuosissimum** iūdicāssent, reliquāsque civitatēs **stipendiariās** habērent. petiērunt utī sibi concilium tōtius Galliae **10** in diem certam **indicere** idque Caesaris voluntāte facere liceret: sēsē habēre **quāsdam** rēs, quās ex **commūnī cōnsensū** ab eō petere vellent. eā rē **permisā** diem conciliō cōstituērunt et iūreiurandō nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō ³mandātum esset, inter sē **sānxērunt**. **15**

Topics for Study.

- (1.) Distinction between the subjective and objective genitive. (2.) The Supine.
(3.) The mood and tense which represent the future perfect indicative in the indirect discourse. (4.) The ablative with special verbs.

Complaints made against Ariovistus and the Germans.

31. Eō conciliō dīmissō idem principēs civitātum quī ante fuerant ad Caesarem revertērunt petiēruntque utī sibi sēcētō in **occultō** dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere liceret. eā rē impetrātā sēsē omnēs flentēs ¹Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt: nōn minus sē id contendere et **labōrāre** nē ea quae dīxissent ēnūntiā- **20**

Chap. 30. **1** 633 (546); M. 301; A. 302; G. 435; B. 340, a; L. & M. 1005; 1006. — **2** 477 (421, 1); M. 253; A. 249; G. 407; B. 218, 1; L. & M. 646. — **3** 643, 646 (524); M. 392, 402; A. 336; G. 650; B. 313; L. & M. 1034.

Chap. 31. **1** 425, 4, n. (384, 4, n. 2); M. 208, n.; A. 235, a; G. 350, 1; B. 188, 1, n.; L. & M. 538.

rentur, quam uti ea quae ²vellent impetrarent, propterea quod si enuntiatum esset, summum in cruciatum se venturos viderent. locutus est pro his Diviciacus Haeduus: Galliae totius **factiōnēs** esse duas: harum alterius principatum tenere Haeduos, alterius **Arvernōs**. hi cum **tantopere** de **potentatū** inter se multos annos contenderent, factum esse uti ab Arvernīs Sēquanisque Germān³ **mercēde arcesserentur**. horum **primō** circiter milia XV Rhēnum transisse: **posteāquam** agros et cultum et copias Galliorum homines **feri ac barbari adamassent**, traductos plures: **nunc** esse in Galliā
10 ad C et XX milium numerum. cum his Haeduos eorumque clientēs **semel** atque **iterum** armis contendisse; magnam calamitatem pulsos accēpisse, omnem nobilitatem, omnem senatum, omnem equitatum amisisse. quibus proeliis calamitatibusque **fractos**, qui et sua virtute et populi Rōmāni **hospitiō** atque amicitia plurimum
15 ante in Galliā potuissent, coactos esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare nobilissimos civitatis, et iureiurandō civitatem obstringere sese neque obsidēs repetituros neque auxilium a populo Rōmāno **implorāturos** neque **recūsāturos** quō minus **perpetuō** sub illorum **dictiōne** atque imperiō ⁴essent. unum se esse ex omni civitate Haeduorum, qui
20 adducī nōn potuerit ut **iurāret** aut liberos suos obsidēs daret. ob eam rem se ex civitate **profūgis**se et ⁵**Rōmam** ad senatum venisse auxilium **postulatū**, quod sōlus neque iureiurandō neque obsidibus tenērētur. sed **pēius victōribus** Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs victis accidisse, propterea quod **Ariovistus, rex** Germānōrum, in eorum
25 finibus cōsēdisset tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, qui esset **optimus** totius Galliae, occupāvisset et nunc de alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs **dēcēdere** iubēret, propterea quod paucis ⁶mēnsibus ante **Harūdum** milia hominum XXIII ad eum venissent, quibus locus ac sedēs pararentur. futurum esse paucis annis uti omnes ex

Chap. 31. 2 643 (524); M. 392; A. 336, 2; G. 650; B. 313; L. & M. 1026. — 3 478 (422); M. 251; A. 252; G. 404; B. 225; L. & M. 652. — 4 568, 7 (497, II, 2); M. 328; 331; A. 317, b; G. 545, 2; B. 282, a; L. & M. 908. — 5 418 (380. II); M. 199, 1; A. 258, b; G. 337; B. 182, 1. a; L. & M. 515. — 6 488, 1 (430); M. 248; A. 250; G. 403; B. 223; L. & M. 655.

Galliae finibus pellerentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsī-
rent: neque enim cōferendum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum
agrō, neque hanc cōnsuetudinē victūs cum illā comparandam.
Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vicerit, quod
proelium factum sit ad **Magetobrigam**, **superbē** et **crūdēliter** im-
perāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī cūiusque liberōs poscere et in eōs omnia
exempla cruciātūsque **ēdere**, sī qua rēs nōn ad **nūtum** aut ad vo-
luntātem eius facta sit. hominem esse barbarum, **irācundum**,
temerārium: nōn posse eius imperia diūtius sustinērī. ⁷ nisi sī
quid in Caesare populōque Rōmānō sit auxiliū, omnibus Gallīs ¹⁰
idem esse faciendum quod Helvētīi fēcerint, ut domō **ēmigrant**,
aliud domicilium, aliās sēdēs, remōtās ā Germānīs, petant fortū-
namque, **quaecumque** accidat, **experiantur**. haec sī **ēnūntiāta**
Ariovistō sint nōn dubitāre quīn dē omnibus obsidibus quī
apud eum sint **gravissimum** supplicium ⁸sūnat. Caesarem vel ¹⁵
auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs, vel recentī victōriā, vel nōmine
populī Rōmānī dēterrere posse nē **māior** multitudō Germānōrum
⁹Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniuriā posse
dēfendere.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The idiom *Caesari ad pedes*. (2.) Subordinate clauses in indirect discourse.
(3.) Purpose clauses with *quo*. (4.) The ablative of price. (5.) Accusative of
limit of motion, *Roman ad senatum*. (6.) Construction with *quin* after verbs of
doubting. (7.) Manner of denoting an interval between two events. (8.) The
ablative of time. (9.) The predicate accusative. (10.) The partitive genitive.
(11.) Hendiadys. (12.) Relative clauses of purpose.

The wretched lot of the Sequani.

32. Hāc ōrātiōne ab Diviciacō habitā omnēs, quī aderant, māgnō ²⁰
fiētū auxilium ā Caesare petere coepērunt. animadvertit Caesar

Chap 31. **7** 575, 7 (507, 3, n. 4); M. 361, 2; A. 315, a; G. 591, R. 2; B. 306,
1; L. & M. 928. — **8** 595, 1 (501, II, 2); M. 337; A. 332, g; G. 555, 2; B. 284,
3; L. & M. 910; 913. — **9** 413 (376, n.); M. 194; A. 239, b; G. 331, R. 1;
B. 179, 1; L. & M. 501.

ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere quās cēteri facerent, sed **tristēs** capite **dēmissō** terram intuērī. ēius rei causa quae ¹esset **mirātus** ex ipsis quaesit. nihil Sēquanī respondēre, sed in eādē **tristitiā** tacitī **permanēre**. cum ab hīs saepius quae-
 5 reret neque ūllam omnīnō **vōcem exprimere** posset, idē Dīviciācus Haeduus respondit: hōc esse **miseriōrem** graviōremque fortunam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre audērent **absentisque** Ariovistī **crūdēli-**
tātem, velut sī cōram adesset, **horrērent**, proptereā quod reliquīs
 10 tamen fugae facultās darētur, ²Sēquanīs **vērō**, quī **intrā** finēs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte ēius essent, omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendī.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative absolute. (2.) The historical infinitive. (3.) Dative of agent. (4.) The indirect question.

Caesar resolves to remedy their evils.

(33. Hīs rēbus cōgnītīs Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbīs cōnfirmā-
 vit pollicitusque est sibi eam rem ¹cūrae futūram: māgnam sē
 15 habēre spem et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte adductum Ariovistum finem iniūriīs factūrum. hāc ōrātiōne habitā concilium dīmīsīt. et ²secundum ea multae rēs eum hortābantur quārē sibi eam rem
cōgitandam et suscipiendam putāret, **imprimis** quod Haeduōs, frātres cōsanguineōsque saepenumērō ā senātū appellātōs, in ser-
 20 vitūte atque in diciōne vidēbat Germānōrum tenērī eōrumque obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum ac Sēquanōs intellegēbat; quod in tantō imperiō populī Rōmānī **turpissimum** sibi et rei pūblicae esse arbitrābātur. **paulātīm** autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum

Chap. 32. 1 649, II (529); M. 394; A. 334; G. 467; B. 300; L. & M. 810. —
 2 431 (388); M. 207; A. 232; G. 355; B. 189, 1; L. & M. 991.

Chap. 33. 1 433 (390); M. 206; A. 233; G. 356; B. 191; L. & M. 547. —
 2 328, 5 (433); M. 258, 1; A. 153; G. 416; B. 141; L. & M. 660.

trānsīre et in Galliam māgnam cōrum multitudinem venīre populō Rōmānō **periculōsum** vidēbat, neque sibi hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs temperātūrōs exīstimābat, quīn, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante **Cimbrī Teutonīque** fēcissent, in prōvinciam exīrent atque inde in Ītaliā contenderent, praesertim cum Sēquanōs ā prōvinciā nostrā Rhodanus divideret; quibus ³ rēbus quam mātūrrimē **occurrendum** putābat. ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi **spīritūs**, tantam **adrogantiam** sūmpserat ut ferendus nōn vidērētur.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The dative after compounds. (2.) The dative of service. (3.) The dative with special verbs. (4.) The preposition *secundum*. (5.) Relative clauses of result.

Caesar demands a conference with Ariovistus. The refusal of Ariovistus.

34. Quamobrem placuit ei ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret, quī ¹ ab eō ² postulārent utī aliquem locum medium **utriusque** **conloquiō** diceret: velle sēsē dē rē publicā et summīs utriusque rēbus cum eō agere. ei lēgātīōnī Ariovistus respondit: sī quid ipsī ā Caesare ³ **opus** esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse; sī ⁴ quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venīre oportēre. **praetereā** sē neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venīre audēre quās Caesar **possidēret**, ¹⁵ neque exercitum sine māgnō **commeātū** atque **mōlimentō** in ūnum locum **contrahere** posse. sibi autem **mirum** vidērī quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō vīcisset, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō ⁶ **negōtīi** esset.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The construction with *postulo*. (2.) The regular construction with *opus*; and the construction with *opus* as a predicate noun. (3.) The construction after verbs of asking. (4.) The dative of possession.

Chap. 33. § 429 (386); M. 202; A. 228; G. 347; B. 187, III; L. & M. 532.

Chap. 34. § 411, 4 (374, n. 3); M. 192, 2, n.; A. 239, c, n. 1; G. 339, n. 2; B. 178, 1, a. — § 429 (497, 1); M. 382, 3; A. 317; G. 630; B. 282, 2; L. & M. 893; 835. — § 477, III, n. (414, IV, n. 4); M. 237, 2; A. 243, e, n.; G. 406; B. 214, 1, d; L. & M. 649. — § 411 (374); M. 192, 2; A. 239, c; G. 339; B. 178, 1, a; L. & M. 522. — § 441 (397); M. 225, 2; A. 216; G. 369; B. 201; L. & M. 559; 564.

The second embassy.

35. His respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātis iterum ad cum Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit: **quoniam** tantō suō populīque Rōmānī beneficiō adfectus, cum in cōsulātū suō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus esset, hanc sibi populōque Rōmānō grātiam 5-referret, ut in conloquium venīre **invītātus** gravārētur neque dē commūnī rē dicendum sibi et cōgnōscendum putāret, haec esse quae ab eō postulāret: prīmum nē quam hominum multitudinē amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; deinde obsidēs, quōs habēret ab Haeduīs, **redderet** Sēquanīsque permetteret ut 10 quōs illi habērent voluntāte eiūs reddere illis licēret; nēve Haeduōs ¹iniuriā lacesseret, nēve hīs sociīsve eōrum bellum inferret. sī id ita ²fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō **perpetuam** grātiam atque amīcitiā cum eō futūram: sī nōn impetrāret, sēsē, quoniam M. Messālā, M. Pisōne cōsulibus senātus **cēnsuisset** utī, quicum- 15 que Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod **commodō** reīpūblicae facere pōsset, Haeduōs ceterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, sēsē Haeduōrum iniuriās nōn **neglētūrum**.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *gratiam referre*. (2.) The repetition of prepositions. (3.) The ablative of manner. (4.) Conditional sentences in indirect discourse.

The reply of Ariovistus.

36. Ad hāec Ariovistus respondit: iūs esse bellī ut quī vicissent iūs quōs vicissent **quemadmodum** vellent imperārent: item 20 populum Rōmānum ¹victīs nōn ad alterius **praescriptum**, sed ad suum **arbitrium** imperāre cōsuēsse. sī ipse populō Rōmānō nōn **praescriberet** quemadmodum suō iūre ūtērētur, nōn oportēre sēsē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impediri. Haeduōs sibi, quoniam belli fortūnam temptāssent et armīs **congressi** ac superāti

Chap. 35. 1 473, 3 (419. III, n. 2); M. 245; A. 248; G. 399; B. 220; L. & M. 635. — 2 646 (527, 1); M. 402; A. 337; G. 656; B. 320; L. & M. 788.

Chap. 36. 1 494 (441); M. 412; A. 188; G. 204, n. 1, b; B. 236; L. & M. 488.

essent, stīpendiārīōs esse factōs. māgnam Caesarem iniūriam facere, quī suō adventū vectīgālia sibi **dēteriōra** ²faceret. Haeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque iīs neque eōrum sociīs iniuriā bellum **inlātūrum**, sī in eō **manērent** quod convēnisset, **stīpendiumque quotannis penderent**; sī id nōn fēcissent, longē ⁵iīs frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī **āfutūrum**. quod sibi Caesar **dēnūntiāret** sē Haeduōrum iniuriās nōn neglētūrum, nēmīnem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse. cum vellet, ³congrederētur: intellētūrum quid **invictī** Germānī, **exercitātissimī** in armīs, quī inter annōs **quattuordecim tēctum** nōn subissent, virtūte possent. 10

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The substantive use of adjectives and participles. (2.) Relative clauses expressing cause. (3.) The mood which represents the imperative in indirect discourse. (4.) The idiom *longe* — *afuturum*.

Caesar hastens against Ariovistus and seizes Vesontio.

37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesarī mandāta referēbantur et lēgātī ab Haeduīs et ā Trēverīs veniēbant: Haeduī ¹questum quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam ²**trānsportātī** essent, finēs eōrum ³populārentur: sēsē nē obsidibus quidem datīs pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse; **Trēverī** autem, pāgōs centum **Suē- 15 bōrum** ad rīpās Rhēnī cōnsēdisse, quī Rhēnum trānsīre cōnārentur; hīs praeesse **Nasuum** et **Cimberium** frātrēs. quibus rēbus Caesar **vehementer** commōtus mātūrandum sibi exīstināvit, nē, sī nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiīs Ariovistī sēsē **coniūnxisset**, minus facile ⁴resistī posset. itaque rē frūmentāriā ²⁰quam celerrimē potuit comparātā māgnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

Chap. 36. **2** 592 (517); M. 382; A. 320, *e*; G. 633; L. & M. 839. — **3** 642, 4 (523, II); M. 393; A. 339; G. 652; B. 316; L. & M. 1023.

Chap. 37. **1** 633 (546); M. 301; A. 302; G. 435; B. 340, *a*; L. & M. 1005; 1006. — **2** 643 (524); M. 400; A. 336; 341, *a*; G. 508; B. 323; L. & M. 1026. — **3** 588, II (516, II); M. 357; A. 321; G. 628; B. 286, 1; L. & M. 851. — **4** 302, 6 (384, 5); M. 205, *n*.; A. 230; G. 208, 2; B. 138, IV; L. & M. 530.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The idiom *eodem tempore* — *et*. (2.) The dative with special verbs.
 (3.) The impersonal construction. (4.) Clauses introduced by *quod* expressing the reason of another.

38. Cum trīduī¹ viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum est eī Ario-
 vistum cum suis omnibus cōpiis ad occupandum **Vesontionem**,
²quod est oppidum māximum Sēquanōrum, contendere trīduīque
 viam ā suis finibus prōfēcisse. id nē accideret, māgnopere sibi
 15 **praecavendum** Caesar exīstimābat. **namque** omnium rērum
 quae ad bellum ūsū erant summa erat in eō oppidō facultās,
 idque nātūrā locī **sic** mūniēbātur ut māgnam ad dūcendum bel-
 lum daret facultātem, proptereā quod flūmen **Dūbis** ut **circinō**
circumductum paene tōtum oppidum **cingit**; reliquum spatium,
 10 quod est nōn amplius pedum DC, quā flūmen intermittit, mōns
 continet māgnā altitudīne, ita ut **rādicēs** montis ex utrāque parte
 rīpae flūminis **contingant**. hunc mūrus **circumdatus arcem efficit**
 et cum oppidō coniungit. hūc Caesar māgnīs **nocturnīs diur-**
nīsque itineribus contendit occupātōque oppidō ibi praesidium
 15 conlocat.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The accusative of extent of space. (2.) The attraction of the relative. (3.)
 The gerundive. (4.) The ablative of characteristic.

*Reports reach the Roman soldiers concerning the huge stature
 and remarkable skill of the Germans. The army is in a
 state of panic.*

39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontionem rei frūmentāriae com-
 meātūsque causā merātur, ex **percontātiōne** nostrōrum vōcibus-
 que Gallōrum ac mereātorum, quī **ingenti māgnitūdine corporum**
 Germānōs, incredibīlī virtūte atque **exercitātiōne** in armīs esse
 20 **praedicābant** (saepenumērō sese cum hīs congressōs nē **vultum**

Chap. 38 1 417 (379); M. 196; A. 257; G. 335; B. 181; L. & M. 513. —
 2 396, 2 (445, 4); M. 182, 4; A. 199; G. 614, R. 3; B. 250, 3; L. & M. 824; 826.

quidem atque aciem oculōrum dicēbant ferre potuisse), tantus subito timor omnem exercitum occupāvit ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret. hīc primum ortus est ā¹ tribūnis militum, praefectis reliquisque, quī ex urbe amicitiae causā Caesarem secūtī nōn māgnū in rē militārī ūsum habēbant: quōrum² alius aliā causā inlātā, quam sibi ad proficiendum necessariam esse³ diceret, petēbat ut ēius voluntāte discēdere liceret; nōnnūllī pudōre adductī, ut timōris suspiciōnem vitārent, remanēbant. hī neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimās



TABERNACULUM.

tenēre poterant: abditī in¹⁰ tabernāculis aut suum fātum querēbantur, aut cum familiāribus suis commūne periculum miserābantur. vulgō tōtis castris tes-¹⁵ tāmenta obsignābantur. hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulātim etiam iī, quī māgnū in castris ūsum

habēbant, militēs centuriōnēsque quīque equitātū praeerant, perturbābantur. quī sē ex hīs minus timidōs existimārī volēbant, nōn sē hostem verērī, sed angustias itineris, māgnitudinem silvārum, quae intercēderent inter ipsōs atque Arioivistum, aut⁴ rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē supportārī posset, timēre dicēbant. nōnnūllī etiam Caesarī renūtiābant, cum castra movērī ac signa²⁵ ferrī iussisset, nōn fore dictō audientēs militēs neque propter timōrem signa lātūrōs.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *alius alia*. (2.) Clauses which contain a statement on the authority of another. (3.) The accusative of anticipation. (4.) The idiom *signa laturos*,

Chap. 39. 1 Intr 101. — 2 516 (459, 1); M. 440; A. 203, c; G. 319; B. 253, 2; L. & M. 1047. — 3 649, 1 (528, 1); M. 391; A. 341, d; G. 628; B. 314, 3; L. & M. 1026. — 4 A. 334, c; G. 468.

Caesar's speech.

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnciliō omniumque
 ōrdinum ad id cōncilium adhibitīs centuriōnibus vehementer eōs
 incūsāvit: primum, quod aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō
 dūcerentur sibi quaerendum aut cōgitandum ¹putārent. Ariovis-
 5 tum sē cōnsule cupidissimē populi Rōmānī amicitiam appetisse:
 cūr hunc tam temerē quisquam ab officiō discessūrum ²iudicāret?
 sibi quidem ³persuādērī cōgnītīs suis postulātīs atque aequitāte
 condiciōnum perspectā eum neque suam neque populi Rōmānī
 grātiā repudiātūrum. quod sī furōre atque āmentīā impulsus
 10 bellum intulisset, quid tandem verērentur? aut cūr dē suā vir-
 tūte aut dē ipsīus diligentīā dēspērarent? factum ēius hostis
 periculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbris et Teutonīs
 ā Gāiō Mariō pulsīs nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse
 imperātor meritus ⁴vidēbātur; factum etiam nūper in Italiā
 15 servili tumultū, ⁵quōs tamen aliquid ūsus ac disciplina, quae ā
 nōbis accēpissent, sublevārent. ex quō iudicārī posse quantum
 habēret in sē ⁶bonī cōstantia, proptereā quod, quōs aliquamdiū
 inermōs sine causā timuissent, hōs postea armātōs ac victōrēs
 superāssent. denique hōs esse eōsdem, quibuscum saepenumērō
 20 Helvētiī congressī nōn solum in suis, sed etiam in illōrum finibus
 plērūmque superārint, quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercitui nōn
 potuerint. sī quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum com-
 movēret, hōs, sī quaerent, reperīre posse diūturnitāte belli
 dēfatigātīs Gallīs Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsēs castrīs sē ac
 25 palūdibus tenuisset neque suī potestātem fēcisset, dēspērāntēs iam
 dē pūgnā et dispersōs subitō adortum magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō

Chap. 40. 1 588, 2 (516, II); M. 357; 400; A. 321; 341, *d*; G. 628; B. 286,
 1; L. & M. 846; 791. — 2 642, 3 (523, II, *n.*); M. 394; A. 338; G. 651; B. 315,
 1; L. & M. 1025. — 3 302, 6 (301, 1); M. 205, *n.*; A. 230; G. 217; B. 187, II, *b*;
 L. & M. 530; 686. — 4 643, 3 (524, 2, 2); M. 392, 3; A. 336, *b*; G. 628, *r.*;
 B. 314, 3; L. & M. 1028. — 5 399, 4 (445, 6); M. 452; A. 199, *b*; B. 251, 1. —
 6 440, 5, *n.* (397, 3); M. 255, 2; A. 216, 3; G. 204, *n.* 2; B. 201, 2; L. & M. 564

quam virtūte viciſſe. cui ⁷rationī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperitōs locus fuiſſet, hāc nē ipſum quidem ſpērāre noſtrōs exercitūs capī poſſe. quī ſuum timōrem in reī frūmentāriae ſimulatiōnem anguſtiāsque itineris cōferrent facere adroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēſpērāre aut praecribere vidē-⁵ rentur. haec ſibi eſſe cūrae; frūmentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs, Lingonēs ſubminiſtrāre, iamque eſſe in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipſos brevī tempore iūdicātūrōs. quod nōn fore dictō audientēs militēs neque ſigna ⁸lātūrī ⁹dīcantur, nihil ſē eā rē commovērī: ſcīre enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns ¹⁰nōn fuerit, aut male rē geſtā fortunam dēfuiſſe, aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam eſſe convictam. ſuam innocentiam perpetuā vitā, fēlicitātem Helvētiōrum bellō eſſe perſpectam. itaque ſē quod in longiōrem diem conlātūrus fuiſſet repraeſentātūrū et proximā nocte dē quārtā vigiliā caſtra mōtūrū, ut ¹⁵quam primum intellegere poſſet ¹⁰utrum apud eōs pudor atque officium an timor vālēret. quod ſi praetereā nēmō ſequātur, tamen ſē cum ſolā decimā legiōne itūrū, dē quā nōn dubitāret, ſibique eam praetōriam cohortem futūrā. huic legiōnī Caesar et indulſerat praecipuē et propter virtūtem cōfidēbat maxīmē. ²⁰

Topics for Study.

(1.) The rank of the centurions. (2.) The paſſive of intransitive verbs. (3.) Parenthetical clauses in indirect diſcourſe. (4.) The antecedent implied in an adjective. (5.) The attraction of the antecedent. (6.) The perſonal conſtruction with verbs of ſaying. (7.) Double queſtions. (8.) The dative of ſervice. (9.) The partitive genitive. (10.) The ſubjunctive in interrogative ſentences.

The ardor of the ſoldiers. The march.

41. Hāc ōratiōne habitā mīrum in modum converſae ſunt omnium mentēs, ſummaque alacritās et cupiditās bellī gerendī

Chap. 40. 7 399, 3 (445, 9); M. 453, 1; A. 200, b; G. 616; B. 251, 4; L. & M. 842. — 8 612, 1 (536, 2); A. 272, b. — 9 611, 1 (534, I, n. 1); M. 274; A. 330, b; G. 528; B. 332; L. & M. 962. — 10 380 (353); M. 385, 5; A. 211; G. 458; L. & M. 705.

innāta est, ¹ princepsque decima legiō per tribūnōs militum ei grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimam cōfirmāvit. deinde reliquae legiōnēs per tribūnōs militum et prīmōrum ordinum centuriōnēs
 5 ēgērunt utī Caesarī satisfacerent: sē neque **umquam** dubitāsse neque timuisse neque dē summā bellī suum iūdicium, sed ² imperatōris esse, exīstimāvisse. eōrum **satisfactiōne** acceptā et itinere **exquisitō** per Dīviciācum quod ex aliīs eī māximam fidem habēbat, ut milium amplius **quīnquāgintā** circuitū locīs
 10 apertīs exercitum dūceret, dē quārtā vigiliā, ut dīxerat, profectus est. septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explorātōribus certior factus est, Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs milibus passuum quattuor et vīgintī abesse.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *princeps egit*. (2.) The predicate genitive. (3.) The Subjunctive of result. (4.) The Roman legion. (5.) The Roman method of march.

The demands for a conference.

42. Cōgnitō Caesaris adventū Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit:
 15 quod antea dē conloquiō postulāset, id per sē fierī licēre, quoniam propius accessisset, sēque id sine periculō facere posse exīstimāre. nōn **respuīt** condiciōnem Caesar iamque eum ad **sānitātem** revertī arbitrābātur, cum id, quod antea petentī ¹ **dēnegāset**, **ultrō** pollicērētur, māgnamque in spem veniēbat, prō suis tantīs populique
 20 Rōmānī in eum beneficiīs cōgnitīs suis postulātīs fore utī **pertināciā** dēsisteret. diēs conloquiō dictus est ex eō diē quintus. interim saepe **ultrō citrōque** cum lēgātī inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus postulāvit nē quem **peditem** ad conloquium Caesar

Chap. 41. 1 497, 3 (443, n. 1); M. 424; A. 191; G. 325, R. 6; B. 239; 241, 2 — 2 447 (402); M. 217, 2; A. 214, c; G. 366; B. 198, 3; L. & M. 556.

Chap. 42. 1 643 (524); M. 392; A. 336, 2; G. 650; B. 313; L. & M. 1026.

addūceret: verērī sē nē per īnsidiās ab eō circumvenīrētur:



uterque cum equitātū venīret: aliā ratiōne sē nōn esse ventūrum. Caesar, quod neque conloquium **interpositā** causā tollī volēbat, neque salutem suam Gallōrum equitātū com-⁵ mittere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit omnibus equīs Gallis ²equitibus **dētrāctis** eō **legiōnāriōs** militēs legiōnis decimae, cui quam māximē cōnfīdēbat, **impōnere**, ut praesidium quam amicissimum, sī ³quid ¹⁰opus ⁴factō esset, habēret. quod cum fieret, nōn **inridiculē** quīdam ex militibus decimae legiōnis dixit: plūs quam pollicitus esset Caesarem facere: pollicitum sē in cohortis praetōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum ¹⁵ad equum **rescribere**.

MILES LEVIS ARMATURAE.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The dative instead of the ablative of separation. (2.) The adverbial accusative. (3.) The construction after *opus*. (4.) The periphrastic future.

Caesar's speech.

43. Plānitiēs erat māgna et in eā **tumulus terrēnus** satis **grandis**. hic locus **aequō** ferē spatiō ab castrīs Ariovistī et Caesaris aberat. eō, ut erat dictum, ad conloquium vērunt. legiōnem Caesar, quam equīs **dēvexerat**, ¹passibus ducentīs ab ²⁰eō tumulō cōstituit. item equitēs Ariovistī parī intervallō cōstitērunt. Ariovistus ex equīs ut conloquerentur et praeter sē **dēnōs** ut ad conloquium addūcerent postulāvit. ubi eō ventum

Chap. 42. **2** 427 (385, II, 2); M. 211; A. 229; G. 345, r. 1; B. 188, 2, d; L. & M. 539. — **3** 416 (378); M. 195; A. 238, b; G. 333, 2; B. 176, 2, a; L. & M. 507. — **4** 477, III (414, n. 3); M. 252; A. 243, e; G. 406; B. 218, 2; L. & M. 646.

Chap. 43. **1** 479, 3 (379, 2); A. 257, b; G. 403; B. 223; L. & M. 655.

est, Caesar initiō orātiōnis sua senātusque in eum beneficia commemorāvit, quod rex ² appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amicus, quod mūnera amplissima missa; quam rem et paucis hominum contigisse et prō magnis officiis cōsuēsse tribui docēbat; illum, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandī iustam habēret, beneficio ac liberalitāte suā ac senātus ea praemia cōsecūtum. docēbat etiam quam veterēs quamque iustae causae necessitudinis ipsīs cum Haeduīs intercēderent, quae senātus cōsulta quotiēns quamque honorifica in eōs facta essent, ut omni tempore tōtius Galliae principātum Haeduī tenuissent, prius etiam quam nostram amicitiam appetissent. populi Rōmānī hanc esse cōsuētūdinem, ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo suī nihil dēperdere, sed grātiā, dignitāte, honore auctiōrēs velit esse: quod verō ad amicitiam populi Rōmānī attulissent, id iīs ēripī quis pati ¹⁵ ³ posset? postulāvit deinde eadem quae lēgātis in mandātis dederat, nē aut Haeduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum inferret; obsidēs redderet; sī nūllam partem Germānōrum domum remittere posset, at nē ⁴ quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsire paterētur.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The ablative of degree of difference. (2.) Causal clauses introduced by *quod*
 (3.) The deliberative subjunctive in indirect discourse. (4.) The indefinite *quis* in compounds.

The answer of Ariovistus.

44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit, dē suis virtūtibus multa praedicāvit; trānsisse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessitum ā Gallis; nōn sine magnā ¹ spē magnisque praemiis domum propinquosque reliquisse; sēdēs

Chap. 13. 2 649, I (528, I); M. 391: 400; A. 321; 341, d; G. 541; B. 314; L. & M. 1029. — 3 642, 3 (523, II, I, n.); M. 324; A. 338, a; G. 651; B. 315, 3 L. & M. 723. — 4 512, 1 (455, 1); M. 84, 1; A. 105, d; G. 315; B. 91, 5; L. & M. 1064.

Chap. 44. 1 751, 3, n. 1 (636, III, 2); M. 488; A. 385, No. 13; G. 698; B. 374, 4.

habere in Gallia ab ipsis concessas, obsides ipsorum voluntate datos; stipendium capere iure belli, quod victores victis imponere consueverint. non sese Gallis, sed Gallios sibi bellum intulisse: omnes Galliae civitates ad se oppugnandum venire ac contra se castra habuisse; eas omnes copias a se uno proelio pulsas ac superatas esse. si iterum experiri velint, se iterum paratum esse **dēcertāre**; si pace uti velint, **inīquum** esse de stipendio recusare, quod sua voluntate ad id tempus pependerit. amicitiam populi Romani ² sibi **ōrnāmentō** et praesidio, non **dētrimentō** esse oportere, idque se ea spe petisse. si per populum ¹⁰ Romanum stipendium remittatur et dediticii **subtrahantur**, non minus **libenter** sese recusaturum populi Romani amicitiam quam appetierit. quod multitudinem Germanorum in Galliam traducat, id se sui munienti, non Galliae **impugnandae** causam facere; eius rei **testimōnium** esse quod nisi rogatus non venerit, et quod bel- ¹⁵ lum non intulerit, sed defenderit. se prius in Galliam venire quam populum Romanum. **numquam** ante hoc tempus exercitum populi Romani Galliae provinciae fines egressum. quid sibi vellet? cur in suas possessiones veniret? provinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, **sicut** illam nostram. ut ipsi concedi non oporteret ²⁰ si in nostros fines impetum faceret, sic item nos esse iniquos, qui in suo iure se **interpellāremus**. quod fratres a senatu Haeduos appellatos diceret, non se tam barbarum neque tam imperitum esse rerum ut non sciret neque bello Allobrogum proximo Haeduos Romanis auxilium tulisse neque ipsos in his **contentiōibus**, ²⁵ quas Haeduī secum et cum Sequanis habuissent, auxilio populi Romani usos esse. debere se **suspiciari simulata** Caesarem amicitiam quod exercitum in Galliam habeat sui **opprimendi** causam habere. qui nisi decedat atque exercitum **dēducatur** ex his **regiōibus**, sese illum non pro amico, sed hoste habiturum. quod si eum inter- ³⁰ fecerit, multis sese nobilibus principibusque populi Romani **gratum**

esse factūrum: id sē ab ipsīs per eōrum nūntiōs ³compertum habēre, quōrum omnium grātiā atque amicitiam ēius morte redimere posset. quod sī dēcessisset et liberā possessionē Galliae sibi trādidisset, māgnō sē illum praeimiō **remūnerātūrum** ⁵et quaecumque bella gerī vellet, sine ūllō ēius **labōre** et periculō cōfectūrum.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) Hendiadys. (2.) The dative of service. (3.) The genitive with adjectives. (4.) The impersonal construction. (5.) The ablative of time.

Caesar's reply. The conference broken off by an attack of the Germans.

45. Multa ab Caesare in eam **sententiam** dicta sunt, quārē negōtiō dēsistere nōn ¹posset, et neque suam neque populī Rōmānī cōnsuētūdinem patī utī optimē merentēs sociōs d̄sereret, ¹⁰neque sē iūdicāre Galliam **potius** esse Ariovistī quam populī Rōmānī. bellō superātōs esse Arvernōs et **Rutēnōs** ab Q. Fābiō **Māximō**, quibus populus Rōmānus **ignōvisset** neque in prōvinciam **redēgisset** neque stīpendium imposuisset. quod sī ²antīquissimum quodque tempus spectārī oportēret, populī Rōmānī ¹⁵iūstissimum esse in Galliā imperium; sī iūdicium sēnātūs **observārī** oportēret, liberam dēbēre esse Galliam, quam bellō victam suis lēgibus utī voluisset.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The indirect question. (2.) Distinction between ablative of agent and ablative of means. (3.) The dative after special verbs. (4.) *Quisque* with superlatives.

46. Dum haec in conloquiō ¹geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est equitēs Ariovistī propius ²tumulum accēdere et ad nostrōs **adē-**

Chap. 44. 3 431, 3 (388, 1, N.); M. 284; A. 292, c; G. 238; B. 337, 6; L. & M. 1018.

Chap. 45. 1 649 (529, I); M. 394; A. 334; G. 467; B. 300; L. & M. 810. — 2 515, 2 (458, 1); M. 460, 4; A. 93, c; G. 318, 2; B. 252, 5, c; L. & M. 1069.

Chap. 46. 1 533, 4 (467, 4); M. 353; A. 276, c; G. 229, R.; B. 293, 1; L. & M. 917. — 2 420, 5 (437, 1); M. 258, 2; A. 234, e; G. 359, N. 1; B. 141, 3.

quitāre, **lapidēs** tēlaque in nostrōs conicere. Caesar loquendi finem facit sēque ad suōs recēpit suīsque imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs rēicerent. nam **etsi** sine ūllō periculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equitatū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat ut pulsīs hostibus dīci posset eōs ab sē per fidem in conloquiō circumventōs. posteaquam in **vulgus** militum **elātum** est quā adrogantiā in conloquiō Ariovistus ūsus ³omnī Galliā Rōmānīs **interdixisset**, impetumque in nostrōs eīus equitēs fēcissent, eaque rēs conloquium ut **dīrēmisset**, multō māior alacritās studiumque pūgnandī māius exercitui **iniectum** est. 10

Topics for Study.

(1.) The regular tense used with *dum*. (2.) The two constructions after *proprius*, *propior*, *proxime*, *proximus*. (3.) The construction with *interdixisset*. (4.) The objective genitive.

The ambassadors sent to Ariovistus are put in chains.

47. ¹Biduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittit: velle sē dē hīs rēbus, quae inter cōs agī coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere cum eō: utī aut iterum conloquiō diem cōstitueret, aut, sī id minus vellet, ex suīs [lēgātīs] aliquem ad sē mitteret. conloquendī Caesarī causa vīsa nōn est, et eō magis, quod prīdiē ¹⁵eīus diēi Germānī retinērī nōn poterant quīn in nostrōs tēla ²conicerent. lēgātum ex suīs sēsē magnō cum periculō ad eum missūrum et hominibus feris obiectūrum existimābat. commodissimum vīsum est Gāium Valerium Procillum, C. Valerī **Cabūri** filium, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte **adulēscētem**, cūius pater ²⁰ā Gāiō Valeriō **Flaccō** ³civitate dōnātus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae **scientiam**, quā multā iam Ariovistus

Chap. 46. 3 464, 3 (413); M. 236; A. 243; G. 390, 2; B. 214; L. & M. 600.

Chap. 47. 1 488, 1 (430); M. 248; A. 250; G. 403, n. 4; B. 223; L. & M. 655. — 2 595, 2 (504, 4); M. 341, 3; A. 319, d; G. 554; B. 284, 3; L. & M. 913. — 3 426, 6 (384, II, 2); M. 203; A. 225, d; G. 348; B. 187, 1, a, L. & M. 535.

longinquā cōnsuetūdine ūtēbātur, et quod in eō **peccandī** Germanīs causa nōn esset, ad eum mittere, et M. **Metium**, quī hospitio Ariovistī ūtēbātur. hīs mandāvit ut quae diceret Ariovistus cōgnōscerent et ad sē referrent. quōs cum apud sē in castris
 5 Ariovistus **cōnspexisset**, exercitū suō praesente **conclāmāvit**: quid ad sē venirent? an **speculandī** causā? conantēs dicere prohibuit et in catēnās coniēcit.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The ablative of degree of difference. (2.) *Coepi* with a passive infinitive.
 (3.) The construction after verbs of hindering. (4.) The constructions with *donare*.

The German method of fighting.

48. Eōdem diē castra **prōmōvit** et milibus passuum sex ā Caesaris castris sub monte cōnsēdit. postridiē ēius diēi praeter
 10 castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et milibus passuum duōbus **ultrā** eum castra fēcit eō cōnsiliō, utī frūmentō commeātūque, quī ex Sēquanīs et Haeduīs ¹supportārētur, Caesarem interclūderet. ex eō diē diēs **continuōs** quīnque Caesar **prō** castris suās cōpiās **prōdūxit** et aciem instrūctam habuit, ut, sī vellet
 15 Ariovistus procliō contendere, eī potestās nōn deesset. Ariovistus hīs omnibus diēbus exercitum castris continuit, equestrī procliō cotidiē contendit. **Genus** hōc erat pūgnae, quō sē Germanī **exercuerant**. equitum milia erant sex, **totidem** numerō peditēs **vēlocissimi** ac fortissimi, quōs ex omni cōpiā singuli
 20 singulōs suae salutis causā dēlēgerant: cum hīs in procliīs **versābantur**. ad hōs sē equitēs recipiebant: hī, sī quid erat dūrius, **concurrēbant**: sī quī graviōre vulnere acceptō equō **dēciderat**, **circumsistēbant**; sī quō erat longius **prōdeundum** aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne **celeritās** ut **iubis**
 25 equōrum sublevātī **cursum** adaequārent.

ARIOVISTI CLADES.

CAESAR BELL. GALL. I, 42-54.

auctore Alb. v. Kampen.

MILIA PASSUUM



Ariovisti equites
locus
collocati
Caesaris legio X

Ariovisti
castra
1,48,1

Hartmann's
weiler

Cernay

Alt Than

Thur

Wittelsheim

castra
majora

proelium equestre
Dio Cass. 38,48

Germanorum
ad Rhenum fuga

Nonnenbruchwald

P. Crassus
cum
equitatu
Ober
Aspach

Caesar cum VI legionib
Germanorum acies

Ariovisti
castra
1,48,2

alarit

Michael
bach
castra
minora

Nied Aspach

Schweighausen

Caementum a Sep.
et Aquilis supportum ad Dolter

Dolter

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The manners of the Germans. (2.) The subjunctive by attraction. (3.) The ablative of time. (4.) The ablative of specification.

Ariovistus attacks the lesser camp of Caesar, but does not dare to contend in battle.

49. Ubi eum ¹castris sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē diūtius commēatū prohiberētur, ultrā eum locum quō in locō Germānī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sexcentōs ab iīs, castris **idōneum** locum dēlēgit aciēque triplici īnstrūctā ad eum locum vēnit. prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, ²tertiam castra mūnīre iussit. hīc locus ab hoste circiter passūs sexcentōs, utī dictum est, aberat. eō circiter hominum numerō sēdecim milia expedita cum omnī equitatū Ariovistus mīsīt, quae cōpiae nostrōs perterrerent et mūnitiōe ³prohiberent. nihilō **sētius** Caesar, ut ante cōstituerat, duās aciēs hostem **prōpulsāre**, tertiam opus perficere ¹⁰iussit. mūnītis castris duās ibi legiōnēs reliquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra māiōra redūxit.

Topic for Study.

The Roman camp.

50. Proximō diē īnstitūtō suō Caesar ē castris utrīsque cōpiās suās ēdūxit paulumque ā māiōribus castris **prōgressus** aciem īnstrūxit, hostibus pūgnandī potestātem fēcīt. ubi nē tum quidem ¹⁵eōs prōdire intellēxit, circiter **merīdiem** exercitum in castra redūxit. tum dēnum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum, quae castra minōra oppūgnāret, mīsīt. ācritur **utrimque usque** ad vesperum pūgnātum est. sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus multīs et inlātis et acceptis vulneribus in castra redūxit. cum ²⁰ex captivīs quaereret Caesar quamobrem Ariovistus proeliō nōn

Chap. 49. 1 Intr. 121. — 2 Intr. 125, 1) a. — 3 590 (497, I); M. 328; A. 317; G. 630; B. 282; L. & M. 893; 835.

dēcertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germānōs ea cōnsuētūdō ¹esset ut mātres familiae eōrum **sortibus** et **vāticinātiōnibus** **dēclārārent** ²utrum proelium committī ex ūsū esset, **necne**: eās ita dicere: nōn esse **fās** Germānōs superāre, sī ante novam
5 **lūnam** proeliō contendissent.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The mood used with *quod* to assign a reason on another's authority. (2.)
Clauses of result. (3.) Double questions.

The battle.

51. Postrīdiē ēius diēi Caesar praesidiō utrīsq; castrīs, quod satis esse vīsum est, reliquit, omnīs ¹**ālārīōs** in cōspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōstituit, quod minus multitudīne mīlitum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat, ut ad **spe-**
10 **ciem** ālārīis ūterētur; ipse triplici īnstrūctā aciē usque ad castra hostium accessit. tum dēmum necessariō Germānī suās cōpiās castrīs ēdūxērunt **generātīmque** cōstituērunt paribus intervāllīs, Harūdēs, **Marcomannōs**, **Tribocēs**, **Vangionēs**, **Nemetēs**, **Sedusiōs**, **Suēbōs**, omnemque aciē suā **rēdis** et carrīs circumdederunt, nē
15 qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. eō mulierēs imposuērunt, quae in proelium proficiscentēs mīlites **passis** manibus flentēs implorābant nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent.

Topic for Study.

The Roman legion.

52. Caesar singulis legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et ¹**quaestōrem** praefēcit, utī eōs testēs suae quisque virtūtis habēret; ipse ā
20 dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē fīrmā hōstium esse

Chap. 50. 1 588, II (516, II): M. 357; 400; A. 321; 341, *d*; G. 628; 541; B. 286, 1; L. & M. 846; 791. — 2 380, 1; 650, 1 (353, n. 3); M. 390, 3; A. 211; G. 459; L. & M. 705.

Chap. 51. Intr. 107.

Chap. 52. 1 Intr. 110, *c*.

animadverterat, proelium commisit. ita nostrī ācriter in hostēs signō datō impetum fēcērunt, itaque hostēs **repentē** celeriterque **prōcurrērunt**, ut spatium pīla in hostēs coniciendī nōn darētur. rēiectis pīlis, **comminus** gladiīs pūgnātum est. at Germānī, celeriter ex cōnsuētūdine suā phalange factā, impetūs gladiōrum ex-⁵ cēpērunt. repertī sunt complūrēs nostrī mīlitēs, quī in ²phalangas ³īnsilīrent et scūta manibus **revellerent** et dē superō vulnerarent. cum hostium aciēs ā sinistrō **cornū** pulsa atque in fugam conversa esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitudine suōrum nostram aciem **premēbant**. id cum animadvertisset **Publius Crassus** ¹⁰ adulēscēns, quī equitātūī praeerat, quod expeditior erat quam hī, quī inter aciem versābantur, ⁴tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostrīs **subsidiō** mīsīt.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The gerund with direct object. (2.) The Greek accusative plural. (3.) The subjunctive of characteristic. (4.) The idiom *a sinistro cornu*. (5.) The dative of service.

The defeat of the Germans. Caesar leads his army into winter quarters and sets out for Cisalpine Gaul.

53. Ita proelium restitūtum est, atque omnēs hostēs **terga** **vertērunt** neque prius **fugere** dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhē-¹⁵ num mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque pervēnērunt. ibi perpaucī aut vīribus cōfīsī **trānāre** contendērunt aut lintribus **inventis** sibi salūtem reperērunt. in hīs fuit Ariovistus, quī **nāviculam dēligātam** ad rīpam **nactus** eā profūgit: reliquōs omnēs cōnsecūtī equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt. duae fuērunt Ariovistī ²⁰ uxorēs, una **Suēba** ¹nātiōne, quam domō sēcum dūxerat, altera Nōrica, rēgis **Vocciōnis** soror, quam in Galliā dūxerat ā frātre

Chap. 52. **2** 109 (68); M. 52, 9; A. 63, f; G. 65, R. 2; B. 47, 3; L. & M. 180.
— **3** 590 (497, 1); M. 382, 4; A. 317, 2; G. 630; B. 282, 2; L. & M. 835. —
4 Intr. 125, 1) a.

Chap. 53. **1** 480 (424); M. 238; A. 253; G. 397; B. 226; L. & M. 650.



SIGNUM.

missam: utracque in eā fugā **periērunt**. duae filiae hārum, altera occīsa, altera capta est. Gāius Valerius Procillus, cum ā custōdibus in fugā ²**trinīs** catēnīs **vinctus traherētur**, in ipsum Caesarem hostēs ³equitātū persequentem **incidit**. quae quidem rēs Caesarī nōn minōrem quam ipsa victōria **voluptātem** attulit, quod hominem **honestissimum** prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et **hospitem**, ēreptum ē manibus hostium sibi restitūtum vidēbat, neque eius calamitātē dē tantā voluptātē et **grātulātiōne** quicquam fortūna dēminuerat. is sē praesente dē sē **ter** sortibus cōsultum dicēbat utrum ignī **statim necārētur**, an in aliud tempus **reservārētur**: sortium beneficio sē esse **incolumem**. item M. Mētius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) Semi-deponent verbs. (2.) The ablative of specification. (3.) Distributive numerals.

54. Hōc procliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō Suēbī, quī ad ripās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertī coepērunt; quōs **Ubī**, quī proximū ¹Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs insecūtī, māgnū ex hīs numerum occīdērunt. Caesar ūnā **aestāte** duōbus mājimīs bellīs ²⁰cōntectīs mātūrius paulō, quam tempus annī postulābat, in ²hīberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit, hībernīs Labiēnum **praeposuit**; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The accusative of limit of motion. (2.) The omission of the preposition with this accusative. (3.) The two possible constructions with *proximi*. (4.) The gerundive construction.

Chap. 53. **2** 164 (172, 3); M. 72, III; A. 95, *b*; G. 97, 3; B. 81, 4, *b*; L. & M. 1073. — **3** Intr. 125, 1) *b*.

Chap. 54. **1** 420, 5; 435, 2 (391, II, 2); M. 258, 2; A. 234, *e*; G. 359, N. 1; B. 141, 3. — **2** Intr. 121.

C. IULII CAESARIS
DE BELLŌ GALLICŌ
COMMENTARIUS SECUNDUS.

THE BELGIAN WAR.

The Belgian confederacy. Caesar proceeds against the Belgae.



1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre
Galliā [in hiberniis], ita uti suprà dē-
mōnstrāvimus, crēbri ad eum rūmōrēs
adferēbantur, litterisque item Labiēni
certior fiēbat omnēs Belgās, ¹quam 5
tertiam esse Galliae partem dixerāmus,
contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrare
obsidēsque inter sē dare. ²coniūrandi
hās esse causās: primum, quod ³verē-
rentur nē omnī pācātā Galliā ad eōs 10
exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde,
quod ab nōnnūllis Gallis sollicitāren-
tur, partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius
in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre
atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferēbant, partim quī mō- 15
bilitāte et levitāte animī ⁴novīs imperiīs studēbant, ab nōn-
nūllis etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque iīs, quī ad

Chap. 1. 1 396, 2 (445, 4); M. 182, 4; A. 199; G. 614, 3, b; B. 250, 3; L. & M. 824; 826. — 2 626 (542, I); M. 280; A. 298; G. 428; B. 338, 1; L. & M. 998. — 3 588, II (516, II); M. 357; 400; A. 321; 341, d; G. 541; B. 286, 1; L. & M. 846; 791. — 4 426 (385); M. 205; A. 227; G. 346; B. 187, 2; L. & M. 530; 531.

condūcendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant, vulgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōsequi poterant.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The attraction of the antecedent. (2.) The genitive of the gerund. (3.) *Quod* assigning a reason on the authority of another. (4.) The idiom *molestē ferebant*. (5.) The ablative of cause. (6.) The dative with special verbs.

2. His nūntiīs litterisque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in 5 citeriōre Galliā novās cōscripsit et ¹initā aestāte, in interiōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Quintum **Pedium** lēgātum mīsīt. ipse, cum primum pābuli cōpia esse ²inciperet, ad exercitum venit. dat negōtium **Senonibus** reliquisque Gallis, quī finitimī Belgis erant, uti ea, quae apud eōs gerantur, cōgnōscant sēque dē his 10 rēbus certiōrem faciant. hī cōstanter omnēs nūntiāverunt manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. tum vērō dubitandum nōn existimāvit quā ad eōs proficiscerētur. rē frumentāriā comparātā castra movet ³diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad finēs Belgārum pervenit.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative absolute. (2.) Relative clause of purpose. (3.) The idiom *cum primum*. (4.) *Cum* in temporal clauses. (5.) The impersonal construction.

The Remi submit to Caesar and inform him of the strength of the confederates.

15 3. Eō cum dē imprōvisō celeriusque omnī ¹opiniōne vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī ²Galliae ex Belgis sunt, ad eum lēgātōs **Iccium** et **Andecumborium**, primōs civitātis, mīsērunt, quī ³dicerent sē suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestātem populi Rōmānī per-

Chap. 2. 1 489 (431); M. 255; A. 255; G. 409; B. 227; L. & M. 638. — 2 600, II (521, II, 2); M. 347; A. 325; G. 585; B. 288, B; L. & M. 588. — 3 486 (429); M. 243; A. 256; G. 393; B. 231; L. & M. 631.

Chap. 3. 1 471 (417); M. 239, 1; A. 247; G. 398; B. 217, 1; L. & M. 619. — 2 434 (391, 1); M. 214; A. 234, a; G. 359; B. 192; 1200; L. & M. 536. — 3 590 (497, 1); M. 382, 3; A. 317; G. 630; B. 282, 2; L. & M. 893; 835.

mittere, neque sē cum Belgīs reliquīs **cōnsēnsisse** neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque, quī **cis** Rhēnum incolant, sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse, tantumque esse 5 eōrum omnium furōrem ut nē **Suessiōnēs** quidem, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque suōs, quī eōdem ⁴iūre et eīsdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsīs habeant, dēterrere potuerint quin cum hīs cōsentirent.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The idiom *celerius omni opinione*. (2.) The dative after adjectives.
(3.) Adjectives used substantively. (4.) The two possible constructions after *paratus*.

4. Cum ab hīs quaereret quae cīvitātēs, quantaēque in armīs 10 essent et quid in bellō ¹possent, sic reperiēbat: **plērōsque** Belgās esse ortōs ab Germānīs ²Rhēnumque **antīquitus** trāductōs propter loci **fertilitātem** ibi cōnsēdisse Gallōsque, quī ea loca incolerent, **expulisse**, sōlōsque esse quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā omnī Galliā vexātā Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā finēs suōs **ingredī** 15 prohibuerint; quā ex rē fierī utī eārum rērum memoriā māgnam sibi auctōritātem māgnōsque spīritūs in rē militārī sūmerent. dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre **explōrāta** Rēmī dicēbant, propterea quod **propinquitātibus** adfīnitātibusque coniūctī quantam quisque multitudinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit cōgnōverint. plūrimum inter eōs **Bellovacōs** et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valēre: hōs posse cōficere armāta milia centum: pollicitōs ex eō numerō **ēlēcta** LX, tōtius bellī imperium sibi postulāre. **Suessiōnēs** suōs esse finitimōs; lātissimōs **ferācissimōs**que agrōs possidēre. apud eōs 25

Chap. 3. 4 477 (421, 1); M. 253; A. 249; G. 407; B. 218, 1; L. & M. 646.

Chap. 4. 1 649, 11 (529, 1); M. 394; A. 334; G. 467; B. 300; L. & M. 810.

-- 2 413 (376, n.); M. 193; A. 239, 2, n. 2; G. 331, r. 1; B. 179, 3; L. & M. 501.

fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā Diviciācum, tōtius Galliae potentissimum, quī ³cum māgnae partis hārum regiōnum, tum etiam **Brittaniae** imperium obtinuerit: nunc esse rēgem **Galbam**: ad hunc propter iūstitiam **prudentiamque** tōtius belli summam
 5 omnium voluntāte **dēferri**: oppida habēre numerō XII, pollicērī milia armāta quinquāgintā: totidem **Nerviōs**, quī māximē ferī inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint; XV milia **Atrebātēs**, **Ambiānōs** X milia, **Morinōs** XXV milia, **Menapiōs** VII milia. **Caletōs** X milia, **Velicassēs** et **Viromanduōs** totidem, **Aduātucōs**
 10 decem et novem milia; **Condrūsōs**, **Eburōnēs**. **Caeroesōs**, **Pae-mānōs**, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrārī ad XL milia.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The adverbial accusative. (2.) The indirect question. (3.) The two accusatives with transitive verbs compounded with a preposition. (4.) The idiom *plurimum valere*. (5.) Correlatives.

Caesar encamps on the banks of the Arona.

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus **liberāliterque** ōrātiōne **prōsecūtus** omnem senātum ad sē convenīre principumque liberōs obsidēs
 15 ad sē addūcī iussit. quae omnia ab hīs **diligenter** ad diem facta sunt. ipse Diviciācum Haeduum māgnopere cohortātus docet quantō opere rei pūblīcae commūnisque salutis ¹intersit manūs hostium **distinērī**, nē cum tantā multitudine ūnō tempore **cōnfligendum** sit. id fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Haeduī in finēs
 20 Bellovacōrum **intrōdūxerint** et cōrum agrōs ²populārī coeperint. hīs mandātis eum ab sē dimittit. postquam omnēs Belgārū cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre vīdit, neque iam longē abesse ab iīs quōs mīserat explorātōribus et ab Rēmīs cōgnōvit flūmen **Axonam**, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum fini-

Chap. 4. 3 657, 4, N. 1 (554, I, 5); M. 465, 2; A. 155, α, Ex. 4; G. 588, B. 290, 2; L. & M. 842.

Chap. 5. 1 449, 1 (406, III); M. 230, 1; A. 222; G. 381; B. 211, 1; L. & M. 580. — 2 607 (533, I, 1); M. 261; A. 271; G. 423, B. 328, 1; L. & M. 954.

bus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. quae rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis ³ mūnīebat et post eum quae essent tūta ab hostibus reddēbat et commeātūs ab Rēmīs reliquīsque civitatibus ut sine periculō ad eum portārī possent efficiēbat. in eō flūmine pōns erat. ibi praesidium⁵ pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium Sabinum lēgātum cum sex ⁴ cohortibus relinquit; castra in altitudinem pedum duodecim ⁵ vāllō ⁶ fossāque duodēvīgintī pedum mūnīre iubet.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The complementary infinitive. (2.) The intensive pronoun. (3.) The construction with *interest*. (4.) The ablative of manner. (5.) Substantive clauses of result. (6.) The Roman method of fortifying the camp.

Bibrax, a town of the Remi, attacked by the Belgae. Caesar relieves the siege and fortifies a camp.

6. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum ¹ nōmine Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum octō. id ex itinere magnō impetū Belgae oppū. 10

gnāre coepērunt. aegrē eō diē sustentātum est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppūgnātiō est haec. ubi circumiectā ¹⁵ multitudīne hominū tōtīs ² moenibus undique in mūrū lapidēs iaci ³ coeptī sunt mūrūque dēfēnsōribus nūdātus ²⁰



TESTUDO.

est, testūdine factā [portās] succēdunt mūrūque subruunt.

Chap. 5. 3 Intr. 125, 2). — 4 Intr. 99. — 5 Intr. 121, b. — 6 Intr. 121, a, n.

Chap. 6. 1 480 (424); M. 238, 1; A. 253; G. 397; B. 226; L. & M. 650. — 2 483 (425, II, 1); M. 240; A. 258, f; G. 389; B. 228, 1; L. & M. 626. — 3 299, 1 (297, I, 1); M. 144, 6, n.; A. 143, a; G. 423, 2, n. 3; B. 133, 1; L. & M. 358.

quod tum facile fiēbat. nam cum tanta multitudō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōsistendī potestās erat nullī. cum finem oppūgnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, summā nōbilitate et grātiā inter suōs, quī tum oppidō prae fuerat, ūnus ex iīs
 5 quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum mittit, nisi subsidium sibi **submittātur**, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative of specification. (2.) The ablative of place. (3.) The ablative of time. (4.) The voice of *coepi* when used with a passive infinitive. (5.) The ablative of separation.

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar ¹isdem dūcibus ūsus quī nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētās sagittariōs et funditorēs
 10 Baleārēs ²subsidio oppidānis mittit; quōrum adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpūgnandī accessit, et hostibus eādē dē causā spēs potiundī oppidi discessit. itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī omnibus viciis aedificiisque ³quōs adire potuerant incēnsis ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ab milibus passuum minus duobus castra posuerunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque ignibus significābātur, amplius ⁴milibus passuum octō in lātitudinem patēbant.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The construction after *utor*. (2.) The dative of purpose. (3.) The treatment of *potior* in the gerundive construction. (4.) The idiom *de media nocte*.

8. Caesar prīmō et propter multitudinem hostium et propter
 20 eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit; cotidiē

Chap. 7. 1 477 (421, 1); M. 253; A. 249; G. 407; B. 218, 1; L. & M. 646. — 2 433 (390); M. 206; A. 233; G. 356; B. 191; L. & M. 548 — 3 398, 1 (445, 3, n. 1); M. 182, 3; A. 198, a; G. 614, r. 5; B. 250, 2; L. & M. 484. — 4 471 (417); M. 239, 1; A. 247; G. 398; B. 217, 1; L. & M. 615.

Bibrax(Vieux Laon)

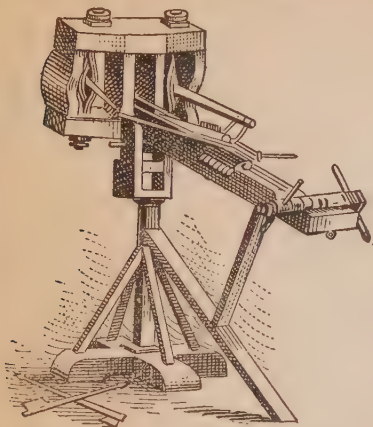
AD AXONAM PUGNA

CAESAR BELL. GALL. II, 6-10

auctore Alb. v. Kampen.



tamen equestribus proeliis quid hostis virtute ¹ posset et quid nostrī auderent **periclitābatur**. ubi nostrōs nōn esse inferiōres intellēxit, locō prō castris ad aciem instruendam nātūrā oppor-



CATAPULTA.

tūnō atque idōneō, quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paulu-
lum ex plānitie ēditus tantum
adversus in lātitudinem patēbat
quantum ² locī aciēs instrūcta
occupāre poterat, atque ex utrā-
que parte lateris dēiectūs habē-
bat et **frontem** lēniter fastigātus
paulatim ad plānitiam redibat,
ab utrōque latere eius collis
trānsversam fossam obdūxit
circiter passuum CD, et ad 15
³ extrēmās ⁴ fossās castella cōn-
stituit ibique **tormenta** conlo-

cāvit, nē, cum aciem instrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitu-
dine poterant, ab lateribus pūgnantēs suōs circumvērē possent.
hōc factō duābus legiōnibus quās proximē cōscripserat in cas-
tris relictis, ut, si quō opus esset, subsidiō dūcī possent, reliquās
sex legiōnēs prō castris in aciē cōstituit. hostēs item suās
cōpiās ex castris ēductās instrūxerant.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The indirect question. (2.) The gerundive construction. (3.) The partitive genitive. (4.) *Cum* in temporal clauses. (5.) The use of participles. (6.) The adverbial accusative. (7.) The difference of construction after *ubi* and *cum*, as illustrated in this chapter. (8.) The Roman engines of war.

Chap 8 1 649, II (529, 1); M. 394; A. 334; G. 467; B. 300; L. & M. 810.
— 2 440. 5 (397, 3); M. 225, 2; A. 216, 3; G. 369; B. 201, 2; L. & M. 564. —
3 497, 4 (440, 2, N. 1); A. 193; G. 291, R. 2; B. 241. L. & M. 565. — 4 Intr.
121, a, N.

The Belgae try to cross the Arona. The Romans attack them in the rear and pursue them with great slaughter.

9. Palūs erat nōn m̄gna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. hanc ¹sī nostrī trānsirent hostēs exspectābant; nostri autem, sī ab illīs initium trāseundī fieret, ut impedītōs ²aggrederentur, parātī in armīs erant. interim procliō equestri ⁵inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. ubi **neutrī** trāseundī initium faciunt, ³secundiōre equitum procliō nostrīs Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. hostēs **prōtinus** ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōstrātum est. ibi vadīs repertis partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt eō ¹⁰cōnsiliō, ut, sī possent, castellum, cui praeerat Quīntus Titūrius lēgātus, expūgnārent pontemque **interscinderent**; sī minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī m̄gnō nōbīs ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

Topics for Study.

(1.) Clauses of purpose. (2.) The ablative absolute construction with a noun and adjective. (3.) The ablative of separation.

10. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et **levis** ¹⁵**armātūrae** Numidās, funditōres sagittariōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. ācrit̄ in eō locō pūgnātum est. hostēs impedītōs nostrī in flūmine aggressī m̄gnum eōrum numerum occidērunt: per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsire cōnantēs multitudine tēlōrum repulērunt; prīmōs, quī trānsierant, ²⁰equitātū circumventōs interfecērunt. hostēs ubi et ¹dē expūgnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trāseundō spem sē **fefellisse** intellexērunt neque nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem prōgredi pūgnandi

Chap. 9. 1 649, II, 3 (529, II, 1, n. 1); M. 390, 2; A. 334, f; G. 460, b; B. 300, 3; L. & M. 812. — 2 568 (497, II); M. 328; A. 317; G. 545; B. 282; L. & M. 891; 892; 893. — 3 489 (431, 4) M. 255; A. 255, a; G. 409; B. 227, 1; L. & M. 638.

Chap. 10. 1 623 (544, 2); M. 287; 297; 292; A. 301; G. 433; B. 339; L. & M. 1203.

causā vidērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frumentāria dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō cōstituērunt optimum esse ² domum suam quemque revertī et, quōrum in finēs primum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendendōs undique convenīrent, ut potius in suis quam in aliēnis finibus dēcertārent et domesticis cōpiīs rei frū-⁵ mentariae ūterentur. ad eam sententiam cum reliquīs causīs haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Diviciācum atque Haeduōs finibus Bellovacōrum appropinquāre cōgnōverant. hīs ³ persuādēri ut diūtius morārentur neque suis auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.

10

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The idiom *certior factus*. (2.) The ablative of the gerundive with *de*.
 (3.) The accusative of limit of motion. (4.) The dative with compounds. (5.) The impersonal construction.

11. Eā rē cōstitutā secundā vigiliā māgnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castris ēgressi nūllō certō ōrdine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum ¹ peteret et domum pervenire properāret, ² fecērunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur. hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cōgnitā insidiās veritus, quod, ¹⁵ quā dē causā discēderent nōndum perspexerat, exercitum equitātumque castris continuit. primā lūce cōfirmatā rē ab explōrātōribus omnem equitātum, quī novissimum āgmen ³ morārētur, praemisit. hīs Quīntum Pedium et Lūcium Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit. Titum Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus ²⁰ tribus subsequi iussit. hī novissimōs adorti et multa milia passuum prōsecuti māgnam multitudinem eōrum fugientium conciderunt, cum ab extrēmō āgmine, ad quōs ventum erat, cōsisterent

Chap. 10. **2** 419, 1 (380, II, 2, 1); M. 199, 2; A. 258, *b*; G. 337; B. 182, 1, *b*; L. & M. 515; 519. — **3** 302, 6 (301, 1); M. 205, *n*.; A. 230; G. 217; B. 187, II, *b*; L. & M. 686.

Chap. 11. **1** 598 (517); M. 355; A. 326; G. 586; B. 286, 2; L. & M. 863. — **2** 566 (498, II, *n*. 2); A. 332, *e*; G. 553, 1; L. & M. 902. — **3** 590 (497, I); M. 382, 3; A. 317; G. 630; B. 282, 2; L. & M. 893; 835.

fortiterque impetum nostrorum militum sustinerent, priores, quod abesse a periculo ⁴ viderentur neque ullam necessitate neque imperio continerentur, exaudito clamore perturbatis ordinibus omnes in fuga sibi praesidium ponerent. ita sine ullo periculo tantam
 5 eorum multitudinem nostri interfecerunt, quantum fuit diei spatium, sub occasumque solis destiterunt seque in castra, ut erat imperatum, reciperunt.

Topics for Study.

(1.) *Cum* in causal clauses. (2.) The idiom *prima luce*. (3.) Relative clauses of purpose. (4.) The subjunctive by attraction.

Caesar marches against the Suessiones and the Bellovaci.

Diviciacus pleads for the latter.

12. Postridie eius ¹ diei Caesar, priusquam se hostes ex terrore ac fuga ² reciperent, in fines Suessionum, qui proximi Remis
 10 erant, exercitum duxit et magno itinere [confecto] ad oppidum



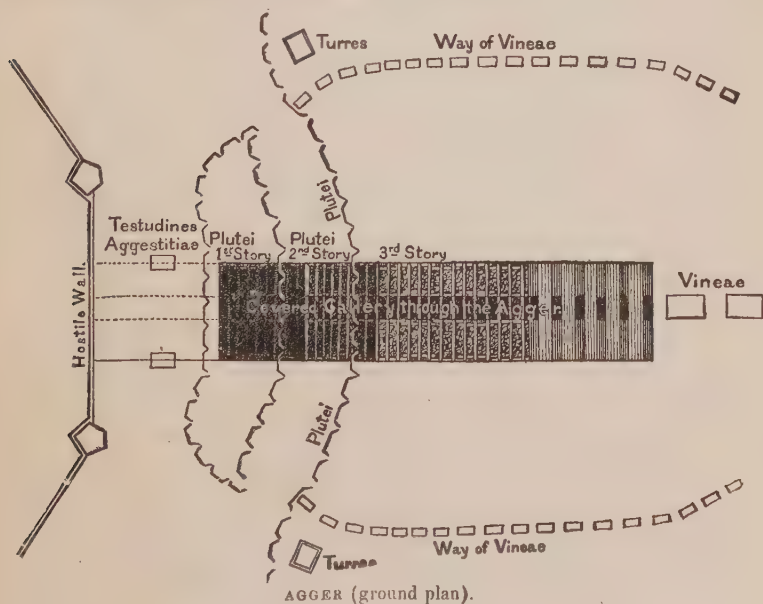
AGGER (perspective view).

Chap. 11. 4 652 (529, II); M. 405; A. 342; G. 629; B. 324; L. & M. 793; 851.

Chap. 12. 1 446, 5 (398, 5); M. 258, 2; A. 223, e; G. 372, n 3; B. 201, 3, a; L. & M. 553. — 2 605 (520, II); M. 351; A. 327; G. 577; B. 292; L. & M. 879; 880

Noviodūnum contendit. id ex itinere oppugnāre cōnātus, quod **vacuum** ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitudinem fossae mūrīque altitudinem paucis dēfendentibus expugnāre nōn potuit. castris mūnītis **vineās** agere quaeque ad oppugnandum ūsuī erant comparāre coepit. interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multītūdō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. celeriter vineīs ad oppidum āctis, ³**aggere** iactō **turribus**que cōstitūtis māgnitūdine operum, quae neque viderant ante Gallī neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditione mittunt et petentibus Rēmīs ut cōnservārentur impetrant.

10



Topics for Study.

- (1.) The genitive after *postridie*. (2.) The two possible constructions after *proximi*. (3.) The dative of purpose. (4.) The construction of the *agger*.

13. Caesar obsidibus acceptis primis civitatis atque ipsius Galbae regis duobus filiis armisque omnibus ex oppidō traditis in dēditionem Suessionēs accēpit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum **Brataspantium** 5 contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter milia passuum quinque abesset, omnēs maiōrēs ¹**nātū** ex oppidō ēgressi manūs ad Caesarem **tendere** et vōce significāre coepērunt sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armis contendere. item cum ad oppidum accessisset 10 castraque ibi pōneret, pueri mulierēsque ex murō passis manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānis petiērunt.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The adjective used substantively. (2.) The idiom *maiores natu*. (3.) The accusative of extent of space.

14. Prō hīs Diviciācus (nam post **discessum** Belgārum dīmissis Haeduōrum cōpiis ad eum reverterat) facit verba: Bellovacōs omni tempore in fidē atque amicitia civitatis **Haeduae** fuisse: impulsōs 15 ab suis principibus, qui ¹dicerent Haeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redactōs omnēs **indignitatēs** contumeliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. quī eius cōsiliū principēs fuissent, quod intellexerent quantam calamitātem civitatī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgisse. petere nōn 20 solum Bellovacōs, sed etiam prō hīs Haeduōs, ut suā **clēmētiā** ac mānsuetūdine in cōs utātur. quod sī fēcirit, Haeduōrum auctoritatem apud omnēs Belgās **amplificātūrum**; quōrum auxiliis atque opibus, sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōsuērunt.

Topic for Study.

The changes in moods, tenses, and persons in the indirect discourse.

Chap. 13. 1 480 (424); M. 238, 1; A. 253; G. 397; B. 226; L. & M. 650.

Chap. 14. 1 643 (524); M. 392; A. 336, 1, 2; G. 650; B. 313; L. & M. 1026.

Caesar's reply. Account of the Nervii,

15. Caesar honōris Dīviciāci atque Haeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōservātūrum dīxit; quod erat civitās magnā inter Belgās ¹auctōritāte atque hominum multitudine praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs poposcit. his trāditis omnibusque armīs ex oppidō conlātis ab eō locō in finēs Ambianōrum per-⁵ vēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine **morā** dēdidērunt. eōrum finēs Nervii attingēbant; quōrum dē naturā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiēbat; nūllum aditum esse ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil pati ²**vinī** reliquārumque rērum [ad **lūxuriam** pertinentium] inferri, quod iis rēbus **relanguēscere** animōs [eōrum] et ¹⁰remitti virtutem existimārent: esse hominēs ferōs magnaeque virtūtis; **increpitāre** atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent **patriam**que virtutem prōiēcissent; cōfirmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

15

Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative of cause. (2.) The objective genitive. (3.) The partitive genitive. (4.) The ablative of quality. (5.) The genitive of quality.

Caesar marches against the Nervii. Some Gauls and Belgians desert to the Nervii and give information.

16. Cum per eōrum finēs ¹trīdium iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captivīs ²**Sabim** flūmen ab castris suis nōn amplius ³mīlia passuum decem abesse: trāns id flūmen omnēs Nervios cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre unā cum Atrebātis et Viromanduis, finitimis suis (nam his utrisque persuāserant, uti ²⁰

Chap. 15. 1 473, 2 (419, III); M. 246; A. 251; G. 400; B. 224; L. & M. 543. — 2 442 (397, 1); M. 225, 2; A. 216, 3; G. 369; B. 201; L. & M. 559; 564.

Chap. 16. 1 417 (379); M. 197; A. 256; G. 336; B. 181; L. & M. 513 — 2 102, 2 (62, II, 2); M. 49; A. 56, a, 1; G. 57, r. 1; B. 37; L. & M. 185; 205. — 3 471, 4 (417, 1, n. 2); M. 239, 3; A. 247, c; G. 296, r. 4; B. 217, 3; L. & M. 615; 618.

eandem belli fortūnam experirentur); exspectārī etiam ab hīs Aduātucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere: mulierēs quīque per aetātem ad pūgnam inūtilēs vidērentur in eum locum coniēcisse quō propter palūdēs exercitui aditus nōn esset.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The accusative of duration of time. (2.) The idiom *iter fecisset*. (3.) The two possible co instructions after *amplius*. (4.) The dative with special verbs.

5 17. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs, explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit, quī locum ¹idōneum castrīs dēligant. cum ex dēditiciīs Belgīs reliquīsque ²Gallīs complūrēs Caesarem secūtī ūnā iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut postea ex captivīs cōgnitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsuētūdine ³itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā nocte ad Nervios
10 pervēnērunt atque hīs dēmōnstrārunt inter singulās legiōnēs impedimentōrum māgnū numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōtīi, cum prīma ⁴legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs māgnū ⁵spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinīs adorīri: quā pulsā impedimentisquē dīreptīs futurum ut reliquae contrā
15 cōnsistere nōn audērent. adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōnsilium quī rem dēferēbant quod Nervii antiquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hōc tempus eī rei student, sed, **quicquid** possunt, **pedestribus** valent cōpiīs), quō facilius finitimōrum equitātum, sī **praedandī** causā ad eōs vēnisset, impedirent,
20 **teneris arboribus incisis** atque inflexīs crēbrisque in lātitudinem rāmīs ēnātis et rubis sentibusque interiectis efflēcerant ut **instar mūrī** hae saepēs mūnimenta **praebērent**, quō nōn modo nōn **intrārī**, sed nē perspicī quidem posset. hīs rēbus cum iter āgminis nostrī impedirētur, nōn **omittendū** sibi cōnsilium Nervii
25 exīstimāvērunt.

Chap. 17. 1 Intr. 121. — 2 444 (397, n. 3); M. 225, 5, n. 2; A. 216, c; G 372, n. 2; B. 201, 1, a; L. & M. 559; 563. — 3 Intr. 122. — 4 Intr. 98. — 5 417 (379); M. 196; A. 257; G. 335; B. 181; L. & M. 513.

Topics for Study.

(1.) *Cum* in temporal clauses. (2.) The idiom *quicquam negotii*. (3.) The accusative of extent of space. (4.) The impersonal construction. (5.) The Roman legion. (6.) The Roman method of march.

The character of the ground. The assault of the Nervii.

18. Locī nātūra erat haec, quem ¹locum nostrī castris dēlēgerant. collis ab summō **aequāliter dēclivis** ad flūmen Sabin, quod suprā **nōmināvimus**, vergēbat. ab eō flūmine parī **acclivitātē** collis **nāscēbātur** adversus huic et **contrārius**, passūs circiter ducentōs infimus apertus, ab superiōre parte **silvestris**, ut nōn facile **intrōrsus** perspicī posset. intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae **stationēs** equitum vidēbantur. flūminis erat altitūdo circiter pedum trium.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The subjective genitive in all its divisions. (2.) The repetition of the antecedent in the relative clause. (3.) The substantive use of adjectives.

19. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs; sed **ratio** ōrdōque āgminis **aliter** sē habēbat ac Belgae ad Nervios dētulerant. nam quod ad hostēs appropinquabat, cōsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eās tōtius exercitūs impedimenta conlocārat; inde duae legiōnēs, quae proximē cōscriptae erant, tōtum āgmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedimēntis erant. equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittāriisque flūmen **trāsgressi** cum hostium equitātū proclium commiserunt cum sē illi **identidem** in silvās ad suos reciperent ac rūsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent, neque nostrī longius quam quem ad finem **porrēcta** loca aperta pertinēbant **cēdentēs** insequēti quī audērent, interim legiōnēs sex, quae ¹prīmae vēnerant, opere

Chap. 18. 1 399 (445, 9); M. 450; A. 200, a; G. 616; B. 251, 3; L. & M. 822.

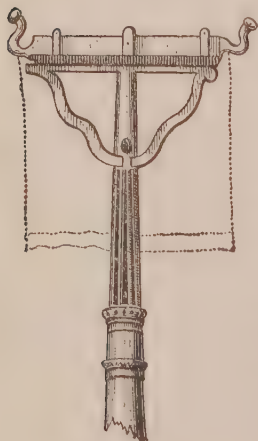
Chap. 19. 1 497, 3 (443); M. 424; A. 191; G. 325, r. 6; B. 239; 241. 2.

² **dimēnsō** castra mūnīre coepērunt. ubi prīma īmpedīmenta **nostrī** exercitūs ab iīs quī in silvīs abditī **latēbant** vīsa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendī proeliī convēnerat, ita ut intrā silvās aciem ōrdinēsque cōstituerant atque ipsī sēsē cōfirmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiīs **prōvolāvērunt** impetumque in nostrēs equitēs fēcērunt. hīs facile pulsīs ac **prōturbātis** incredibili celeritāte ad flūmen **dēcucurrērunt**, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine et iam in manibus nostris hostēs vidērentur. eādē autem celeritāte ³ **adversō** colle ad nostra castra atque eōs, quī in opere occupātī erant, contendērunt.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The ablative of accompaniment. (2) Contract forms. (3.) Two datives. (4.) Dependent verbs in passive sense.

The generalship and courage of Caesar.



VEXILLUM.

20 Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: **vexillum** prōpōnendum, quod erat īnsigne, cum ad arma concurrī oportēret, sīgnum ¹ **tubā** dandum, ab opere **revocandī** mīlitēs, quī ² paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcesserant arcescendī, aciēs īstruenda, ³ mīlitēs cohortandī, sīgnum dandum. quārum rērum māgnam partem temporis **brevitās** et **successus** hostium impediēbat. hīs **difficultātibus** duae rēs erant subsidiō, scientia atque ūsus mīlitum, quod superiōribus proeliīs exercitātī quid fierī oportēret nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescri-

Chap. 19. **2** 222, 2 (231, 2); M. 281, 6; A. 135, *o*; G. 167, n. 2; B. 112, *b*; L. & M. 689; 353. — **3** 489 (431); A. 258, *g*; G. 389; B. 218, 9; L. & M. 644.

Chap. 20. **1** Intr. 104. — **2** 498 (444, 1); M. 426; A. 93, *a*; G. 297, 2; B. 240, 1; L. & M. 678. — **3** Intr. 125, 1), *e*.

here quam ab aliis doceri poterant, et quod ab opere singulisque legionibus singulos legatos Caesar discedere nisi munitis castris **vetuerat**. hi propter propinquitatem et celeritatem hostium ⁴ nihil iam Caesaris imperium expectabant, sed per se quae videbantur **administrabant**. 5

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The gerundive construction. (2.) The significations of the comparative.
(3.) Distributive numerals. (4.) The dative of agency.

21. Caesar necessariis rebus imperatis, ad cohortandos milites, quam [in] partem **fors obtulit**, decucurrit et ad legionem decimam **devenit**. milites non longiore oratione cohortatus quam uti suae pristinae virtutis memoriam ¹ retinerent **ne** perturbarentur animo hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinerent, quod non longius hostes aberant quam quo **telum adici** ² posset, proelium committendi signum dedit. atque in alteram partem item cohortandi causam profectus pugnantibus occurrit. temporis tanta fuit **exiguitas** hostium-
 10
SCUTUM. 15
que tam paratus ad dimicandum animus, ut non modo ad insignia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeas induendas ³ scutisque tegimenta detrudenda tempus defuerit. quam quisque ab opere in partem casu devenit, quaeque prima 20 signa conspexit, ad haec constitit, ne in quaerendis suis pugnandi tempus dimitteret.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) A result clause with *ut* after *quam*. (2.) The dative after compounds.
(3.) Relative clause of result after *quam*. (4.) The ablative of separation.

Chap. 20. 4 416, 2 (378, 2); M. 190, 1; A. 240, a; G. 334; B. 176, 4; L. & M. 507.

Chap. 21. 1 570, 1 (502, 2); M. 339; A. 332, b; G. 631, 3; B. 284, 4; L. & M. 871. — 2 591, 6 (502, 2); M. 383, 3; A. 320, c; G. 298; B. 283, 2, a; L. & M. 836. — 3 Intr. 123, I, 2) b.

The various fortune of the battle.

22. Instrūctō exercitū, magis ut loci nātūra dēiectusque collis et necessitās temporis, quam ut rei militāris ratiō atque ōrdō



ARIES.

postulābat, cum dīversis legiōnibus¹ aliae aliā in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque dēnsissimis, ut ante dēmōstrāvimus, interiectis prōspectus impedīrētur, neque certa subsidia conlocārī neque quid in quāque parte

opus esset prōvidērī neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrārī poterant. itaque in tantā rerum inīquitāte fortūnae quoque ēventūs variū sequēbantur.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative absolute. (2.) The idiom *aliae alia*. (3.) The indirect question.

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae militēs, ut in sinistrā parte¹ aciē cōstiterant, pilis ēmissis cursū ac lassitūdine exanimātōs vulneribusque cōfectōs Atrebātēs (nam hīs ea pars obvenerat) celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulērunt et trānsīre cōnantēs īnsecūtī gladiis māgnam partem eōrum impeditam interfēcērunt. ipsī trānsīre flūmen nōn dūbitāvērunt et in locum inīquum prōgressī rūrsus resistentēs hostēs redintegrātō proeliō in fugam cōiēcērunt. item aliā in parte dīversae duae legiōnēs, undecima et octāva, prōfligātis Viromanduis, quibuscum erant congressī, ex locō superiōre in ipsīs flūminis ripīs proeliābantur at tōtis ferē ā fronte et ab sinistrā parte nūdātis castris, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et nōn māgnō ab eā intervallō septima cōstitisset, omnēs Nervii cōnfertissimō āgmine dūce

Chap. 22. 1 516 (459, 1); M. 440; A. 203, c; G. 319; B. 253, 2; L. & M. 1047.

Chap. 23. 1 134, 2 (120); M. 55, 4; A. 74, a; G. 63, R. 2, N. 1; B. 52, 3; L. & M. 236.

Bođuōgnātō quī summam imperiū tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars ²apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenīre, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The position of preposition *cum* with relative pronouns. (2.) The ablative of degree of difference. (3.) Two nouns in the ablative absolute construction. (4.) The ablative of place.

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae peditēs, quī cum iīs ūnā fuerant, quōs primō hostium impetū pulsōs 5 dīxeram, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversis hostibus occurrēbant ac rūsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant, et cālōnēs, quī ab **decumānā** portā ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsisse cōspexerant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum **respexissent** et hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versārī vidissent, **praecipitēs** fugae 10 sēsē mandābant. simul eōrum quī cum impedimentīs veniēbant clāmor **fremitusque** oriēbatur, ¹aliūque aliam in partem perterriti ferēbantur. quibus omnibus rēbus permōti equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opiniō est **singulāris**, quī auxiliī causā ab civitāte ad 'Caesarem missī vēnerant, cum multitudine hos- 15 tium castra complērī nostra, legiōnēs premī et paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās diversōs **dissipātōsque** in omnēs partēs fugere vidissent, dēspērātis nostrīs rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedimentisque eōrum hostēs potītōs civitātī renūntiāverunt. 20

Topics for Study.

- (1.) *Cum* in temporal clauses. (2.) The ablative of cause. (3.) The idiom *alii aliam in partem*. (4.) Agreement of a verb with compound subject.

Chap. 23. 2 Intr. 116.

Chap. 24. 1 516 (459, 1); M. 440; A. 203, c; G. 319; B. 253, 2; L. & M. 1047.

25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis ¹cohōrtātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, ubi suōs **urgērī** signisque in unum locum cōlātis duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs militēs sibi ipsōs ad pūgnam esse impedimentō vīdit, quārtae cohortis omnibus centuriōnibus 5 occīsīs **signiferō**que interfectō, signō amissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centuriōnibus aut vulnerātis aut occīsīs, in hīs ²pri-
mipilō P. **Sextiō Baculō**, fortissimō **virō**, multīs gravibusque vulneribus cōnfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset, reliquōs esse **tardiōrēs** et nōnnūllōs ab novissimis dēsertō proeliō **excēdere** 10 ac tēhā vitāre, hostēs neque ā fronte ex inferiōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque latere instāre et rem esse in angustō vīdit, neque ūllum esse subsidium quod submittī ³posset, scūtō ab novissimis unī ⁴militī dētrāctō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in primam aciem prōcessit centuriōnibusque nōminātīm ap-
15 pellātis reliquōs cohortātus militēs signa inferre et ⁵manipulōs ⁶**laxāre** iussit, quō facilius gladiis ūtī possent. cuius adventū spē inlātā militibus ac redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmīs suis rēbus **operam** **nāvāre** cuperet, paulum hostium impetus **tardātus** est.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The periodic structure. (2.) The relative clause of characteristic. (3.) The dative to supply the place of the ablative of separation.

Labienus sends the tenth legion as a relief to the Romans.

The defeat and excessive losses of the Nervii.

20 26. Caesar, cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōstitērat, item **urgērī** ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs militum monuit ut paulātīm sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et ¹conversa signa in hostēs

Chap. 25. 1 Intr. 125, 1) c. — 2 Intr. 100. — 3 591, 1 (503, 1); M. 383; A. 320, a; G. 631, 2; B. 283; L. & M. 838. — 4 427 (385, II, 2); M. 211. A. 229; G. 345, R. 1; B. 188, 2, d. — 5 Intr. 99. — 6 Intr. 114.

Chap. 26. 1 638 (549, 5); M. 281, 4; A. 292, R.; G. 668; B. 336, 3; L. & M. 1015.

inferrent. quō factō cum alius aliī subsidium ferret, neque timērent nē āversī ab hoste circumvenīrentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pūgnāre coepērunt. interim milītēs legiōnum duārum, quae in novissimō āgmine praesidiō impedīnentis fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō cursū incitātō in summō colle ab hostibus cōspiciēbantur,⁵ et T. Labiēnus, castrīs hostium potītus et ex locō superiōre, quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur cōspicātus decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mīsīt. quī cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā quō in locō rēs esset, quantōque in periculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versārētur cōgnōvissent, nihil ad celeritā-¹⁰ tem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The predicate use of the participle. (2.) The indirect question. (3.) The partitive genitive.

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōfectī **prōcubuissent**, scūtīs **innixī** proelium redintegrārent, tum cālōnēs perterritōs hostēs cōspiciātī etiam **inermēs** armātīs occurrerent, equitēs vērō, ut **turpitūdinem**¹⁵ fugae virtūte **dēlērent**, omnibus in locis pūgnārent,¹ quō sē legiōnāriīs militibus praeferrent. at hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salutis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt, ut, cum primī eōrum cecidissent, proximī **iacentibus insisterent** atque ex eōrum corporibus pūgnārent; hīs dēiectīs et **coacervātis cadaveribus**, quī²⁰ superessent ut ex tumultō tēla in nostrōs conicerent et pīla **intercepta** remitterent: ut nōn **nēquiquam** tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicārī dēbēret ausōs esse trānsire lātissimum flūmen, ascendere altissimās rīpās, subīre inīquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī māgnitūdo redēgerat.

25

Topics for Study.

(1.) The locative ablative. (2.) Purpose clauses introduced by *quo*. (3.) The dative with compounds.

Chap. 27. 1 568, 7 (497, 2); M. 328; 331; A. 317, *b*; G. 545, 2; B. 282, *a*; L. & M. 908.

28. Hōc proeliō factō et propē ad interneciōnem **gente** ac nōmine Nerviorum redactō maiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum pueris mulieribusque in **aestuāria** ac palūdēs coniectōs dixerāmus, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impeditum, victīs nihil tū-
 5 tum arbitrārentur, omnium quī supererant cōsensū lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt et in commemorandā civitātis calamitātē ex DC ad trēs **senātōrēs**, ex hominum milibus LX vix ad quīngentōs, quī arma ferre ¹possent, sēsē redactōs esse dixerunt. quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac **supplicēs** ūsus
 10 **misericiordiā** vidērētur, diligentissimē cōservāvit suisque finibus atque oppidīs ūtī iussit et finitimīs imperāvit ut ab iniuriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *maiores natu*. (2.) The ablative absolute. (3.) The gerundive construction.

The Aduatuci withdraw to a town fortified by nature.

29. Aduātuci, dē quibus suprā **scripsimus**, cum omnibus cōpiīs auxiliō Nervius venīrent, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum
 15 revertērunt; **cūctis** oppidīs castellisque dēsertīs sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē natūrā mūnitum contulērunt. quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās **rūpēs dēspectūsque** habēret, ūnā ex parte leniter **acclivis** aditus in lātitudinem nōn
 20 altissimō mūrō mūnierant: tum ¹māgnī **ponderis saxa** et **prae-**
acūtās trabēs in mūrō conlocābant. ipsī erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque **prōgnāti**, quī, cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque
 Italiam facerent, iīs impedimentīs quae sēcum agere ac portāre
 25 ac praesidium sex milia hominum ūnā reliquērunt. hī post

Chap 28 1 643 (524); M. 392; A. 336, 2; G. 650; B. 313; L. & M. 1026.

Chap. 29. 1 440, 3 (396, V); M. 223; A. 215, b; G. 365; B. 203, 2; L. & M. 558.

ADUATUCORUM OPPIDUM lib. II. 29—33.



eōrum **obitum** multōs annōs ā finitimīs **exagitāti**, cum aliās bellum inferrent, aliās inlātum dēfenderent, cōsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgērunt.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The ablative of accompaniment. (2.) The two possible constructions after *implius*. (3.) The genitive of measure. (4.) The dative of purpose.

They show contempt for the Roman engineering.

30. Ac primō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō **excursiōnēs** faciēbant **parvulisque** proeliīs cum postris contendē-
bant; postea vāllō pedum XII, in circuitū XV milium crēbrisque
castellis **circummūniti** oppidō sēsē continēbant. ubi vineīs āctis
aggere **extrūctō** turrim **procul** cōstituī vīdērunt, primum **inri-**
dēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus, quod tanta **machinātiō**
ab tantō spatiō instruerētur: **quibusnam** manibus aut quibus
viribus praesertim hominēs **tantulae statūrae** (nam plērumque
hominibus Gallis **prae** māgnitūdine corporum suōrum brevitas
nostra ¹**contemptūi** est) tantī **oneris** turrim mōtūrōs sēsē
cōnfiderent?

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The ablative in *ab tanto spatio*. (2.) The dative of service. (3.) The genitive of quality.

They pretend to submit to the Romans.

31. Ubi vērō movērī et appropinquāre mœnibus vīdērunt,
novā atque **inūsitatā** speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē
pāce mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī; nōn exīstimāre Rō-
mānōs sine ope **divinā** bellum gerere, quī tantae altitudinis
machinātiōnēs tantā celeritate prōmovēre ¹possent, sē suaque

Chap. 30. 1 433 (390); M. 206; A. 233, a; G. 356; B. 192, 2. a; L. & M. 547.

Chap. 31. 1 592 (517); M. 355; A. 320, e; G. 633; L. & M. 839.

omnia eorum potestati permittere dixerunt. unum petere ac deprecari: si forte pro sua clementia ac mansuetudine, quam ipsi ab aliis audirent, statuisset Aduatucos esse conservandos, ne se armis despoliaret. sibi omnes ferre finitimos esse inimicos ac suae virutis invidere; a quibus se defendere traditis armis non possent. sibi praestare, si in eum casum deducerentur, quamvis fortissimam a populo Romano pati, quam ab his per cruciatum interfici inter quos dominari consueissent.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) Relative clause expressing cause. (2.) The imperative in indirect discourse.
(3.) Omitted subjects of infinitives.

Caesar receives them into surrender. They treacherously attack the Romans, but many are cut to pieces and the rest reduced to slavery.

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: se magis consuetudine sua equum merito eorum civitatem conservaturum, si prius quam aries murum attigisset se dedidissent: sed deditiois nullam esse conditionem nisi armis traditis. se id quod in Nervii fecisset facturum finitimisque imperaturum ne quam dediticiis populi Romani iniuriam inferrent. re nuntiata ad suos, quae imperarentur facere dixerant. armorum magna multitudo de muro in fossam, quae erat ante oppidum, iacta, sic ut propere summum muri aggerisque altitudinem acervi armorum adaequarent, et tamen circiter parte tertia, ut postea perspectum est, celata atque in oppido retenta portis patefactis eo die pace sunt usi.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The future perfect in the indirect discourse. (2.) Subjunctive of result.
(3.) Construction after *utor*.

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī mīlītēsque ex oppidō exīre iussit, nē quam noctū oppidānī ab mīlitibus iniūriam acciperent. illi ante initō, ut intellēctum est, cōsiliō, quod dēditione factā nostrōs praesidia dēductūrōs aut dēnique **indiligētius servātūrōs crēdiderant**, partim cum hīs quae retinuerant et cēlave-
rant armīs, partim scūtīs ex **cortice** factīs aut **viminibus intextīs**, quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās postulābat, **pellibus** indūxerant, tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē **arduus** ad nostrās mūnitiōnēs ascēsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiīs **repentinō** ex oppidō **ēruptionem** fēcērunt. celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperārat, ignibus **significātiōne** factā ex proximīs castellīs eō concursus est, pūgnātumque ab hostibus ita ācriter est ut ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē salutis iniquō locō contrā eōs, quī ex vāllō turribusque tēla iacerent, ¹pūgnārī dēbuit, cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs salutis cōsisteret. occīsīs ad hominum mīlibus quattuor reliquī ¹⁵ in oppidum rēiecti sunt. postrīdiē eius diēi **refrāctis** portīs, cum iam dēfenderet nēmō, atque **intrōmissis** mīlitibus nostrīs, **sectiōnem** eius oppidi ūniversam Caesar **vendidit**. ab iīs, quī ēmerant, capitum numerus ad eum relātus est mīlium quinquāgintā trium.

20

Topics for Study.

- (1.) *Sub* with the accusative in temporal expressions. (2.) The impersonal construction. (3.) The present infinitive after a past tense of *debeo*.

Many maritime states are subdued.

34. Eōdem tempore ā Publiō Crassō, quem cum legiōne ūnā miserat ad **Venetōs**, **Venellōs**, **Osismōs**, ¹**Coriosolitas**, **Esuviōs**, **Aulercōs**, **Redonēs**, quae sunt **maritimae** cīvitātēs Oceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnēs eas cīvitātēs in diciōnem potestatemque populi Rōmānī esse redāctās.

25

Chap. 33. 1 618, 2 (537, I); M. 260, 1, n.; A. 288, a; G. 423, 2, n. 2; B. 270, 2; L. & M. 978; 980.

Chap. 34. 1 109 (68); M. 52, 9; A. 63, f; G. 65, R. 2; B. 47, 3; L. & M. 180.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *certior factus*. (2.) The time indicated by the tenses of the infinitive.

The Germans send ambassadors to Caesar on account of the high opinion of the war. Caesar returns to Italy. A thanksgiving is decreed at Rome.

35. Hīs rēbus gestīs omnī Galliā pācātā tanta hūius bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est, utī ab iīs nātiōnibus, quae trāns Rhēnum incoherent, mitterentur lēgātī ad Caesarem, quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in
5 Ītaliā **Īllyricum**que properābat, inītā proximā aestāte ad sē reverti iussit. ipse in **Carnutēs**, **Andēs**, **Turonōs**que, quae cīvitatēs propinquae hīs locīs erant ubi bellum gesserat, legiōnibus in **hibernācula** dēductīs in Ītaliā profectus est. ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris diēs quīndecim **supplicātiō dēcrēta** est, quod ante id
10 tempus accidit nūllī.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *inīta proxima aestate*. (2.) The intensive pronoun. (3.) The accusative of duration of time. (4.) The relative in agreement with the idea contained in a clause.

C. IŪLIĪ CAESARIS DE BELLŌ GALLICŌ

COMMENTĀRIUS TERTIUS.

1-6. WAR WITH THE ALPINE TRIBES.

Servius Galba is sent against the Nantuates, Veragri, and the Seduni. Galba goes to winter-quarters at Octodurus.



1. Cum in Ītaliā ¹proficīscerētur Caesar, **Servium** Galbam cum legiōne duodecimā et parte equitātūs in **Nantuātēs**, **Veragrōs** **Sedūnōs**que mīsit, quī ab finibus Allobrogum et lacū ⁵

Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpēs pertinent. causa mittendī fuit quod iter per Alpēs, quō māgnō cum periculō māgnisque cum portōriis mercātōrēs ire cōsuerant, patefierī volēbat. huic permīsit, sī opus esse arbitrārētur, utī in hīs locis legiōnem hiemandī causā conlocāret. Galba secundis aliquot ¹⁵proeliis factis castellisque complūribus eōrum expūgnātis, missis ad eum undique lēgātis obsidibusque datis et pāce factā, cōstituit cohortēs duās in Nantuātibus conlocāre et ipse cum reliquis eius legiōnis cohortibus in vicō Veragrōrum, quī appellātur **Octodūrus**, hiemāre; quī vicus positus in valle nōn māgnā ¹⁵adiectā plānitiē altissimis montibus undique continētur. cum hīc in duās partēs flūmine dīviderētur, alteram partem eius vicī

Gallis [ad hiemandum] concessit, alteram vacuum ab illis relic-
tam cohortibus attribuit. eum locum vallō fossāque mūnīvit.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) *Cum* introducing temporal clauses. (2.) The idiom *summas Alpes*. (3.)
The ablative absolute. (4.) The conditional sentence. (5.) The Roman legion.

The Seduni and Veragri form a design of cutting off the legion.
Galba calls a council.

2. Cum diēs hibernōrum complūrēs trānsissent frūmentumque
eō comportārī iussisset, subitō per explorātōrēs certior factus est
5 ex eā parte vicī quam Gallis concesserat omnēs noctū discessisse
montēsque quī impendērent ā māximā multitudīne Sedūnōrum et
Veragrōrum tenērī. id aliquot dē causīs acciderat ut subitō Gallī
bellī **renovandī** legiōnisque opprimendae cōsiliū caperent; prī-
mum, quod legiōnem neque eam **plēnissimam** dētrāctis cohortibus
10 duābus et complūribus **singillātīm**, quī commeātūs petendī causā
missī erant, [absentibus] propter **paucitātem** dēspiciēbant; tum
etiam, quod propter inīquitātem locī, cum ipsī ex montibus in
vallem dēcurrerent et tēla conicerent, nē prīmum quidem posse
impetum suum sustinērī exīstimābant. accēdēbat quod suōs ab
15 sē liberōs **abstrāctōs** obsidum nōmine dolēbant et Rōmānōs nōn
solum itinerum causā, sed etiam perpetuae possessiōnis **culmina**
Alpium occupāre cōnārī et ea loca finitimae prōvinciae adiungere
sibi ¹persuāsum habēbant.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The indirect discourse. (2.) Substantive clauses. (3.) The expression
sibi persuasum habebant.

3. His nūntiis acceptis Galba, cum neque opus hibernōrum
20 mūnitiōnēsque plēnē essent ¹perfectae, neque dē frūmentō reli-

Chap. 2. 1 431, 3 (388, 1, N.); M. 284; A. 292, c, G. 238; B. 337, 6; L. &
M. 1018.

Chap. 3. 1 395 (439); M. 178, 2; A. 187, a; G. 290; B. 235, 1.

quōque commeātū satis esset prōvisum, quod dēditionē factā obsidibusque acceptis nihil dē bellō timendum existimāverat, cōnciliō celeriter convocātō sententiās exquirere coepit. quō in conciliō, cum tantum repentinī periculī praeter opīniōnem accidisset, ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitūdine armātōrum complēta cōspicerentur, neque ²subsidio venīri neque commeātūs supportārī interclūsīs itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōnnūllae hūiusmodī sententiae dicēbantur, ut impedimētis relictis ēruptionē factā isdem itineribus quibus eō pervēnissent ad salūtem contenderent. māiōrī tamen partī placuit hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cōnsiliō interim rei ēventum experiri et castra dēfendere.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The agreement of an adjective with two nouns of different gender. (2.) The impersonal construction. (3.) The dative of purpose.

The Romans are attacked. The battle rages for six hours without cessation.

4. Brevī spatiō interiectō, vix ut hīs rēbus quās ¹cōstituis-
sent conlocandīs atque administrandīs tempus darētur, hostēs ex
omnibus partibus signō datō ²dēcurrere, lapidēs gaesaque in
vāllum conicere. nostrī primō integrīs vīribus fortiter repūgnāre
neque ūllum frūstrā tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere, ut quaeque
pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēnsōribus premī vidēbātur, eō occurrere
et auxilium ferre, sed hōc superārī, quod diūturnitāte pūgnae
hostēs dēfessī proeliō excēdēbant, aliī integrīs vīribus succēdē-
bant; quārum rērum ā nostrīs propter paucitātem fierī nihil
poterat, ac nōn modo dēfessō ex pūgnā excēdendī, sed nē sauciō
quidem eius locī ubi cōstitērat relinquendī ac suī recipiendī
facultās dabātur.

Chap. 3. 2 425, 3 (384, 1, 3); M. 206; A. 233, α; G. 356; B. 191, 2, α; L. & M. 548.

Chap. 4. 1 652 (529, II); M. 405; A. 342; G. 629; B. 324; L. & M. 793. —
2 610 (536, I); M. 276; A. 275; G. 647; B. 335; L. & M. 708.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The subjunctive by attraction. (2.) The historical infinitive. (3.) A noun and adjective in ablative absolute construction.

5. Cum iam amplius hōris sex continenter ¹pūgnārētur, ac nōn solum vīrēs, sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent atque hostēs ācrius instārent **languidiōribusque** nostrīs vāllum **scindere** et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, Publius Sextius Baculus, **pilī** primī centuriō, quem **Nervicō** proeliō complūribus cōfectum vulneribus diximus, et item Gāius **Volusēnus**, tribūnus militum, vir et cōsiliū māgnī et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam esse spem salūtis docent, sī ēruptione factā extrēmum auxilium experirentur. itaque con-
10 vocātis centuriōnibus celeriter milites certiōrēs facit, paulisper intermitterent proelium ac **tantummodo** tēla missa **exciperent** sēque ex labōre **reficerent**, post datō signō ex castris ērumperent atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The use of the imperfect tense. (2.) The historical present. (3.) Purpose clauses.

The enemy is defeated in a sally. Galba hastens to return to the province.

6. Quod iussī sunt faciunt ac subitō omnibus portīs ērup-
15 tiōne factā neque cōgnōscendī quid fieret neque ¹suī **conligendī** hostibus facultātem relinquunt. ita commūtātā fortunā eōs quī in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant undique circumventōs interficiunt et ex hominum milibus amplius trīgintā, quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse **cōnstābat**, plūs teritiā

Chap. 5. 1 534, 1 (469, II, 2); M. 306, 4; A. 277, 6; G. 234; B. 260, 4; L. & M. 738.

Chap. 6. 1 626, 3 (542, I, n. 1); M. 289, 3, n.; A. 298, a; G. 428, R. 1; B. 338, 1; L. & M. 1000.

parte interfectā reliquōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt ac nē in locis quidem superiōribus cōsistere patiuntur. sic omnibus hostium cōpiis **fūsis** ² armisque **exūtis** sē in castra mūnitiōēsque suās recipiunt. quō proeliō factō, quod saepius fortū-5 nam temptāre Galba nōlēbat atque aliō sē in hiberna cōsiliō vēnisse **meminerat**, aliis occurrisset rēbus viderat, māximē frūmentī commeātusque inopiā permōtus posterō diē omnibus eius vici aedificiis incēns in prōvinciam reverti ¹⁰ contendit, ac nūllō hoste prohibente aut iter **dēmorante** incolumem legiōnem in Nantuātēs, inde in Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hiemāvit.



SCUTUM.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The gerund and gerundive construction. (2.) The ablative of separation.
(3.) The use of the participle. (4.) Asyndeton.

7-16. WAR WITH THE VENETI.

An unexpected war breaks out in Gaul. The Veneti are the instigators.

7. His rēbus gestis cum omnibus dē causis Caesar pācatam Galliam exīstimāret, superātis Belgis, expulsis Germānis, victis ¹⁵ in Alpibus Sēdūnis, atque ita initā **hieme** in Illyricum profectus esset, quod eas quoque nātiōēs adire et regiōēs cōgnōscere volēbat, **subitum** bellum in Galliā **coortum** est. eius belli haec fuit causa. Publius Crassus adulēscēns cum legiōne septimā proximis ¹ **mare** Ōceanum in Andibus hiemārat. is, quod in his ²⁰ locis inopia frūmentī erat, praefectōs tribūnōsque militum com-

Chap. 6. 2 464 (414, I); M. 203; A. 225, d; G. 348; B. 187, I, a; L. & M. 535.

Chap. 7. 1 435, 2 (391, 2); M. 258, 2; A. 261, a; G. 359, n. 1; B. 141, 3.

plūrēs in finitimās cīvitātēs frūmentī comineātūsque petendī causā dīmisit; quō in numerō erat Titus **Terrasidius**, missus in Esviōs, Mārcus **Trebius Gallus** in Coriosolitas, Quīntus **Velānius** cum Titō **Siliō** in Venetōs.

Topic for Study.

The two possible constructions after *proximus*.

5 **8.** Hūius est cīvitātis longē amplissima auctōritās omnis **ōrae** maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvēs habent Venetī plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam **nāvigāre** cōsuērunt, et scientiā atque ūsū **nauticārum** rērum reliquōs **antecēdunt** et in māgnō impetū maris atque apertō paucīs **portibus** interiectīs, quōs tenent ipsī,
 10 omnēs ferē, quī eō marī ūtī cōsuērunt, habent **vectigālēs**. ab hīs fit initium retinendī Siliī atque Velāniī, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs, quōs Crassō dedissent, **recuperātūrōs** exīstimābant. hōrum auctoritāte finitimī adductī (ut sunt Gallōrum subita et repentīna cōsilia) eādē dē causā **Trebiūm Terrasidiumque** re-
 15 tinent et celeriter missīs lēgātīs per suōs pīncipēs inter sē coniūrant nihil nisi commūnī cōsiliō āctūrōs, eundemque omnis fortunae **exitum** esse lātūrōs, reliquāsque cīvitātēs sollicitant ut in eā libertāte quam ā māiōribus ¹accēperant permanēre quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem perferre **mālent**. omnī ōrā maritimā
 20 celeriter ad suam sententiam pēductā commūnem lēgātiōnem ad Publiū Crassū mittunt, sī velit suōs recipere, obsidēs sibi remittat.

Topics for Study.

(1.) Subordinate clauses in indirect discourse. (2.) The imperative form of speech in indirect discourse. (3.) The use of the indicative mood in indirect discourse.

Chap. 8. 1 643, 3 (524, 2); M. 392, 3; A. 336, b; G. 628, a; B. 314, 3; L. & M. 1028.

Caesar prepares for the war. The Veneti unite allies to themselves. The motives that urged Caesar to the war.

9. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ab Crassō certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, nāvēs interim longās **aedificārī** in flūmine **Ligere**, quod influit in Oceanum, **rēmigēs** ex prōvinciā instituī, **nautās gubernātōrēs**que comparārī iubet. his rēbus celeriter administrātis ipse, cum primum per annī tempus potuit, ad exercitum 5 contendit. Venetī reliquaeque item cīvitātēs cōgnitō Caesaris adventū, simul quod quantum in sē facinus admīssissent intellegēbant, lēgātōs, quod nōmen ad omnēs nātiōnēs **sānctum inviolātum**que semper fuisset, retentōs ab sē et in vincula coniectōs, prō magnitudīne periculī bellum parāre et māximē ea, quae ad 10 ūsum nāvium pertinent, prōvidēre instituunt, hōc māiōre spē, quod multum nātūrā locī cōnfidēbant. pedestria esse itinera concīsa aestuāriīs, **nāvigātiōnem** impeditam propter **īnscientiam** locōrum paucitātemque portuum sciēbant, neque nostrōs exercitūs propter frūmentī inopiam diūtius apud sē morārī posse cōnfidē- 15 bant: ac iam ¹ut omnia contrā opiniōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūrimum nāvibus posse, Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habēre nāvium, neque eōrum locōrum ubi bellum gestūrī essent vada, portūs, **īnsulās** nōvisse; ac longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem in **conclūsō** marī atque in **vāstissimō** atque **apertissimō** Oceanō 20 perspiciebant. hīs initīs cōsiliīs oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportant, nāvēs in **Venetiam**, ubi Caesarem primum esse bellum gestūrum cōstābat, quam plūrimās possunt, cōgunt. sociōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, **Lexoviōs**, **Namnetēs**, **Ambiliātōs**, Morinōs, **Diablintrēs**, Menapiōs asciscunt; auxilia ex 25 Britannīā, quae contrā eas regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt.

Topics for Study.

(1.) *Ut* with the subjunctive expressing concession. (2.) The idiom *plurimum posse*. (3.) The idiom *aliā — atque*.

Chap. 9. 1 599, 2 (515, III); M. 321; 323; A. 266, c; G. 608; B. 278; L. & M. 716.

10. Erant hae difficultatēs belli gerendī, quās suprà ostendimus, sed multa Caesarem tamen ad id bellum incitābant: iniūriae ¹retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, **rebelliō** facta post dēditionem, **dēfectiō** datīs obsidibus, **tot** cīvitātum coniūrātiō, imprimīs, nē hāc parte neglēctā reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrārentur. itaque cum intellexeret omnēs ferē Gallōs nōvīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum **mōbilit**er celeriterque **excitārī**, omnēs autem hominēs nātūrā libertātī studēre et condiōnem servitūtis ōdisse, priusquam plūrēs cīvitātēs **cōspirārent**, **partiendum** sibi ac lātius **distribuen-**
10 dum exercitum putāvit.

Topic for Study.

The participle containing the main idea.

Labienus is sent to the north, Crassus into Aquitania. Brutus is given command of the fleet.

11. Itaque Titum Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. huic mandat Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās ¹adeat atque in officiō contineat Germānōsque, quī auxiliō ā Belgīs arcessītī dicēbantur, sī per vim nāvibus
15 flūmen trānsīre cōentur, prohibeat. Publium Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriīs XII et māgnō numerō equitātūs in Aquitāniam proficisci iubet, nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur. Quintum Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitas
20 Lexoviōsque mittit, quī eam manum distinendam cūret. **Decimum Brūtum** adulescentem **classi** Gallicisq̄ue nāvibus, quās ex **Pictonibus** et Santonis reliquīsque pācātīs regiōnibus convenire iusserat, praeficit et, cum primum posset, in Venetōs proficisci iubet. ipse cō pedestribus cōpiīs contendit.

Chap. 10. 1 636, 4 (549, 5, N. 2); M. 286; A. 292, a; G. 664, R. 2; B. 337, 5; L. & M. 1013.

Chap. 11. 1 565 (499, 2); M. 333; A. 331, f, R.; G. 546, 2, R. 2; B. 282; L. & M. 896.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The two possible constructions with *proximus*. (2.) The omission of *ut*
 (3.) The relative clause of purpose.

The advantageous situation of the towns of the Veneti. Description of their maritime power.

12. Erant *ēiusmodi* *ferē sitūs* oppidōrum, ut posita in extrēmīs *lingulis* *prōmunturiis*que neque pedibus aditum habērent, cum ex altō sē *aestus* incitāvisset, quod bis accidit semper hōrārū *XXIII* spatiō, neque nāvibus, quod rūsus minuenta aestū nāvēs in vadīs *adflictārentur*. ita utrāque rē oppidōrum ⁵ oppugnātiō impediēbātur; ac sī *quandō* magnitūdine operis forte superātī, *extrūsō* marī ¹aggere ac *mōlibus*, atque hīs oppidī moenibus adaequātis, suis fortūnis dēspērāre coeperant, magnō numerō nāvium *appulsō*, cūius rei summam facultātem habēbant, sua *dēportābant* omnia sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant: 10 ibi sē rūsus isdem *opportunitātibus* locī dēfendēbant. haec eō facilius magnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae nāvēs *tempestātibus* dētīnēbantur, summaque erat ²vastō atque apertō marī, magnīs aestibus, *rārīs* ac prope nullis portibus, difficultās nāvigandī.

15

Topics for Study.

- (1.) Hendiadys. (2.) The ablative of degree of difference. (3.) A noun and adjective in the ablative absolute construction.

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae armataeque erant: *carinae* aliquantō *plāniōrēs* quam nostrārum nāvium, ¹quō facilius vada ac *dēcessum* aestūs excipere possent; *prōrae* admodum *ērēctae* atque item *puppēs* ad magnitūdinem *fluctuum*

Chap. 12. 1 751, 3, n. 1 (636, III, 2); M. 488; A. 385, No. 13; G. 698; B. 374, 4.
 — 2 489 (431, 4); M. 255; A. 255, a; G. 409; B. 227, 1; L. & M. 639.

Chap. 13. 1 568, 7 (497, 2); M. 328; 331; A. 317, b; G. 545, 2; B. 282, a;
 L. & M. 908.

tempestātumque accommodatae; nāvēs tōtae factae ex **rōbore** ad quamvis vim et contumēliam perferendam; **trānstra** pedālibus in altitudinem trāibibus **cōnfixa** clāvis ferreis digiti pollicis crassitudine; **ancorae** prō fūnibus ferreis catēnis **revinctae**; pellēs
 5 prō **vēlis** alūtaeque **tenuiter** cōnfectae, hae sive propter **lini** inopiam atque eius ūsūs inscientiam, sive eō, quod est magis **vērisimile**, quod tantās tempestātēs Ōceanī tantōsque impetūs **ventōrum** sustinēri ac tanta onera nāvium **regi** vēlis nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur. cum hīs nāvibus nostrae ²classi
 10 ēiusmodi **congressus** erat, ut ūnā celeritāte et **pulsū** **rēmōrum** praestāret, reliqua prō loci nātūrā, prō vī tempestātum illis essent **aptiōra** et **accommodātiōra**. neque enim hīs nostrae **rōstrō** **nocēre** poterant (tanta in iīs erat **firmitūdō**), neque propter altitudinem facile tēlum adiciēbātur et eādē dē causā minus com-
 15 modē **cōpulis** continēbantur. accēdēbat ut, cum **saevire** ventus coepisset et sē ventō dedissent, et tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadis cōsisterent tūtius et ab aestū relictæ nihil saxa et **cautēs** timērent; quārum rērum omnium nostris ³nāvibus cāsus erat **extimēscendus**.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative *quo* in final clauses. (2.) The dative of possession. (3.) The dative of agent.

A naval engagement. The Veneti defeated. The war terminated.

20 **14.** Complūribus expūgnātis oppidīs Caesar, ubi intellēxit frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī, neque hostium fugam captīs oppidīs **reprimi** neque iīs ¹nocērī posse, statuit exspectandam classem. quae ubi convēnit ac primum ab hostibus vīsa est, circiter COXX

Chap. 13. **2** 430 (387); M. 212; A. 231; G. 349; B. 190; L. & M. 542. — **3** 431 (388); M. 207; A. 232; G. 355; B. 189, 1; L. & M. 991.

Chap. 14. **1** 426, 3 (384, 5); M. 205; A. 230; G. 217; B. 138, IV; L. & M. 686.

nāvēs eōrum parātissimae atque omnī genere armōrum ōrnātissimae profectae ex portū nostrīs adversae cōstitērunt; neque satis Brūtō, quī classī praeerat, vel tribūnis militum centuriōibusque, quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtae, cōstābat quid agerent aut quam ratiōnem pūgnae īnsisterent. rōstro enim 5 nocērī nōn posse cōgnōverant; turribus autem excitātis tamen hās altitūdō puppiū ex barbarīs nāvibus superābat, ut neque ex īferiōre locō satis commodē tēla adicī possent et missa ab Gallīs gravius acciderent. ūna erat māgnō ūsuī rēs praeparāta ā nostrīs, falcēs praeacūtāe insertae adfixaeque longuriūs, nōn absimili 10 fōrmā mūrāliū falcium. hīs cum fūnēs, quī antemnās ad mālōs dēstinābant, comprehēnsī adductique erant, nāvigiō rēmīs incitātō praerumpēbantur. quibus abscisīs antemnae necessariō concidēbant, ut, cum omnis Gallicīs ² nāvibus spēs in vēlis armamentisque cōsisteret, hīs ēreptīs omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tem- 15 pore ēriperētur. reliquū erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostrī militēs facile superābant, atque eō magis, quod in cōspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum latēre posset; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus dēspectus in mare, ab exercitū 20 tenēbantur.

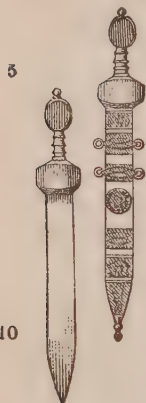
Topics for Study.

(1.) The passive of intransitive verbs. (2.) The dative of purpose. (3.) The dative of reference. (4.) The ablative of degree of difference.

15. Disiectīs, ut dīximus, antemnīs, cum singulās binae ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, militēs summā vī trāscendere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. quod postquam barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, expūgnātis complūribus nāvibus, cum eī rei nūllum 25 reperirētur auxilium, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. ac iam conversīs in eam partem nāvibus, quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō

Chap. 14. 2 425, 2 (384, II, 4, N. 2); M. 208, N.; A. 235; G. 352; B. 188, I, N.; L. & M. 537; 538.

malacia ac tranquillitās exstitit ut sē ex locō commovēre nōn possent. quae quidem rēs ad negōtium cōficiendum mīximē fuit opportūna: nam singulās nostrī cōsectātī expugnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omni nūmerō noctis interventū ad terram pervēnerint, cum ab hōrā ferē quartā usque ad sōlis occāsū pūgnārētur.



GLADIUS.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) Distributives. (2.) The use of the imperfect tense.

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtiusque ōrae maritimae cōfectum est. nam ¹cum omnis iuventus, omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis, in quibus aliquid cōsiliū aut dignitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum nāvium quod ubique fuerat in ūnum locum coēgerant; quibus āmissis reliquī neque quō sē reciperent, neque quemadmodum oppida dēfenderent habēbant. itaque sē suaeque omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt. in quōs eō gravius 15 Caesar vindicandum statuit, quō diligentius in reliquum tempus ā barbaris iūs lēgātōrum cōservārētur. itaque omni senātū necātō reliquōs sub corōnā vendidit.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) Correlatives. (2.) The partitive genitive.

17-19. WAR WITH THE VENELLI.

Q. Titurius Sabinus by stratagems defeats the Venelli.

17. Dum haec in Venetīs ¹geruntur, Quīntus Titūrius Sabīnus cum iis cōpiīs quās ā Caesare accēperat in finēs Venellōrum 20 pervēnit. hīs praeerat Viridovīx ac summam imperiū tenēbat eārum omnium civitātum quae dēfēcerant, ex quibus exercitum

Chap. 16. 1 657, 4, N. 1 (554, I, 5); M. 465, 2; A. 155, a, Ex. 4; G. 588; B. 341, 3; L. & M. 842.

Chap. 17. 1 533, 4 (467, III, 4); M. 352; A. 276, 3; G. 229, R.; B. 293, 1; L. & M. 917.

māgnāsque cōpiās coēgerat; atque hīs paucīs diēbus Aulerci **Ebuovicēs** Lexoviīque senātū suō interfectō, quod auctōrēs belli esse nōlēbant, portās clausērunt sēque cum Viridovīce coniūnxērunt; māgnaque praetereā multitudō undique ex Galliā **perditōrum** hominum **latrōnumque** convēnerat, quōs spēs praedandī studiumque bellandī ab agrī **cultūrā** et cotidiānō labōre revocābat. Sabinus idōneō omnibus rēbus locō castrīs sēsē tenēbat, cum Viridovīx contrā eum duum mīlium spatiō cōnsēdisset cotidiēque prōductīs cōpiīs pūgnandī potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn solum ²hostibus in **contemptiōnem** Sabinus venīret, sed etiam nostrō-10 rum mīlitum vōcibus **nōnnihil carperētur**; tantamque opīniōnem timōris praebuit, ut iam ad vāllum castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērēt. id eā dē causā faciēbat, quod cum tantā multitudīne hostium, praesertim eō absente quī summam imperiū tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut opportunitāte aliquā datā lēgātō dīmīcandum nōn 15 existimābat.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) *Dum* with the present indicative. (2.) The dative of reference. (3.) The adverbial accusative. (4.) The dependent clause in indirect discourse.

18. Hāc cōfirmātā opīniōne timōris idōneum quendam hominem et **callidum** dēlēgit, Gallum, ex iīs quōs auxiliī causā sēcum habēbat. huic māgnīs praemiīs **pollicitātiōnibusque** persuādet utī ad hostēs trānseat et quid fierī velit **ēdocet**. quī ubi pro ²⁰perfugā ad cōs venit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit, quibus angustīs ipse Caesar ā Venetīs premātur docet, neque longius abesse quā proximā nocte Sabinus **clam** ex castrīs exercitum **ēducāt** et ad Caesarem auxiliī ferendī causā proficiscātur. quod ubi audītum est, conclāmant omnēs **occāsiōnem** negōtīi **bene** ²⁵gerendī āmittendam nōn esse, ad castra irī oportēre. multae rēs ad hōc cōnsilium Gallōs hortābantur: superiōrum diērum Sabinī **cunctātiō**, perfugae cōfirmātiō, inopia cibāriōrum, cui rei **parum**

Chap. 17. 2 425, 4 (384, II, 4, n. 2); M. 208, n.; A. 235, a; G. 350, 1, Ex. 2; B. 188, 1, n.; L. & M. 537; 538.

diligenter ab iīs erat prōvīsum, spēs **Venetici** bellī et quod ferē libenter hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt. hīs rēbus auctū nōn prius Viridovicem reliquōsque dūcēs ex conciliō dīmittunt quam ab hīs ¹sit concessum arma utī capiant et ad castra con-
 5 tendant. quā rē concessā ²laeti, ut explōrātā victōriā, **sarmentis virgultisque** conlētīs, quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra **pergunt**.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) Indirect question. (2.) The impersonal construction. (3.) *Prius quam* with the subjunctive. (4.) The use of the ablative absolute.

19. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus et paulātīm ab **imō** acclīvis circiter passūs mille. hūc māgnō cursū contendērunt, ut quam
 10 minimum spatiū ad sē conligendōs armandōsque Rōmānīs darētur, exanimātique pervēnērunt. Sabīnus suōs hortātus cupientibus sīgnum dat. impeditīs hostibus propter ea quae ferēbant, onera subitō duābus portīs eruptionem fierī iubet. factum est oppor-
 tūnitāte locī, hostium īnscientiā ac **dēfatigātiōne**, virtūte militum
 15 et superiōrum pūgnārū exercitātiōne, ut nē ūnum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent. quōs impeditōs integrīs vīribus milītēs nostrī cōnsecūtī māgnū numerum eōrum occidērunt; reliquōs equitēs cōnsecutātī paucōs quī ex
 fugā **ēvāserant** reliquērunt. sic ūnō tempore et dē **nāvālī**
 20 pūgnā Sabīnus et dē Sabīnī victōriā Caesar certior factus est, civitātēque omnēs sē statim Titūrīō dēdidērunt. nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum **alacer** ac **prōmptus** est animus, sic **mollis** ac minimē resistēns ad calamitātēs perferendās mēns eōrum est.

Topic for Study.

The various uses of the genitive.

20-27. EXPEDITION OF CRASSUS INTO AQUITANIA.

Crassus defeats the Sontiates. The "Soldurii."

20. Eōdem ferē tempore P. Crassus, cum in Aquitāniam pervēnisset, quae pars, ut ante dictum est, et regiōnum lātitudine et multitudine hominum ex tertiā parte Galliae est aestimanda, cum intellexeret in iīs locīs sibi bellum gerendum ubi ¹ paucīs ante annīs L. Valerius Praecōnius lēgātus exercitū pulsō interfectus esset, atque unde L. Mallius prōcōnsul impedimentīs āmissis profūgisset, nōn mediocrem sibi diligentiam adhibendam intellegēbat. itaque rē frūmentāriā prōvisā, auxiliīs equitatūque comparātō, multis praetereā virīs fortibus Tolōsā et Narbōne, quae sunt cīvitatēs Galliae prōvinciae finitimae hīs regiōnibus, 10 nōminatim ēvocātis in Sontiātum finēs exercitum intrōdūxit. cūius adventū cōgnitō Sontiātēs māgnīs cōpiīs coactīs equitatūque, quō plūrimum valēbant, in itinere āgmen nostrum adortī prīmum equestre proelium commīsērunt, deinde equitatū suō pulsō atque insequentibus nostrīs subitō pedestrēs cōpiās, quās 15 in convalle in insidiīs conlocāverant, ostendērunt. hī nostrōs disiectōs adortī proelium renovārunt.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The ablative of degree of difference. (2.) The dative after adjectives.

21. Pūgnātum est diū atque ācriter, cum Sontiātēs superiōribus victōriīs frētī in suā virtūte tōtius Aquitāniae salūtem positam putārent, nostrī autem, quid sine imperātōre et sine reliquīs legiō- 20 nibus adulēscēntulō duce efficere possent, perspicī cuperent: tandem cōfectī vulneribus hostēs terga vertēre. quōrum māgnō numerō interfectō Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sontiātum oppūgnāre coepit. quibus fortiter resistentibus vīneās turrēsque ēgit. illī aliās ēruptiōne temptātā, aliās cuniculīs ad aggerem 25

vīneāsque āctīs, cūius rei sunt longē peritissimī Aquītānī, propterea quod multīs locīs apud eōs ¹*aerāriae sectūrae*que sunt, ubi diligentīā nostrōrum nihil hīs rēbus prōfici posse intellēxērunt, lēgātōs ad Crassum mittunt sēque in dēditionē ut recipiat
5 petunt. quā rē impetrātā arma trādere iussī faciunt.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) *Cum* with the subjunctive. (2.) Description of the *vineae*⁴ and *turres*
(3.) The idiom *alias — alias*. (4.) Hendiadys.

22. Atque in eā rē omnium nostrōrum *intentis* animīs aliā ex parte oppidi Adiatunnus, quī summam imperiū tenēbat, cum sexcentīs *dēvōtis*, quōs illī ¹*soldūriōs* appellant, quōrum haec est condiciō, utī omnibus in vitā commodis unā cum hīs *fruan-*
10 *tur* quōrum sē amicitiae dēdiderint, si quid iīs per vim accidat, aut eundem cāsum unā ierant aut sibi mortem cōsciscant; neque *adhūc* hominum memoriā repertus est quisquam, quī eō interfectō, cūius sē amicitiae ²dēvōisset, mortem recūsaret: cum hīs Adiatunnus ēruptionem facere cōnātus clāmōre ab eā parte
15 mūnitiōnis sublātō, cum ad arma milites concurrissent vehementerque ibi pūgnātum esset, repulsus in oppidum, tamen utī eādē dēditionis condiciōne ūterētur ab Crassō impetrāvit.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The idiom *mortem consciscant*. (2.) The relative clause of characteristic.
(3.) The subjunctive by attraction.

Crassus advances against the Vocates and Tarusates. He invites the enemy to battle. They decline.

23. Armīs obsidibusque acceptis Crassus in finēs Vocātium et Tarusātium profectus est. tum vērō barbarī commōtī, quod
20 oppidum et nātūrā locī et manū mūnitum paucis diēbus, quibus

Chap. 21. 1 751, 3, n. 1 (636, III, 2); M. 488; A. 385, No. 13; G. 698; B. 374, 4.
Chap. 22. 1 Intr. 60. — 2 652 (529, II); M. 405; A. 342; G. 629; B. 324;
L. & M. 793.

eō ventum erat, expūgnātum cōgnōverant, lēgātōs quōqueversum dimittere, coniūrāre, obsidēs inter sē dare, cōpiās parāre coepērunt. mittuntur etiam ad eās cīvitatēs lēgātī, quae sunt cīteriōris Hispāniae, finitimae Aquitāniae; inde auxilia ducēsque arcessuntur. quōrum adventū māgnā cum auctōritāte et māgnā cum 5 hominum multitudine bellum gerere cōnantur. ducēs vērō iī dēliguntur quī ūnā cum Q. Sertōriō omnēs annōs fuerant summamque scientiam rei militāris habēre exīstimābantur. hī cōnsuetūdine populī Rōmānī loca capere, castra mūnīre, commeātibus nostrōs interclūdere instituunt. quod ubi Crassus animadvertit, 10 suās cōpiās propter exiguitātem nōn facile didūcī, hostem et vagārī et viās obsidēre et castrīs satis praesidiū relinquere, ob eam causam minus commodē frūmentum commeātumque sibi supportārī, in diēs hostium numerum augērī, nōn cunctandum exīstimāvit quīn pūgnā dēcertāret. hāc rē ad cōnsilium dēlātā, ubi 15 omnēs idem sentīre intellēxit, posterum diem pūgnae cōstituit.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The predicate genitive of possession. (2.) The relative taking the place of a demonstrative pronoun and a conjunction. (3.) The impersonal construction.



TUBA.

24. Prīmā lūce prōductīs omnibus cōpiīs ¹duplicī aciē institūtā, auxiliīs in mediam aciem coniectīs, quid hostēs cōnsiliū caperent exspectābat. illī, etsī propter multitudinem et veterem bellī gloriā paucitātemque nostrōrum sē tūtō dīmicātūrōs exīstimābant, tamen tūtius esse arbitrabantur obsessīs viīs commeātū interclūsō sine ūllō vulnere victōriā potīrī et, sī propter inopiam rei frumentariae Rōmānī sēsē recipere coepissent, ²impeditōs in āgmine et sub sarcinīs ³infirmiore animō adorīrī cogitābant. hōc cōnsiliō probātō ab ducibus prōductīs Rōmānōrum cōpiīs sēsē castrīs tenēbant. hāc rē perspectā

Crassus, cum suā cunctātiōne atque opīniōne timōris hostēs nostrōs militēs alācriōrēs ad pūgnandum effēcissent, atque omnium vōcēs audirentur exspectārī diūtius nōn oportēre quā ad castra īrētur, cohortātus suos omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra
5 contendit.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The uses of the participle. (2.) The ablative of quality. (3.) The partitive genitive.

Crassus attacks the enemy in their camp and is victorious. The greater part of Aquitania surrenders to Crassus.

25. Ibi cum aliī fossās complērent, aliī multīs tēlis coniectīs dēfēnsōrēs vallō mūnitiōnibusque dēpellerent, auxiliārēsque, quibus ad pūgnam nōn multum Crassus cōfidēbat, lapidibus tēlisque subministrandīs et ad aggerem cēspitibus comportandīs speciem
10 atque opīniōnem pūgnantium praebērent, cum item ab hostibus cōstanter ac nōn timidē pūgnārētur tēlaque ex locō superiōre missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs circumitīs hostium castrīs Crassō renūntiāverunt nōn eādē esse diligentīā ab ¹decumānā portā castra mūnita facilemque aditum habēre.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *alii — alii*. (2.) The ablative of separation. (3.) Position of the *decumana porta*.

15 26. Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātus, ut māgnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque suos excitārent, quid fierī velit ostendit. illī, ut erat imperātum, ēductīs iīs cohortibus, quae praesidiō castrīs relictāe intritae ab labōre erant, et longiōre itinere circumductīs, nē ex hostium castrīs cōspiciē possent, omnium oculīs mentibus-
20 que ad pūgnam intentīs celeriter ad eas quās dīximus mūnitiōnēs pervēnerunt atque his prōrutīs prius in hostium castrīs

cōstitērunt, quam plānē ab hīs vidērī aut quid reī gererētur cōgnōscī ¹posset. tum vērō clāmōre ab eā parte auditō nostrī redintegrātis viribus, quod plērumque in spē victōriæ accidere cōsuēvit, ācrius impūgnāre coepērunt. hostēs undique circumventī dēspērātis omnibus rēbus sē per mūnitiōnēs dēicere et fugā salūtem petere intendērunt. quōs equitātus apertissimīs campis cōnsectātus ex mīlium L. numerō, quæ ex Aquitāniā Cantabris-que convēnisse cōstābat, vix quārtā parte relictā multā nocte sē in castra recēpit.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) *Prius quam* with the subjunctive. (2.) The idiom *multa nocte*.

27. Hāc auditā pūgnā māxima pars Aquitāniæ sēsē Crassō ¹⁰dēdidit obsidēsque ultrō mīsīt; quō in numerō fuērunt Tarbellī, Bigerriōnēs, Ptianī, Vocātēs, Tarusātēs, Elusātēs, Gatēs, Auscī, Garumnī, Sibuzātēs, Cocosātēs, paucae ultimæ nātiōnēs annī tempore cōfīsæ, quod hiēms suberat, hōc facere neglēxērunt.

Topic for Study.

The semi-deponent verb.

28-29. EXPEDITION OF CAESAR AGAINST THE MORINI AND THE MENAPII.

Caesar advances against the Morini and Menapii, who are defeated with great loss.

28. Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsī prope exācta iam aestās ¹⁵erat, tamen, quod omnī Galliā pācātā Morinī Menapiīque supere-rant quī in armīs essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce mīsissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōfici posse, eō exerci-tum addūxit; quī longē ¹aliā ratiōne ac reliquī Galli bellum gerere coepērunt. nam quod intellegēbant māximās nātiōnēs, ²⁰

Chap. 26. 1 605 (520, II); M. 351; A. 327; G. 577; B. 292; L. & M. 879; 880.

Chap. 28 1 516, 3 (459, 2); M. 465, n. 2; A. 156, a; G. 643; B. 341, 1, c; L. & M. 760.

quae proeliō contendissent, pulsās superātāsque esse, continētēsque silvās ac palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar pervēnisset castraque mūnīre instituisset, neque hostis interim vīsus esset, dispersīs in opere nostrīs subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae **ēvolāvērunt** et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. nostrī celeriter arma cēpērunt cōsque in silvās repulērunt et complūribus interfectīs longius impeditiōribus locīs secūtī paucōs ex suis dēperdidērunt.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *longe alia* — *ac*. (2.) *Cum* with the subjunctive. (3.) The signification of the comparative degree.

The complete subjugation prevented by the inclemency of the season. Caesar leads his army into winter-quarters.

10 29. Reliquīs **deinceps** diēbus Caesar silvās **caedere** instituit, et nē quis inermibus **imprudentibusque** militibus ab latere impetus fierī posset, omnem eam **māteriam**, quae erat caesa, conversam ad hostem conlocābat et prō vallō ad utrumque latus exstruēbat. incredibilī celeritāte māgnō spatiō paucīs diēbus
15 cōfectō, cum iam **pecus** atque extrēma impedimenta ab nostrīs tenērentur, ipsī dēnsiōrēs silvās peterent, eiusmodi sunt tempestātēs cōsecūtāe, utī opus necessariō intermitterētur et **continuā-**
tiōne imbrum diūtius sub pellibus militēs continērī nōn possent. itaque vāstātis omnibus eōrum agrīs, vicīs acdificiisque
20 incēnsīs, Caesar exercitum redūxit et in Aulercīs Lexoviisque, reliquīs item civitatibus, quae proximē bellum fēcērant, in hibernīs conlocāvit.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The ablative absolute. (2.) The subjunctive of result.

C. IULII CAESARIS DE BELLO GALLICO

COMMENTARIUS QUARTUS.

1-15. WAR WITH THE USIPETES AND THE TENCHTHERI.

The Usipetes and Tenchtheri, disturbed by the Suebi, cross over into Gaul. Description of the Suebi.



1. Eā quae secūta est hieme, ¹quī fuit annus Gnaeō Pompēiō, Mārcō Crassō cōsulibus, Usipetēs Germānī et item Tencterī magnā cum multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā mari, quō Rhēnus influit. ⁵causa trānseundī fuit quod ab Suēbīs complūrēs annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agrī culturā prohibēbantur. Suēbōrum gēns est longē māxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. hī centum pāgōs habēre ²dicuntur, ¹⁰ex quibus quotannis ³singula milia armātōrum bellandī causā ex finibus ēdūcunt. reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt. hī rūsus in vicem annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. sic neque agrī culturā nec ratiō atque ūsus belli intermittitur. sed prīvātī ac sēparātī ¹⁵agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in

Chap. 1. 1 396, 2 (445, 4); M. 182, 4; A. 199; G. 614, r 3, b; B. 250, 3; L. & M. 824; 826. — 2 611, 1 (534, I, n. 1); M. 274, 1; A. 330, b; G. 528; B. 332, c; L. & M. 961; 962. — 3 164 (174, 2, 1); M. 72, III; A. 95, a; G. 97; B. 78, 1, c; L. & M. 1080.

locō incolendī causā licet. neque multum frūmentō, sed māximam partem lacte atque pecore **vivunt** multumque sunt in **vēnātiōnibus**; quae rēs et **cibi** genere et cotidiānā exercitātiōne et libertāte vitae, cum ā pueris nullō officiō aut disciplinā **adsuē-**
 5 **facti** nihil omninō contrā voluntātem faciant, et virēs alit et **immāni** corporum magnitudine hominēs efficit. atque in eam sē cōsuetudinē adduxērunt, ut locis **frigidissimis** neque **vestitūs** praeter pellēs habērent quicquam, quarū propter exiguitatem magna est corporis pars aperta, et **lavārentur** in flūminibus.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The agreement of the relative with an appositive in its own clause. (2.) The ablative of separation. (3.) The personal construction with verbs of saying. (4.) The partitive genitive.

- 10 **2.** Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō, ut quae bellō cēperint quibus vendant habeant, quam quō ūllam rem ad sē importārī
 1 **dēsiderent**. quān etiam iumentis, quibus māximē Gallia **dēlectātur** quaeque **impēnsō** parant pretiō, Germāni importātis nōn ūtuntur, sed quae sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque **dēfōrmia**,
 15 haec cotidiānā exercitātiōne summī ut sint **2** **labōris** efficiunt. equestribus proeliis saepe ex equis **dēsiliunt** ac pedibus proeliantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre **vestigiō** adsuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam aut **inertius** habētur quam **ephippiis** ūtī. itaque
 20 ad quemvis numerum **ephippiātōrum** equitum **quamvis** paucī adire audent. vīnum ad sē omninō importārī nōn **sinunt**, quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum **remollēscere** hominēs atque effēmīnārī arbitrantur.

Topics for Study.

(1.) *Quo* with an implied negative. (2.) The ablative of price. (3.) The predicate genitive.

3. Publicē m̄ximam putant esse laudem quam l̄tissimē ā suīs finibus vacāre agrōs: h̄c rē significārī m̄gnum numerum cīvitātium suam vim sustinēre nōn posse. itaque ūnā ex parte ā Suēbīs circiter milia passuum sexcenta agrī vacāre dīcuntur. ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubīi, quōrum fuit cīvitās ampla 5 atque flōrēns, ut est captus Germānōrum, et paulō sunt eiusdem generis ceterīs hūmāniōrēs, proptereā quod Rhēnum attingunt, multumque ad eōs mercātōrēs ventitant, et ipsī propter propinquitatem Gallicis sunt mōribus adsuēfactī. hōs cum Suēbī multīs saepe bellis expertī propter amplitūdinem gravitatemque cīvitā- 10 tis finibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen ¹ vectigālēs sibi fēcērunt ac multō humiliōrēs infirmiorēsque redēgērunt.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *una ex parte*. (2.) The accusative of extent of space. (3.) The ablative of degree of difference.

The Menapii are distressed.

4. In eādē causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tencterī, quōs suprā dīximus, quī complūrēs annōs Suēbōrum vim sustinuērunt; ad extrēmum tamen agrīs expulsī et multīs locīs Germāniae trien- 15 nium vagātī ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt; quās regiōnēs Menapiī incolēbant et ad utranque ripam flūminis agrōs, aedificiā vicōsque habēbant, sed tantae multitudinis aditū perterritī ex iīs aedificiis quae trāns flūmen habuerant dēmigrāvērunt et cis Rhēnum dispositīs praesidiis Germānōs trānsire prohibēbant. illi omnia 20 expertī, cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsire propter custōdiās Menapiōrum possent, revertī sē in suās sēdēs regiōnēsque simulāvērunt et trīduī viam prōgressī rūsus revertērunt atque omnī hōc itinere ūnā nocte equitātū cōfectō insciōs inopinantēsque Menapiōs oppressērunt, quī dē 25 Germānōrum discessū per explōrātōrēs certiōrēs factī sine metū

trāns Rhēnum in suōs vīcōs **remigrāverant**. hīs interfectīs nāvibusque eōrum occupātīs, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum quae citrā Rhēnum quiēta in suīs sēdibus erat certior ¹fieret, flūmen trāsiērunt atque omnibus eōrum aedificiīs occupātīs reliquam 5 partem hiemis sē eōrum cōpiīs aluērunt.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The difference between the construction after *prohibere* and that after other verbs of hindering. (2.) The construction with *priusquam*.

Caesar resolves to make war upon the Usipetes and Tenchtheri.

5. Hīs dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et **infirmitātem** Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōsiliīs capiendīs **mōbilēs** et novīs plērumque rēbus student, nihil hīs committendum exīstimāvit. est enim hōc Gallicae ¹cōnsuētūdinis, utī et **viātōrēs** etiam invītōs 10 cōsistere ²cōgant et quod quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cōgnōverit quaerant, et mercātōrēs in oppidīs vulgus circumstat, quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cōgnōverint **prōnūntiāre** cōgant. hīs rēbus atque **auditiōnibus** permōtī dē summis saepe rēbus cōsilia ineunt, ³quōrum eōs ē vestigiō 15 **paenitēre** **necesse** est, cum **incertis** rumōribus **serviant**, et plēriq̄ue ad voluntātem eōrum fīcta respondeant.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The predicate genitive. (2.) Singular subject with plural verb. (3.) The construction after *paenitere*. (4.) The ablative of the gerundive construction with *in*.

6. Quā cōnsuētūdine cōgnitā Caesar, nē ¹graviōrī bellō occurreret, mātūrius quam cōsuerat ad exercitum proficīscitur. eō cum vēnisset, ea quae fore suspicātus erat facta cōgnōvit:

Chap. 4 1 605, II (520, II); M. 351; A. 327; G. 577; B. 292; L. & M. 879; 880.

Chap. 5. 1 439, 3 (401); M. 217, 2; A. 214, *d*; G. 366, R. 1; B. 198, 3; L. & M. 557. — 2 389 (461, 1); A. 205, *c*; G. 211, Exception *a*; L. & M. 472. — 3 457 (409, III); M. 229; A. 221, *b*; G. 377; B. 209; L. & M. 585.

Chap. 6. 1 498 (444, 1); M. 426; A. 93, *a*; G. 297, 2; B. 240, 1; L. & M. 678.

missās lēgatiōnēs ab nōnnūllis cīvitātibus ad Germānōs invītātōs-
que eōs, utī ab Rhēnō discēderent, omniaque, quae ²postulāssent,
ab sē fore parāta. quā spē adductī Germānī lātius vagābantur
et in fines Eburōnum et Condrūsōrum, quī sunt Trēverōrum
clientēs, pervēnerant. principibus Galliae ēvocātis Caesar ea quae ⁵
cōgnōverat **dissimulanda** sibi exīstimāvit eōrumque animīs **per-**
mulsis et cōfirmātis equitātūque imperātō bellum cum Germānis
gerere cōstituit.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The significations of the comparative. (2.) The future perfect in indirect
discourse. (3.) The ablative absolute.

The Germans send ambassadors to Caesar.

7. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlectis iter in ea
loca facere coepit, quibus in locis esse Germānōs audiēbat. ā ¹⁰
quibus cum paucōrum diērum ¹iter abesset, lēgātī ab hīs vērē-
runt, quōrum haec fuit ōrātiō: Germānōs neque priōrēs populō
Rōmānō bellum inferre neque tamen recūsāre, sī lacessantur, quā
armīs contendant, quod Germānōrum cōsuētūdō sit ā māioribus
trādita, quicumque bellum inferant, resistere neque dēprecārī. ¹⁵
haec tamen dicere, vēnisse invītōs, ēiectōs domō. sī suam grā-
tiam Rōmānī velint, posse iis **ūtilēs** esse amīcōs; vel sibi agrōs
²**attribuant** vel patiantur eōs tenēre quōs armīs **possēderint**:
sēsē ūnjs Suēbīs concēdere, quibus nē diī quidem immortālēs
parēs esse pōssint; reliquum quidem in terrīs esse nēminem ²⁰
quem nōn superāre possint.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The accusative of extent of space. (2.) The repetition of the antecedent.
(3.) The mood which represents the imperative in indirect discourse.

Chap. 6. **2** 644, 2 (525, 2); M. 391; 398, 4; A. 336, B; G. 510; B. 318; L. &
M. 802, 803, 804.

Chap. 7. **1** 417 (379); M. 196; A. 257; G. 335; B. 181; L. & M. 513. — **2** 642,
4 (523, III); M. 393; A. 339; G. 652; B. 316; L. & M. 1023.

8. Ad haec Caesar quae vīsum est respondit; sed exitus fuit
 ōrātiōnis: sibi nūllam cum hīs amīcitiā esse posse, sī in Galliā
 remanērent; neque vērū esse quī suōs finēs **tuērī** nōn potuerint
 aliēnōs occupāre; neque ūllōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs quī dari
 5 tantae praesertim multitudinī sine iniuriā possint; sed licēre, sī
 velint, in Ubiōrum finibus cōnsidere, quōrum sint lēgātī apud sē
 et dē Suēbōrum iniuriis querantur et ā sē auxilium petant: hōc
 sē Ubiis imperātūrum.

Topic for Study.

The moods and tenses of *oratio obliqua*.

9. Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dīxērunt et rē dēliberātā
 10 post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs: intereā nē propius
¹sē castra movēret petiērunt. nē id quidem Caesar ab sē im-
 petrārī posse dīxit. cōgnōverat enim māgnam partem equitātūs
 ab iīs aliquot diēbus ante praedandī **frūmentandī**que causā ad
Ambivaritōs trāns **Mosam** missam: hōs exspectārī equitēs atque
 15 ēius rei causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

Topic for Study.

The two possible constructions after *propius*, *proxime*, *propior*, and *proximus*.

Description of the Meuse and the Rhine.

10. Mosa **prōfluit** ex monte **Vosegō**, quī est in finibus Lin-
 gonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā, quae appellātūr
Vacalus, īnsulam efficit **Batāvōrum**, neque longius ab Rhēnō mīli-
 bus passuum LXXX in Oceanum īnfluit. Rhēnus autem oritur
 20 ex **Lepontiis**, quī Alpēs incolunt, et longō spatiō per finēs Nan-
 tuātiū, Helvētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, **Mediōmaticum**, **Tribocōrum**,
 Trēverōrum ¹**citātus** fertur et, ubi Oceanō appropinquāvit, in

Chap. 9. 1 420, 5 (437, 1); M. 258, 2; A. 234, e; C. 359, 3, n. 1; B. 141, 3.

Chap. 10. 497 (443); M. 413; A. 191; G. 325. R. 6; B. 239.

plūrēs **dēfluit** partēs multīs ingentibusque īnsulīs effectīs, quārum pars māgna ā ferīs barbarisque nātiōnibus incolitur, ex quibus sunt quī **piscibus** atque **ōvis avium** vivere existimantur, multisque capitibus in Ōceanum īfluit.

Topic for Study.

The different uses of the ablative in the chapter.

The perfidy of the Germans.

11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum XII milibus abesset, ut erat cōstitutum, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur; quī in itinere congressī māgnopere nē longius prōgrederētur ōrābant. cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant utī ad eōs equitēs quī āgmen¹ antecessissent praemitteret eōsque pūgnā prohibēret, sibi que utī potestātem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendī; quōrum sī prīn-10 cipēs ac senātus sibi iūreiūrandō fidem fēcisset, eā condiciōne quae ā Caesare ferrētur sē ūsūrōs ostendēbant: ad hās rēs cōn-
ficiendās sibi trīduī spatium daret. haec omnia Caesar eōdem illō pertinēre arbitrābātur, ut trīduī morā interpositā equitēs eōrum quī abessent reverterentur; tamen sēsē nōn longius mīli-15 bus passuum quattuor **aquātiōnis** causā prōcessūrum eō diē dīxit: hūc posterō diē quam **frequentissimī** convenīrent, ut dē eōrum postulātīs cōgnōsceret. interim ad praefectōs, quī cum omnī equitātū antecesserant, mittit quī nūntiārent nē hostēs proeliō lacesserent et, sī ipsī lacesserentur, sustinērent, **quoad** ipse cum 20 exercitū propius accessisset.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The subjunctive by attraction. (2.) Relative clauses of purpose. (3.) The gerund with direct object.

12. At hostēs ubi prīmum nostrōs equitēs cōspexērunt, quōrum erat quīnque mīlium numerus, cum ipsī nōn amplius

octingentōs ¹equitēs habērent, quod iī quī frūmentandī causā ierant trāns Mosam nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus nostrīs, quod lēgātī eōrum paulō ante ā Caesare discesserant atque is diēs **indūtiis** erat ab hīs petītus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs per-
 5 turbāvērunt; rūsus resistantibus cōsuētūdine suā ad pedēs dēsiluērunt, **subfossis** equīs complūribusque nostrīs dēiectis reli-
 quōs in fugam coniēcērunt atque ita perterritōs ēgērunt, ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent quam in cōspectum āgminis nostrī vēnis-
 sent. in eō proeliō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur quattuor
 10 et septuāgintā, in hīs vir fortissimus, Pisō Aquitānus, amplis-
 simō genere nātus, cūius avus in civitāte suā rēgnum obtinuerat amicus ab senātū nostrō appellātus. hic cum frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex periculō ēripuit: ipse equō vulnerātō dēiectus, quoad potuit, fortissimē restitit: cum circum-
 15 ventus multis vulneribus acceptis cecidisset, atque id frāter, quī iam proeliō excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus **obtulit** atque interfectus est.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The idiom *ubi primum*. (2.) The ablative of source. (3.) The various significations of the participle.

Caesar resolves to attack them at once.

13. Hōc factō proeliō Caesar neque iam sibi lēgātōs audiendōs neque condiciōnēs accipiendās arbitrābātur ab iis, quī per dolum
 20 atque īnsidiās petitā pāce ultrō bellum intulissent: expectāre vērō dum hostium cōpiae augērentur equitātusque reverterētur, summae **dēmentiae** esse iūdicābat, et cōgnitā Gallōrum īfirmi-
 tātē, quantum iam apud eōs hostēs ūnō proeliō auctōritātis essent cōsecūtī sentiēbat; quibus ad cōsilia capiēda nihil spatiū dan-
 25 dum exīstimābat. hīs cōstitutīs rēbus et cōsiliō cum lēgātīs

Chap. 12. 1 471, 4 (417, 1, N. 2); M. 239. 3; A. 247, c. N.; G. 296, R. 4; B. 217, 3; L. & M. 615; 618.

et quaestore commūnicātō, nē quem diem pūgnae praetermitteret, opportūnissima rēs accidit, quod postridiē eius ¹diēi māne eādem et perfidiā et simulatiōne usi Germāni frequentēs omnibus prīncipibus māiōribusque nātū adhibitīs ad eum in castra vērunt, simul, ut dicēbātur, sui purgandi causā, quod, contrā, atque esset dictum et ipsi petissent, proelium prīdiē commīsissent, simul ut, si quid possent, dē indūtiīs fallendō impetrarent. quōs sibi Caesar oblātōs gāvīsus illōs retinēri iussit; ipse omnes cōpiās castris ēdūxit equitātumque, quod recentī proeliō perterritum esse exīstimābat, āgmen subsequi iussit.

10

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The different uses of the genitive in this chapter. (2.) The expression *sui purgandi*. (3.) Semi-deponent verbs.

The enemy are defeated with great slaughter and betake themselves into the territories of the Sigambri.

14. ¹Acie triplici institutā et celeriter octo milium itinere cōfectō prius ad hostium castra pervēnit quam quid agerētur Germāni sentīre ²possent. quī omnibus rēbus subitō perterriti, et celeritate adventūs nostrī et discessū suōrum, neque cōsiliū habendī neque arma capiendī spatiō datō perturbantur cōpiāsne **adversus** 15 hostem ēducere, ³an castra dēfendere, an fugā salūtem petere praestāret. quōrum timor cum fremitū et concursū significārētur, milites nostrī prīstinī diēi perfidiā incitātī in castra **inrūperunt**. quō locō, quī celeriter arma capere potuerunt paulisper nostris restitērunt atque inter carrōs impedimentaue proelium commīsē- 20 runt: at reliqua multitudine puerōrum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suis domo excesserant Rhēnumque trāsierant) **passim** fugere coepit; ad quōs cōsectandōs Caesar equitātum mīsīt.

Chap. 13. 1 446, 5 (398, 5); M. 258, 2; A. 223, e; G. 372, n. 3; B. 201, 3, a; L. & M. 553.

Chap. 14. 1 Intr. 123, I, 2) c. — 2 605, II (520, II); M. 351; A. 327; G. 577; B. 292; L. & M. 879; 880. — 3 650 (353); M. 385, 5; A. 211; G. 458; L. & M. 705.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The line of battle. (2.) The construction after *prius—quam*. (3.) Correlatives. (4.) Double questions.

15. Germānī post tergum clāmōre audītō, cum suōs interfici vidērent, armīs **abiectis** signīsque militāribus relictis sē ex castrīs ēiēcērunt, et cum ad **cōnfluentem** Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā fugā dēspērātā māgnō numerō interfectō reliquī sē in flūmen **praecipitāvērunt** atque ibi timōre, lassitūdine, vī flūminis oppressi perierunt. nostrī ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs perpaucīs vulnerātis ex tantī bellī timōre, cum hostium numerus capitum CCCCXXX mīlium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt. Caesar iīs, quōs in castrīs retinuerat, discēdendi potestātem fēcit. 10 illi supplicia cruciātūsque Gallōrum veritī, quōrum agrōs vexāverant, remanēre sē apud eum velle dīxērunt. hīs Caesar libertātem concessit.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The idiom *ad unum omnes*. (2.) The various significations of the ablative absolute.

16-19. CAESAR'S CROSSING INTO GERMANY.

Caesar determines to cross into Germany.

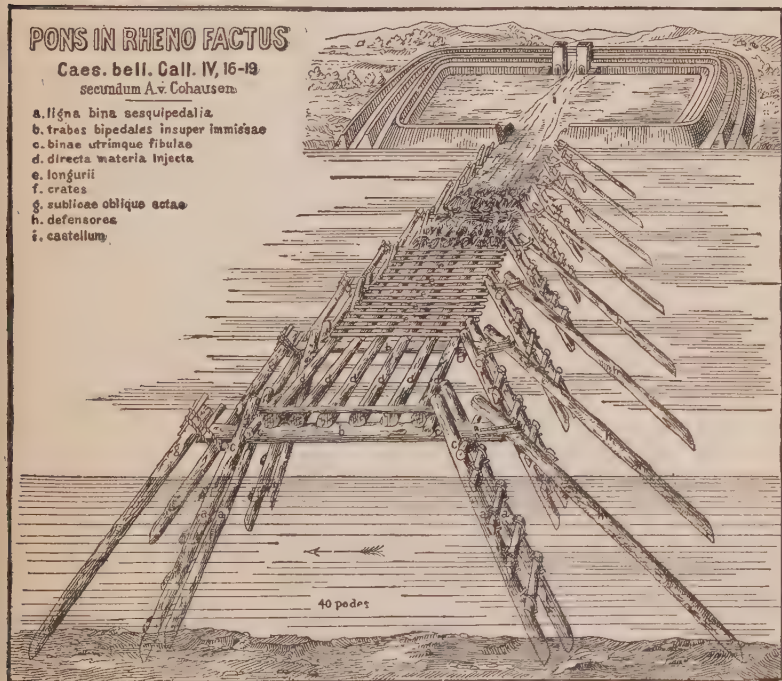
16. Germānicō bellō cōfectō multis dē causīs Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum; quārum illa fuit iūstissima, 15 quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impellī ut in Galliam venīrent, suis quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluit, cum intellegerent et posse et audēre populī Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsire accessit etiam quod illa pars equitātūs Usipetum et Tencterōrum, quam suprà commemorāvī praedandī frūmentandīque causā 20 Mosam trānsisse neque proeliō interfuisse, post fugam suōrum sē trāns Rhēnum in finēs **Sugambrōrum** recēperat sēque cum iīs coniūnxerat. ad quōs cum Caesar nūntiōs mīsisset, quī postularent eōs quī sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent sibi ¹dēderent,

respondērunt: populī Rōmānī imperium Rhēnum finīre: sī sē invitō Germānōs in Galliam trānsīre nōn aequum existimāret, cūr suī quicquam esse imperiū aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret? Ubī autem, quī ūnī ex Trānsrhēnānis ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīserant, amīcitiā fēcērant, obsidēs dēderant, māgnopere 5

PONS IN RHENO FACTUS

Caes. bell. Gall. IV, 16-19
secundum A. v. Coehusen.

- a. ligna bina sesquipedia.
- b. trabes bipedales insuper immiscae
- c. binae utrimque fibulae
- d. directa materia injecta
- e. longurii
- f. crates
- g. sublicae oblique actae
- h. defensores
- i. castrum



orābant ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suēbīs premerentur; vel, sī id facere occupātiōnibus rei pūblicae prohiberetur, exercitum modo Rhēnum trānsportāret: id sibi ad auxilium spemque reliquī temporis satis futurum. tantum esse nōmen atque opīniōnem eius exercitūs Ariovistō pulsō et hōc novissimō 10 proeliō factō etiam ad ultimās Germānōrum nātiōnēs, utī opī-

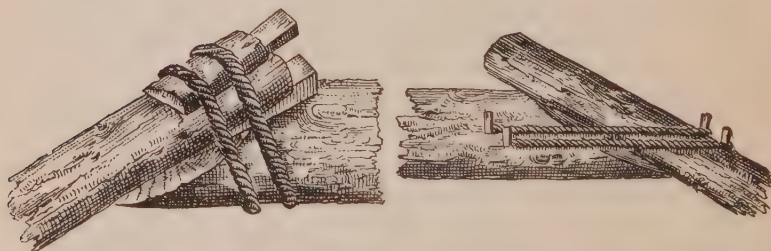
niōne et amīcitiā populī Rōmānī tūtī esse possint. nāvium māgnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum exercitum pollicēbantur.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The omission of *ut*. (2.) The use of the relative at the beginning of a sentence. (3.) The possessive genitive in the predicate.

Description of the bridge which Caesar builds across the Rhine.

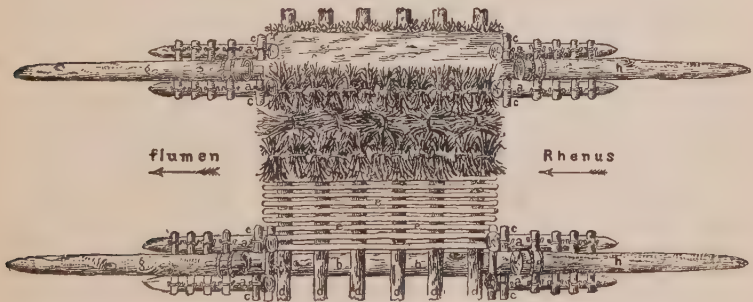
17. Caesar hīs dē causīs, quās commemorāvī, Rhēnum trānsīre dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsīre neque satis tūtum esse arbitrā-
5 bātur, neque suae neque populī Rōmānī dīgnitātis esse statuēbat. itaque, etsī summa difficultās faciendī pontis prōpōnēbātur propter lātitudinem, **rapiditatem** altitudinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut aliter nōn trānsdūcendum exercitum exīstimā-
10 bat. ratiōnem pontis hanc instituit. **tigna** bīna **sēsquipēdālia**, paulum ab imō praeacūta dīmēnsa ad altitudinem flūminis intervāllō pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. haec cum machinatiōni-



QUOMODO SUBLICAE AC DEFENSORES CUM TRABIBUS BIPEDALIBUS CONIUNCTA SINT.

bus immissa in flūmen dēfixerat fistūcisque adēgerat, nōn sublicae modō dīrēctē ad perpendiculum, sed prōnē ac fastīgātē, ut secundum nātūram flūminis prōcumberent, hīs item
15 contrāria duo ad eundem modum iūcta intervāllō pedum ¹quadragēnum ab inferiōre parte contrā vim atque impetum flūminis

conversa statuēbat. haec utraque **insuper bipedalibus** trabibus immissis, quantum eorum tignorum iunctura distabat, binis utrimque **fibulis** ab extrēmā parte distinēbantur; quibus **dis-**
clūsīs atque in contrāriam partem revinctis tanta erat operis firmitūdō atque ea rērum nātūra, ut, quō māior vīs aquae sē ²in-
citāvisset, hōc **artius inligāta** tenērentur. haec ³**dirēctā** materiā iniectā **contexēbantur** et longuriis **crātibusque cōnsternēbantur**;
ac nihilō sētius sublicae et ad inferiōrem partem flūminis **obli-**
quē agēbantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omnī opere coniunctae vim flūminis ⁴exciperent, et aliae item suprà pontem ¹⁰
mediocri spatiō, ut, sī arborum **trunci** sive nāvēs ⁵dēciendi operis essent ā barbaris missae, hīs dēfēnsōribus eārum rērum vīs minuerētur, neu ponti nocērent.



PONTIS IUGUM SUPERNE VISUM.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The structure of the bridge (see plan). (2.) The indicative mood after *cum*.
(3.) The ablative of degree of difference. (4.) The uses of the participle. (5.)
Purpose clauses. (6.) The genitive of the gerundive. (7.) Distributive numerals.

Chap. 17. 2 652 (529, II); M. 405; A. 342; G. 629; B. 324; L. & M. 793. —
3 497 (443); M. 413; A. 191; G. 325, r. 6; B. 239. — 4 590 (497, 1); M. 382, 3;
A. 317; G. 630; B. 282, 2; L. & M. 893; 835. — 5 626, 5 (544, n. 2); M. 287;
A. 298, r.; G. 428, r. 2; B. 339, 6.

Caesar enters the territories of the Sugambri, and proceeds into the country of the Ubii, from whom he gains information regarding the Suebi. He returns to Gaul.

18. Diēbus decem, quibus māteria coepta erat comportārī, omnī opere effectō exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar ad utramque partem pontis firmō praesidiō relictō in finēs Sugambrōrum contendit. interim ā complūribus cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt; 5 quibus pācem atque amicitiam petentibus liberaliter respondit obsidēsque ad sē addūcī iubet. Sugambrī ex eō tempore, quō pōns institui coeptus est, fugā comparātā hortantibus iīs, quōs ex Teneteris atque Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, finibus suis excesserant suaque omnia **exportāverant**, sēque in **sōlitūdinem** 10 ac silvās abdiderant.

Topic for Study.

The voice of *coepti* when used with a passive infinitive.

19. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum finibus morātus omnibus vicīs aedificiisque incēnsīs frūmentisque **succisīs**, sē in finēs Ubiōrum recēpit atque iīs auxilium suum pollicitus, sī ab Suēbīs premerentur, haec ab iīs cōgnōvit: Suēbōs, posteāquam per explōrātōrēs pontem fierī comperissent, mōre suō conciliō habitō 15 nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmisisse utī dē oppidīs dēmigrārent, liberōs, uxōrēs suaque omnia in silvās dēpōnerent, atque omnēs quī arma ferre possent ūnum in locum convenirent: hunc esse delēctum ¹medium ferē regiōnum eārum quās Suēbī obtinērent: 20 **hic** Rōmānōrum adventum expectāre atque ibi dēcertāre cōstituisse. quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus hīs rēbus cōfectīs quārum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum cōstituerat, ut Germānīs metum iniceret, ut Sugambrōs ulciscerētūr, ut Ubiōs **obsidiōne liberāret**, diēbus omnīnō decem et octō trāns Rhēnum

cōsūmptis satis et ad laudem et ad ūtilitātem prōfectum arbitrātus sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.

Topic for Study.

Appositive clauses.

20-36. WAR IN BRITAIN.

Caesar resolves to proceed into Britain.

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsi in hīs locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septentrionēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicis bellis hostibus nostris inde subministrata auxilia intellegēbat et, si tempus annī ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen māgnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābatur, si modo insulam¹ adisset et genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cōgnōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallis erant incōgnita. neque enim temerē praeter mercā-¹⁰ tōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque iis ipsīs quicquam, praeter ōram maritimam atque eas regiōnēs quae sunt contrā Galliās nōtum est. itaque ēvocātis ad sē undique mercātōribus neque quanta esset insulae māgnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs inco-¹⁵ lerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus institūtis ūterentur, neque quī essent ad māiōrum nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs reperire poterat.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) Conditional sentences. (2.) Sequence of tenses.

Volusenus is sent to examine the state of affairs on the island.

Ambassadors come from Britain.

21. Ad haec cōgnōscenda, priusquam periculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus Gaiū Volusēnum cum nāvi longā praemittit. huic mandat ut explorātis omnibus rēbus ad sē quam²⁰

Chap. 20. 1 646 (509, n. 3); M. 402; A. 307, f; G. 596, r. 5; B. 319, a; L. & M. 1034; 1031.

primum revertātur. ipse cum omnibus cōpiis in Morinōs proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam **traiectus**. hūc nāvēs undique ex finitimis regiōnibus et ¹quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum effēcerat classem iubet convenire. ⁵interim cōsiliō eius cōgnitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad **Britannōs** ā complūribus eius insulae cīvitatibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt, quī polliceantur obsidēs ²dare atque imperiō populī Rōmāni **obtemperāre**. quibus auditis liberālīter pollicitus hortātusque ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit et ¹⁰cum iis unā **Commium**, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātis rēgem ibi cōstituerat, cūius et virtūtem et cōsiliū probābat et quem sibi **fidēlem** arbitrābatur, cūiusque auctōritās in his regiōnibus ³māgnū habēbatur, mittit. huic imperat quās possit adeat civitātēs hortēturque ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur, sēque ¹⁵celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus perspectis regiōnibus omnibus, quantum eī facultātis darī potuit, quī nāvī ēgredi ac sē barbaris committere nōn audēret, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspexisset renūntiat.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The verbal noun *traiectus*. (2.) The genitive of price. (3.) The idiom *fidem sequantur*. (4.) The omission of *ut*.

Caesar's passage across, and his arrival.

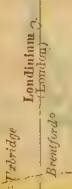
22. Dum in his locis Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex māgnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vērunt, quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōsiliō **excūsārent**, quod hominēs barbari et nostrae cōsuētūdinis imperitī bellum populō Rōmānō ¹fēcissent, sēque ea quae imperāisset factūrōs pollicērentur. hōc sibi satis opportūnē Caesar accidissee arbitrātus, quod neque post ter-

Chap. 21. 1 399, 3 (445, 9); M. 453; A. 200, b; G. 616; B. 251, 4. — 2 618, 1 (537, 1); M. 261; 272; A. 330, f, n.; G. 527, r. 3; L. & M. 954. — 3 448 (404); M. 224; A. 215, c; G. 380, 1; B. 203, 4; L. & M. 578.

Chap. 22. 1 588, II (516, II); M. 400; A. 341, d; G. 541; B. 286, 1; L. & M. 846; 851.

CAS I

Colno
Burnet



6 Hall's Road

BIBROCI

Sutton, J.

Thy 877.8

Oreanus callia ¹⁰/₁₁

Всего

19

1

gum hostem relinquere volēbat neque bellī gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās ²tantulārum rērum occupatiōnēs sibi Britanniae antepōnendās iudicābat, māgnūm hīs obsidum numerum imperat. quibus adductīs eōs in fidem recēpit. nāvibus circiter LXXX onerāriis coactīs contrāctisque, quot ⁵satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs exīstimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat, quaestōrī, lēgātīs praefectisque distribuit. hūc accēdēbant XVIII onerariae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ab milibus passuum octō ventō tenēbantur, quō minus in eundem portum pervenīre possent: hās equitibus distribuit. ¹⁰reliquum exercitum Quīntō Titūriō Sabīnō et Lūciō Aurunculeiō Cottae lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum ab quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant dēdūcendum dedit. Publium Sulpiciūm Rūfūm lēgātūm cum eō praesidiō quod satis esse arbitrābātur portum tenēre iussit.

15

Topics for Study.

- (1.) Relative clauses of purpose. (2.) Diminutives. (3.) *Quod* expressing cause on the authority of another. (4.) The gerundive construction.

23. Hīs cōstitutīs rēbus nactus idōneam ad nāvīgandum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit equitēsque in ulteriōrem portum prōgredi et nāvēs cōnscendere et sē sequī iussit. ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēi circiter quārtā cum primīs nāvibus Britanniam attingit atque ibi in omni- ²⁰bus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōspexit. cuius locī haec erat nātūra, atque ita montibus angustīs mare continēbātur, utī ex locīs superiōribus in litus tēlum adigī posset. hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō ¹convenīrent, ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs ²⁵exspectāvit. interim lēgātīs tribūnīsque militum convocātīs et

Chap. 22. 2 340, 2 (332); M. 159, 1; A. 164, a; G. 189, 6; B. 148, 1; L. & M. 79.

Chap. 23. 1 605, II (519, II, 2); M. 354; A. 328; G. 572; B. 293, III, 2; L. & M. 921.

quae ex Volusēnō cōgnōsset et quae fieri vellet ostendit monuit-
que, ut rei militāris ratiō, māximē ut maritimae rēs postulārent,
ut quae celerem atque **instābilem mōtum** ²habērent, ad nūtum
et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab iīs administrārentur. hīs dīmissīs et
5 ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum datō signō et
sublātīs ancorīs circiter milia passuum **septem** ab eō locō prō-
gressus apertō ac plānō litore nāvēs cōstituit.

Topics for Study.

(1.) *Dum* with the subjunctive. (2.) Relative clause expressing cause. (3.) The omission of *ut*.

24. At barbarī cōsiliō Rōmānōrum cōgnitō praemissō equitātū
et **essedāriis**, quō plērumque genere in proeliis ūtī cōsuērunt,
10 reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredi prohibēbant.
erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter māgni-
tūdinem nisi in altō cōstituī nōn poterant, ¹militibus autem
ignōtīs locīs, impeditīs manibus māgnō et gravī armōrum onere
oppressīs simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōn-
15 sistendum et cum hostibus erat pūgnandum, cum illī aut ex
āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressī omnibus **membris** expedit-
tīs, nōtissimīs locīs audācter tēla conicerent et equōs **insuēfactōs**
incitārent. quibus rēbus nostrī perterritī atque hūius omninō
²generis pūgnae imperitī nōn eādē alacritāte ac studiō quō in
20 pedestribus ūtī proeliis cōsuērant nitēbantur.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The difference between the construction after *prohibere* and that after other verbs of hindering. (2.) The dative of agent. (3.) The use of conjunctions. (4.) The genitive after adjectives.

Chap. 23. 2 592 (517, 3, 1); M. 355; A. 320, *e*; G. 634; L. & M. 839.

Chap. 24. 1 431, 2 (388); M. 207; A. 232; G. 355; B. 189, 1; L. & M. 991.
— 2 451, 1 (399); M. 226, 1; A. 218, *a*; G. 374; B. 204, 1; L. & M. 573.

Engagement with the Britons.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbaris inūsitiōr et mōtus ad ūsum expeditior, paulum removērī ab onerāriis nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōstitui atque inde **fundis**, **sagittis**, tormentis hostēs propelli ac submovērī iussit; quae rēs māgnō ūsuī nostris fuit. nam et nāvium **figūrā** et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitiō genere tormentōrum permōti barbari cōstitērunt ac paulum modo pedem rettulērunt. atque nostris militibus cunctantibus, māximē propter altitudinem maris, qui decimae legiōnis ¹aquilam ferēbat, **contestātus** deōs ut ea rēs legiōnī **fēliciter ēveniret**. 10 ‘**dēsilite**,’ **inquit**, ‘militēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere: **ego** certē **meum** rei publicae atque imperātōri officium ²praestitero.’ hōc cum māgnā vōce dixisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. tum nostrī cohortātī ³inter sē, nē tantum **dēdecus** admitterētur, ūniversi ex nāvī dēsiluērunt; 15 hōs item ex proximis (prīmīs) nāvibus cum cōspexissent, subsequūtī hostibus appropinquārunt.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The dative of service. (2.) The idiom *pedem retulerunt*. (3.) The future perfect. (4.) Condensed expressions.

26. Pūgnātum est ab utrīque ācritēr. nostrī tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque **firmiter** insistere neque sīgna subsequī poterant, atque ¹alius aliā ex nāvī, quibuscumque sīgnis 20 occurrerat, sē **aggregābat**, māgnopere perturbābantur: hostēs vērō nōtis omnibus vadis, ubi ex litore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōspexerant, incitātis equis impeditōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant, aliū ab latere apertō in

Chap. 25. 1 Intr. 103. — 2 540 (473); M. 311; A. 281, R.; G. 244; B. 264, a; L. & M. 748. — 3 502, 1 (448, N.); M. 439; A. 196, f; G. 221; B. 245, 1; L. & M. 1047.

Chap. 26. 1 516 (459, 1); M. 439; A. 203, c; G. 319; B. 253, 2; L. & M. 1047.

ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant. quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, **scaphās** longārum nāvium, item **speculātōria** nāvigia militibus complērī iussit et, quōs labōrantēs cōspexerat, hīs subsidia submittēbat. nostrī, simul in āridō cōstitērunt, suīs omnibus
 5 cōsecūtīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt neque longius prōsequī potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque īnsulam capere nōn potuerant. hōc ūnum ad prīstinam fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The impersonal construction. (2.) The idiom *alius alia*. (3.) The adjective used substantively. (4.) The dative after compounds.

The Britons surrender.

27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt, obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāssēt factūrōs sēsē pollicitī sunt. ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem suprà dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemisum. hunc illī ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs **ōrātōris** modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcērant: tum proeliō factō remīsērunt et in petendā pāce ēius rei **culpam** in multitudinem contulērunt et propter **imprudentiam** ut ignōscerētur petivērunt. Caesar questus quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātīs missīs pācem ab sē petissent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere
 20 imprudentiae dīxit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locīs arcessitam paucis diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, prīncipēsque undique convenīre et sē civitātēsq; suās Caesarī **commendāre** coepērunt.

Topic for Study.

The passive of the intransitive verb.

A severe storm assails the Roman fleet.

28 His rēbus pāce cōfīrmātā post diem quārtum quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs XVIII, dē quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. quae cum appropinquārent Britanniae et ex castris vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coorta est ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae eōdem unde erant profectae referrentur, aliae ad inferiōrem partem īnsulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, māgnō¹ suī cum periculō dēicerentur; quae tamen ancorīs iactis cum fluctibus complērentur, necessariō adversā nocte in altum prōvectae continentem petiērunt. 10

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The two possible constructions after *propius*, *proxime*, *propior*, *proximus*.
 (2.) The reflexive pronoun. (3.) The objective genitive.

29. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs maritimōs aestūs māximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōsuēvit, nostrisque id erat incōgnitum. ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quibus Caesar exercitum trānsportandum cūrāverat quāsque in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēverat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant¹⁵ dēligatae, tempestās adflīctābat, neque ūlla nostris facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur. complūribus nāvibus frāctis reliquae cum essent fūnibus, ancorīs reliquisque armāmentis āmissis ad nāvigandum inūtīlēs, māgna,¹ id quod necesse erat accidere, tōtius exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. neque enim nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportārī possent, et omnia deerant quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī, et, quod omnibus cōstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum hīs in locīs in hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The gerundive construction. (2.) A neuter pronoun in apposition with a clause.

Chap. 28. 1 440, 2 (396, III); M. 226, 1; A. 217; G. 363; B. 204, 1; L. & M. 571.

Chap. 29. 1 397 (445, 7); M. 445, 4; A. 200, e; G. 614, R. 2; B. 247, 1, b; L. & M. 830

The Britons take advantage of this opportunity. Caesar's provision against emergencies.

30. Quibus rēbus cōgnītīs prīncipēs Britanniae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē conlocūtī, cum equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deesse intellegent et paucitatem militum ex castrōrum exiguitate cōgnōscerent, quae ¹hōc erant
5 etiam angustiora, quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiōnēs transportāverat, optimum factū esse dūxērunt rebellione factā frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōducere, quod hīs superātīs aut reditū interclūsīs nēminem postea belli inferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōfidēbant.

Topic for Study.

The ablative of degree of difference.

10 **31.** Itaque rūsus coniūratiōne factā paulatim ex castris discēdere ac suōs clam ex agrīs dēducere coepērunt. at Caesar, etsi nōndum eōrum cōsilia cōgnōverat, tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō, quod obsidēs dare intermiserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspiciābatur. itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparā-
15 bat. nam et frūmentum ex agrīs cotidiē in castra cōferēbat et ¹quae gravissimē **afflictæ** erant nāvēs, eārum māteriā atque **aere** ad reliquās reficiendās utēbatur et quae ad eas rēs erant ūsuī ex continentī comportārī iubēbat. itaque, cum summō studiō ā militibus administrārētur, duodecim nāvibus āmissis, reliquīs ut
20 nāvigārī commodē posset effēcit.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The antecedent in the relative clause. (2.) The signification of the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect of *cognosco*.

Chap. 30. 1 479 (423); M. 248; A. 250; G. 403; B. 223; L. & M. 612.

Chap. 31. 1 399, 3 (445, 9); M. 435; A. 200, b; G. 616; B. 251, 4.

The stratagem of the Britons.

32. Dum ea ¹geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque ūllā ad id tempus belli suspiciōne interpositā, cum pars hominum in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra ²ventitāret, iī quī prō portīs castrōrum in statiōne erant Caesarī nūntiāvērunt **pulverem** māiōrem ⁵quam cōnsuētūdō ferret in eā parte vidērī quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id quod erat suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum cōsiliī, cohortēs, quae in statiōnibus erant, sēcum in eam partem proficiscī ex reliquīs duās in statiōnem succēdere, reliquās ³armārī et **cōnfestim** sēsē subsequī ¹⁰iussit. cum paulō longius ā castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conici animadvertit. nam quod omnī ex reliquīs partibus **dēmessō** frūmentō pars ūna erat reliqua, suspiciātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvīs **dēlituerant**; ¹⁵tum dispersōs dēpositīs armīs in **metendō** occupātōs subitō adortī paucīs interfectīs reliquōs incertīs ōrdinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

Topics for Study.

(1.) *Dum* with the present indicative. (2.) The partitive genitive. (3.) The reflexive use of verbs. (4.) Frequentative verbs.

Their mode of fighting from chariots.

33. Genus hōc est ex essedīs pūgnae: primō per omnēs partēs **perequant** et tēla coniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum ²⁰et strepitū rotārum ōrdinēs plērumque perturbant, et cum sē inter equitum ¹turmās insinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et

Chap. 32. 1 533, 4 (467, III, 4); M. 352; A. 276, e; G. 229, r.; B. 293, 1; L. & M. 971. — 2 364 (336); M. 157, 1; A. 167, b; G. 191, 1; B. 155, 2; L. & M. 93. — 3 517 (465); M. 430; A. 111, a, n.; G. 218; B. 256, 1; L. & M. 687.

Chap. 33. 1 Intr. 120.

pedibus proeliantur. aurigae interim paulatim ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita **currūs** conlocant, ut, si illi ā multitudīne hostium premantur, expeditum ad suōs **receptum** habeant. ita mōbilitātem equitum, **stabilitātem** peditum in proeliis praestant ac tantum ūsū cotidiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt, utī in dēclīvī ac praecipitī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī **moderārī** ac **flectere** et per **tēmōnem** **percurrere** et in iugō insistere et sē inde in currūs **citissimē** recipere cōsuērint.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The objective genitive. (2.) The reflexive pronoun. (3.) Subjunctive of result. (4.) The use of the participles.

They advance upon the Roman camp.

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātis nostris **novitāte** pūgnae tempore
 10 opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit: namque ēius adventū hostēs cōstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. quō factō ad
 lacesendum et ad committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus
 arbitrātus suō sē locō continuit et brevī tempore intermissō in
 castra legiōnēs redūxit. dum haec geruntur, nostris omnibus
 15 occupātis quī erant in agrīs reliquī discessērunt. secūtae sunt
 continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in castris
 1 continērent et hostem ā pūgnā prohibērent. interim barbari
 nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dimīsērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum
 militum suis praedicāvērunt et quanta **praedae** faciendae atque
 20 in perpetuum suī liberandī facultās darētur, si Rōmānōs castris
 expulissent, dēmōnstrāvērunt. hīs rēbus celeriter magnā multītū-
 dine **peditātūs** equitātūsque coāctā ad castra vērunt.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The various uses of the ablative in this chapter. (2.) Asyndeton. (3.) The gerund and gerundive constructions. (4.) Relative clauses of result. (5.) Indirect question.

Chap. 34. 1 591, 1 (500, 1); M. 337; 382, 5; A. 319; G. 631, 1; B. 284; L. & M. 836.

Caesar defeats them and returns to Gaul.

35. Caesar, etsi idem quod superioriōribus diēbus acciderat fore vidēbat, ut, si essent hostēs pulsī, celeritātē periculum **effugerent**, tamen nactus equitēs circiter XXX, quōs Commius Atrebās, dē quō ante dictum est, sēcum trāsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castris cōstituit. commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum militum 5 impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. quōs tantō ¹spatiō secūtī, quantum cursū et vīribus efficere potuērunt, complūrēs ex iīs occidērunt, deinde omnibus longē lātēque aedificiis incēnsis sē in castra recēpērunt.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) Conditional sentences in indirect discourse. (2.) The reflexive pronoun.

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce 10 vērērunt. hīs Caesar numerum obsidum quem antea imperāverat **duplicāvit** eōsque in continentem adducī iussit, quod propinquā diē **aequinocitiū** infirmīs nāvibus hiemī nāvigatiōnem subiciendam nōn exīstimābat. ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs 15 ad continentem pervērērunt; sed ex iīs onerariae duae eōdem, quōs reliquī, portūs capere nōn potuērunt et paulō **infra** delātae sunt.

Topics for Study.

- (1.) The idiom *medium noctem*. (2.) The gerundive construction. (3.) Deponent verbs. (4.) The idiom *portus capere*.

37-38. WAR WITH THE MORINI AND MENAPII.*The Morini attack a detachment of the Romans.*

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositī militēs circiter **trecentī** atque in castra contenderent, Morinī, quōs Caesar in 20 Britanniam proficiscēns pācātōs reliquerat, spē praedae adductī prīmō nōn ita māgnō suōrum numerō circumstetērunt ac, si sēsē

interfici nōllent, arma pōnere iussērunt. cum illi ¹orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter milia sex convēnērunt. quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex castris equitātum ²suīs auxiliō mīsīt. interim nostrī milītēs impetum
 5 hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius hōrīs quattuor fortissimē pūgnāvērunt et paucīs vulneribus acceptīs complūrēs ex hīs occidērunt. postea vērō quam equitātus noster in cōspectum vēnit, hostēs abiectīs armīs terga vertērunt māgnusque eōrum numerus est occīsus.

Topics for Study.

(1.) *Cum* with the subjunctive. (2.) The ablative absolute. (3.) The dative of service. (4.) The two possible constructions after *amplius*, *plus*, etc. (5.) Tmesis as illustrated in *postea* — *quam*.

Labienus subduces them. Titurius and Cotta lay waste the territories of the Menapii. Caesar fixes his winter-quarters among the Belgae. A thanksgiving is decreed at Rome.

- 10 **38.** Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum iīs legiōnibus quās ex Britannia redūxerat in Morinōs, quī rebellīonem fēcērant, mīsīt. quī cum propter ¹siccitatēs palūdum quō sē reciperent nōn habērent, quō superiōre annō **perfugiō** fuerant ūsī, omnēs ferē in potestātem Labiēni vēnērunt. at Q. Titūrius
 15 et L. Cotta lēgātī, quī in Menapiōrum finēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agris vāstātis, frūmentis succīs, aedificiis incēnsīs, quod Menapii sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt. Caesar in Belgīs omnium legiōnum hiberna cōstituit. eō duae omnīnō civitatēs ex Britannia obsi-
 20 dēs mīsērunt, reliquae neglēxērunt. hīs rēbus gestīs ex litteris Caesaris diērum viginti supplicātiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.

Topics for Study.

(1.) The relative pronoun used for a demonstrative and a conjunction. (2.) Relative clause of characteristic. (3.) The construction after *utor*.

Chap 37. 1 Intr. 117, 2). — 2 433 (390, II); M. 206; A. 233; G. 356; B 191, 2, a; L. & M. 548.

Chap. 38. 1 138, 2 (130, 2); M. 408; A. 75, c; G. 204, 5; B. 55, 4, c.

IDIOMS.

PREPOSITIONAL.

a dextro cornu, *on the right wing.*
a fronte, *in front.*
a pueris, *from boyhood.*
a sinistro cornu, *on the left wing.*
ab armis discedere, *to lay down the arms.*
ab signis discedere, *to leave the ranks.*
ab officio discedere, *to fail in one's duty.*
ab cohortatione, *after exhorting.*
ab eis defendere, *to defend against them.*
ab milibus passuum octo, *eight miles off.*
ab re frumentaria laborare, *to suffer in respect to provisions.*
ad equum rescribere, *to enroll in the cavalry.*
ad Caesarem deferre, *to lay before Caesar.*
ad extremum, *at last.*
ad hunc modum, *in this way.*
ad milia decem, *about ten thousand.*
ad speciem, *for show.*
ad unum, *to a man.*
ad urbem, *near the city.*
ad urbem pervenit, *he arrived at the city.*
ad Alpes pertinent, *extend as far as the Alps.*
apud Caesarem, *in the presence of Caesar.*
de ea causa, *for this reason.*
de improvviso, *suddenly.*

ex aqua mensurae, *measures by the water-clocks.*
ex itinere, *on the march.*
ex navi egredi, *to disembark.*
ex usu Galliae, *of advantage to Gaul.*
ex vestigio, *on the spot.*
e vinculis, *in chains.*
soror ex matre, *sister on the mother's side.*
unus e filiis, *one of the sons.*
in Caesaris fidem venire, *to put one's self under the protection of Caesar.*
in dies, *daily.*
in flumine pontem facere, *to build a bridge across the river.*
in fugam dare, *to put to flight.*
in itinere, *on the march.*
in perpetuum, *forever.*
in praesentia, *for the present.*
in reliquum tempus, *for the future.*
in vicem, *in turn.*
habere in animo, *to intend.*
inter se cohortati, *exhorting one another.*
inter se dare, *to exchange.*
inter se differunt, *they differ from one another.*
pro beneficiis, *in return for favors*
pro multitudine, *in proportion to the large body.*
pro perfuga, *as a deserter.*
sub corona vendere, *to sell as slaves.*

ADJECTIVAL.

ad extremum, *at last.*
 adverso colle, *up the hill.*
 adverso flumine, *up-stream*
 aequo animo, *with contented mind.*
 alienum aes, *debt.*
 alienum tempus, *an unfavorable time.*
 alii aliam in partem, *some in one direc-*
tion, others in another.
 aversi ab hosti circumventi, *surround-*
ed by the enemy on the rear.
 certiore eum facere, *to inform him.*
 certior fieri, *to be informed.*
 de improviso, *suddenly.*

extremo oppido, *at the end of the town.*
 in arido, *on dry land.*
 in perpetuum, *forever.*
 loco suo, *in a favorable place.*
 medio in colle, *on the middle of the hill.*
 multa lingua Gallica uti, *to speak the*
Gallic language fluently.
 multa nocte, *late at night.*
 multo die, *late in the day.*
 primo vere, *at the beginning of spring.*
 quisque nobilissimus, *all the nobles.*
 rari pugnabant, *here and there men*
were fighting.

ADVERBIAL.

alias — alias, *at one time — at another.*
 contra atque, *different than.*
 cum primum, *as soon as.*
 graviter ferre, *to be annoyed.*

largiter posse, *to have great influence.*
 multum valere, *to have great power.*
 quam maximus, *the greatest possible.*
 quam primum, *as soon as.*

PARTICIPIAL.

ante exactam hiemem, *before the win-*
ter had passed.

confectus vulneribus, *weakened by*
 sol oriens, *the East.* [wounds.]

VERBAL.

accedit ut, *moreover.*
 adficere supplicio, *to punish.*
 adfci beneficio, *to receive favors.*
 agere gratias, *to thank.*
 capere consilium, *to form a plan.*
 capere portum, *to reach a harbor.*
 castra movere, *to break camp.*
 castra ponere, *to pitch camp.*
 causam dicere, *to plead a case.*
 causam inferre, *to allege a reason.*
 conlocare nuptum, *to give in marriage.*
 consciscere sibi mortem, *to commit*
suicide.
 consilium inire, *to form a plan.*
 convertere signa, *to face about.*

dare manus, *to yield.*
 dare operam, *to take pains.*
 defendere bellum, *to ward off war.*
 ducere bellum, *to prolong a war.*
 ducere uxorem, *to marry.*
 facere iter, *to march.*
 ferre signa, *to advance.*
 gerere bellum, *to wage war.*
 gratiam habere, *to be grateful.*
 gratiam referre, *to requite.*
 habere eodem loco, *to consider in the*
same light.
 habere id compertum, *to have learned.*
 habere sibi persuasum, *to be per-*
suaded.

inferre bellum, *to make war.*
inferre signa conversa, *to face about*
and charge.
laxare manipulos, *to open the ranks.*
memoriam deponere, *to forget.*
naves armare, *to fit out ships.*
naves deducere, *to launch ships.*
naves solvere, *to weigh anchor.*
naves subducere, *to beach, to draw up*
ships.

praestare virtutem, *to show courage.*
recusare mortem, *to shrink from death*
referre pedem, *to retreat.*
repetere poenas, *to inflict punishment.*
sententia desistere, *to give up a plan*
sumere supplicium de eo, *to punish*
him.
vertere terga, *to flee.*
vim facere, *to use violence.*

NOMINAL.

aliquid consilii, *some new plan.*
Caesare consule, *in the consulship of*
Caesar.
celerius opinione, *sooner than any one*
supposed.
inita aestate, *at the beginning of sum-*
mer.

minus dubitationis, *less doubt.*
nihil reliqui, *nothing left.*
nihil vini, *no wine.*
plus doloris, *more pain.*
quantum boni, *how much advantage.*
quid negotii, *what business.*
quod navium, *what ships.*

HINTS FOR TRANSLATING.

The student should never attempt to translate a sentence until he has carefully read it in the Latin. As he reads each word he should gather its meaning and appreciate how the idea of the sentence is developed from the Latin standpoint. It is the spirit of the language which he is to master, and until he gains that spirit he fails to read Latin. "The translator," says Bernays, "is like the conqueror who brings foreign spoils to his own land" (Cauer, *Die Kunst des Übersetzens*, p. 8).

As the student proceeds he should note the emphasis which falls on certain words or phrases, and observe that no translation reproduces the original in which the corresponding emphatic idea does not find place. After reading the Latin sentence he should endeavor to grasp its meaning as a whole, and to render this into idiomatic English. "A translation which follows the original, word for word and sentence for sentence, may show the peculiarities of style of the original, but in slovenly delineation, like the wrong side of a carpet where the pattern is seen in criss-cross threads" (Cauer, *Die Kunst des Übersetzens*). Our language is rich in niceties of expression which will generally bring out exactly the shade of meaning and importance of each Latin word and phrase. Until this is done, the student has not translated, for translation means not the rendering of Latin words into English words; it means the full metamorphosis of the idea.

Pay special attention to the following points:—

Force; i.e. the principal word or words in such a position as to make them most effective. Such a position is the beginning and end of the sentence: "by the former our attention is excited, and on the latter it rests" (Crombie). Note the order in the following lines from *Macbeth*: "NOT IN THE LEGIONS | OF HORRID HELL, CAN COME a devil more damn'd | In evils, to TOP MACBETH."

In Latin this rule can be observed without restriction, since the inflection prevents ambiguity. But in English the emphasis must often be reproduced in other ways; e.g. *Caesar Ariovistum vicit, it was CAESAR who conquered Ariovistus*. Who conquered Ariovistus? CAESAR. *Ariovistum Caesar vicit, it was ARIOVISTUS whom Caesar conquered*. Caesar conquered some one. Who was it? ARIOVISTUS. *Vicit Caesar Ariovistum, Caesar really CONQUERED Ariovistus*. What did Caesar do to Ariovistus? He CONQUERED him.

Voice: Force sometimes requires the conversion of the Latin active voice into the English passive; e.g. *Aio te, Aeacida, Romanos vincere posse* was at first interpreted with *te* as emphatic subject: *I say that you can conquer the Romans*; but after the event it was explained with *te* as emphatic object: *I say that you can be conquered by the Romans*.

Again the Latin passive can sometimes be best rendered by the English active; e.g. *neque commissum a se intellegeret, he did not think that he had done anything*, i. 14.

Antithesis; i.e. the setting over against each other contrasted ideas, just as white seems whiter before a black background; e.g. *victoribus Sequanis, Hædus victis*, i. 31; *victores victis*, i. 44.

Collocation; i.e. placing of two ideas side by side; e.g. *illo licente contra liceri audeat nemo*, i. 18, do not translate "when he bid, no one dares to bid against him," but preserve the collocation by rendering, *to bid against him, when he bid, no one dares: victores victis*, i. 44.

Etymological Figure; i.e. a repetition of the same root; e.g. *bene bonus sit, male malis*; we do not bring out this etymological figure when we translate "it would go well with the good and ill with the bad," as we do when we render, *it would go justly with the just, and badly with the bad*.

Spirit of the Language: This we catch when we see the sentence from the Latin standpoint; e.g. we may translate the construction with *prohibeo* by a prepositional phrase, but we do not get the real construction until we see what *prohibeo* means and what it requires.

Meaning: Bring out the exact shade of meaning of the Latin word as far as possible. How inadequate is *desire* to express the Latin *desiderium*, one of the strongest words in the Latin vocabulary! Contrast *impero* with *iubeo*. If it be undesirable sometimes to render the preposition in a Latin compound, yet remember always to feel its force; e.g. *adducti — permoti*, i. 3.

Abstract Nouns: These are not numerous in Latin, and our English abstract noun is expressed in various ways; e.g. *he was testing the valor of the enemy and the courage of our own men, quid hostis virtute posset et quid nostri auderent periclitabatur*; *great was his suffering, multa passus est*; *from boyhood, a pueris*.

Prepositional Phrases: Our language is full of such, which in Latin are expressed variously, e.g. *he went off without seeing him, abiit nec eum vidit*; *he prevents him from deliberating, deterret quo minus consulat*; *you cannot conquer without fighting, vincere non potes, nisi pugnas*; *the legion gave thanks for his having expressed a most favorable opinion, legio gratias egit, quod optimum iudicium fecisset*, i. 41; *respecting his bringing over a crowd of Germans into Gaul, quod multitudinem Germanorum in Galliam traducat*, i. 44; *he did not want the conference set aside by throwing in any excuse, conloquium interposita causa tolli volebat*, i. 42; *because he has not come without being asked, quod nisi rogatus non venerit*, i. 44.

Use of the Vocabulary: The pupil should endeavor to free himself from vocabulary or lexicon as soon as possible. New words are indicated in each chapter, and these he must make his own. Don't keep looking up old words. If the student becomes a slave to his Latin dictionary, his reading becomes mechanical. As early as possible learn the word lists on pages 424 fg. The student should put the Latin into English and the English into Latin.

NOTES.

BOOK I.

CHAPTER 1.

P. 65. 1. 1. **omnis**, except the Roman province, the Allobroges, and Gallia Cisalpina. See Vocabulary. *Gaul as a whole.*

2. **aliam**, *another.*

3. **tertiam, qui**—**appellantur**, (those inhabit) *the third, who in their own language are called Celts; in ours, Gauls.* The full expression would be, (ii) **qui appellantur** *Celtae ipsorum lingua, Galli nostra (lingua, incolunt) tertiam (partem).*

4. **hi omnes**, *all of these.* **omnes** is never used with partitive genitive except by poets and late writers.

5. **lingua, institutis, legibus.** Observe the Latin usage in regard to the conjunction. The conjunction is either omitted entirely, as here, or connects each individual word; e.g. **lingua et institutis et legibus.**

inter se, *from one another; literally, among themselves.* As there is no reciprocal pronoun (*each other*) in Latin, its place is taken by **inter se**, **inter vos**, **inter nos**. Avoid the literal translation. Render always by *each other* with the preposition which the English idiom demands; e.g. **inter se coniuncti sunt**, *they are bound to each other; inter se differunt*, *they differ from each other.* This expression often takes the place of a direct object; e.g. **cohortati inter se**, *encouraging each other.*

6. **flumen.** Supply **dividit**. **Matrona et Sequana** take the singular verb **dividit** since the two rivers make only one boundary.

8. **propterea quod.** The correlative **propterea** so often joined with **quod** intensifies the meaning. Our English *in as much as, owing to the fact that, seeing that*, may serve to express this emphasis.

9. **cultu**, *civilization*, as shown by manner of life. **humanitate**, *refinement*, i.e. mental culture.

9. **provinciae**. Its chief city was the flourishing Greek town Massilia, now Marseilles.

10. **minime saepe commeant**, *very seldom penetrate*; literally, *least often go back and forth*.

11. **ad effeminandos animos**, *toward weakening their minds*.

qui trans Rhenum incolunt. The verb is here used intransitively. Compare chap. 5, Boiosque, **qui trans Rhenum incoluerunt**; also chap. 54, **qui proximi Rhenum incolunt**. Usually the verb governs a direct object; e.g. **unum incolunt** above.

66. 1. **qua de causa**, *and for this reason*. The relative in both English and Latin is equivalent to a conjunction and a demonstrative. The Romans, being fond of connecting their sentences like the links of a chain, often used a relative at the beginning of a sentence where in English we usually have the demonstrative alone.

quoque, *also*, always follows the emphatic word, *because they* (just as the Belgians) *dwelt near the Germans*.

reliquos, *the rest of*. Observe the Latin idiom; cf. i. 24, **in colle medio**, *on the middle of the hill*. It was not until a later period that these adjectives, becoming hardened into neuter substantives, admitted of a partitive genitive, e.g. **in medio urbis** (Tac. An.). The adjectival construction is the classical one; and the student must bear this in mind, especially in translating English into Latin.

2. **fere cotidianis proeliis cum Germanis contendunt**, *they contend in almost daily battles with the Germans*. The ablative of accompaniment regularly takes the preposition **cum**, both in a friendly and in a hostile sense.

3. **ipsi** (emphatic) *the Helvetians themselves*.

4. **eorum** refers back to **hi omnes**, the people being put for the country, — *one part of these, which it has been said the Gauls occupy*.

5. **obtinere** (pronounce **optinere**). Note the derivation **ob** + **teneo**, 'to hold in spite of obstacles'; cf. **op-pidum**, note to p. 134, l. 16. Our *obtain*, the English derivative of **obtineo**, is used to-day in an entirely different sense. The old meaning 'hold,' now obsolete, is seen in the following line from Milton: "He who *obtains* the monarchy of heaven." This is a good illustration of how unsafe it is to render Latin words by their English derivatives. Compare the meaning of **virtute** above, with that of the corresponding English word. The student should never rest satisfied until he has reached the root-meaning of every Latin word.

6. **continetur**, *it is bounded*; literally, *it is held together*.

7. **ab Sequanis**, *on the side of the Sequani and Helvetii*.

vergit ad septentriones, *it tends, inclines, or slopes toward the north*.

8. **ab extremis Galliae finibus**, *from the extreme frontier of Gaul* (i.e. Celtic Gaul).

10. **a Garumna flumine.** Note the different uses of the ablative in this chapter. All the varied uses of the ablative become very simple when the pupil understands how each one arose. The ablative in Latin represents three old cases, the ablative proper, the instrumental, and the locative.

Ablative Proper. The true ablative, as its name implies, is the case denoting separation. When we read *suis finibus eos prohibent*, we meet with a *true* ablative. All verbs of separation and oftentimes such adjectives as *vacuus*, *liber*, take the ablative proper.

Separation implies source. Hence the "ablative of source." **a Garumna flumine** is a true ablative.

Source gives cause or motive; e.g. *qua de causa Helvetii* — *praecedunt* means that the excellence of the Helvetians came *from* that cause. The "ablative of cause" is a historical ablative, although often the idea of instrument is strong; e.g. *regni cupiditate inductus*. The ablative which follows a comparative is a true ablative of separation. If we read *Caesar fortior Pompeio*, *Caesar is braver than Pompey*, the ablative means that Caesar is separated *from* Pompey by certain degrees of bravery. This same idea is expressed by such prepositions as *prae*, *ante*, etc. The prepositions with the ablative proper are *a*, *ab*, *de*, *ex*, *pro*, *prae*, *sine*, as well as those adverbs which later became prepositions, *tenuis*, *palam*.

Instrumental. When the ablative shows association, instrument, or agent, it represents the instrumental.

The "ablative of accompaniment" is the instrumental of association; e.g. *suis cum omnibus copiis exirent*.

Accompaniment can show the manner and the attendant circumstances of an action; e.g. *flumen, quod* — *influxit incredibili lenitate*, *flows with such wonderful smoothness*, chap. 12.

Constant association may denote a characteristic; e.g. *Dumnorigem, summa audacia*, *Dumnorigis, a man of the greatest boldness*. Hence the "ablative of characteristic" is the instrumental ablative.

The "ablatives of means" and "agent" are of course the true instrumental; e.g. *continetur Garumna flumine, Oceano, finibus Belgarum*.

The "ablative of specification" shows the instrumental; e.g. *hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus inter se differunt*; it is language, etc., that is the *means* of difference between them.

The "ablative of degree of difference" is also instrumental; e.g. *paucis ante diebus*, *a few days before* is really *before by a few days*. Likewise the "ablatives of price," "measure," and "fullness"; e.g. "I value a thing *by* so much (*viginti minis*) in the scale of price."

The preposition with the instrumental ablative is properly only *cum*. Other prepositions, such as *ab* with ablative of agent, have come in by confusion.

Locative. When the ablative denotes location or situation, either in space or time, it stands for the locative. Hence the "ablative of place," and the "ablative of time" are really locatives; e.g. *qui eo tempore principatum in civitate obtinebat*, chap. 3.

The prepositions with the locative ablative are *in*, *sub*, *subter*, *super*, *coram*.

12. *spectat inter*, etc. Translate by one compound English word all that follows *spectat* in this sentence.

CHAPTER 2.

14. *apud Helvetios*. Note the emphatic position of *Helvetios*, because they are the people discussed in chaps. 2-29. Of them Orgetorix is singled out as the topic for chaps. 2-4; hence its own emphatic position, at end of the sentence. The Celtic ending *rix* in *Orgetorix* is the same as the Latin *rex*. Compare *Dumno-rix*, 'world king,' *Bitu-riges* 'world kings.'

15. *M. Messala et M. Pisone consulibus*, in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso = 61 B.C.

16. *civitati*. This easily suggests the idea of citizens; hence the plural *exirent* in the dependent clause.

17. *suis cum omnibus copiis* = men, women, and children. Greek *πανδημει*.

67. 1. *perfacile esse potiri*, (saying) *that it was very easy, since they excelled all in valor, to get dominion over the whole of Gaul*. What is the subject of *esse*? *esse*. From the object clause *ut* — *exirent* we pass to a simple statement implied in *persuasit*. In the former we have what he persuaded them to do; in the latter, the argument which he used to persuade them.

2. *id hoc facilius eis persuasit*, *he persuaded them the more easily to this*; literally, *he persuaded this to them*, — *hoc*, ablative of cause, referring to the clause beginning with *quod*. So in English 'the more easily,' *the* is an instrumental case of our Anglo-Saxon pronoun *sē*. Hence the literal meaning is 'by that more easily,' an expression which corresponds to the Latin *hoc facilius*.

3. *loci natura Helvetii continentur*, *are confined by the character of the country*.

4. *latissimo*. Note that the superlative denotes a high degree of comparison, *very wide*.

flumine Rheno, qui. The relative is in agreement with *Rheno*.

7. *his rebus fiebat*, *from these circumstances it happened*. The subject of *fiebat* is the clause *ut possent*. *fiebat*, imperfect, because the causes were constantly at work to bring about the following result.

9. *homines bellandi cupidi*, *they (being) men eager for war*.

10. *pro multitudine*, *considering the number of inhabitants*; literally, *in*

proportion to. Compare chap. 29, where the estimate of the Helvetians is given.

11. **angustos**, *too narrow* with force of a comparative. Compare vi. 8, *longum esse perterritis Romanis Germanorum auxilium exspectare.*

12. **milia passuum**. The passus was 4 feet 10 inches; hence a thousand paces or the Roman mile was 4,854 feet. How many feet less than our mile? The English word 'mile' is derived from this expression, the **passuum** having dropped out.

CHAPTER 3.

14. **his rebus adducti**, *induced by these considerations.* **adducti**—**permoti**. etc. The student should always feel the force of the preposition in compound verbs.

15. **comparare**—**confirmare**, infinitives after **constituerunt**, *to buy as great a number as possible of beasts of burden and wagons, to make as extensive sowings as possible . . . to establish peace and friendship with the neighboring clans.*

68. 3. **in tertium annum**, etc., *they fix their departure by decree for the third year.*

4. **is**—**suscepit**, *he took on himself the embassy.*

5. **ad civitates**, *to the clans.* (See Introduction, 56, 63, 64.)

8. **amicus**. Distinguished honor given by the Roman Senate.

ut—**occuparet**. A secondary tense, because **persuadet** is historical present.

9. **Dumnorigi**, composed of **dumno** (for **dub-no**, *world*) and **rīx**, *king* (Latin **rēx**).

11. **ut idem conaretur**, *to attempt the same.*

12. **perfacile factu esse**—**perficere**, (*he proves to them*) *that to accomplish their attempts was a very easy thing to do.* The student meets for the first time the so-called supine. This term is a comparatively recent one to apply to this formation alone. In the Latin grammarians the word included both "gerunds" and "supines." The student should bear in mind that the supine is nothing more than a verbal noun. The work done by this can be done by verbal nouns of any declension. The cases in common use are the accusative and ablative, although the dative appears rarely.

14. **non esse dubium quin**, *there is no doubt that.* **quin** (a locative or instrumental of the interrogative and relative **qui**, with the negative **ne**) signified 'why not?' or 'whereby.' The interrogative stem gave the construction in expressions of doubt.

19. **Galliae potiri**, *to obtain possession of Gaul.* The original construction after **potior** was the locative, for the verb signified "to be master." Hence **potior castris** would mean "I am master in the camp." The ablative is nothing more than the locative ablative. In old Latin the genitive often followed ex-

pressions of participation and mastery. This use lingered on in the case of *potior*, especially in the phrase *rerum potior*.

CHAPTER 4.

69. 1. *ea res — enuntiata*, *when this design was disclosed*. No word in Latin admits of such a variety of meanings as *res*. The student must always determine by the context the most suitable word to employ in translating. By what words has it already been translated in these notes? Why is *design* more appropriate in this place than either of the other words would have been? “*res* is an empty vessel into which is put the idea which the context requires” (Cauer, *Die Kunst des Übersetzens*).

2. *ex vinculis causam dicere*, *to plead his cause in chains*; literally, *out of his chains*. A Latin idiom suggesting the direction from which the action proceeds. Compare chap. 43, *ex equis ut conloquerentur*.

damnatum — cremaretur. *poenam* is the subject of *sequi*, and *Orgetorigem*, supplied from the preceding sentence, its object; the whole clause of which *sequi* is the verb, is the subject of the impersonal verb *oportebat* (cf. *fiebat ut — possent*, chap. 3), and the clause *ut — cremaretur* is in apposition with *poenam*. With what must *damnatum* agree? Give the exact literal translation of the sentence, following the above suggestions. Now express the idea of this awkward literal sentence in good English. The English sentence “United we stand,” more fully stated means “If united” or “If we are united, we stand.” Use this hint in translating *damnatum*. What idea is, then, often conveyed by a participle both in English and Latin? This was the usual method of punishing traitors among the Gauls and other barbarous peoples.

4. *omnem suam familiam*, *all his vassals*, i.e. all employed in his private affairs.

5. *ad — decem*. *ad* with numerals denotes an approach to the number, *to the number of*; hence *about*. It is sometimes used as a preposition in this way, and sometimes as an adverb. Here one cannot tell, for *milia* may be either the accusative after *ad*, or in apposition with *familiam*. A good example, however, of *ad* having the noun independent is in ii. 33, *occisis ad milibus quattuor*.

11. *quin ipse — consciverit*, *that he decreed his own death*, lit. *that he determined on death for himself*. See note to *non esse dubium quin*, p. 68, i. 14. Observe that *ipse* is in agreement with the subject.

CHAPTER 5.

12. *eius* = *Orgetorigis*. The clause *ut — exeant* is in apposition with *id facere*, cf. *eos — conari*, chap. 7.

14. **oppida sua omnia.** The **oppida** are strongholds, while the **vici** are groups of houses. **vicus** is the word for the street of a city, referring to the rows of houses on either side. English towns in **wick** and **wich**, e.g. **Warwick**, 'garrison town,' **Norwich**. 'north village,' perpetuate the Latin **vicus**.

numero, ablative of specification.

70. 1. **ad duodecim.** See note to p. 69, l. 5, **ad milia**.

reliqua aedificia. See note to p. 66, l. 1, **reliquos Gallos**.

2. **incendunt**, *set fire to*. **comburunt**, *burn*.

3. **domum reditionis**, *hope of a return home*. **domum** is the accusative of limit of motion after the verbal noun **reditionis**. These nouns in **tio** in early Latin governed a direct object through the influence of a verbal notion; **manus** (probably accusative) **iniectio esto**, *let there be a laying on of hands*. (Laws of Twelve Tables, III.) The "gerund" and "supine" are simple verbal nouns. There is no difference between **reditionis spe** and **redeundi spe**.

6. **uti**, old form for **ut**. The syncope of the final syllable **e** (**i**) was the result of the old law of accentuation in Latin, which required every word to be accented on the first syllable. So we find **quin** for **quine**, **nec** for **neque**, **ac** for **atque**, **tot** for **toti**. In prepositions we find **ambi** reduced to **am-**, **endo**, **indu**, to **ind-**, **in-** in compounds. **ut** (**uti**) is undoubtedly an interrogative and relative conjunction (perhaps for **quoti**), *how? whereby*. The interrogative is seen in such expressions as **ut vales**, *how do you do?* The use of **ut** in clauses of purpose and result was derived from the relative, e.g. **venit ut videret**, *he came to see is he came whereby* (i.e. by act of his coming) *he might see*.

7. **exustis**. The Latin language was deficient in a perfect active participle. The means employed to compensate for this part of the verb are: (1) The perfect participle of a deponent verb; e.g. **eodem usi consilio**. (2) The ablative absolute, as here. (3) A temporal clause.

8. **cum iis**. **secum** would more properly be used, referring to the subject of principal clause, but **iis** avoids all ambiguity.

Boios. This tribe gave its name to the modern Bohemia and Bavaria. (See Vocabulary.) Of what is this word the object, and what words limit it?

CHAPTER 6.

11. **omnino**, *in all*. **quibus itineribus**, *by which ways*. The antecedent is repeated for the sake of clearness. What part of speech is **quibus**?

12. **unum** and **alterum** are in partitive apposition with **itinerata**.

13. **vix qua**. Note emphatic position of **vix**. *It was with difficulty that here*. **singuli carri**, *wagons one by one, in single file*.

14. **ducerentur**. Relative clause of characteristic, the relative adverb **qua** being equivalent to the conjunction **ut** and the demonstrative adverb **ibi**; cf.

note on *qua de causa*, p. 66, l. 1. The locality is Pas de l'Écluse, about eighteen miles below Geneva. The railroad from Paris to Geneva, *via* Mâcon, runs here.

15. **Allobrogum**. They had been subdued by C. Pomptinus, 61 B.C. (See Vocabulary.) The name **Allobrox** contains the Gallic *brog*, 'land,' 'region.'

16. **locis**, locative ablative. *loco, parte, rure*, with an adjective express place by the locative ablative.

transitur = *transiri potest, it can be crossed by means of a ford.*

71. 2. **Allobrogibus — viderentur, vel — paterentur**. Indirect discourse after *existimabant*. Observe the omission of the object after *coacturos*. Compare vii. 81, *dat tuba signum suis atque ex oppido educit*, v. 17, *nostri, in eos impetu facto, repulerunt*.

3. **persuasuros**. The student will note that *esse* in the future infinitive is generally omitted.

bono animo, of a friendly mind, i.e. well disposed.

5. **eos** for *se* might be confused with the subject of *paterentur*.

7. **a. d. v. Kal. Apr.**, = *die quinto ante Kalendas Apriles*. on the fifth day before the Kalends of April. The Kalends being the first day of the month, this date would correspond to the 28th of March. The stereotyped expression, **ante diem quintum Kalendas Apriles**, arose from the conversion of *die* into the accusative through the influence of the preposition. The phrase perhaps originally was as given above, *die quinto ante*, etc.; and when *ante* was put first, — **ante die quinto Kalendas**, — the fact that it governed *Kalendas* was lost sight of. Its influence was then extended to *die*, which became the accusative, thus leaving *Kalendas* with no grammatical construction. What part of speech is *Apriles*?

L. Pisone A. Gabinio consulibus. The conjunction is often omitted in the enumeration of names of officials.

CHAPTER 7.

9. **Caesari cum id nuntiatum esset, — maturat**. Note position of *Caesari*. The *cum* clauses with the subjunctive denote nothing more than a part of a past series of events. Often an English expression can be found much more simple, and conveying the temporal idea much less awkwardly than a heavy sentence introduced by *when*; e.g. the sentence means, *Caesar, on receipt of the news that, etc., hastened*.

eos — conari, in apposition with *id*. What other clauses have been already used as nouns in the text?

10. **ab urbe**, i.e. Rome, which was called, by way of distinction, 'The City.' So the Athenians often designated their city, Athens, by *ἡ πόλις* alone.

proficisci. This infinitive is called the complementary infinitive, because it adds another action to that of the verb on which it depends. Such a term is arbitrary. The infinitive was a verbal noun originally; the passive infinitive is the dative case (e.g. *da-s-ei, dari, legei, legi*); the active the locative (e.g. *da-s-i, dare, leg-es-i, legere*). It is easy to see how "he hastened for the setting out" comes to mean "he hastened to set out."

quam—**itineribus**, *by as long marches as possible*. For the force of **quam**, see on **quam maximum**, chap. 3. The Greek paraphrast has *ὡς ἡδύνατο τάχιστα*.

11. **in Galliam ulteriorem**, *into farther Gaul*. For the location of Farther Gaul, see map. Remember that the Alps form a great natural boundary line, and that a Roman is here writing. To him the Gaul here referred to is *farther* than what? Nearer Gaul or **Gallia citerior** is nearer than what? In what modern country is the latter?

12. **ad Genavam pervenit**, *into the vicinity of Geneva*. Compare vii. 41, **castra ad Gergoviam movit**. According to Plutarch, he reached the Rhone in eight days.

provinciae toti, etc., *he orders as great a number of soldiers as possible from the whole province*; literally, *he imposes upon the whole province a demand for as great a number*, etc.

14. **una**, emphatic. We say "only one."

pontem—**iubet rescindi**. Observe the omission of the conjunction. For a like case of asyndeton, cf. i. 20, **Dumnorigem ad se vocat, fratrem adhibet**.

pontem. The bridge across the Rhone. Note the asyndeton, expressive of haste.

ad Genavam. For meaning, cf. **ad Hispaniam**, chap. 1.

15. **certiores facti sunt**, *were informed*. What is the literal meaning?

16. **cuius legationis = quorum**. The **legatio** comprehends the **legatos** preceding.

17. **qui dicerent**, a relative clause of purpose; literally, *who should say*, i.e. *to say*.

sibi esse in animo, *that they intended*; literally, *it was to them in mind*.

72. 1. **quod**—**nullum**. Observe the emphatic position of **nullum**. Compare i. 18, **quod illo licente contra liceri audeat nemo**.

rogare. The subject *se* is omitted; in same construction with **esse** above. In direct discourse we should have: "We ask (**rogamus**) that we (**nobis**) may do it in accord with your (**tua**) wish."

3. **occisum**, sc. **esse**; and so also after **pulsum**, **missum**, and **concedendum**. This defeat occurred in the vicinity of Lake Geneva, 107 B.C.

4. **sub iugum**. Under this yoke the conquered were compelled to pass without arms, as a sign of complete submission. The **iugum** consisted of two spears set upright in the ground, and a third one placed across them at the top (Liv.,

3, 28, tribus hastis iugum fit, humi fixis duabus. superque eas transversa una deligata).

concedendum, sc. id, referring to *iter per provinciam facere*. The student will observe how frequent is the use of the impersonal. In such a use the mere verbal act is brought into prominence without reference to the actor, e.g. *concedendum*, *concessions must be made*; but no mention is made of who must make them, for that is sufficiently apparent; *acriter pugnatum*, *there was a hot fight*, but no reference to the combatants.

5. **data facultate**, *if an opportunity were to be given them*.

6. **temperatueros**, sc. *esse*, *would refrain from injury and mischief*.

7. **dum — convenirent**, *until the soldiers, whom he had ordered, should assemble*. **dum** (*until*) with the subjunctive refers to an event expected and purposed.

imperaverat. Compare *provinciae toti — imperat*.

9. **ad Id. Apr.** See on a. d. v. Kal. Apr., chap. 6. Idus is really an adjective agreeing with *noctes*. The word meant originally the clear (nights) of the month.

reverterentur. In the direct discourse the imperative was used; what was the form of the conditional sentence, *si quid vellent*?

CHAPTER 8.

10. **ea legione militibusque**. Ablative of means.

11. **qui — influit**. Caesar imagined that the lake flowed into the river. He had in view the point at which the river made its egress from the lake, and where a portion of the waters would flow into the river. Some editors have changed the text to *quem in flumen Rhodanus influit*, "into which the river Rhone flows"; but this is unsatisfactory and artificial. Compare vii. 57, *perpetuam esse paludem, quae influeret in Sequanam*.

13. **in altitudinem**. For translation, cf. *in latitudinem*, chap. 2.

14. **pedum**. Partitive genitive.

15. **castella communit**, *he strongly fortifies the redoubts*. The force of *com* is intensive, *he fortifies completely*.

se invito, *against his will*; literally, *he (being) unwilling*.

si conarentur — possit. The historical present is here followed by both the imperfect and present. Compare chap. 7, *quod aliud iter haberent nullum: rogare, ut eius voluntate id sibi facere liceat*.

18. **negat se more — dare**, *he says that he cannot*; literally, *he denies that he can give*, etc.

73. 1 **si — conentur**, for future (*conabimini*) of the direct discourse.

prohibiturum, sc. *se*. Notice the omission of the object *eos*.

2. *ea spe deiecti*, *disappointed in this hope*; literally, *cast down from this hope*.
 4. *si* — *possent*. Indirect question introduced by *si*. Compare ii. 9, *si nostri transirent, expectabant*.

CHAPTER 9.

7. *una* — *via*, *only the way*. *qua*, cf. chap. 6, *vix qua singuli*. *una*, emphatic. Observe the position of *per Sequanos*, which is really an adjective expression describing *via*.

8. *sua sponte*, *by their own means*, = *per se*. Compare v. 28, *sua sponte populo Romano bellum facere*.

10. *eo deprecatore*, *by his mediation*; literally, *he (being) an intercessor*. This is a good illustration of the origin of the ablative absolute. The student cannot understand its real significance until he sees how this construction, so common in Latin, arose. Absolute cases or case forms with a participle or some other part of speech are natural to language. We have the same thing in English. In old English it was the dative, but this dative stood for an instrumental or locative. The Latin employs the ablative, but this ablative, like the English dative, represents the instrumental or locative, more generally the instrumental. Here we find the instrumental *eo deprecatore*, *with him as intercessor*. So in *divis volentibus*, the original idea lay in the instrumental, *with the gods willing*, the simple instrumental of association. From this were made possible the various ways of translating the ablative absolute, and, in such translation, there should be perfect freedom from any stereotyped formula. In early Latin we find, just as we should expect to find, *cum divis volentibus*.

When the idea of time is prominent it is possible to see the locative in the ablative absolute, e.g. *tertia inita vigilia*, *in the third watch which had been begun*, i.e. *in the beginning of the third watch*. So the student can see how it is that this construction, at one time in syntactical accord with the rest of the sentence, became an absolute case, expressing all the various meanings of the instrumental and locative.

11. *gratia* — *plurimum poterat*, *on account of his popularity and liberality, had very great influence with the Sequani*; literally, *was able very much*.

12. *ea civitate* = *eorum civitate*.

in matrimonium duxerat, *had married*. The husband conducted his wife to his own house as a part of the marriage ceremony; hence the phrase *uxorem ducere*. The expression *nubere viro* (for *nubere se viro*), *to veil herself for a husband*, is used in speaking of the woman.

13. *novis* — *studebat*, *was aiming at a revolution*.

14. *suo beneficio habere obstrictas*, *to have attached to him by reason of his kindness*. This use of *habere* is an anticipation of the part the verb 'to

have' was to hold in verbal conjugation. The student will observe that *habere obstrictas* differs from *obstrinxisse* in the fact that the notion contained in the participle is looked upon as a possession. The transition is shown more clearly in chap. 15, *quem ex omni provincia — coactum habebat* (nearly = *coegebat*).

CHAPTER 10.

74. 1. renuntiatur, *word is brought back*, i.e. messengers who had been sent returned with the tidings. **Caesari**. Note the position. Compare note to p. 71, l. 9. *Caesar receives word*.

Helvetiis esse in animo. See note on *sibi esse in animo*, chap. 7.

3. quae civitas, *which state*; referring to the Tolosates. The antecedent is inserted in the relative clause, — a common Latin idiom.

4. id si fieret — futurum, *if this should be done, he saw that it would be attended with great danger to the province that it should have*, etc. The subject of *futurum* is the clause *ut haberet*, and the subject of *haberet* is *provincia*, to be supplied.

magno cum periculo. The favorite place for the preposition when the adjective is at all emphatic: *great was the danger*. Yet in the phrase below, *ob eas causas*, the preposition is always before the pronoun in spite of *quam ob rem, hanc ob rem*.

5. locis patentibus, *in open places*.

6. maximeque frumentariis. Adjectives in *us* preceded by a vowel form their comparison by means of the adverbs *magis* and *maxime*. Violations of this rule were undoubtedly common in the popular language.

finitimos haberet, *have as neighbors*.

7. Titum Labienum. See Vocabulary.

legatum. Our word *lieutenant* cannot adequately translate **legatus**. It is one who has been given a commission (participle of *lego*). So we find the diplomatic sense *ambassador*.

8. in Italiam, *into Italy*, i.e. Cisalpine Gaul.

magnis itineribus, *by forced marches*. Compare chap. 7, *quam maximis potest itineribus*.

9. Aquileiam. See Vocabulary.

10. qua proximum iter, *where the route was shortest*; literally, *where the route was nearest*.

13. compluribus — pulsus. In these four words the student has an ablative absolute and an ablative of means limited by an adjective. In translating remember the context.

14. extremum, sc. oppidum.

CHAPTER 11.

75. 1. per angustias. Compare chap. 6, *angustum et difficile, inter montem Iuram et flumen Rhodanum*; and chap. 9, *propter angustias*.

3. cum — possent, *unable (as they were) to defend themselves.*

se suaque, literally, *themselves and their possessions.*

4. legatos — mittunt. The idea which makes possible the following indirect discourse is easily gathered from these words. The student will note how often the verb of saying is omitted.

rogatum. This so-called supine is a simple verbal noun in the accusative, to express limit of motion; cf. *factu*, chap. 3. The future passive infinitive is built up by means of this verbal noun; e.g. *milites occisum iri dicit*. *iri* is the impersonal use of *eo*, *to go*; *occisum*, the limit of motion; *milites*, the object of *occisum*, which can govern an accusative as other verbal nouns. Compare note on *reditionis*, p. 70, l. 3.

5. ita se — meritos esse, *that they had at all times so deserved of the Roman people that,* etc. Indirect discourse after the idea of saying contained in *rogatum*.

6. in conspectu exercitus. Make correspondingly emphatic in English translation. Note the omission of the conjunction with the following verbs.

liberi eorum. Spoken from Caesar's standpoint, hence *eorum* instead of *sui*.

7. agri debuerint, *their fields ought not to have been laid waste,* etc. Since the English verb *ought* has no past tense while the Latin *debeo* has, the force of the tense in *debuerint* is thus brought out. *debeo* implies a legal or moral obligation.

12. solum agri. Noun; *except the soil of their land.* Make emphatic in your translation both *solum* and *nihil*.

13. reliqui. Depends on *nihil*.

non exspectandum esse, *he must not wait*; literally, *it must not be waited*. *sibi* is the so-called dative of agent. This dative is nothing more than the simple dative of possession. As the gerund is a verbal noun, the origin of this construction may have been as follows: *legendum mihi est*, *a reading is to me*, *legendum* being subject of *est*, i.e. *I have a reading*; hence *I must read*. The gerundive construction is perhaps a conversion of the verbal noun into a verbal adjective, e.g. *librum legendum mihi est*, *reading a book is to me*, becoming *liber legendus mihi est*, *a book to which the quality of reading belongs is to me, a book for reading is to me*; hence *I must read a book*. (Compare the influence of *ante* in Roman Calendar, note on *a. d. v. Kal.*, p. 71, l. 7.) Whether the gerundive originally had a passive signification is uncertain. Compare *secundus*, = *following*; hence *second*.

CHAPTER 12.

76. 1. **quod**. The antecedent is **flumen**.

2. **incredibili lenitate**, *with wonderful smoothness*. See note on the ablative case under a **Garumna flumine**, p 66, l. 10.

4. **transibant**, the act was still going on.

5. **partes — flumen — traduxisse**. **partes** is object of **duxisse**, and the preposition governs **flumen**.

6. **Ararim**. Both **Arar** and **Liger** have their accusative in **im**, and ablative in **i** or **e**.

7. **de tertia vigilia**. The preposition in this idiom denotes *from the beginning of*. For **vigilia** see Introduction, 121 d.

cum legionibus. Ablative of accompaniment. For **cum** in hostile sense see **cum Germanis**, chap 1.

9. **eos — aggressus — partem eorum concidit**. An object used with both participle and verb. Compare chap. 54, **hos adorti**, **magnum eorum numerum interficiunt**; also ii. 10, **hostes — nostri — aggressi magnum eorum numerum occiderunt**. On use of these participles, cf. note on **vicis exustis**, chap. 5. Translate, *encumbered (as they were) with baggage — he attacked them and cut to pieces*, etc. Note how the Latin idiom sinks the two English sentences into one.

10. **mandarunt = mandaverunt**. At all periods of the language there was a tendency to drop *v* between vowels. Doubtless in many cases the *v* was retained in the written form, but omitted in pronunciation.

12. **hic pagus unus**. Compare chap. 13, **unum pagum adortus esset**.

15. **quae pars — ea — persolvit = ea pars — quae — intulerat — persolvit**.

16. **princeps persolvit**, *was the first to pay the penalty*. Note the idiom **poenas persolvit**. Punishment was looked upon as a debt which was owed to the injured party; hence, *to pay punishment (solvere)*, *to give punishment (dare)*, where we say *to suffer punishment*. Compare “as we forgive our debtors.”

18. **quod — interfecerant**, *because in the same battle in which they had slain Cassius, they had slain also his lieutenant Lucius*. **Cassium**, object of **interfecerant**, to be supplied.

CHAPTER 13.

77. 1. **reliquas**, emphatic. Such a position before the conjunction ut we call hyperbaton.

2. **pontem — faciendum curat**, literally, *cares for a bridge to be built = cares for the building of a bridge*. Compare note on gerundive, p. 75, l. 13. Observe the idiom in **Arare**, *over the Arar*; **trans** could not be used. Note the

exactness in the use of the Latin preposition. We can say, "Rome is on the Tiber," but the Romans said, *Roma ad Tiberim sita est*.

4. **cum** — **intelligeret**, *when they perceived that he had done in one day that which they themselves had accomplished with the greatest difficulty in twenty days, namely, the crossing of the river.* **ut flumen transirent** is in apposition with **id**, the object of **fecisse**. Compare chap. 5, **id facere** — **ut** — **exeat**.

6. **bello Cassiano**, *in the Cassian war*, i.e. in the war with Cassius.

7. **si pacem**, etc. Indirect discourse to end of chapter. In the direct narrative **faceret** would be future; **ituros**, future; **constituisset**, future perfect.

10. **sin perseveraret**, sc. **Caesar**.

reminisceretur. Subjunctive for the imperative. Compare **tribueret**.

12. **quod improvise**, *as to the fact that*, cf. **quod** — **gloriantur** — **admirarentur**, chap. 14.

14. **ne ob eam rem** — **tribueret**, *on that account*; literally, *on account of that thing he should not ascribe it* (i.e. the victory) *too much to his own valor*.

15. **despiceret**, **committeret**. Why in the imperfect tense?

16. **didicisse**, *they had thus learned*, i.e. been trained.

CHAPTER 14.

78. 1. **his**, *to them*, i.e. the **legati**. Compare chap. 34, **ei legationi respondit**. For the neuter see chap. 36, **ad haec Ariovistus respondit**.

eo sibi minus dubitationis dari, *he felt less hesitation on this account*. The clause **quod teneret** gives the reason.

3. **eo gravius ferre** — **accidissent**, *and he felt the more indignant in proportion as it had happened without the desert of the Roman people.* **eo gravius**. See note to **hoc facilius**, p. 67, l. 2. Remember the force of English *the* in *the more indignant*.

4. **qui si** — **fuisset** (the antecedent of **qui** is **populus Romanus**), *if they had been conscious of having done any injury*, etc.

5. **cavere**. Subject of **fuisse**.

deceptum, sc. **se esse**.

6. **commissum a se**, best render by active, *they had done anything*. See Hints for Translating, pp. 325-26.

quare timeret. **quare** — **propter quod**, the antecedent of the **quod** being the omitted subject of **commissum**.

In the direct discourse, **dari**, **ferre**, **fuisse**, **deceptum** (**esse**), would be **datur**, **fero**, **fuit**, **deceptus est**; **commemorassent**, **teneret**, **accidissent**, **fuisset**, **intellegeret**, **timeret**. **putaret**, would be **commemoraverunt**, **teneo**, **acciderunt**, **fuisset** (condition contrary to fact), **intellegebant**, **timeret** (clause of characteristic), **putabat**.

7. **quod** — **vellet**, *but if he should consent to forget their former insult.*

8. **eo invito**. Compare **se invito**, chap. 8.

11. **num** — **posse**. Regular questions in indirect discourse take the verb in the subjunctive; but statements expressed in the form of questions (rhetorical questions), like all simple statements, take the accusative and infinitive. In the direct discourse, **posse** would be **possum**; **vellet**, **temptassent**, **vexassent**, would be **velim**, **temptastis**, **vexastis**.

quod — **gloriarentur**, *the fact that they boasted so insolently of their victory, i.e. their boasting so insolently.* See Hints for Translating, pp. 325-26.

12. **eodem pertinere**, *amount to the same thing*; literally, *tend to the same place*. The subject of **pertinere** is the preceding clauses.

In the direct discourse **pertinere** would be **pertinet**; **gloriarentur**, **admirarentur**, would be **gloriamini**, **admiramini**.

13. **quo** — **doleant**, *that men may grieve the more from a change of circumstances.*

14. **quos** — **velint**. The relative clause is put first. The antecedent of **quos** is his in line below.

What would **consuesse** be in the direct discourse? What **velint**? Observe that we pass from under the influence of the secondary tense to the free expression of the original thought.

17. **facturos** (**esse**), sc. **eos** as subject.

18. **Haeduis** (dative after **satisfaciant**); literally, *do enough for them*, i.e. satisfy.

In the direct discourse **facturum** would be **faciam**; **dentur**, **polliceantur**, **intellegat**, would be **dabuntur**, **pollicemini**, **intellegam**. What would be the form of **intulerint** and **satisfaciant**?

21. **eius rei**. See note on **ea res** — **enuntiata**, p. 69, l. 1.

CHAPTER 15.

79. 1. **movent**, sc. **Helvetii**.

3. **quem** — **coactum habebat**. See note on **habere obstrictas**, p. 73, l. 14.

4. **qui videant**. The antecedent of **qui** is the collective idea contained in **equitatum**, as if **equites** had been used. Compare chap. 2, **civitati persuasit**, **ut** — **exirent**.

quas — **faciant**. Indirect question.

5. **cupidius**, *too eagerly*. **novissimum agmen**, the part of the line that is 'newest,' i.e. the rear.

alieno loco = **iniquo loco**, *in an unfavorable place*; literally, *in a place belonging to another*; in contrast with **suo loco**, *in a favorable place*.

6. **pauci de nostris**, *a few of our soldiers*. **de nostris** = **nostrorum**. This use

of the preposition is an anticipation of the part *de* was to play in noun inflection in the Romance languages. This preposition, we may say, exerted the strongest influence for the breakdown of the inflectional system.

9. **novissimo agmine**, locative ablative.

11. **in praesentia**, *for the present*.

13. **nostrum primum**, sc. *agmen*, *our first line*, i.e. *van*.

CHAPTER 16.

15. **essent polliciti**. Subjunctive. The clause is represented as being the statement of another, — *which* (as Caesar said) *they had promised*, hence it is a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. Or the subjunctive may be used because the clause is used to describe or characterize **frumentum** as well as to state that they had promised it. (Subjunctive of characteristic.)

16. **flagitare**. The historical infinitive. In what case is its subject? **flagito** is to demand with earnestness and importunity.

frigora, *the cold weather*. The plural shows the continued cold.

17. **ut ante dictum est**. Chap. 1.

18. **frumenta**, plural always for grain in the fields.

ne pabuli quidem. The emphatic word always between the **ne** and **quidem**. For use of **ne** in this phrase, see note to p. 126, l. 23, **ne perspici quidem**.

80. 4. **diem ex die ducere Haedui**, *the Haedui were putting him off from day to day, and were saying*, etc. For omission of the object, cf. chap. 6, **coacturos**. **ducere** and **dicere** are historical infinitives; cf. **flagitare**. These infinitives are as if the writer did not stop to concern himself about the proper mood and tense, but hurried on, leaving the verb indefinite.

conferri, comportari, adesse. Note the climax, *that it was being collected, that it was being transported, that it was right at hand*.

5. **diem — quo die**, *the day when*.

6. **metiri**. See Introduction, Roman Art of War.

8. **qui summo magistratui praeerat**, *who held the chief magistracy*.

9. **in suos**, *over his own people*.

11. **necessario tempore**, *at so critical a time*.

12. **quod — sublevetur**. The cause on the authority of another; i.e. the subject of **accusat**. Compare **quod sit destitutus**.

CHAPTER 17.

17. **privatim plus possint**, *have more influence as individuals*.

valeat, possint. These would be subjunctive in the direct discourse. Why?

19. **ne conferant**. Plural, because of the collective idea in **multitudinem**.

20. **possint** for **possunt** in direct discourse.

si iam — **praeferre**, *if they cannot any longer hold the leadership of Gaul, they prefer the dominion of the Gauls to that of the Romans.*

22. **superaverint**. For the future perfect of the direct discourse.

81. 1. **Haeduis**. The dative for the ablative of separation. This dative, which occurs with certain compounds of **ab**, **de**, **ex**, is best explained as the dative of disadvantage, going with the whole idea of the sentence, and not merely with the verb; i.e. *as far as the Haedui were concerned, their freedom would be wrested away from them.*

sint erepturi, would be subjunctive in direct discourse. Why?

ab eisdem, *by the same persons*, i.e. the **nonnullos** above.

3. **a se**, *by himself*, as chief magistrate.

quin etiam, *nay even, moreover.*

5. **quam diu potuerit**, *as long as he could.*

In the direct discourse **intellegere**, **tacuisse** would be **intellego**, **tacui**; **enuntiarit**, **fecerit**, **potuerit** would be **enuntiavi**, **fecerim** (why subjunctive?), **potui**.

CHAPTER 18.

7. **quod** — **nolebat**, *because he was unwilling that these matters should be discussed in the presence of several.* **iactari**, frequentative of **iacio**. How does it come to mean *discuss*?

8. **Liscum retinet** (observe the asyndeton; cf. note on **iubet rescindi**, p. 71, l. 14), *but detains Liscus.*

9. **ex solo**, *from him in private.*

11. **summa audacia**, sc. **virum**, *a man of the highest daring*, or better, *greatest daring.*

13. **portoria**, *duties on exports and imports.*

vectigalia, *whatever is brought in.* A name for taxes in general; revenues from any source, as from the public pastures, products of the land, etc.

14. **vectigalia** — **redempta habere**, *he had the purchased revenues = he had purchased the revenues*, etc. What single word with almost the same meaning as **redempta habere** might have been used? Compare **quem coactum habebat**, chap. 15. The **publicani**, or farmers of the revenues, bought them of the government and collected them.

pretio, *at a small cost.* Ablative of price. See note on the ablative case under a **Garumna flumine**, p. 66, l. 10.

15. **illo licente** (from **liceor**), *when he was bidding.* This is the first present participle which has been used in the text with its proper verbal force. About how many perfect passive participles have been used? In the English sentence, *The Centrones, seizing the higher places, try to keep the army from the march,*

how is the English present participle *seizing* translated into Latin? Compare the Latin for this sentence in chap. 10. Why is the tense of the Latin participle *occupatis* more accurate than that of the English *seizing*? How is the English present participle *crossing* translated in *they were crossing*? Compare the translation in chap. 12. Give two reasons why the present participle is more common in English than in Latin. Note the collocation *licente contra liceri*. Bring this out in translation, *to bid against him, when he was bidding, no one dares*. See Hints for Translating, pp. 325-26.

audeat nemo. Compare note on *nullum*, p. 72, l. 1. *audeat* for *audet* of the direct discourse.

16. **comparasse**, for *comparavisse*. See note on *mandarunt*, p. 76, l. 10.

17. **domi**, *at home*.

20. **Biturigibus**, composed of Gallic *bitu*, 'wood,' 'forest,' and *rix*, 'king.'

21. **ex Helvetiis uxorem habere**. Compare chap. 3, *eique filiam suam in matrimonium dat*.

In direct discourse *auxisse*, *comparasse*, *alere*, *habere*, *posse*, *conlocasse*, *habere*, *conlocasse*, would be *auxit*, *comparavit*, *alit*, *habet*, *potest*, *conlocavit*, *habet*, *conlocavit*.

22. **nuptum conlocasse**, *had given in marriage*. **nuptum**, see note on *in matrimonium duxerat*, p. 73, l. 12.

favere — *Helvetiis*, *he favored and wished well to the Helvetians*.

82. 1. **suo nomine**, *on his own account*; literally, *in his own name*, — an expression derived from mercantile life, where one's *nome* is written at the top of the ledger and everything under it put to *his account*.

5. **summam in spem**, cf. note to *magno cum periculo*, p. 74, l. 4.

7. **quod proelium equestre adversum** — **initium eius fugae factum**, *as to the fact that an unsuccessful engagement of cavalry had taken place*. **quod** may be treated as a conjunction, cf. chap. 13, *quod adortus esset*; or it can be regarded as a relative, *proelium* — *adversum* being attracted into the relative clause, and its place being taken in the antecedent clause by *eius fugae*, — i.e. *the beginning of the flight in the unsuccessful cavalry battle, which battle, etc.*

CHAPTER 19.

13. **certissimae res accederent**, *most undoubted facts were added*.

14. **quod** — **traduxisset**, **quod** — **curasset**, **quod** — **fecisset**. These clauses are in apposition with *res*. Compare for the facts here stated chap. 9, *ut per fines suos Helvetios ire patiantur, obsidesque uti dent, perficit*.

dandos, sc. *esse*.

15. **iniussu suo et civitatis**, *without his authority or that of the state*. What in the Latin is translated *without*?

16. *inscientibus ipsis*, even without their knowledge. *ipsis* refers to the *Haedui*.

17. *in eum animadverteret*, why he should either punish him himself; literally, direct his attention against him.

19. *unum*, one consideration. Explained by *quod*.

21. *quod* — *cognoverat*. The present *cognosco* is inceptive, begin to know; hence *cognovi* = *I have learned*, i.e. *I know*.

studium — *voluntatem*, — *fidem*, *iustitiam*, *temperantiam*. Note omission of the conjunction. Make as vivid in the English as in the Latin.

voluntatem = *good will*; here used with meaning of *benevolentia*.

83. 2. *cotidianis* — *remotis*, when the ordinary interpreters had been withdrawn.

3. *cui* — *fidem habebat*, in whom he was accustomed to repose the highest confidence in all matters. What is it literally?

6. *apud se*, in his presence, i.e. *Caesar's*.

CHAPTER 20.

9. *multis cum lacrimis*. *cum* with the ablative of manner conveys the notion of addition or unexpectedness. Compare Introduction, Inductive Studies, under the Ablative.

10. *obsecrare coepit*. The student will find this passage discussed in the Inductive Studies, under Indirect Discourse.

quid gravius, anything too severe, i.e. no severe measure.

11. *plus doloris*. Be careful to make good English of this Latin idiom.

14. *opibus ac nervis*, and this power and strength he used. *nervis* = *potentia*.

non solum — *sed*. Note the omission of *etiam*. This happens when the second member contains the more important thought.

17. *si quid* — *accidisset*, if anything very severe should happen to him from *Caesar*. *accidisset* = the future perfect indicative of the direct discourse.

19. *futurum uti* — *avertentur*, it would happen that, etc. The periphrastic form *futurum esse* with the subjunctive is used for the future infinitive of verbs which have no "supine stem"; also for the future passive infinitive, which rarely occurs; and frequently with verbs which have a future infinitive.

22. *tanti* — *ostendit*, shows him that his influence with him [*Caesar*] is so great. Illustrate by the use of the pronouns *eius* and *se* in this sentence the rule for the antecedents of these pronouns.

84. 2. *vocat, adhibet*. For the asyndeton, see note on p. 81, l. 8, *Liscum retinet*.

5. *praeterita*, things bygone, i.e. the past.

6. *quae agat, quibuscum loquatur*. Note asyndeton ; each clause is equally important.

CHAPTER 21.

8. *qualis esset* (indirect question after *cognoscerent*), *what was the nature of the mountain*. Part of speech and exact meaning of *qualis* ?

9. *qui cognoscerent, to ascertain*.

11. *pro praetore, in-place-of a praetor, with praetorian powers*. Compare primitive meaning of *pro* in chap. 48 and its meaning in chaps. 2 and 26.

13. *quid consilii sui sit, what his plan is, = quid decreverit*. Compare vi. 7, *quid sui sit concilii* ; and vii. 77, *quid ergo mei consilii est* ?

16. *in M. Crassi, in that of Marcus Crassus*. Note that our English pronoun 'that' is unexpressed in the Latin idiom, but in Latin the substantive is often repeated ; e.g. chap. 28, *e suis finibus in Helvetiorum fines*.

CHAPTER 22.

18. *prima luce, at break of day*.

summus mons. See note on *reliquos*, p. 66, l. 1.

85. 2. *neque — cognitus esset, without his arrival being known*. Translate into Latin, "he went off *without doing it*." See Hints for Translating, pp. 325-26.

equo admisso, (his) horse having been let go toward (his destination), at full speed (with loose reins). *mittere* often means *to let go*, as in the skipper's order *mitte rudentem, let go the rope*, and the colloquial *mitte me, let me alone*. Cf. *intermittere, let go between, hence cease*, e.g. *subeuntes intermittere*, ii. 25.

3. *accurrit, dicit*. Observe the omission of the conjunction, *comes up to him — says*. Compare chap. 20.

4. *insignibus*. The decorations of the Gallic armor ; i.e. devices on the helmets, etc. See Introduction, Description of Gaul ; illustrations in the text.

a *Gallicis armis — cognovisse*. *cognosco* has a fondness for being joined with *ex* or the simple ablative. The *a* expresses the source of the information.

6. *erat ei praeceptum*. The subject is *ne — committeret*, etc.

12. *multo die, late in the day*. What literally ? Compare *prima luce, at daybreak*.

16. *pro viso, for seen, as if seen*.

17. *quo consuerat intervallo*. Compare chap. 15, *uti inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum non amplius quinque aut senis milibus interesset*.

CHAPTER 23.

19. *postridie eius diei, on the next day*.

20. *metiri*. See Introduction, Roman Art of War.

22. *prospiciendum, sc. esse.* Compare note on *expectandum*, p. 75, l. 13.

86. 2. *fugitivos, fugitive slaves, runaways.* The word is used in contempt for *transfugae*, the regular word for deserters. Compare chap. 27, *obsides, arma, servos, qui ad eos profugissent.*

decurionis. See Introduction 108.

4. *quod — existimarent.* The subjunctive expresses what Caesar supposed to be the cause. So with the clause *quod — commississent* below.

6. *quod — confiderent.* *Romanos*, the subject of *discedere* preceding, is also the subject of *posse* (*intercludi*).

CHAPTER 24.

9. *id animum advertit, when he observes this.* *animum advertit = animadvertit.*

10. *qui sustineret,* purpose clause.

11. *ipse.* Do not translate by the cumbersome 'he himself.' The pronoun serves to distinguish Caesar from the cavalry.

12. *in colle medio, on the middle of the hill.* See note on *reliques*, p. 66, l. 1. *triplicem aciem.* See Introduction, Roman Art of War.

14. *in summo iugo, on the very summit.*

16. *ac, and so.*

21. *phalange,* a Greek word, used to describe the compact order of the Gauls. The Latin word which most closely corresponds to this formation is *testudo*. See Roman Art of War.

CHAPTER 25.

87. 1 *suo, sc. equo remoto, having removed first his own horse, then those of all.* Plutarch, *Caes.*, chap. 18: "When his horse was brought to him, he exclaimed, 'When I have conquered I will use it for the pursuit, but now let us go against the enemy,' and on foot he charged them."

4. *superiore, emphatic.*

6. *impedimento, it was a great hindrance to the Gauls.* What literally? Compare ii. 25, *ad pugnum esse impedimento vidit.*

9. *multi ut praeoptarent, so that not a few chose.* Notice the emphatic position of *multi*.

11. *nudo, naked, i.e. without a shield.*

12. *pedem referre, to give away.* What literally?

15. *agmen hostium claudebant, closed the line of the enemy, i.e. brought up the rear.*

16. *ex itinere.* Our idiom requires *on the march.* The Latin shows there was no interval between march and fight.

19. *Romani conversa signa intulerunt*, the Romans, having faced about, advanced in two divisions; literally, bore in their standards reversed.

CHAPTER 26.

88. 1. *ancipiti proelio*, in a doubtful battle, or in a double battle, referring to the two different fronts on which the battle was fought.

pugnatum. See note to *concedendum*, p. 72, l. 4.

2. Note the hyperbaton, *diutius cum*. Compare *vix qua*, chap. 6.

4. *ab hora septima*, from the seventh hour, i.e. about one o'clock. The Romans divided the day into twelve hours, beginning at sunrise.

5. *aversum hostem*, the back of an enemy; literally, an enemy turned away.

6. *ad multam noctem*, till late at night. Compare *multo die*, chap. 22.

7. *pro vallo*, as a rampart.

8. *coniciebant* — *subiciebant* — *vulnerabant*. Note the imperfects which vividly bring out the details in the midst of the narrative.

9. *diu cum esset pugnatum*, after a long fight. Note the hyperbaton. Compare *diutius cum* above.

10. *castrisque* — *potiti*. For explanation of the ablative with *potior* see note to *Galliae potiri*, p. 68, l. 19.

11. *captus est*. Agrees with the nearest subject, *unus*. Plutarch says that on this occasion even the women and children fought till they were cut down.

17. *qui si iuvisset*, for if they should aid them.

eodem — *habiturum*, would regard them in the same light as the Helvetii. *eodem loco* — *habere*, cf. chap. 28, in *hostium numero habuit*.

CHAPTER 27.

21. *qui cum* — *convenissent*. Note that *qui* stands first in its sentence because it is the word most closely connected with the preceding sentence. Compare note on *qua de causa*, p. 66, l. 1. *convenissent* is usually intransitive in Caesar, but here transitive.

22. *ad pedes*, at his feet. Observe that the idiom is faithful to the idea of motion.

89. 1. *quo tum essent*. Attracted into the subjunctive by being in a subjunctive clause.

2. *iussisset*, sc. Caesar as subject.

eo postquam. Compare *diu cum esset*, chap. 26.

3. *ea*, neut. r. This includes the *obsides* and *servos* as well as the *arma*.

dum — *conquiruntur et conferuntur*. The present indicative is used with *dum* in the sense of *while*. *dum* was originally the accusative singular of the

pronoun stem *do*, the accusative implying duration of time ; hence its meaning was *a while*. Compare *nondum*, *interdum*, *etiamdum*. From this use it passed to that of a pure conjunction.

4. *nocte intermissa*, *a night having intervened*.

5. *perterriti*. Remember to feel the force of the preposition in all compound verbs.

6. *ne — adficerentur*. *ne*, after verbs of fearing, is to be rendered *that* or *lest*. The origin of the use of *ne* in expressions of fear probably goes back to the form of a wish, e.g. *ne veniat* ; *metuo*, "may he not come ; I fear (he will)," came to mean "I fear that he will come." *ut veniat* ; *metuo*, "may he come ; I fear (he will not)," came to mean, "I fear he will not come."

in tanta multitudo. The *in* expresses cause : *since so many were in the surrender*.

7. *occultari — existimarent*, *they supposed their flight could either be concealed or be entirely unnoticed*.

8. *prima nocte*, *in the early part of the night*. How does the context show that this cannot mean *in the first night* ?

CHAPTER 28.

10. *resciit*, *discovered*. *resciscere*, according to Aulus Gellius, 2, 19, refers to knowledge in regard to anything which is unexpected or hidden.

quorum. The antecedent is *his* below.

11. *sibi purgati*, *blameless in his sight*. Compare iv. 13, 5, *sui purgandi causa* : Derivation of *purgare* ? Compare "Purge me with hyssop, and I shall be clean," Ps. li. 7. *sibi* is the dative of reference.

12. *reductos — habuit*, *he treated them, when brought back, as enemies*, i.e. they were put to death or sold as slaves.

ut iis frumenti copiam facerent, *to furnish them a supply of grain*.

17. *quos incenderant*, i.e. the particular towns in chap. 5 ; hence the indicative, expressing a fact stated by Caesar.

id ea maxime ratione fecit. quod, *he did this especially because*.

19. *vacare*, *to be empty* ; cf. *patere*, *to lie open*, chap. 2 ; *licere*, *to be permitted*, chap. 7 ; *cavere*, *to be on one's guard*, chap. 14 ; *tacere*, *to be silent*, chap. 17. Do these verbs assert action or state ? Are they transitive or intransitive ? How many English words must be used to express the meaning of each one ?

21. *Boios*. Object of *conlocarent*. *petentibus Haeduis*, dative after *concessit*.

90. 2. *parem atque ipsi erant*, *same terms of freedom as they themselves had* ; literally, *same terms and they themselves were* (on the same terms).

CHAPTER 29.

4. **tabulae, tablets.** The word is applied to any flat substance used for writing, usually wood covered with wax.

litteris Graecis confectae, made out in Greek characters. Some hold that *litteris Graecis* implies the Greek language, although such an interpretation is not necessary. The general opinion is that the Helvetii used the Greek alphabet merely, having become acquainted with it from the Greek colony at Marseilles, in the south of Gaul. Compare v. 48, *hanc Graecis conscriptam litteris mittit*; and vi. 14, *Graecis litteris utantur*. See Introduction, Description of Gaul; illustrations of Gallic coins.

6. **ratio.** Introducing the indirect question.

8. **capitum, souls,** i.e. Helvetii. Compare English 'head of cattle.'

10. **ad milia.** See note on *ad milia*, p. 69, l. 5.

11. **fuerunt.** Agreeing with the predicate noun *milia*.

ad is an adverb, and does not influence the construction. Compare note on *ad milia*.

CHAPTER 30.

Helvetiorum, with the Helvetians.

91. 1. **totius fere Galliae,** i.e. Celtic Gaul, the third of the three divisions. See chap. 1. Compare chap. 31, *Galliae totius factiones esse duas*.

3. **Helvetiorum iniuriis populi Romani** (two genitives; *Helvetiorum* is subjective, *populi Romani* objective), *wrongs inflicted upon the Romans by the Helvetians*. Compare vii. 26, *universae Galliae consensio libertatis vindicandae*.

4. **ex usu terrae Galliae,** *to the advantage of the land of Gaul*. *terrae* takes *Galliae* in apposition with it for *terrae Gallicae*. Compare iii. 7, *mare Oceanum*.

6. **florentissimis rebus,** *though their condition was prosperous*.

7. **uti — inferrent.** Note how the purpose clause is anticipated by *eo concilio*. Translate, *with the purpose of making war*.

8. **domicilio.** Dat. of purpose.

ex magna copia, *out of a great abundance*.

10. **petierunt, uti — facere liceret: sese habere.** Note the change from the subjunctive to the accusative. Why?

12. **ex consensu,** *in accordance with the common consent*.

14. **nisi quibus,** i.e. *nisi ii quibus, unless those (disclose it) to whom this duty should be assigned by the common council*. **mandatum esset,** what form in the direct discourse?

CHAPTER 31.

18. *idem* = *iidem*.

17. *qui ante fuerant, ad Caesarem*, *who had before been (to him), returned to Caesar*. With *fuerant*, *sc. apud eum*.

18. *secreto in occulto*, *apart from others in a secret place*. This is the reading of the common text. Some regard *in occulto* as a marginal note written by some scribe and later inserted in the text. Others defend the text by making *secreto* mean "without witnesses," and *occulto*, "in a secret place."

19. *Caesari ad pedes proiecerunt*. *threw themselves at Caesar's feet*. The dative taken with the whole idea of the clause, instead of the genitive in close union with *pedes*.

20. *non minus* — *contendere*, *they no less strove and labored*.

92. 3. *Galliae totius factiones esse duas* (cf. vi. 12, *alterius factionis principes erant Haedui, alterius Sequani*), *there were two parties in the whole of Gaul*. *factiones* refers to the two political parties of Gaul. *factio* originally contained no bad notion like that in the English word *faction*, but, according to Festus, is "*honestum vocabulum*." For the order, cf. note to *apud Helvetios* — *Orgetorix*, p. 66, l. 14.

4. *principatum tenere*, *hold the leadership*.

5. *potentatu*. Only here in Caesar, for *principatu*.

inter se. See note on *inter se*, p. 65, l. 5.

6. *factum esse*, *it came to pass*.

9. *adamassent*, for *adamavissent*. See note on *mandarunt*, p. 76, l. 10.

11. *clientes*, *dependents*, i.e. the subject states. Compare vi. 12, *summa auctoritas erat in Haeduis magnaue eorum erant clientelae*.

calamitatem. Explained by what follows.

12. *senatum*. Compare ii. 5, *omnem senatum ad se convenire*.

14. *populi Romani hospitio*, *by the hospitality of the Roman people*. The relation of hospitality existed between states as well as between individuals. It was this *hospitium* on the part of the Roman people that gave to the Haedui their power in Gaul. Compare vi. 5, *cum his esse hospitium Ambiorigi sciebat*, also vii. 75, *pro eius hospitio duo milia una miserunt*.

18. *quo minus* — *essent*. *quominus*, *whereby less* softens a refusal. For origin of this construction, see note to *tenebantur quo minus*, iii. 23.

21. *ob eam rem*. In this phrase the position of the preposition is never changed. See note on *magno cum periculo*, p. 74, l. 4.

ad senatum — *postulatum*, lit. *had gone to Rome to the senate to ask for aid*. Notice that after a verb of motion both nouns are in the accusative. This should be remembered, especially in translating English into Latin. In English we say "had gone to the senate at Rome." He did not succeed in his effort. Compare vi. 12, *Romam ad senatum profectus imperfecta re redierat*.

23. **peius accidisse**. So far as form is concerned, what two parts of speech are possible for **peius**?

victoribus Sequanis quam Haeduis victis. Note the order of **victoribus** and **victis**. In such an order the ideas cross; hence the name *chiasmus* ($\chi\iota\delta\acute{\omega}$, cf. Greek letter χ).



27. **paucis mensibus ante**, a few months before.

28. **quibus — pararentur**, for whom a place of abode was to be provided. Subjunctive of purpose, = that a place of abode might be provided for them.

29. **futurum esse uti**, it would result that. See note on **futurum uti — averterentur**, p. 83, l. 19.

93. 1. **omnes**. Emphatic.

2. **conferendum esse**, was not to be compared (in respect to fertility) with the German land.

4. **ut semel — vicerit**. What would **vicerit** be in the direct discourse?

6. **nobilissimi cuiusque**. Note the meaning of **quisque** with a superlative: of all of the highest rank. Compare **primus quisque**, all the first, literally, each first man, for each one who is met in succession becomes in his turn the first.

in **eos — edere**, inflicted upon them all kinds of torments; **exempla cruciatuque**, all examples and torments, being put by hendiadys for all kinds of tortures.

7. **non ad nutum**. Note emphatic position of **non**.

8. **hominem — temerarium**, he was a savage, quick-tempered, and rash.

9. **imperia**. Plural, because containing the idea of "acts of despotism."

nisi si. With same force as **nisi** alone.

11. **idem**. In apposition with **ut** — **emigrent**.

15. **quin — sumat**, that he would inflict the severest punishment upon.

CHAPTER 32.

20. **oratione habita**. What means to make or deliver a speech?

94. 2. **capite demisso**. Ablative absolute, where the old instrumental can be seen. See note to **eo deprecatore**, p. 72, l. 10. Translate, with bowed head.

3. **respondere**. Historical infinitive. See note on **ducere Haedui**, p. 80, l. 4.

7. **quam reliquorum**, *than that of the rest*. See note to **M. Crassi**, p. 84, l. 16.
8. **absentis**, *even when absent*.
9. **horrent**, with a direct object. The old signification of the word was to *bristle* or *become erect*; then the feeling derived from such action — e.g. in Lucretius, **horror** refers to the grating sound of a saw. In Latin the word applies always to disagreeable sensations, as fear, dread, etc., although the root originally admitted the idea of both *pleasure* and *pain*.
10. **Sequanis**. Dative of agent, with *essent perferendi*; for the literal translation of which, cf. note on **non expectandum esse**, p. 75, l. 13.

CHAPTER 33.

14. **sibi eam rem curae futuram**, *he would attend to the matter*; literally, *the matter would be for a care to him*.
15. **beneficio suo**, *by his kindness*, i.e. by the kindness Caesar had done Ariovistus; referring to the title 'king' and 'friend' which had been given him. Compare chap. 35, **cum in consulatu suo rex atque amicus a senatu appellatus**.
17. **secundum**, *in harmony with*; literally, *following* (*sequor*). Compare note on **secundus**, p. 75, l. 13. What part of speech here?
18. **quare putaret**, *by which thing he should think*, i.e. to think.
19. **fratres consanguineosque**. Compare chap. 11, **necessarii et consanguinei**.
23. **Germanos consuescere** and **magnam — multitudinem venire** are the subjects of *esse* to be supplied. **periculosum** is in agreement with the two clauses.
95. 2. **sibi temperaturos — quin**, *would restrain themselves from going forth into the province*. See Hints for Translating, pp. 325–6. **ut — fecissent**, subjunctive, because in the indirect discourse. What two meanings has **ut** as a conjunction and with what difference of mode? Compare **ut — arbitrantur**, chap. 4, and **ut — essent**, chap. 5.
3. **quin — exirent**. See note on **quin**, p. 68, l. 14. The relative stem "whereby," expressing result or purpose, gave the construction after verbs of *refraining*.
4. **Teutonique**, — in vii. 77 the plural nominative is **Teutones**, as shown from the genitive.
6. **quibus — occurrendum**, *and these things he thought he ought to meet as speedily as possible*.
7. **ipse**. Why emphatic? In contrast to what?
- tantos sibi spiritus — sumpserat**. How does the English 'to put on airs' illustrate the meaning of **spiritus** in this passage? How does **sumere** differ in meaning from **capere**? Compare English *assumption*.

CHAPTER 34.

10 **qui ab eo postularent**, *to demand of him.*

11. **conloquio**, *for a conference.* **locum medium utriusque**, *midway between both.* **utriusque** is the genitive with the adjective **medium**.

de re publica — **agere**, *to treat on the public weal*, i.e. public matters.
summis utriusque rebus, *matters of the highest importance to both of them.*

13. **si quid se** — **velit**, *if he wanted anything of him.* **velle** takes two accusatives, after the analogy of a verb of asking.

19. **negotii** (partitive genitive with **quid**), *what business.*

CHAPTER 35.

96. 2. **tanto** — **adfectus**, *treated with so great kindness by himself and the Roman people.* Compare chap. 33, **suo beneficio**. By what clause might the participle **adfectus** be translated here? For use of participle with meaning of clause, see **damnatum**, chap. 4.

4. **hanc gratiam referret**, *made such a return as this.* Note emphatic position of **hanc**.

8. **trans Rhenum traduceret**. Observe the repetition of the preposition.

10. **quos illi** — **illis**. The antecedent of **quos** is the omitted object of **redere**. What is the antecedent of **illi** and **illis**?

12. **fecisset, impetraret**. What moods and tenses would these verbs have taken if this were the direct discourse?

15. **quod commodo** — **facere posset**, *so far as he could do so consistently with the interests of the state.* **commodo**, ablative of specification.

CHAPTER 36.

19. **ut** — **imperarent**, *that those who had conquered should rule those whom they had conquered in whatever way they chose.* **vicissent** for the future perfect of the direct discourse.

20. **alterius praescriptum**, *dictation of any one else.*

23. **in suo iure impediri**, *ought not to be obstructed in his right.*

sibi. Construe with **stipendiarios**.

97. 1. **magnam** — **iniuriam**. Make **magnam** just as emphatic in the English.

2. **qui** — **faceret**, *because he was making his revenues less.*

4. **quod convenisset**, *which had been agreed upon.* Compare ii. 19, **quod tempus inter eos convenerat**.

6. **longe**—**afuturum**, *name of brothers would not help them*; literally, *be a great way from them*. Compare Verg. Aen. xii. 52, *longe illi dea mater erit*.

8. **cum vellet**, **congrederetur** would be in the direct discourse **cum volet**, **congrederiatur**, *if he wants to, let him come on*.

9. **invicti Germani**, *invincible Germans*; literally, *unconquered*, hence not liable to be.

10. **inter annos**, *during (fourteen) years*. This expression, as well as **per annos** for the simple accusative of duration of time, anticipates the future influence of the preposition. Compare Inductive Studies, The Ablative Case, B, e.

CHAPTER 37.

11. **eodem tempore** — **et**, *at the same time* — *that*. See note on **parem** — **atque**, p. 90, l. 2.

12. **ab Haeduis** — **a Treveris**. The repetition of the preposition makes prominent the two embassies.

questum, sc. **veniebant**.

13. **quod** — **popularentur**. The reason of the complaint, stated on authority of the **Haedui**, — hence in indirect discourse when stated by Caesar as it is here.

14. **obsidibus datis**, *even by giving hostages*.

15. **pacem redimere potuisse**, *able to purchase peace*. Compare chap. 44, **amicitiam** — **redimere posset**.

20. **resisti posset**, sc. **Ariovisto**, impersonal construction, (**Ariovistus**) *might be less easily withstood*.

CHAPTER 38.

98. 1. **cum tridui viam processisset**, *when he had proceeded three days' journey*.

3. **quod**. The relative refers to **Vesontionem**, but agrees with **oppidum**. Compare ii. 1, **omnes Belgas, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixeramus**.

4. **magnopere sibi praecavendum (esse)**, *that he ought to take the greatest precautions*.

6. **summa** — **facultas**, *an abundant supply*. Compare Cic. De Offic., 1, 3, **facultates rerum**.

10. **pedum**. **amplius** may not influence the construction, since the comparatives **plus**, **amplius**, **minus**, etc., are often used in this way. The origin of this use is perhaps in the addition of a modifying statement, as if the writer had said, "which is of six hundred feet, — not more any way." **ut circino**, *as by a pair of compasses*. Give the two uses of **ut** already noted. As the distance actually measures sixteen hundred feet, it is possible that an **m.** before the **dc.**

has fallen out through the carelessness of the copyist, since an *m* had immediately preceded. So in the manuscript of another Latin author *ad cecidis* is by a similar mistake for *ad DC cecidis*, "about 600 fell."

13. *huc Caesar — contendit*. Put into Latin, *Caesar hastened here, Caesar went from here, Caesar stayed here*.

CHAPTER 39.

16. *dum — moratur*. See note to *dum conquiruntur*, p. 89, l. 3.

20. *ne — oculorum*. Show from the root meaning of *acies* how it may be used both of a *line of battle* and the *flash* of the eyes.

99. 2. *non mediocriter*, in no slight degree.

6. *alius alia causa inlata* (observe the idiom), and assigning, some one reason, some another.

quam — diceret, which they said was a necessary one for their departure.

9. *vultum fingere*, compose their faces, i.e. look brave.

21. *qui volebant*. The antecedent is *ii*, to be supplied as subject of *dicebant*.

23. *rem frumentariam* (for *res frumentaria*, as subject of *posset*; the accusative of anticipation), they feared, in regard to the supplies, that they could not be brought in readily. Luke iv. 34, "I know thee who thou art."

26. *dicto audientes*, attentive or obedient to the word (of command).

27. *signa laturos*, advance. What means to retreat, to bring up the rear, to charge, to wheel about, to join or begin battle, to draw the sword (see chap. 26), to march?

CHAPTER 40.

100. 1. *omniumque ordinum*, of all ranks.

3. *primum*, in the first place. Any second enumeration is forgotten.

4. *sibi quaerendum — putarent*, thought that it belonged to them to inquire or consider. *putarent*, why in the subjunctive?

5. *Ariovistum*, etc. The indirect discourse depends on the idea of saying implied in *incusavit*. Explain the modes and the tenses to end of chapter.

se consule. Antecedent of *se*?

6. *cur — quisquam — iudicaret*, why should any one judge.

7. *sibi persuaderi*, he was persuaded. Observe that *persuadeo* in the passive must be used impersonally. Why? Sometimes Latin writers use the passive of intransitive verbs personally, as if to bring an innovation into the language; e.g. *animus auditoris persuasus esse videtur*. But such use is exceedingly unclassical, since the conception of an intransitive verb cannot admit of such a construction.

10. *quid tandem*, what, pray. In interrogative and exclamatory sentences

tandem denotes strong feeling, usually disgust or impatience, and gets its translation from the context, "In the name of the gods, what were they afraid of?"

11. **de ipsius diligentia.** *ipsius* used for *sua*, referring to Caesar, to avoid confusion with *sua virtute*, which points to the subject of *desperant*.

factum (esse) periculum, *trial had been made.*

14. **cum — videbatur.** The clause is not closely joined to the indirect discourse. For use of *cum*, see Introduction, Inductive Studies, under *cum*. This is the only case in the Gallic War of an imperfect indicative after *cum*. At this time we may say that the use of *cum* with the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive had become fixed as a habit. The real cause which thrust the verb into the subjunctive had almost been lost sight of. Of course it was inevitable that the Romans should think there was something in the *cum* itself that required the subjunctive. A good example of this tendency is the use of *quamquam* among later writers. In Cicero *quamquam* never takes the subjunctive unless there is some outside reason, but Tacitus employs the word as if by its own influence it required the subjunctive.

16. **quantum — boni constantia.** *how much advantage resolution has.*

25. **neque — fecisset,** *nor had he given them an opportunity to fight with him; literally, no chance at him.*

desperantes, *sc. Gallos.*

101. 1. **cui rationi — posse** (*rationi* is attracted into the relative clause), *by a stratagem, for which there had been room against savage and unskilled men, — by this stratagem (I say) not even he expected that our armies could be entrapped; literally, hac (ratione), cui rationi, by this stratagem, for which stratagem, etc.*

3. **qui.** The antecedent is *eos*, to be supplied as subject of *facere*.

4. **in rei — simulationem,** *to a pretended anxiety about provisions.*

5. **de — desperare,** *to despair of the commander's doing his duty.*

8. **quod — dicantur,** *as to the report that they would not be obedient to orders nor advance. signa laturi, cf. chap. 39, signa laturos.*

19. **praetoriam cohortem.** The general's body-guard. Observe how the word passed over to the meaning of its English derivative, *court*: 1) *a body of troops*; 2) *in imperial times, the emperor's body-guard*; 3) *the suite of the emperor, or the official staff of a governor*; cf. Horace, *quid studiosa cohors operum struit?* So comes, *companion*, became a title of honor, giving us our word *court*.

CHAPTER 41.

102. 2. **optimum iudicium fecisset,** *expressed the most favorable opinion.* The *quod* clause can be rendered, (*gave thanks*) *for his having expressed.* See Hints for Translating, pp. 325-26.

4. **primorum ordinum centuriones.** See Introduction, 100.
5. **per tribunos — egerunt,** *arranged with the tribunes.*
satisfacerent, *apologize.*
se — existimavisse. Indirect discourse after the idea of saying implied in **satisfacerent.** Compare note on **Ariovistum**, etc., p. 100, l. 5.
6. **summa belli,** *conduct of the war.*
7. **suum — imperatoris.** Predicate after **esse** understood.
satisfactione, *apology.* Compare **satisfacerent.**
8. **ex aliis,** *beyond all others.* See note on the ablative after the comparative, under the general discussion of the ablative in chap. 2.
- ei — fidem habebat,** *had — trust in him.* Either the dative or ablative can be used in this expression.
9. **ut — duceret** (a result clause after the ablative absolute **itinere exquisito**), *the road having been reconnoitred and found to be such that it would lead,* etc.
locis apertis, *through an open country.*
12. **milibus,** ablative of distance. See general discussion of the ablative in chap. 2.

CHAPTER 42.

15. **de conloquio.** Note meaning of the preposition *concerning*. The original notion *down from* is seen when we remember that everything spoken hung *from* that topic. From a different point of view we say, "he spoke about a thing," i.e. everything he said clustered *about* it. So *circa*, e.g. **errorem circa litteras habuit.**

per se, *with his consent.*

18. **petenti,** *to his request; literally, to him asking it.*

19. **ultra polliceretur,** *he actually promised.*

20. **pro suis — beneficiis.** Compare chap. 33, **beneficio suo.**

21. **fore uti desisteret,** *that he would desist.*

conloquio, dative of purpose.

22. **ultra citroque,** *hither and thither.*

103. 2. **alia ratione,** *on any other terms.*

4. **interposita causa,** *by alleging any excuse.*

8. **eo imponere,** *upon them, = in eos.* Compare chap. 53, **eo mulieres imposerant.**

10. **si quid — esset,** *if there should be any need of action.*

16. **ad equum rescribere,** *make knights of them.* The expression has a double meaning, hence the joke, *non inridicule, to enroll as cavalrymen, or to enroll as knights, a privileged Roman class.*

CHAPTER 43.

17. **tumulus terrenus**, *hill free from rocks*. Compare Sall. Jug., 92, 5, **mons saxeus**.

18. **aequo spatio aberat**, *was at nearly an equal distance*. Compare chap. 41, **Ariovisti xx abesse**.

spatio, ablative of degree of difference.

20. **equis**, *on horseback*. Ablative of means.

22. **ex equis**, *on horseback*. Compare note on **ex vinculis**, p. 69, l. 2. Note the hyperbaton.

23. **denos**, *ten each*.

104. 4. **pro officiis**, *in return for great services*.

5. **aditum**, *access*. Compare v. 41, **aliquem sermonis aditum causamque**.

9. **ut**, *how*. In such meaning we see the interrogative conjunction. See note on **uti**, p. 70, l. 6.

quam veteres — **appetissent**. Compare chaps. 11 and 31.

12. **sui nihil**, *nothing of their own*.

18. **at**, *at least*.

amplius. See note on **pedum**, p. 98, l. 10.

CHAPTER 44.

19. **de suis**. Observe the asyndeton.

21. **rogatum et arcessitum**. Agreeing with **sese**.

Gallis. The Arverni and Sequani.

105. 1. **ipsis**, *sc. Gallis*.

2. **capere**. For omission of the subject, cf. **rogare**, chap. 7.

victores victis. Note collocation. See Hints for Translating, pp. 325-26.

4. **ac contra se castra habuisse**, *had encamped against him*.

5. **uno proelio**. Compare chap. 31.

6. **si** — **velint**. In direct discourse, **si** — **volunt**.

7. **paratum esse decertare**. Notice that the infinitive is used with **paratum**. Compare ii. 3, **paratosque esse et obsides dare**. In chap. 5 **paratus** took the gerundive construction with **ad**: **paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda**. See discussion of the infinitive, chap. 7.

pace uti velint, *wish to enjoy peace*.

9. **amicitiam** — **esse**. Subject of **oportere**.

10. **idque**, not *eamque*, because it refers to the idea contained in **amicitiam**, admitting of a more general meaning, — *that relation*.

11. **si** — **remittatur**. In direct discourse, **si** — **remittetur**.

13. **quod** — **traducat**, *respecting his bringing over*. See Hints for Translating, pp. 325–26.

15. **nisi rogatus**, *without being asked*. See Hints for Translating, pp. 325–26.

16. **defenderit** (sc. *bellum* as object), *had warded it off*. Compare ii. 29, *alias inlatum defenderent*; also Civil War, ii. 2, *ignem defendere*.

19. **provinciam suam**. Make correspondingly emphatic in the English translation.

hanc Galliam, *this part of Gaul*; literally, *this Gaul*.

20. **ut oporteret**, *as it would not be proper to pardon him if, etc.* Why *it* concedi in the impersonal construction? **ipsi** = *sibi*, Ariovistus.

22. **quod** — **diceret**, *as to his saying*. See Hints for Translating, pp. 325–26.

23. **imperitum rerum**, *ignorant of affairs*.

27. **debere** — **habere**, *that he had a right to suspect that Caesar, inasmuch as he had an army in Gaul, kept it there, although under the pretense of friendship, for the sake of crushing him*. How does *debere* differ from *oportere*? See note on *debuerint*, p. 75, l. 7.

30. **quod (moreover) si eum interfecerit** — **gratum esse facturum**. In direct discourse it would be **quod si te interfecero, gratum — faciam**. The death of Caesar would be a welcome thing to the aristocracy. Ariovistus knew the party rivalries at Rome.

106. 1. **id compertum habere**, *had ascertained*. See note on *obstrictas habere*, p. 73, l. 14.

CHAPTER 45.

7. **in eam sententiam**, *to this effect; for the purpose of showing*; followed by *quare, why*. This use of the preposition is an anticipation of the force *in* was to have in the post-Ciceronian writers to denote result or purpose; e.g. **in libertatem pugnare**, Livy, xxiv. 2, 4. The phrase **in memoriam**, which has such a vogue among us to-day, makes the use of *in* to denote purpose seem by no means strange; but such a notion in the preposition is entirely unclassical.

10. **Galliam** = Celticam Galliam.

12. **populus** — **ignovisset**, *the Roman people had pardoned*.

13. **antiquissimum quodque**. For use of the superlative with *quisque*, see note on *nobilissimi cuiusque*, p. 93, l. 6.

CHAPTER 46.

19. **propius tumulum accedere**, *were approaching nearer the mound*. **tumulum** is the accusative with the adverb *propius*, after the analogy of the preposition *prope*. Compare Sall. Jug., 49, **ipse propior montem suos conlocat**; also iii. 7, **proximus mare** — **hiemarat**.

ad nostros adequitare — **in nostros conicere**. Note repetition of *nostros*.

So ad suos recepit suisque imperavit. Bring out corresponding vividness in English.

107. 2. facit — imperavit. Observe change in tense. facit expresses suddenness.

3. periculo legionis, *danger to the legion*. Objective genitive.

5. committendum — posset, *he did not think that he ought to allow it to be said*. The subject of committendum (esse) is ut — posset.

8. omni Gallia — interdixisset, *had forbidden the Romans all Gaul*.

9. ut, *how*. See note to ut, p. 104, l. 9.

CHAPTER 47.

11. biduo post, *two days after*.

12. quae — coeptae — perfectae, *which had begun to be discussed, but were not yet finished*. coeptae essent, the passive coepi is regularly used with a passive infinitive.

16. retineri quin — conicerent, *be kept from hurling*.

17. magno cum periculo, *it would be a great risk to send him*. See note to magno cum periculo, p. 74, l. 4.

21. civitate donatus erat, *had been presented with citizenship*.

22. qua multa — utebatur, *which he spoke freely*.

108. 2. in — esset, *the Germans would have no reason for doing wrong in his case*. esset, subjunctive, because it is Caesar's opinion.

6. venirent, in direct discourse venit.

CHAPTER 48.

12. qui supportaretur, *which were being conveyed to him from the Sequani and Haedui*.

15. ei — deesset, *an opportunity might not be wanting to him*.

16. castris continuit. locative ablative, without preposition, especially common with the verbs teneo, recipio.

continuit, equestri proelio. Note the asyndeton.

17. hoc erat, *was as follows*.

23. si quo — recipiendum, *if it was necessary to advance to any place farther than usual or to retreat more quickly*.

25. cursum adaequarent, *equalled their speed*.

CHAPTER 49.

109. 2. eum locum, quo in loco. Observe the repetition of the antecedent. Compare itinera, duo, quibus itineribus, chap. 6.

3. *castris idoneum*, fitted for a camp.
5. *secundam — esse, tertiam*. Note the asyndeton.
castra munire, to fortify the camp. Introduction, 121.
7. *hominum milia expedita*, for *hominum milia expeditorum* (cf. ii. 4, *armata milia centum*), (sixteen) thousand light-armed troops.
8. *quae copiae — perterrerent*, that this force might terrify our men.

CHAPTER 50.

13. *instituto suo*, in accordance with his custom. Compare chap. 48, *ex eo die — aciem instructam habuit*.
14. *instruxit, hostibus — fecit*. Note the asyndeton.
17. *tum demum*, then at length.
18. *acriter — pugnatum est*. Diodorus says that Ariovistus almost succeeded in taking the camp of Caesar, and, being elated, neglected the prophecies of the women and met Caesar in battle.
19. *solis occasu*, at sunset. Compare chap. 1, *inter occasum solis*.
110. 2. *matresfamiliae*. Tacitus states that the women among the Germans were supposed to have prophetic power.
sortibus et vaticinationibus, from lots and divination.
3. *ex usu*, advantageous.
5. *ante novam lunam*. Old superstitions respecting the new moon linger with us to-day.

CHAPTER 51.

7. *alarios*, the auxiliaries. So called because stationed on the *alae* or wings of the army.
9. *minus — valebat*, was not strong in the number of legionary soldiers in comparison with the enemy.
10. *ad speciem*, for show.
15. *eo mulieres imposuerunt*. See note on *eo imponere*, p. 103, l. 8.
16. *passis manibus*, with outstretched hands; *passis* being here from *pando*, not *pateor*. Compare ii. 13, *passis manibus suo more*; and vii. 47, *passis manibus obtestabantur*.

CHAPTER 52.

18. *singulis — quaestorem*, lieutenants and a quaestor over each legion.
20. *a dextro cornu*, on the right wing.
minime firmam, weakest.
111. 3. *pila*. The object of the gerund, *coniciendi*. The gerundive construction would give an offensive accumulation of syllables. Give the gerundive construction.

5. **phalange facta.** Compare chap. 24, *reieto nostro equitatu phalange facta.*

6. **complures nostri milites,** *very many of our soldiers.*

in phalangas, *upon the phalanxes.* The Latin word representing this compact order was *testudo*. For the Greek form of accusative, cf. *Allobrogas*, chap. 14.

8. **a sinistro cornu.** See **a dextro cornu** above.

11. **expeditior erat,** *was more disengaged.*

CHAPTER 53.

17. **viribus confisi,** *relying on their strength.*

20. **duae uxores.** The Germans usually had one wife ; but their nobles had more, as we learn from Tacitus, *prope soli barbarorum singulis uxoribus contenti sunt, exceptis admodum paucis, qui — ob nobilitatem plurimis nuptiis ambiuntur.* See Introduction, 85.

21. **duxerat,** *had married.* See note on *in matrimonium duxerat*, chap. 9.

112. 1. **duae filiae harum** (i.e. **uxorum**), **altera — altera,** *of their two daughters, one was slain, the other captured.* *filiae*, nom. plur., a Greek construction, instead of the partitive genitive.

4. **in ipsum Caesarem — incidit,** *fell into the hands of Caesar himself.*

10. **calamitate,** euphemism for *morte*.

12. **ter sortibus.** Probably three was a sacred and mystical number with the Germans, as it was among several other ancient nations. We know from Tacitus (*ter singulos tollit*) that they consulted the lot three times.

CHAPTER 54.

18. **perterritos insecuti magnum ex iis numerum occiderunt.** For the object with the participle and verb, see note on *eos impeditos — aggressus — partem — concidit*, p. 76, l. 9.

21. **in hiberna in Sequanos,** *into winter quarters among the Sequani.* Why could not *Sequanos* be in the ablative? See note on *Romam ad senatum*, p. 92, l. 21.

22. **ad conventus agendos,** *to hold courts.* The Roman governors of provinces held these *conventus* for regulating taxes and administering justice.

BOOK II.

CHAPTER 1.

113. 1. cum esset. The position of the verb is emphatic. *While he was in Northern Italy* (as shown in bk. i.), *Caesar received frequent reports.* The student should observe that **cum**, with the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, had become at this period of the language the ordinary method of denoting time, often with no greater force than a mere participle or ablative absolute. Any expression in the English translation which will convey the simple temporal idea is often preferable to a heavy temporal clause, e.g. *at the time of Caesar's stay in Cisalpine Gaul.* **cum** (**quom**, the adverbial accusative singular of the neuter of the relative), originally took the indicative unless for some outside reason the subjunctive was required. The demands for a subjunctive in the **cum** clause were so frequent that the Romans felt there was something in **cum** itself which required the subjunctive. So universal had this practice become in the time of Caesar that whenever **cum** introduced a clause which formed part of a series of events, it took the subjunctive in the imperfect or pluperfect tenses. When the past action is brought into prominence, then the indicative must naturally be used. Compare **cum** — **videbatur**, i. 40.

To illustrate how arbitrary is the use of **cum** with the subjunctive, the student will remember that causal clauses introduced by **cum** take the subjunctive in the classical period, but causal clauses introduced by **quoniam** (which is really the same word, **quom** + **iam**) take the indicative.

2. **in hibernis.** Caesar perhaps had with him a small force, which had gone into winter quarters in Cisalpine Gaul.

4. **crebri** — **adferebantur**, *frequent reports were brought to him.* The imperfect denotes the repeated action suggested by **crebri**. Note the emphatic position; *frequent were the rumors that reached him.*

litterisque, the instrumental ablative, i.e. that use of the ablative which represents in Latin the instrumental case, the case of association, means, and agent.

5. **certior fiebat.** See idioms.

omnes Belgas — **coniurare** — **dare.** The indirect discourse. Direct **Belgae** — **coniurant** — **dant.** The use of the infinitive may have seemed strange to the pupil when he first came to this construction. It is really the same thing which we see in English when we say "I never knew him to do it." The present infinitive in the active voice was originally a verbal noun in the locative case. Hence **dare** (for **da** — **s** — **i**) would have signified at first 'in the giving, in

giving.' By degrees its substantive character was forgotten and it took the nature of a verb, e.g. "He knew the Belgae in the giving or to give hostages," came to mean, "He knew that the Belgae were giving hostages." Note that in English, after a past tense of a verb of knowing, saying, etc., we use a past tense in the subordinate clause also, e.g. "He knew that they were giving." In Latin the present must be employed, because the time of the infinitive is bound to that of the principal verb: at the time of Caesar's knowing this (no matter whether it is present or past), the act of giving hostages was going on.

quam tertiam. For the attraction of the antecedent, see note on i. 38, **Vesontionem, quod est oppidum.**

6. dixeramus. See chap. I. The indicative, because the parenthetical sentence is entirely outside of the indirect discourse. In the pluperfect tense we see the explanatory clause as a past historical fact. Compare iv. 27, **quem supra demonstraveram**, ii. 24, **quos — dixeram**, ii. 28, **quos — dixeram**.

8. inter se, to one another. The Latin has no reciprocal pronoun. **inter se, inter vos, inter nos**, take its place. The student should avoid rendering the phrase literally, but should translate by the case the reciprocal pronoun would have had. Compare i. 1, **inter se differunt**.

coniurandi — causas ; primum — deinde, the reasons for the conspiracy were the following, — first, because, etc., second, because, etc. Beginning with **partim qui**, we pass out of Labienus' report to Caesar's description of non-nullis Gallis, some of whom (**partim**) do not want the Roman army in Gaul, others of whom are naturally fickle. Besides these two classes there are several (**ab non — nullis**) who think Roman dominion will interfere with their ambitions.

9. quod vererentur — quod — sollicitarentur, because (as they said) they feared, the reason being stated on the authority of the Belgae.

10. omni pacata Gallia, after (Celtic) Gaul was subdued. pacata, cf. i. 6, qui nuper pacati erant.

ad eos for ad se. In subordinate clauses **se** refers to the subject of the principal clause, but it is sometimes used for the reflexive to avoid ambiguity. Compare i. 5, **cum iis proficiscantur**.

13. partim qui — partim qui, a part of whom — others of whom. What is the literal translation?

15. inveterascere, to settle, to gain a footing.

moleste ferebant, took it ill, bore it hard. The expression, like a verb of thinking, takes the indirect discourse, **exercitum hiemare atque inveterascere**.

16. novis imperiis, a revolution. Compare **novis rebus**.

ab nonnullis, (they were instigated) by some also.

114. 1. vulgo regna occupabantur. Note meaning of **occupo (ob + capio)** The student should avoid translating the word by its English derivative.

2. **qui — poterant.** Note adversative force in *qui*, *but who*.
imperio nostro, *under our dominion*.

CHAPTER 2.

5. **inita aestate**, *at the beginning of the summer*. The ablative absolute. Here we can see the locative in the temporal expression which the ablative represents. See note to **eo deprecatore**, p. 73, l. 10. *In (the time of) the summer which had been begun*, i.e. *at the beginning of the summer*. We have **aestas initur**, never **aestas init**.

in interiorem Galliam, *into the inner part of Gaul*; cf. **summus mons**, i. 22. Such adjectives of partitive sense generally agree with their noun. Rarely the neuter substantive is used with the partitive genitive, e.g. **aestatis extremum**.

6. **qui deduceret**, *to conduct them*.

Pedium. Pedius was the son of Caesar's sister Julia.

7. **cum primum**, *as soon as*. **cum primum**. Note the subjunctive. Regularly **cum primum** (as **simul atque**, **postquam**, **ubi**) takes the indicative in mere temporal expressions. Here the student will see reason for Caesar's return to the army, as well as the time.

8. **dat negotium**, *he employs, directs*.

10. **se — certiore faciant**, *inform him*.

constanter, *uniformly*, i.e. without any discrepancy in their accounts.

12. **dubitandum — quin**, *to hesitate to march*. The construction of **quin** with the subjunctive, after **dubitare** in this sense, is rare. Compare Cic. pro Sull., chap. 2, **non dubitasse quin defenderet**. The infinitive is the regular construction. **quin**, which is really the locative or instrumental of the interrogative and relative pronoun **qui** with **ne** (not), can express purpose, result, 'whereby not,' 'that not,' or interrogation 'why not?' The former gives the construction after verbs of preventing and negative sentences, the latter after expressions of doubt, e.g. **prohibet quin faciam**, "he prevents me from doing it" is literally "he prevents whereby (i.e. by which act of preventing) I should not do it."

CHAPTER 3.

15. **cum — venisset**. See note on **cum esset**, p. 113, l. 1.

de improviso, *unexpectedly*; literally, *from the unforeseen*.

celeriusque omni opinione, *and sooner than any one expected*. **opinione**. After an ablative after a comparative is really an ablative of separation. The pupil should see that there is nothing mysterious in such expressions. He must not think that a **quam** has been shoved out and the noun put into the ablative. The two constructions, with and without **quam**, are entirely inde-

pendent of each other. When we say *Caesar Pompeio melior est*, *Caesar is better than Pompey*, we see that the idea is "Caesar is removed from Pompey by a certain degree of excellence."

16. *proximi ex Belgis*, the nearest of the Belgae.

17. *se suaque — consentirent*. The indirect discourse after *qui dicerent*. Here the principal clauses have their verbs in the infinitive, the dependent clauses take the subjunctive. The direct form would be "We (*permittimus*) surrender ourselves (*nos*) and all our possessions (*nostra*) — we have not combined (*consensimus*) nor joined the conspiracy (*coniuravimus*), and we are ready (*parati sumus*), etc. The rest of the Belgae (*Belgae*) are (*sunt*) in arms and the Germans (*Germani*) who dwell (*incolunt*) on this side the Rhine, have joined themselves (*coniunxerunt*) to them, and so great (*tantus*) is (*est*) their infatuation (*furor*) that we could not restrain (*detertere potuerimus*) — our (*nostros*) kinsmen, who enjoy (*utuntur*) the same rights, and have (*habent*) one magistracy with ourselves (*nobiscum*), from conspiring (*consentiant*).

18. *se suaque omnia permittere*, surrender themselves and all their possessions. For the omission of the subject of *permittere*, cf. ii. 31, *se suaque omnia eorum potestati permittere*.

in fidem, to the protection.

115. 2. *paratos esse dare*. Compare i. 44, *paratum esse decertare*.

3. *oppidis recipere*, to receive him into their towns. Object to be supplied. *oppidis*, abl. after *recipere*. The locative ablative, common with *recipio*.

5. *cis Rhenum*, on this side the Rhine.

sese — coniunxisse, had joined them. The student should note that *joined* here is an intransitive verb, while the Latin cannot tolerate *coniuugo* without a direct object. Observe the difference, especially in putting English into Latin.

7. *utuntur — habeant*. Observe the omission of the conjunction.

9. *quin — consentirent*, from uniting with these. See note on *quin*, p. 114, l. 12.

CHAPTER 4.

10. *ab his*, from these, i.e. the *legati*.

11. *sic reperiebat*. Note omission of *haec*. This absolute use is like *sic respondebatur*, cf. i. 13, *ita didicisse*. The indirect discourse follows.

plerosque Belgas, the greater part of the Belgians.

15. *Teutonos Cimbrosque*. Compare i. 33, *ut ante Cimbri Teutonique fecissent*.

16. *ingredi prohibuerint*. *prohibere* always takes the infinitive in Caesar; but what is the usual construction after verbs of hindering? To understand the regular construction the pupil must see the construction from the Latin stand-

point. The Romans said "hold off so that not" (*quo minus*). We say "prevent him from doing." See Hints for Translating, pp. 325-26

solosque esse, qui — prohibuerint, in the direct discourse would be **solique sunt, qui — prohibuerint**, a relative clause of characteristic. Note the perfect tense of the direct discourse, although after secondary tenses.

17. **magnosque spiritus**. Compare i. 33, **tantos sibi spiritus**.

18. **de numero**. From the idea of separation and source in **de** came the notion of *concerning*. When we speak *about* a thing, that thing is the point from which all we say hangs. In our idiom what we say clusters *about* the subject.

habere explorata. This use of **habere** denotes the idea of the participle as a possession. The Romans could not say "I have lost a horse" (*habeo amissum equum*), for it would be nonsense to them to have a lost horse. It was only when the possessive idea was forgotten that such a verb became used as a simple colorless auxiliary. Compare **coactum habere**, i. 15.

omnia explorata. See note on **habere obstrictas**, p. 73, l. 14.

dicebant. Note the force of the imperfect.

19. **quantam quisque**, *how great a number each one had promised*.

21. **cognoverint**. Although after a secondary tense (*dicebant*), the original tense of the direct discourse is used to give force and power to the expression. Compare **prohibuerint**.

23. **armata milia centum**, *one hundred thousand armed men*. Compare i. 49, **sedecim milia expedita**. The degrading of the noun to the partitive genitive, e.g. **sedecim milia hominum** for **sedecim mille homines**, is the first step towards omitting the genitive entirely. Hence what was originally the important word is removed, e.g. **stratae viae** became **strata viarum**, and finally **strata** (our street). Note that **mille**, when used as an adjective, is not declined, but when a substantive it has a complete plural.

electa, *picked men*. For gender, cf. i. 49, **sedecim milia expedita**.

116. 2. **cum — tum**, *not only — but also*. **cum** is the acc. sing. neuter of the stem of the relative pronoun **quo**, while **tum** is from the pronominal stem **to**. The correlation is seen in such an expression as "during that time (**tum**) during which (**cum**)," i.e. when one act was going on (**cum**) another act was taking place at that time (**tum**); hence we meet *not only* one fact, *but also* another.

4. **belli summam**, *direction of the war*.

11. **appellantur**. Note the indicative because not connected with the speaker's thought.

CHAPTER 5.

13. **liberaliter prosecutus**, *having addressed kindly*. Compare iv. 18, **liberaliter respondit**. **cohortatus prosecutus**. Remember that the time of the

participle is bound to that of the leading verb. The action of *cohortatus* must have preceded that of *iussit*. If we should put into English "coming into Rome, he spent the night," we must use a circumlocution, such as a *cum* clause, to convey the proper time relation, but observe how convenient here are the perfect participles of deponent verbs.

15. *quae omnia*. Note how the Latin joins sentences into a great whole, by such links as the relative. Our idiom of course prefers the loose arrangement "*and all this*." The student must keep this in mind in putting English into Latin.

ad diem, *promptly to the day*. Compare v. 1, *ad certam diem*.

17. *quanto opere* — *intersit*, *how much it concerns the state and their common interest, that, etc.*

18. *distineri*, *be kept apart*. *manus* — *distineri*, subject of *intersit*.

20. *introduxerint*, *coeperint* = in direct discourse, *if they shall have lead, etc.*, future perfect.

24. *flumen Axonam*. Such a verb as *traduco* allows two accusatives, one of which depends on the notion of the preposition (*trans*), the other the simple object.

117. 1. *maturavit*, with infinitive, cf. i. 1, *maturat ab urbe proficisci*.

2. *quae res* — *muniebat*, *this position fortified, etc.* *quae res*. The Latin word *res* is like 'an empty vessel.' Into it is put the idea of the context. Should we render *and this thing*, we have a translation both slovenly and colorless. *muniebat*. This and the other imperfects show duration of the siege.

3. *post* — *essent*, *the rear*. Literally, *what was behind him*, *post eum*. Note the hyperbaton; position emphatic.

tuta, predicate adjective, *made safe*.

5. *in eo flumine*. Note that English *over* cannot be rendered by *trans* in such an expression. The bridge is on (over) the stream. *trans* would imply it was on the other side, e.g. *qui trans Rhenum incolunt*.

8. *munire iubet*. Note the omission of the subject of *munire*, which is very common with *iubeo* when the subject is readily supplied from the context or emphasis is put on the action.

pedum. Genitive of measure.

CHAPTER 6.

10. *ex itinere*, *on the march*. Compare i. 25, *ex itinere nostros aggressi*.

11. *aegre* — *sustentatum est*, *the attack was sustained with difficulty on that day*. Observe the impersonal construction. Compare v. 39, *aegre* is *dies sustentatur*.

13. *eadem atque*, *the same as that of the Belgae*. *atque* is used with expres-

sions of likeness and unlikeness. The origin of this use lies in two independent sentences, e.g., "there is the same manner of siege of the Gauls and the same of the Belgae."

14. **oppugnatio**, *mode of besieging*.

17. **totis moenibus**, ablative of place, *along the whole of the fortifications*. Compare vii. 2, **turres toto opere circumdedit**.

118. 2. **nulli**. Note its emphatic position. *There was not one who could get a foothold on the wall*.

3. **summa nobilitate**, *of the highest rank*. Compare i. 18, **summa audacia**. Ablative of characteristic, a phase of the instrumental ablative, implying association. See discussion of the ablative under a **Garumna**, p. 66, l. 10.

6. **sustinere**, absolute use, without object.

CHAPTER 7.

8. **isdem ducibus usus**, *using the same persons as guides*.

12. **potiundi oppidi**. Compare iii. 6, **potiundorum castrorum**. Note that **potior**, which requires a locative ablative, *to be master in a place*, takes the gerundive construction as if it were a transitive verb.

14. **vicis aedificisque incensis**, *when they had set fire to all the villages and buildings*. Compare i. 5, **vicos — aedificia — incendunt**. **morati**, **depopulati**, can be used in the nominative, because they are deponent verbs; but note the change in construction when we come to **incensis**. Would there be any difference according to the English construction between **depopulati** and **incensis**?

15. **omnibus copiis**. The instrumental ablative. The instrumental which the ablative represents is the case of association. See discussion of the ablative under a **Garumna**, p. 66, l. 10. The phrase **omnibus copiis** is often used without the preposition **cum** in military expression.

ab milibus — duobus, *less than two miles off*. For **amplius milibus**, cf. i. 15, **non amplius quinis — milibus**. **ab** is used adverbially, cf. ii. 30, **ab tanto spatio**.

16. **quae castra**. Observe the repetition of antecedent. This is especially common in Caesar with **dies**, **castra**, **locus**. In later Latin such repetition is rarely found.

CHAPTER 8.

20. **eximiam opinionem virtutis**, *their uncommon reputation for courage*. Compare ii. 24, **virtutis opinio est singularis**.

119. 2. **quid — auderent, periclitabatur**, *he strove to ascertain what the enemy could do by their valor and what our men dared (to do)*. This can be rendered also, *the valor of the enemy and the daring of our men*. The Latin,

unlike the English, avoids the use of abstract nouns. In fact there are few such nouns that have equivalents in Latin. Either concrete nouns are preferred, e.g. *a pueris*, from *boyhood*, or a clause, e.g. *permulta audent*, *great was their daring*. See Hints for Translating, pp. 325-26.

3. *loco idoneo*, ablative absolute, expressing cause. The ablative absolute was nothing more than an instrumental or locative. In such expressions as this its true nature is seen. See note to *eo deprecatore*, p. 73, l. 10.

6. *tantum — quantum loci*, *spread over so much space as*.

10. *ex utraque parte*, *on each side*.

11. *et frontem — redibat*, *and gently sloping in front sank down gradually to the plain*. *frontem* is the acc. of spec. with *fastigatus*.

21. *si quo opus esset*, = a future condition put into the imperfect subjunctive because dependent on *possent*. The *quo* depends on *duci*, inferred from *duci possent*, *if there should be any occasion for them*.

CHAPTER 9.

120. 2. *hanc si nostri transirent hostes expectabant*, *the enemy were waiting to see if our men would cross this*. For *si*, cf. i. 8, *si perumpere possent, conati*.

3. *ut — aggrederentur, parati*, *they stood ready (for battle), in order to attack them*. *ut — aggrederentur* is not dependent upon *parati*.

6. *secundiore — nostris*, *the engagement of the cavalry being more favorable for our soldiers*. For the ablative absolute, cf. chap. 8, *loco — opportuno*.

8. *demonstratum est*. See chap. 5.

10. *ut — expugnarent*, clause of purpose, introduced by *eo consilio*, with which it is in apposition. The secondary tense of the conclusion requires the imperfect *possent* and pluperfect *potuissent* in place of the future *poterunt* and future perfect *potuerint*. They will storm the fort if they can (if they shall be able); but if they cannot (if they shall not have been able), they will lay waste the lands.

CHAPTER 10.

16. *pugnatum est*. The impersonal construction. Such construction emphasizes the action at the expense of the actor. *There was fierce fighting*, without reference to those concerned therein.

17. *hostes impeditos nostri in flumine aggressi, magnum eorum numerum occiderunt*. For object with participle and verb, cf. i. 12, *eos impeditos aggressus — partem — concidit*, and i. 54, *perterritos insecuti — numerum occiderunt*.

22. *neque nostros — viderunt*, *and did not see our men advance to worse ground for the purpose of fighting*.

121. 2. optimum esse, *that it was best*. *constituerunt* admits of two constructions: an infinitive *esse*, with subject *domum* — *reverti*, and the purpose clause (*ut*) — *convenirent*. The sentence hangs in a balance between the notion of an indirect statement and that of purpose.

3. introduxissent. For future perfect, cf. *potuissent*.

8. his persuaderi — non poterat, *was not possible to persuade these to stay longer*, etc. Why must the impersonal construction be used with the passive of *persuadeo*?

CHAPTER 11.

11. magno cum strepitu. Note the emphatic position of *magno*: *great was the noise*. This is the regular position of the adjective before the preposition if emphasis is desired; cf. *summa cum laude*. In some cases it almost becomes a fixed position; but in the phrase *ob eam rem*, *ob eas res*, the preposition remains before the pronoun, in spite of *quam ob rem*, *hanc ob rem*.

13. cum sibi — peteret, *since each was seeking for himself the first place in the journey*.

14. fugae. Whether this is genitive or dative is impossible to determine, for Caesar says in vi. 27, *harum est consimilis*, but in v. 12, *aedificia fere Gallicis consimilia*.

15. speculatores, spies.

veritus. Note how convenient is the perfect participle of this deponent verb. Without it a cumbersome temporal clause would have been necessary. Although *vereor* is often inappropriate, and *metuo* (intelligent fear) would be preferable, yet the convenience of such a participle gave *vereor* an extended use in expressions of fearing.

hac re — Caesar — cognita. Observe how the subject *Caesar* is inserted in the very midst of the ablative absolute construction to show its interest in the expression: *as soon as Caesar found out that the enemy was on the retreat*.

17. castris continuat. *castris* without the preposition, a locative ablative especially common with verbs like *tineo*, *recipio*. Compare ii. 3, *oppidis recipere*.

19. his, i.e. *equitibus*, which is suggested by *omnem equitatum*. Compare i. 2, *civitati persuasit, ut — exirent*.

21. novissimos adorti, *attacking the rear*

23. ventum erat. See note to *pugnatum est*, p. 120, l. 16.

cum — consisterent, *while those in the rear, to whom our men had come up, were standing firm*.

122. 1. priores, sc. et, and those in advance.

3. exaudito clamore perturbatis ordinibus, *as soon as they heard the cry, they broke their ranks and put safety in flight*.

5. **quantum — spatium**, *as the length of the day allowed.*

6. **sub occasum**, *about sunset.* The same difference that in has with the accusative and ablative is observed by **sub**. With the accusative **sub** has a vagueness of meaning, e.g. Livy, xxi. 16, **sub idem tempus**, *about that same time* (either before or after). In Livy, xxi. 18, **sub hanc orationem**, **sub** = *after*; but in xxi. 57, **sub lucem**, **sub** = *before*.

CHAPTER 12.

8. **ex terrore ac fuga reciperent**, *recovered from their terror and flight.*

123. 1. **Noviodunum**, **Novio** — **dunum**, Newtown. The second member of this compound is the Gallie **dūnum**, *town or stronghold.*

ex itinere, *on his march.* Compare i. 25, **ex itinere nostros — aggressi**; and chap. 6, **id ex itinere — Belgae oppugnare coeperunt**. The preposition shows how short was the interval between the march and the attack.

2. **vacuum ab defensoribus**. For the ablative see note to a **Garumna flumine**, p. 66, l. 10.

3. **paucis defendentibus**, *though few were defending it.*

5. **ex fuga**. See Inductive Studies, under Ablative. The order of words is the same as in vii. 24, **omnis ex castris multitudo concurreret**.

CHAPTER 13.

124. 1. **obsidibus acceptis primis**, *having received as hostages the first men of the state.*

4. **qui cum**. Observe how the relative serves as the connecting link, cf. ii. 5, **quae omnia**. The English 'and they' would generally be rendered not by **et ii** but by **qui**.

8. **sese in eius fidem — venire**. Compare vi. 3, **in deditionem venire**.

10. **pueri mulieresque**, *women and children.* Note that **pueri** does not mean 'boys' alone.

passis manibus. Compare i. 51, **passis manibus flentes implorabant**.

CHAPTER 14.

12. **pro his — facit verba**, *Diviciacus speaks for these.*

14. **in fide — fuisse**, *have been on (terms of) confidence and friendship.*

civitatis Haeduae, *with the Haeduan state.* Objective genitive.

impulsos. Note emphatic position. *It was because they had been urged by their chiefs that they revolted.*

16. **indignitates**. The plural denotes *all kinds of insults.*

17. **qui**—**fuissent**, *those who had been the movers of that plot*. The antecedent of **qui** is **eos** to be supplied as subject of **profugisse**.

consilii principes = **consilii auctores**. Compare v. 51, **principes belli inferendi**; vi. 4, **qui princeps eius consilii fuerat**; vii. 37, **vel principes eius consilii fore profiterentur**.

20. **sua clementia**. *sua emphatic, that (accustomed) clemency of his*.

21. **in eos**, *towards them* (the Bellovaci). The Haedui ask it for them; hence **in eos**, not **in se**.

quod si fecerit. For future perfect (**si feceris**) in direct discourse. From here on we have in vivid narration the tenses of the direct discourse.

23. **si**—**inciderint**, **sustentare consuerint**. For **si**—**inciderunt**, **sustentare consuerunt** (present meaning = **solent**) in direct discourse.

quorum—**consuerint**, *by whose aid and resources they have been accustomed to sustain themselves, whatever wars occurred*. **sustentare**, in sense of **sustentatum est**, chap. 6, without object; or with object **bella** taken out of **si qua bella inciderint**.

CHAPTER 15.

125. 1. **honoris causa**, *out of respect to*.

2. **quod erat**. The conjunction is omitted (asyndeton) to bring out prominently the antithesis, *he will spare them; but, because the prestige of the state was so great*.

3. **magna**—**auctoritate**, *of great influence*. For the distinction between genitive and ablative of quality, see Inductive Studies.

9. **nihil pati vini**, *they suffered no wine*, etc. The subject (**eos**) of **pati** is omitted because easily understood from the context. Such omission is very common in the easy style of Caesar.

11. **homines feros magnaëque virtutis**, *savage men and of great bravery*. The genitive of quality, limiting **homines** in conjunction with the adjective **feros**. Compare v. 35, **Balventio, viro forti et magnæ auctoritatis**; and v. 54, **civitas imprimis firma et magnæ auctoritatis**.

14. **confirmare**. The omitted subject is **eos**, to which **sese** (the subject of **missuros** and **accepturos**) refers.

CHAPTER 16.

17. **non amplius milia passuum decem**. The student will see that the construction of **milia** is exactly the same as if **amplius** were not inserted. Such a use is an example of the loose and free construction (parataxis) which is found in all languages. It is really an insertion of an afterthought; *a distance of ten miles, not more anyway*.

18. **trans id flumen.** Observe emphatic position of **trans**, *it was on the other side of this river where the Nervii were encamped.*

consedissee, *had encamped.*

19. **cum Atrebatibus.** Elsewhere this word is treated as a noun of the third declension, e.g. **Atrebatibus**, chap. 4 and 23; **Atrebas**, iii. 27 and 35; **Atrebatibus**, iv. 21; **Atrebatum**, v. 46; **Atrebatem**, v. 22, vi. 6; **Atrebatibus**, vii. 75; **Atrebatibus**, vii. 76.

126. 2. **quique**, *and those* (eos, omitted subject of **coniecisse**) *who seemed.*

4. **quo**, adverb, *where there was no approach.* Although we use "where" thus loosely in English, in Latin **ubi** (*where*) can never be used unless in an expression of rest. What would be the Latin for *where I am staying; where I am going.*

CHAPTER 17.

8. **eorum dierum**—**exercitus perspecta**, *having perceived our army's mode of marching in those days.* **eorum dierum** limits **itineris**. For the accumulation of genitives, cf. vii. 76, **universae Galliae consensio libertatis vindicandae et pristinae belli laudis recuperandae.**

10. **inter singulas legiones**, *between the several legions.*

11. **magnum numerum**, *a great quantity.*

12. **neque**—**negotii**, *and there would be no difficulty.*

15. **ut**—**auderent**. Subject of **futurum**.

adiuvabat. Emphatic, *weight was given to their advice, by the following circumstance.*

16. **quod Nervii**, etc. Subject of **adiuvabat**.

17. **ei rei**. How is **rei** best rendered here? They are weak in their cavalry, because even at this time they pay no attention to it. **rei** corresponds pretty well to the English colorless *it*. To translate *that feature of military science* is more elaborate than Caesar intended.

18. **quo facilius**. **quo** (*whereby*, the instrumental of the relative pronoun) is used for **ut** in purpose clauses where there is a comparative; the instrumental ablative shows the measure of comparison, e.g. *he came to oppose them the (i.e. by the fact of his coming) more easily.*

20. **teneris arboribus**—**posset**, *by cutting into and bending down young trees and (allowing) their numerous branches to shoot forth laterally (in latitudinem enatis), and by placing among them brambles and thorns, they had caused these hedges to present a fortification like a wall, so (dense) that it was impossible either to go into it or even to see through it.* **enatis**, from **enascor**. **quo** = **ut eo**, and introduces a result clause.

21. **instar** (perhaps for the infinitive **instar[e]**; cf. **exemplar[e]**) takes the genitive dependent on the noun-idea; *the equivalent of*.

23. **ne perspicī quidem**. Note that the emphatic word is always between the **ne** and the **quidem**. The expression **ne — quidem** was stereotyped, while **ne** was the unrestricted negative as it was originally. So we find **ne-queo** (cannot), **ne-scio**, **ne-fas**. **Non** is for **ne + oinom**, *not one* = **noenum** = **non**; cf. **nihil** for **nihilum**.

CHAPTER 18.

127. 1. **haec**, *as follows*. Compare i. 48, **genus hoc erat pugnae. quem locum**. Compare i. 16, **quibus itineribus**.

2. **ab summo**. **summo** is here a substantive.

aequaliter declivis, *with even slope*.

ad flumen Sabim, quod. The antecedent of **quod** is **flumen**.

3. **pari acclivitate**. Ablative of characteristic. Such an ablative is really the instrumental, which the ablative represents. The instrumental denoted association. It is but a step from association to quality, or characteristic; for what is constant association becomes the characteristic. The student should see that all such expressions as "ablative of characteristic" are something more than mere pigeon-holes in which a construction can be placed. The reason for the construction is the chief thing to explain.

4. **adversus huic et contrarius**, etc., *facing this and opposite, clear at its base for about two hundred paces*.

5. **ut non**. How would negative purpose be expressed?

7. **secundum flumen**, etc., *along the river a few pickets of cavalry were seen*.

8. **videbantur**, the true passive, *were seen*.

CHAPTER 19.

11. **aliter se habebat ac**, *was otherwise than*. **aliter — ac**, the origin of this use of **ac** in expressions of unlikeness goes back to the antithesis of sentences; e.g. *the order of march was in one way and the one which the Belgae reported was in a different way*. Compare ii. 6, **eadem atque**.

12. **consuetudine sua**. Compare chap. 17, **consuetudine itineris — perspecta**.

13. **legiones expeditas**, *unencumbered*, i.e. without the hindrance of baggage.

totius. Emphatic.

14. **proxime conscriptae**, *which had been last levied*. The MSS. give both spellings, **proxime** and **proxume**. In Cicero's time the scholars were in doubt whether to write **imus** or **umus**, since the sound was like that of the French **u**. Compare note on **occupo**, chap. 1. A character **+** was invented in the time of Claudius and employed for a short season to represent this intermediate sound

between *i* and *u*. Cicero preferred *umus*, Caesar *imus*; and *imus* became the fixed form for the superlative.

18. *in silvas*. The plural denotes the different portions of the forest.

20. *quem ad finem* = *ad finem ad quem*.

128. 2. *quod tempus* — *convenerat*, *which had been agreed on*. Compare i. 36, *quod convenisset*.

9. *adverso colle*, *up the hill*. What is the literal translation? Is the expression an ablative of place or an ablative absolute, and where does the idea of *up* come in?

CHAPTER 20.

15. *paulo longius*, *a little too far*.

16. *aggeris petendi causa*, *for the purpose of seeking* (material for) *the rampart*.

qui — *processerant*. The antecedent of *qui* is the subject *ii* of *arcessendi*.

19. *successus*, *approach*.

20. *his difficultatibus* — *subsidio*, *two things were of advantage under these difficulties*.

129. 2. *nisi munitis castris*, *until the camp was fortified*. The ablative absolute, which in itself can express condition, is here accompanied by an explanatory *nisi*.

CHAPTER 21.

7. *quam partem* — *obtulit*, *whatever division chance presented to him*. What is the translation of the reading *quam in partem*?

9. *milites* — *quam uti*, etc., *having encouraged the soldiers in a speech not longer than* (was required to bid them) *remember*, etc.

suae pristinae virtutis. Position of *suae* emphatic, *the courage they have always shown*.

12. *quam quo telum adici posset*, *than* (the distance) *to which a missile could be cast*. Compare iii. 13, *neque propter altitudinem facile telum adieciatur*.

18. *ad insignia accommodanda*, *for putting on their field badges*, i.e. ornaments on the helmets, etc. See Introduction, 123, 1, b.

CHAPTER 22.

130. The chapter furnishes a good example of the periodic style so characteristic of the Latin. The English prefers independent sentences, the Latin dependent; hence the Latin period should be broken judiciously in translation into coördinate sentences.

3. *cum diversis legionibus* — *resisterent*, since the legions were separated, and some were resisting the enemy in one place, and others in another.

10. *in tanta rerum iniquitate*, in such an unfavorable state of affairs.

CHAPTER 23.

13. *acie*, gen. sing. The *ē* is really a by-form of *ī*, which represents *ei* for *ēi*, *ēi*.

cursu ac lassitudine exanimatos, out of breath from running and weariness, i.e. from their exhausting run.

14. *conantes insecuti*, sc. eos, i.e. *Atrebatas*.

19. *diversae duae legiones*. Compare chap. 22, *diversis legionibus*.

21. *congressi*, a construction, *ad sensum*, for *legiones* = *milites*.

22. *nudatis castris*, sc. *defensoribus*.

CHAPTER 24.

131. 5. *quos* — *pulsos* (*esse*), indirect discourse with *quos*, the subject of the infinitive.

6. *adversis* — *occorrebant*, met the enemy face to face.

7. *occorrebant* — *petebant*. Note the imperfect of vivid narration, showing various incidents of the action, while the perfect *contenderunt* gives the simple statement of the event.

10. *praecipites*, adjective, but, according to English idiom, best rendered by an adverb.

11. *qui cum impedimentis veniebant*. Compare chap. 19, *impedimenta collocarat*.

12. *oriebatur*, singular because *clamor fremitusque* form one idea; cf. *ratio. ordoque habebat*, ii. 19.

aliquē aliam in partem, some one way, others another.

14. *virtutis opinio*. Compare chap. 8, *propter eximiam opinionem virtutis*.

20. *castris impedimentis* — *potitos*. The ablative after *potior* is really a locative. The expression meant originally 'to be master in a place, hence to get possession of a thing.' To say simply that *potior* takes the ablative does not explain anything. The student should see why such construction was required.

CHAPTER 25.

132. The chapter is another good illustration of periodic structure. The period ('way around') is thus named because one is required to go around the entire sentence before he can appreciate its meaning. Since the English idiom

prefers coördinate sentences, the translation should break the Latin structure into small detached sentences. But remember constantly the main idea about which the period is grouped. Compare ii. 22. The principal clause is *Caesar — processit — iussit*, and the leading accessory idea is the clause *ubi — vidit — vidit*, which itself contains several dependent sentences.

1. *ab decimae legionis cohortatione* (*after encouraging the tenth legion*) = *ab decima legione, quam cohortatus erat*.

2. *signisque — conlatis*, and *since the standards were collected together*. Compare Caesar's Civil War, i. 71, *quod conlatis in unum locum signis neque ordines neque signa servarent*.

3. *ad pugnam impedimento*. Compare i. 25, *magno ad pugnam erat impedimento*.

5. *signo amisso*. The loss of the standard was considered a great disgrace.

7. *P. Sextio Baculo, fortissimo viro*. Note the use of the adjective with proper names. Very rarely is an adjective attached to a proper name, but *vir*, *homo*, and similar words are inserted in apposition, and with these the adjective is joined.

9. *proelio excedere*. Compare v. 36, *pugna ut excedant*; iv. 12, *proelio excesserat*; vii. 80, *proelio excedebant*; viii. 19, *excedere proelio*; but iii. 4, *ex pugna excedendi*; iv. 33, *ex proelio excedunt*.

11. *intermittere*, (*did not*) *stop* (coming up). The use of the verb with the participle is patterned after a Greek construction.

15. *signa inferre*, *to charge*.

16. *manipulos laxare*. The pupil will find an excellent translation of part of this chapter, as well as several interesting comments upon Caesar's life, in Longfellow's "Courtship of Miles Standish."

CHAPTER 26.

21. *urgeri ab hoste*, *was hard pressed by the enemy*.

133. 1. *aversi*, (while) *turned away*, i.e. *in their rear*.

5. *cursu incitato*, *having quickened their pace*. Compare chap. 11, *exaudito clamore — in fuga sibi praesidium ponerent*.

10. *versaretur*, singular, with several subjects.

11. *nihil — fecerunt*, *made all the haste they could*. What is the literal translation?

CHAPTER 27.

13. *etiam qui — procubuissent*, *even such as had fallen exhausted*. The subjunctive denotes characteristic.

16. *quo — praeferrent*, *in order that they might surpass the legionary soldiers*.

17. *at* has the force of an adversative conjunction, *but*. The condition of the Romans has been described. We pass now to the enemy. *at* marks this transition.

in *extrema spe salutis*. Compare chap. 25, in *extremis suis rebus*.

18. *virtutem praestiterunt*, *displayed courage*.

19. *iacentibus insisterent*, *stood upon those who had fallen*. Supply *iis* with *iacentibus*.

21. *ut ex tumulo*, *as from a mound*.

22. *non nequiquam*, *not in vain*.

25. *quae — facilia redegerat* = *quae facilia — reddiderat*. Compare iv. 3 *multo humiliores infirmioresque redegerunt*.

ex difficillimis, *although in themselves most difficult*. The ablative with *ex* shows that courage had removed these things from the category of difficult things, and made them easy.

CHAPTER 28.

134. 2. *redacto*, neuter singular, with two subjects (*gente ac nomine*) of different genders.

3. *quos — dixeramus*. Compare chap. 16, *mulieres — in eum locum coniecisse*.

4. *nihil impeditum*, *nothing was a hindrance*.

8. *vix ad quingentos*, *to scarcely five hundred*.

9. *usus misericordia*. The ablative after *utor* stands for the instrumental which the ablative represents, e.g. *avail himself of compassion*, = *use compassion, show compassion*.

10. *ut — videretur*. *videretur* in the sense of the true passive of *video*, not *seem*, but *be seen*. *In order that it might appear that Caesar used compassion toward, etc.*

The use of the participle *usus* after *videretur* is patterned after a Greek construction.

11. *uti iussit*. *iubeo*, takes infinitive with accusative, but the accusative is often omitted when easily gathered from the context. *imperavit* takes *ut* — *prohiberent* because the subjunctive clause expresses the *purpose* of the command. Put into Latin (using *impero*), *he ordered them not to cross the river*.

CHAPTER 29.

13. *de quibus supra scripsimus*. Compare chap. 16.

14. *ex itinere*. Compare i. 25, *ex itinere nostros — aggressi*.

15. *reverterunt — contulerunt*. Note the asyndeton.

16. **unum oppidum egregie natura munitum.** See vocabulary under *Aduatucorum oppidum*. The Latin word *oppidum* itself implies a stronghold, as its derivation illustrates: *ob*, in *opposition*, *pidum* (*pedum*), *standing-place* = place strong enough to meet all resistance (*ob*).

quod cum, the relative, as often, at beginning of sentence. **cum** is concessive

17. **ex omnibus in circuitu partibus**, *on all sides round about*.

19. **ducentorum pedum** qualifies *aditus*, genitive of measure.

21. **ex Cimbris Teutonisque.** Compare chap. 4.

22. **prognati** occurs rarely outside of the poets. Caesar uses the word again in vi. 18, *ab Dite patre prognatos*.

23. **agere ac portare**, *drive and convey*. The regular expression for plunder is *agere et ferre*.

24. **custodiam**, for baggage; **praesidium**, for keeping the place.

135. 1. **obitum**, *destruction*, *ob* + *eo*. So we use the word 'passing' in the sense of death.

alias — **alias**, *at one time* — *at another*.

2. **inlatum defenderent**, *warded it off when brought against them*. **bellum inferrent** = offensive war; **bellum defenderent** = defensive war.

CHAPTER 30.

7. **oppido sese continebant.** See note to *castris continuit*, p. 121, l. 17.

8. **inridere, increpitare**, historical infinitives. Such infinitives are used in hasty, vivid narration, as if the power of description failed, and the writer ignored person and number.

9. **quod** — **instrueretur**, the reason given by the Gauls.

10. **ab tanto spatio**, *so far away*. Compare chap. 7, *ab milibus passuum minus duobus castra posuerunt*. **spatio** is ablative of degree of difference; literally, *off by so great a space*.

12. **Gallis contemptui**, *contemptible to the Gauls*.

brevitas nostra = *nostrorum*.

14. **confiderent**. Real questions are in the subjunctive in the indirect discourse; but statements of fact, which are expressed for rhetorical reasons in the form of questions, take the infinitive and accusative. Compare **num deponere posse**, i. 14.

CHAPTER 31.

17. **non**, separated from *sine ope* for emphasis. *It was not without divine aid that*, etc.

existimare, sc. *se*. The subject is often omitted when it is the same as that of the main clause.

19. *se suaque* — *permittere*, sc. *se* as subject. Compare chap. 3, *se suaque omnia in fidem* — *permittere*.

136. 6. *sibi praestare*, *it was better for them*.

CHAPTER 32.

11. *attigisset* — *dedidissent*, both these verbs are for the future perfect of direct discourse.

12. *nisi armis traditis*. See note on *nisi munitis castris*, p. 129, l. 2.

in Nervii, *in the case of*. Compare i. 47, *in eo peccandi causa non esset*.

14. *ne quam* — *inferrent*, *not to inflict any injury*. *ne quam*. In the combinations *ne quis* and *si quis*, remember always to translate *quis* by "any."

ad suos. Accusative because the tidings were brought.

15. *facere*. We might expect the future, but the present shows the determination to do the will of Caesar immediately.

20. *pace usi sunt*, *they enjoyed peace*.

CHAPTER 33.

137. 1. *sub vesperum*, *about evening*. See note on *sub occasum*, p. 122, l. 6.

2. *quam* — *inuriam*. See note on *ne quam*, p. 136, l. 14.

militibus. Note the repetition of the noun, as in *castra* — *castris*, i. 48, in *silvas* — *ex silva*, ii. 19.

3. *ante into* — *consilio*, *carrying out a design which they had previously formed*.

7. *pellibus induxerant*, *had covered with skins*.

10. *celeriter*. Emphatic position: *at once the signal was given*.

11. *eo concursum*, *they rushed thither*. See note to *pugnatum est*, p. 120, l. 16.

13. *in extrema spe salutis*. Compare chap. 25, and chap. 27, *in extremis suis rebus*.

14. *in una virtute*, *in courage alone*.

15. *ad*, adverb. See note to p. 69, l. 5.

CHAPTER 34.

21. *cum legione una*, i.e. the seventh. Compare iii. 7, *cum legione septima*.

24. *in dicionem potestatemque*. Compare i. 31, *dicione atque imperio*.

CHAPTER 35.

138. 2. *perlata*. *perferre* means *to bring through from one point to another*. Each people sent on the news. *tanta* is emphatic. Translate: *So great was the impression of this war prevailing among the barbarians, that, etc.*

3. **quae incolerent.** *incolere* without object. Compare i. 1, *qui trans Rhenum incolunt.* **incolerent**, a part of the subjunctive clause *uti — mitterentur.*

4. **imperata facere.** Compare chap. 3, *obsides dare et imperata facere.*

daturas — facturas. Feminine because the *legati* represent the *nationes.* Note asyndeton.

5. **inita proxima aestate,** *at the beginning of the following summer.* Compare chap. 2, *et inita aestate.*

8. **ob easque res.** For position of the preposition, see note to **magno cum strepitu**, p. 121, l. 11.

9. **supplicatio**, generally three or four days were the limit.

quod — accidit nulli, *an honor which before that time had fallen to the lot of no one.* **quod** refers to the idea contained in the clause *dies — decreta est.* Observe the emphatic position of **nulli.** Note that **accidit** is used in a good sense, although the verb usually implies misfortune. Compare **contigisse**, i. 43, and **peius accidisse**, i. 31.

BOOK III.

CHAPTER 1.

139. 1. **proficisceretur.** The position of the verb is emphatic: *at the time of his setting out for Italy.*

2. **Galbam**, later one of the murderers of Caesar, and great-grandfather of Galba, the emperor.

7. **mittendi.** Compare **hiemandi** below, and ii. 1, **coniurandi.**

iter, accusative. Subject of **pateferi**, which depends on **volebat.** **iter per Alpes**, the Great St. Bernard Pass, where in later times Napoleon crossed.

magno cum periculo. Observe the position of **cum** here and in **magnis cum portoriis.** Compare note to p. 74, l. 4. The danger was from the savage tribes.

10. **secundis — proeliis factis castellisque — expugnatis, missis — legatis obsidibusque datis — pace facta.** The student must render these ablative absolutes into the best English which will bring out the order of this series of events.

13. **ipse.** Agrees with **Galba**, the subject of **constituit** to be supplied.

14. **in vico — qui vicus.** Note the repetition of antecedent so common in Caesar. The Latin *vicius* was originally a *dwelling*, then it came to mean a *collection of dwellings, village*, unfortified, as distinguished from *oppidum.* Compare note to p. 134, l. 16.

16. **cum.** Causal.

CHAPTER 2.

140. 5. **quam concesserat**, outside of the indirect discourse.

7. **id.** Explained by the clause **ut** — **caperent**.

aliquot de causis. Particularized by (1) **primum**, *first*; (2) **tum etiam**, *secondly* (then also); (3) **accedebat**, *in the third place, finally* (it was added).

9. **neque eam plenissimam**, *and that not entirely full*.

10. **commeatus petendi causa**, *to seek provision*. Note the many ways for expressing purpose in Latin.

12. **cum** — **decurrerent**. The imperfect subjunctive would be the future indicative in direct discourse.

13. **ne** — **quidem**. For position of emphatic word, see note, p. 126, l. 23.

14. **accedebat**. The subject is **quod** — **habebant**.

18. **sibi persuasum habebant**, *they were persuaded*; literally, *they had it persuaded to themselves*.

persuasum agrees with the clause **Romanos** — **adiungere**.

CHAPTER 3.

19. **opus hibernorum**. See Introduction, § 121.

20. **de frumento reliquoque commeatu**. Compare i. 39, first part of the chapter.

141. 1. **satis esse provisum**. Impersonal use; literally, *had been sufficiently provided*, i.e. sufficient provision had been made.

6. **neque subsidio veniri (posset)**, *neither could aid be brought*.

10. **maiori** — **parti placuit**, *it was the decision of the majority*.

11. **ad extremum** = **ad extremum casum**. Compare chap. 5, also **summo**, ii. 18; **angusto**, ii. 25. In these cases we have the substantive use of the adjective.

CHAPTER 4.

13. **brevi** — **vix**, both words emphatic. *So short was the space that elapsed, that scarcely was time given*. Compare i. 6, **vix qua** — **ducerentur**.

spatio = **tempore**.

constituissent, subjunctive by attraction.

14. **his rebus conlocandis atque administrandis**. The dative of the gerundive construction to denote purpose, a rare use in classical Latin. The usual construction in Caesar's time was **ad** with the accusative.

15. **decurrere (et) conicere**. Asyndeton. These verbs are historical infinitives. See note to **ducere**, p. 80, l. 4. Others are **repugnare**, **mittere**, **occurrere**, **ferre**, **superari**.

gaesa. Ancient writers term the **gaesum** a Gallic javelin, generally of iron.

17. *frustra*. Note its important position between *ullum* and *telum*.
ut, as often as.
 19. *hoc*. Explained by the rest of the sentence, *quod, etc.*
 22. *non modo* = *non modo non*. The order is *ac non modo facultas (non) dabatur defesso, etc.*
 23. *relinquendi* agrees with *loci*.

CHAPTER 5.

142. 1. *cum*. Temporal. Explain the difference in tense in *deficerent* and *coepissent*.
 8. *unam esse spem*. Observe emphatic position of *unam*: *there was but one hope*.
 10. *milites certiores facit, he directs or commands*. The meaning here is stronger than in "he informs his soldiers." Compare Civil War, i. 64, *ut certior fieret ne labori suo parceret*.

CHAPTER 6.

14. *quod* for *id, quod*.
 15. *cognoscendi*. The gerund depends on *facultatem* and has *quid fieret* for its object.
sui conligendi, to recover themselves. *sui* is best taken, not as the genitive of the personal pronoun, but as the neuter of the possessive adjective *suus*. *suum* = *one's own, one's interest, one's self*. This is shown by the fact that the same stereotyped expression is employed irrespective of gender. Or *sui* may be explained as the genitive of the reflexive pronoun limiting *conligendi, recovering of themselves*. But such a genitive dependent on the gerund we meet with rarely in Latin; e.g. *poenarum sit solvendi tempus, time of paying penalties; eius videndi, of seeing her*. The former theory, as remarked above, seems more reasonable.
 16. *commutata*, emphatic position.
 17. *potiundorum castrorum*. For gerundive construction of *potior*, see note to *potiundi oppidi*, p. 118, l. 12.
circumventos interficiunt = *circumveniunt et interficiunt*.
 143. 3. *fusis* and *exutis* are both in agreement with *copiis*. *armis* depends on *exutis*.
 5. *saepius, too often*. The meaning of the clauses which immediately follow is that he had encountered things different from his expectation when he set out. *alio se — viderat, remembered that he had come into winter quarters with one design, (but) saw that he had met a different state of affairs*.

CHAPTER 7.

16. **atque ita**, *and accordingly*.

17. **profectus esset**. *cum* is to be taken as belonging to this clause as well as to the preceding; hence the subjunctive.

19. **adulescens**. With proper names like our *junior*.

20. **mare Oceanum**, i.e. the Atlantic. The Mediterranean was **mare internum**, and by way of distinction this is called **mare Oceanum**. Compare i. 30.

hiemarat. Compare note to **mandarunt**, p. 76, l. 10. *v* was often dropped between two vowels, e.g. *sis* for *sī vis*. Even when written it was doubtless slurred over in pronunciation. On the other hand, *i* was doubled in sound; so we find, for example, *eius* frequently written *eiivs*, as it was pronounced.

CHAPTER 8.

144. 5. **huius**, *emphatic position*.

8. **et in magno impetu**, etc. The meaning is, that by reason of the great and unbroken violence of the sea, only a few harbors being on the coast and these held by the *Veneti*, they are naturally the masters of all who trade in that part of the world.

12. **quos dedissent**. For subjugation by Crassus, see ii. 34.

13. **ut sunt**, etc., *since or because*. The *ut* is causal and explanatory.

16. **acturos — laturus**, sc. *se* as subject.

21. **mittunt**, in pregnant sense. The idea of indirect discourse is gathered from *legationem* — **mittunt**.

suos, *his*.

sibi, *to them*.

22. **remittat**. In direct discourse what mood was used?

CHAPTER 9.

145. 2. **longius**, *too far*. Where was Caesar? See beginning of chap. 7
naves longas, *ships of war*.

5. **cum primum — potuit**. Note that the perfect indicative is used with *cum primum*. This is the regular construction as well as after *simulatque* and *postquam*. Compare *cum primum*, p. 114, l. 7.

per anni tempus. Observe the use of *per* in the temporal expression. Such a use of the preposition prepares the way for the breakdown of the inflectional system.

7. *in se*, against themselves.
8. *ad omnes nationes*, *ad*, among, in sense of *apud*.
9. *legatos — retentos — coniectos*. In apposition with *facinus*.
11. *hoc*, with the greater hope on this account, or this (they do) with greater hope, because, etc.
12. *pedestria itinera esse concisa* and *navigationem impeditam*. Objects of *sciebant*.
14. *nostros exercitus — posse*. Object of *confidebant*.
15. *diutius*, very long.
16. *iam ut*, even though.
17. *facultatem*, stock.
19. *longe aliam — atque*, far different from.
- in concluso mari*, like the Mediterranean Sea.
22. *naves — quam plurimas possunt*, as many ships as possible. Compare
- i. 7, *quam maximis potest itineribus*.

CHAPTER 10.

146. 1. *erant*, emphatic.
2. *multa*. Its appositives are *iniuriæ*, *rebellio*, *defectio*, *coniuratio*, and the clause *ne — arbitrarentur*.
3. *retentorum equitum*, in the detention of the knights. The participle *retentorum* conveys the leading idea. The student will observe this same thrusting into the participle the main idea of the clause in the stereotyped *A. U. C.*, *ab urbe condita*, from the founding of the city. The tendency to avoid the abstract noun made this use of the participle more and more common (cf. Hints for Translating, pp. 325-6). We have the same thing in English, "after this painful life ended," in the Book of Common Prayer.
- equitum* refers to *Silvius*, *Velanius*, and others, mentioned in chap. 8.
4. *tot civitatum coniuratio*, a conspiracy made by so many states.
5. *hac parte neglecta*, has a conditional force.
- sibi idem licere arbitrarentur*, would think they had the same license.

CHAPTER 11.

11. *proximi flumini*, cf. *proximus mare*, iii. 7.
13. *adeat*. Observe the omission of *ut*.
14. *arcessiti (esse)*, (who were said) to have been invited. Note that *dicebantur* is used personally. This is the common construction in the passive for the present and imperfect, if the subject be in the third person.

20. **qui curet**, *to see to it.*

Decimum Brutum, later one of the murderers of Caesar.

24. **eo**, i.e. among the Veneti.

CHAPTER 12.

147. 1. **posita**. In agreement with oppida implied in situs oppidorum.

2. **pedibus**, *on foot*, i.e. by land.

3. **cum**, *as often as*.

se incitavisset, *had come in*; literally, *had roused itself*.

4. **navibus**, *by ships*, i.e. by sea. In same construction as **pedibus**.

minuente, *at ebb*. (Observe the intransitive use of **minuo** here.)

5. **adflictarentur**, *stranded*. Subjunctive by attraction, as being part of the clause **ut — haberent — neque navibus (haberent)**, while **quod — accidit** is the parenthetical statement of a fact.

7. **his** refers to **aggere et mollibus**.

8. **suis fortunis desperare**. **despero** is used intransitively with dative. The origin of this construction is seen when the true meaning, "give up hope," (**de + spes**) is emphasized. So we find in i. 40 the construction with **de**: **cur de sua virtute — desperarent**.

9. **cuius rei = quarum**, i.e. **navium**.

11. **eo**, *for this reason*; referring to **quod — navigandi**.

CHAPTER 13.

16. **namque** (The Veneti do not have our difficulties in these waters), *for*, etc. **factae et armatae**, *were built and equipped*.

17. **planiores**, *flatter*.

18. **excipere**, *to meet, to encounter*.

148. 2. **quamvis**. In agreement with **vim** and **contumeliam**. **contumeliam**, *violence, buffeting*.

transtra, etc., *cross-beams (made) of timber (trabibus) a foot in thickness (altitudinem) were joined together (confixa) by iron bolts of the thickness (crassitudine) of a thumb (digiti pollicis)*.

6. **eius usus**. Does **eius** agree with **usus** or is it dependent on it? Compare **ea civitate** for **eorum civitate**, i. 9; **quae civitas**, i. 10; **qua spe**, iv. 6.

8. **tanta onera navium**, *ships of such weight*.

9. **posse**. Its subjects are **tempestates**, **impetus**, **onera**. It has two complementary verbs, **sustineri** to be read with the first two subjects, and **regi** to be read with **onera**. All depend on **arbitrantur**.

11. **praestaret**, sc. **classis** as subject.

reliqua, all other things.

pro, considering. See i. 2, last sentence.

illis refers to the Gauls.

12. *nostrae, sc. naves.*

his and *iis* refer to the ships of the Gauls.

15. *copulis, by grappling hooks.*

accedebat. The subject is *ut* — *timerent.*

cum governs the verbs *coepissent, dedissent.* The next three verbs depend on *ut.*

16. *ventus — vento, cf. in silvas — ex silva, ii. 9.*

CHAPTER 14.

20. *frustra, without result;* explained by the rest of the sentence.

22. *neque iis noceri posse, nor could they be injured.* What is the literal translation?

23. *quae.* Subject of *convenit* and *visa est;* its antecedent is *classem.*

149. 1. *paratissimae, thoroughly equipped.*

ornatissimae, finely provided.

2. *nostris, sc. navibus.*

adversae. In agreement with *naves.*

3. *neque satis Bruto — constabat, nor was it sufficiently clear to Brutus.*
The subject of *constabat* is *quid agerent — insisterent.*

6. *noceri non posse, no injury could be inflicted.*

7. *has, i.e. the turres.*

8. *neque — et.* Compare ii. 25, *hostes neque — et.*

missa, sc. tela.

9. *gravius, with more disastrous effect.*

magno usui, of great service: the same sense of *usus* as in ii. 9, *magno nobis usui;* but cf. *omnis usus* below, where *usus* has the sense of 'control.'

10. *falces.* In apposition with *una res.*

11. *falcium.* Governed by *absimili.*

his, i.e. mural hooks.

cum, as often as. Used here with the indicative; but cf. chap. 12, first sentence

17. *atque eo magis.* Compare i. 47, *et eo magis.*

18. *nullum — factum, no unusually brave deed; literally, no deed a little braver.*

CHAPTER 15.

22. *cum, as often as.* Compare chaps. 12, 14.

singulas, one by one.

binæ ac ternæ naves, *ships by twos and threes.*

24. **contendebant**, imperfect to show the continued attempts.

quod. Subject of **fieri** and refers to last part of previous sentence.

27. **ferebat**, *was bearing, was blowing.* Note intransitive use.

150. 1. **malacia ac tranquillitas**, *calm and stillness.*

exstitit, *stood out, prevailed.*

2. **quæ res**, *this circumstance*, i.e. the calm.

5. **pervenerint**, the perfect subjunctive in a result clause after a secondary tense. In such a use the sequence is independent of that of the main sentence.

cum, *since*; explanatory of **noctis interventu**.

ab hora fere quarta, about ten o'clock in the morning. The day was divided into twelve hours from sunrise to sunset.

CHAPTER 16.

8. **cum — tum**, *not only — but also.* Compare note to p. 116, l. 2.

11. **navium quod ubique fuerat**, *all the vessels they had anywhere*; literally, *what of vessels had been anywhere.*

12. **quibus**, *these*, i.e. the vessels.

15. **vindicandum (esse)**, etc. The meaning is, Caesar thought that the more severe punishment ought to be inflicted on these for this reason, that, etc.

17. **sub corona**, *under the crown*, i.e. as slaves. Prisoners of war, when about to be sold into slavery, were crowned with chaplets. So it has been said, but the real origin of the expression is unknown.

CHAPTER 17.

19. **quas — acceperat**. See chap. 11.

151. 1. **coegerat — clausurunt — coniunxerunt — convenerat**: events which had happened before the arrival of Sabinus.

2. **auctores**, *authors*, i.e. to sanction the war. What is the etymological meaning of the English word 'author'? Compare **augeo**.

7. **loco**, locative ablative. When an attribute is used with **loco** the preposition is generally omitted.

castris sese tenebat. See note to p. 121, l. 17, *kept himself in camp in a place suitable for everything.*

cum. Concessive. Compare i. 14, **cum ea ita sint**.

9. **pugnandi potestatem faceret**. Compare i. 40, near middle.

non solum — sed etiam. Compare chap. 16, **cum — tum**.

10. **in contempnionem veniret**. Compare i. 18, **in spem venire**.

11. **opinionem**, *impression.*

13. *ea causa*. Explained by rest of the sentence.

14. *eo*, i.e. Caesar.

nisi — *non*. Compare i. 44, *quod nisi rogatus non venerit*.

CHAPTER 18.

20. *quid fieri velit*. Object of *edocet*.

pro *perituga*, as if he were a deserter.

21. *quibus* — *proficiscatur*. Object of *docet*.

23. *neque longius abesse quin*, it is not further off than the next night that *Sabinus*, etc., i.e. no later than the next night *Sabinus* should, etc. *abesse quin*. The *quin* in such an expression is equivalent to *ut non* introducing the notion of result, e.g. "it is not far from the case that." Compare note to *dubitandum*, p. 114, l. 12.

24. *quod*, *this*, i.e. the information given above.

26. *amittendam esse* — *oportere*. Asyndeton.

ad castra iri oportere, they ought to go against the camp. The student has already seen how frequent is the use of impersonal verbs. *iri* in this construction is especially common, e.g. Inscription from Capua (C.I. 1215). *privatum precario adeitur*, private ground; dangerous passing.

res. Its appositives are *cunctatio*, *confirmatio*, *inopia*, *spes*, and *quod* — *credunt*.

27. *superiorum dierum Sabini*. Double genitive. Compare ii. 17, *eorum dierum*.

152. 3. *prius*, with *quam* following, *before*.

5. *ut explorata victoria*, as if victory were sure. Compare v. 43, *sicuti parta iam atque explorata victoria*.

CHAPTER 19.

8. *imo*. See note on *extremum*, chap. 3.

9. *passus mille*. Note *mille* in agreement with *passus*. Compare note to *milia expedita*, p. 115, l. 23.

11. *exanimatique, que* = *and so*.

16. *ac terga verterent*, but turned their backs, i.e. fled. *ac* after a negative clause is best rendered by *but*. See note on *non potuerunt ac terga*, iv. 35.

quos, these fugitives. Notice how frequently Caesar uses the relative at the beginning of a sentence where we use the demonstrative.

18. *paucos*, but few. Object of *reliquerunt*.

20. *Sabinus*, sc. *certior factus est*.

22. *animus*, disposition.

23. *mens*, mind.

CHAPTER 20.

153. 3. ex tertia parte, as a third part.

4. **paucis annis.** Nothing is known of Valerius. The defeat of Mallius is usually assigned to 78 B.C. during the Sertorian war, in which some of the Gauls participated.

7. **non mediocrem diligentiam.** Compare i. 39, *non mediocriter*.

8. **auxiliis equitatuque comparato.** Note the singular participles with two subjects of different genders.

10. **finitimae.** In agreement with *civitates*.

13. **quo plurimum valebant,** *in which they were very powerful.* Compare ii. 17, *nihil possent* and *pedestribus valent copiis*.

16. **in insidiis,** *in ambush.*

17. **disiectos,** *while they were scattered.*

CHAPTER 21.

20. **nostri.** Subject of *cuperent*.

autem, *while.*

21. **perspici.** The subject is the clause *quid — possent*.

22. **vertere.** The short form of the third person plural of the perfect, which is rarely used in Caesar (Civil War, i. 51 ; iii. 63), but common in Sallust.

24. **vineas turresque.** See Introduction, 127.

25. **alias — alias,** *now — again, at one time — at another.* Compare ii. 29.

154. 1. cuniculis, mines or underground passages to undermine the Roman agger.

cuius rei sunt longe peritissimi Aquitani, *in which mode of warfare the Aquitani are very expert.*

2. **aerariae secturae,** *copper mines.*

CHAPTER 22.

8. **devotis,** substantive.

9. **condicio,** *manner of living.*

commodis — fruuntur. The ablative after *frui* is really the instrumental which the ablative represents ; i.e. *enjoy themselves with*.

10. **amicitiae.** Indirect object of *dediderint*.

12. **qui.** Subject of *recusaret*.

13. **recusaret,** subjunctive of characteristic, after such expressions as *nemo est*, implying non-existence, and *est* implying existence.

17. **condicione,** *terms.*

CHAPTER 23.

20. **oppidum**. Subject of **expugnatum esse**.

155. 1. **ventum erat**, *they had come*. Impersonal construction. See note to **concedendum**, p. 72, l. 4.

quoqueversum, *in every direction*.

3. **citerioris Hispaniae**, from the standpoint of the Romans.

4. **finitimae**. In agreement with **quae**. *Which belong to [are of] hither Spain, nearest to Aquitania*.

5. **cum** after **magna**. Note its position. See note on p. 139, l. 7.

7. **summamque, que** = *and so*. See note on **exanimatique**, p. 152, l. 11.

10. **quod**. Explained by the clause **suas** — **augeri**.

animadvertit. Its object is **quod**, which is explained by **copias diduci**; **hostem vagari**, **obsidere**, **relinquere**; **frumentum commeatumque supportari**; **numerus augeri**.

11. **suas** — **hostem**, emphatic.

14. **in dies**, *daily*.

cunctandum — **quin**, should not delay about fighting. Compare note to **dubitandum**, p. 114, l. 12, and **abesse quin**, p. 151, l. 23.

CHAPTER 24.

17. **prima luce**. See i. 22.

18. **quid** — **caperent expectabant**, a loose use of the subjunctive to denote an action subsequent to that of the principal verb. We should expect **capturi essent**. Of course **expectare** itself implies a future notion. Compare vi. 39, **quid ab his praecipitur expectant**.

21. **esse**. Its subject is **potiri**.

25. **infirmiore animo**. This ablative of quality is equivalent to an adjective. For a like adjective phrase, see note on **ex essedis**, iv. 33.

27. **sese castris tenebant**. Compare note to p. 121, l. 17.

156. 4. **expectari** — **iretur**, *they should hesitate no longer to go against the camp*.

expectari — **quin**. See note to **dubitandum**, p. 114, l. 12, and **abesse quin**, p. 151, l. 23. Observe the fondness for a passive infinitive after an impersonal verb; e.g. **iri oportere**, iii. 18.

ad hostium castra, the only reference in the Gallic War to a Roman attack on a Gallic fortified camp.

CHAPTER 25.

6. **cum** — **cum**. The first **cum** determines the mood of **complerent**, **depellerent**, and **praerberent**; the second **cum**, the mood of **pugnaretur** and **acciderent**.

8. *ad pugnam*, for *fighting*.

9. *lapidibus* — *subministrandis* — *comportandis*. Gerundives expressing means.

11. *pugnaretur*. Impersonal. See note to *concedendum*, p. 72, l. 4.

CHAPTER 26.

16. *quid fieri velit*. Object of *ostendit*.

17. *erat imperatum*. Impersonal. See note to *concedendum*, p. 72, l. 4.

18. *intritae*, from *in*, negative, and *terere*, to *rub*. Explain the use of this word; that of the Eng. *trite*.

21. *prius* — *quam*, before.

157. 1. *videri*. Complement of *possent* understood.

quid — *gereretur*. Subject of *posset*.

5. *desperatis omnibus rebus*. What two constructions in the active after *desperare* has the student met? Compare note to *suis fortunis*, p. 147, l. 8. Note the use of the passive, as if the active construction were *desperare rem*.

8. *multa nocte*, late at night. Compare *multo die*, i. 22.

CHAPTER 27.

11. *ultro*, besides.

CHAPTER 28.

19. *longe ac* — *Galli*, in a far different way from the rest of the Gauls. See note to *eadem atque*, p. 117, l. 13, and *aliter se habebat ac*, p. 127, l. 11.

158. 1. *continentes silvas*, unbroken forests. Explain the exact force of *continentes* from its composition.

8. *longius*, too far.

CHAPTER 29.

10. *deinceps* = almost an adjective *continuis*, successively, one after another. Compare v. 40, *reliquis deinceps diebus*, and Civil War, iii. 56, *omnibus deinceps diebus*. The adverb is inserted between the adjective and the noun as if in imitation of the Greek idiom which places an adverb between the article and the noun with the force of an adjective; e.g. 'the present generation' is in Greek 'the now men.' For this adjective force of the adverb in an English derivative, see the word *peninsula* (*paene* + *insula*).

11. *ab latere*, on the flank.

12. *materiam*, timber.

16. *ipsi*. Note *asyndeton*.

18. *sub pellibus*, under skins, i.e. in tents which were covered with skins.

BOOK IV.

CHAPTER 1.

159. 1. qui fuit—consulibus. This clause establishes the date. Pompey and Crassus entered upon their consulship on the first of January in the year 55 B.C. See Introduction, 22–25.

2. Gnaeo—Crasso. Observe the omission of the conjunction, as in i. 35, *M. Messala—consulibus*.

3. magna cum multitudine. For the position of the preposition, cf. i. 10, *magno cum periculo*.

5. a mari, *from that part of the sea.*

7. exagitati, having been harassed. Compare ii. 29. *a finitimis exagitati. premebantur—prohibebantur.* Note the imperfects of continued action.

8. Sueborum gens. For position of Sueborum, cf. *apud Helvetios*, i. 2. See Introduction, 80.

13. anno post, *the year after.*

15. ratio atque usus belli, the art and practice of war. Compare ii. 20, *scientia atque usus militum*.

16. longius anno = diutius anno, longer than one year. Compare vii. 9, *longius triduo*. Does *longe* usually refer to place or time? Compare *longe* and *longius*, iii. 28; *longius*, i. 22; *longissime*, i. 1.

160. 1. maximam partem, for the most part.

2. lacte atque pecore vivunt. Compare v. 14, *lacte et carne vivunt. sunt in venationibus.* Compare vi. 21, *vita omnis in venationibus—consistit*.

3. quae res, and this mode of life.

4. a pueris, from boyhood. Note how the Latin avoids the use of the abstract noun. Remember this in writing English into Latin. Compare note to *quid—auderent*, ii. 8, and Hints for Translating, pp. 325–6.

nullo officio—adsuefacti, having been accustomed to no service nor discipline. Observe that the ablative follows *adsuefacti*, where in English we say “trained to a thing.”

7. locis frigidissimis, though their country is very cold.

vestitus, partitive genitive with quicquam.

CHAPTER 2.

10. ut quae—habeant, so that they have (persons) to whom they may sell those things which they have taken in war.

11. *quam quo* — *deciderent*, *than because they desire*, etc.
 13. *impenso parant pretio*, *procure at a great price*. Exact meaning of *impenso*?
 15. *haec* — *efficiunt*, *by daily exercise they make these capable of great labor*.
 18. *cum usus est*, *when there is need*. For this meaning of *usus*, cf. vi. 15, *hi, cum est usus atque aliquod bellum incidit, omnes in bello versantur*.
 20. *quamvis* to be taken with *pauci*, *although few*.
 21. *vinum* — *arbitrantur*. Cf. ii. 15, *nihil pati vini — inferri*.

CHAPTER 3.

161. 1. *publice*, *as a community*. Compare vi. 23, *civitatibus maxima laus est, quam*, etc.
 3. *una* — *a Suebis*, *in one direction from the Suebi*.
 5. *fuit*. Emphatic.
 6. *ut est captus Germanorum*, *as is the notion* (*captus* being a noun) *of the Germans*, i.e. *judged by the standards of the Germans*.
 9. *moribus adsuefacti*, cf. note to *nullo officio — adsuefacti*, p. 160, l. 4.
 12. *redegerunt* = *reddiderunt*. Compare ii. 27, *magnitudo redegerat*.

CHAPTER 4.

13. *in eadem causa*, *in the same condition*.
 14. *ad extremum tamen*, *at last however*.
 17. *ad utramque ripam*, *on each bank*.
 20. *transire prohibebant*. For the construction with *prohibere* in this sense, see note to *ingredi prohibuerint*, p. 115, l. 16.

CHAPTER 5.

162. 6. *infirmiorem*, *fickleness*.
 8. *nihil his committendum existimavit*, *thought that no confidence should be placed in them*.
 9. *est* — *consuetudinis*, *this belongs to Gallic custom*, i.e. *is a Gallic custom*.
 11. *vulgus circumsistat* — *cogant*. Notice the change in number caused by the collective idea in *vulgus*. Compare i. 2, *civitati persuasit, ut — exirent*.
 13. *his rebus* — *permoti*. Compare i. 37, *quibus rebus — commotus*.
 14. *quorum — necesse est*, *of which they must repent on the spot*. Compare iv. 2.
 15. *rumoribus serviant*, *are slaves to idle reports*. Compare vii. 34, *bello servire*.

CHAPTER 6.

17. *ne graviori — occurreret*, *that he might not encounter too serious a war. occurreret.* Compare iii. 6, *in bellum incideret.*

163. 1. *missas.* Emphatic.

2. *uti — discederent*, *to withdraw from the Rhine*, i.e. to go farther into Gaul. *omniaque, quae postulassent*, — *parata*, indirect discourse after the idea of a promise implied in the preceding. *fore parata* takes the place of the future passive infinitive. *postulassent* would be the future perfect indicative in the direct discourse.

3. *qua spe adducti*, *influenced by the hope of this*; literally, *by which hope*. *qua spe = huius rei spe*, as in i. 9, *ea civitate = ex eorum civitate*, and i. 10, *quae civitas = quorum civitas*, and v. 19, *hoc metu = huius rei metu*.

8. *constituit*, *made known his resolve*.

CHAPTER 7.

10. *quibus in locis.* Compare i. 6, *quibus itineribus.*

a quibus refers to *ea loca*.

13. *recusare — quin.* Compare notes to *dubitandum*, p. 114, l. 12, and *abesse quin*, p. 151, l. 23.

15. *resistere*, sc. *iis* as antecedent of *quicumque*.

17. *posse*, sc. *se*.

18. *possederint*, *come into possession of*. For *possidere* in sense of *potiri*, cf. *aer omne necessest — possidat inane*, Lucret. i. 386.

19. *concedere*, *are inferior*.

20. *neminem*. Observe the emphatic position. Compare i. 3, *quod aliud iter — nullum*.

CHAPTER 8.

164. 1. *quae visum est*, *what seemed proper*. *quae* object of *respondere* to be supplied.

3. *verum*, *reasonable, just*.

CHAPTER 9.

10. *post diem tertium*, *the third day after* (for *tertio die*). The Romans counted the day from which the period began as well as the day on which it ended. Hence the expression means 'the next day but one.'

11. *ne propius — moveret*, *that he should not advance nearer them*.

14. *hos — equites*, *they were waiting for this cavalry*; literally, *this cavalry was being waited for*.

CHAPTER 10.

16. **ex monte Vosego** = **ex ea parte montis**. Compare note to a mari. p. 159, l. 5. monte means here a long mountain-chain; see map. This reference is not in point considering the whole context in chap. 1.

17. **parte quadam**, a tributary.

18. **neque longius milibus**. Compare i. 15, **amplius — senis milibus**; also i. 22, **non longius — quingentis passibus**.

22. **citatus**, with a rapid current.

165. 3. **sunt qui**, there are some who.

existimantur, not the subjunctive, because **sunt qui** is simply equivalent to **nonnulli**.

4. **capitibus**, mouths; elsewhere the word usually signifies sources.

CHAPTER 11.

6. **ut — constitutum**. See chap. 9. Compare i. 22, **ut erat praeceptum**.

7. **in itinere congressi** = **congressi cum eo**, qui in itinere erat.

9. **praemitteret**, to send on. Observe the omission of the object.

sibi — faceret, that he would grant them permission.

ea condicione, the same terms.

11. **fecisset**. For two subjects with singular verbs, cf. ii. 26, **quantoque in periculo et castra et legiones et imperator versaretur**.

13. **eodem illo pertinere**. Compare i. 14, **eodem pertinere**.

16. **aquationis causa**, to get water.

17. **frequentissimi**, in as large numbers as possible. Note that **frequens** is not to be translated by its English derivative. The sense of crowded in the English *frequent*, a sense now obsolete, is seen in the following line from Ben Jonson: "'Tis Caesar's will to have a frequent senate;" **frequens** in the sense of *saepe* (cf. *erat Romae frequens*, Cicero) became more and more common, so that this meaning lived on in the Romance languages; e.g. French *fréquent*.

CHAPTER 12.

22. **ubi primum** = **cum primum** or **simul ac**.

23. **amplius — equites**, more than eight hundred cavalry. What other construction after **amplius**? See chap. 10.

166. 5. **rursus resistentibus**, while our men in their turn made a stand. Supply **nostris**.

6. **subfossis**, from *subfodere*, stabbed underneath. Note asyndeton.

7. *ita perterritos egerunt.* Note the force of *per* in *perterritos*. Compare v. 17, *praecipites hostes egerunt*.

10. *vir fortissimus.* *vir* generally follows the proper name.

12. *amicus—appellatus.* Compare i. 3, *a senatu—amicus appellatus*.

15. *atque, and so.* Compare *exanimatique*, iii. 19.

CHAPTER 13.

19. *per dolum atque insidias.* Compare i. 42, *ne per insidias—circumveniretur*.

20. *exspectare*; subject of *esse*.

22. *cognita—infirmirate.* *knowing the fickleness of the Gauls.* For this meaning of *infirmitas* compare chap. 5, *et infirmitatem Gallorum*.

23. *quantum—auctoritatis, how much influence.*

167. 2. *postridie eius diei.* Compare i. 23.

3. *Germani frequentes.* Compare chap. 1, *magna cum multitudine. Frequentes.* For meaning see note to *frequentissimi*, p. 165. l. 17.

5. *sui purgandi causa, to acquit themselves.* For the construction *sui purgandi*, see note on *sui conligendi*, p. 142, l. 15.

contra atque esset dictum, contrary to what had been said.

7. *de indutiis—impetrarent, might obtain their request for a truce by deceiving (him).* Compare v. 36, *de sua ac militum salute impetrari posse*.

CHAPTER 14.

12. *quid ageretur, what was going on.*

14. *discessu suorum, by the absence of their chiefs.*

15. *perturbantur.* The word is used in a pregnant sense. It is equivalent to *they are so confounded as to be in doubt*.

17. *praestaret.* Impersonal.

19. *quo loco, in this place.*

23. *ad quos consecrandos, to pursue them.* Caesar's conduct in this matter is a specimen of the barbarity of his age. It shows the little value set upon human life when ambition was to be gratified. Plutarch tells us that this act was severely censured at Rome.

CHAPTER 15.

168. 1. *clamore audito, hearing the outcry, i.e. of their women and children, who were being slain.*

suos interfici, that their own families were being massacred.

3. **ad confluentem**, *at the confluence*. The word is properly a participle, agreeing originally with some word which has dropped out. Compare *continens (terra)*, continent.

4. **fuga desperata**. Compare note to *desperatis omnibus rebus*, p. 157, l. 5.

6. **ad unum omnes**, *all to the last man*.

7. **ex timore**, *after the alarm*.

8. **capitum**. Compare i. 29, *capitum Helvetiorum*.

CHAPTER 16.

3. **Germanico confecto**. Compare i. 30, *bello Helvetiorum confecto*.

multis de causis; **multis**, emphatic.

14. **quarum illa fuit iustissima**, *of these the following was the most important*.

16. **suīs quoque** — **voluit**, *he desired that they should fear for their own possessions*.

18. **accessit** — **quod**, *moreover*; literally, *it was added also that*, etc.

19. **supra commemoravi**. See chap. 9, *magnam* — *missam*. Note that Caesar used the first person when he refers to himself as the writer, otherwise the third.

23. **eos** — **dederent**, *to surrender those who*, etc. Observe the omission of **ut**. Compare iii. 5, *certiores facit, paulisper intermitterent*, etc.

intulissent. Subjunctive by attraction.

169. 2. **cur** — **postularet**, *why did he claim that anything beyond the Rhine was under his sway or power?*

5. **miserant, fecerant, dederant**. Observe the asyndeton. **quod** — **premerentur**. Note on whose authority the cause is given.

7. **occupationibus reipublicae**, *by the business of the state*.

8. **transportaret**, after **orabant**.

9. **satis futurum**. The idea of a statement is implied in **orabant**.

10. **opinionem**. *reputation*.

11. **opinione et amicitia**, *by the reputation of having the friendship*.

CHAPTER 17.

170. 3. **Rhenum transire**. Probably Caesar crossed at Bonn, where the width (*latitudinem*) of the river is about 1500 feet, and the depth (*altitudinem*) about 15 feet.

5. **neque** — **statuebat**, *nor considered that it was consistent with his own dignity or that of the Roman people*.

6. **proponebatur**, *was manifest*; literally, *was presented to him*.

9. **rationem** — **instituit**, he determined upon this plan of a bridge.

tigna, posts or piles. **bina**, in pairs. **sesquipedalia**, a foot and a half thick. **ab imo praeacuta**, sharpened at the lower end. **dimensa ad altitudinem**, proportioned to the depth.

11. **haec cum machinationibus** — **adegerat**, when he had sunk (*immissa*) these into the river by means of engines and secured them there (*defixerat*), and had then driven them down (*adegerat*) with rammers.

13. **sublicae modo**, like a pile.

14. **ut** — **procumbent**, so as to incline according to the current.

15. **contra** — **conversa**, turned against the force and current of the river.

171. 1. **haec utraque** — **distinebantur**, these (two) pairs were kept apart by timbers, two feet thick, laid on above (for two feet was the distance between the piles) with two ties at each end.

3. **quibus** — **revinctis**, these being kept apart and secured at opposite ends.

6. **hoc artius**, so much the more closely.

haec contexebantur, these were covered with timbers laid over them lengthwise.

8. **ac nihilo setius**, and besides all this.

et, also.

9. **pro ariete**, as a buttress.

10. **aliae**, sc. **sublicae**.

11. **deiciendi operis**, for the purpose of throwing down the work. The genitive expresses purpose as if *causa* or *gratia* had been employed. Such a genitive of the gerundive was in existence from the earliest period of the language and is best explained as the genitive of quality. This construction is especially common in late Latin. Compare Tac. Ann. ii. 59, *Aegyptum profisciscitur cognoscendae antiquitatis*.

CHAPTER 18.

172. 1. **diebus decem, quibus**, within ten days. Compare iii. 23, *paucis diebus, quibus*.

coepta erat comportari. Compare *iaci coepti sunt*, ii. 6.

3. **firmo praesidio**, strong guard. Compare i. 3, *per tres — firmissimos populos*.

5. **liberaliter respondit**. Compare ii. 5, *liberaliterque oratione prosecutus*.

respondit — **iubet**. Observe the change from the perfect to the present. In Caesar's mind it was the *iubet* that was more important.

7. **institui coeptus est**. Why is *coeptus* passive?

CHAPTER 19.

12. **vicis aedificiisque.** Compare i. 5, **vicos — aedificia incendunt.**

13. **si — premerentur.** A subordinate clause in implied, indirect discourse, since **auxilium suum pollicitus**, *promised his aid*, is equivalent to *promised he would give his aid (if)*, etc.

16. **uti — demigrarent**, etc. Purpose. This is what the messengers were to urge. After **convenirent** the advice ceases, and we pass to a mere statement; hence indirect discourse.

18. **hunc esse — medium**, *this had been selected near the center.* **medium** agrees directly with **hunc**. Compare vi. 13, **regio totius Galliae media.**

21. **rebus** is explained by the clauses **ut — iniceret**, **ut — ulcisceretur**, etc.

CHAPTER 20.

173. 3. **exigua — reliqua.** Ablative absolute. Compare iii. 29, **reliquis item civitatibus.**

4. **tamen in Britanniam — contendit.** See description of Britain in Introduction.

5. **omnibus — intellegebat.** *because he discovered that help had been furnished to our enemy from that country in nearly all the wars with the Gauls.*

7. **si tempus — tamen**, *even if time should fail*, yet, etc.

8. **si — adisset — perspexisset — cognovisset.** Subject of **fore**.

10. **Gallis — incognita**, i.e. except the Veneti. Compare iii. 8, **Veneti in Britanniam navigare consuerunt.** According to ii. 4, Diviciacus once had the government, — **tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit.**

11. **illo.** Explain this adverb after verb of motion. Put in Latin "he goes there," "he stays there" (cf. **homini illic nobilissimo ac potentissimo conlocasse**, i. 18).

his ipsis, i.e. **mercatoribus.**

12. **contra Gallias**, *opposite to Gaul.* The plural refers to the several divisions.

15. **quem usum**, *what skill.*

17. **poterat.** Why the imperfect?

CHAPTER 21.

18. **idoneum**, *a suitable person.*

19. **Volusenum.** See iii. 5; vi. 41; viii. 48.

navi longa, *war ship.*

174. 4. **ad Veneticum bellum.** See iii. 9.

7. **qui polliceantur** — **āare**. The present infinitive for the future **se duros esse** is a rare construction after **polliceor**. In chap. 22 the regular tense is employed, **facturos pollicerentur**. The present after **polliceri sperare** expresses a definite, real fulfillment of the promise or hope.

10. **Atrebatibus superatis**, i.e. in the battle of the Sambre. See ii. 23.

11. **ibi** = **apud Atrebatas**.

13. **magni habebatur**, *was estimated highly*.

14. **fidem sequantur**, *to embrace the alliance*. Compare v. 20, **secutos fidem**.

15. **seque** — **venturum**, *that he (Caesar) would come*. For **se** referring to subject of preceding verb, compare ii. 35, **ab nationibus** — **mitterentur** — **qui se** — **imperata facturas pollicerentur**.

17. **qui** — **auderet**. Relative clause expressing cause. *Since he did not dare*.

CHAPTER 22.

21. **superioris temporis consilio**, *for their former (hostile) purpose*.

quod homines barbari, *because (they said, being as they were) barbarians*.

22. **fecissent**, why subjunctive?

175. 1. **belli gerendi**, objective genitive with **facultatem**.

anni tempus. Compare chap. 20, **si tempus anni**.

2. **has tantularum rarum occupationes**, *attention to such trifling matters as these*. Compare chap. 16, **occupationibus rei publicae**.

5. **coactis contractisque**. *Assembled and brought into port* (i.e. Itius, the present Boulogne. See map).

7. **navium longarum**. See chap. 21. Compare Greek *μακρὰ πλοῖα*.

8. **huc accedebant**, *there were in addition to that number*.

9. **ab milibus passuum octo**, *eight miles off*.

tenebantur, quominus, *detained from*. The construction with **quo minus** after verbs of hindering, resisting, etc., is really one of purpose or result. The meaning of **quo minus**, "whereby less," "the less," is much milder than **quin**, "whereby not." Hence **quo minus** was used to relieve the harshness in an expression of resistance, just as **noli** softens a prohibition, e.g. **noli facere** for **ne fac**.

13. **deducendum dedit**, *gave to lead*. **ducendum** is in agreement with **exercitum**. This use of the gerundive to express purpose is common.

CHAPTER 23.

17. **solvit**, *sets sail*. Supply **naves**. For the omission of this object, compare chap. 23. **naves** (nom.) — **leni vento solverunt**. In chap. 35 the object is expressed, **ipse** — **naves solvit**.

in ulteriorem portum. Ambletense. See map.

19. hora quarta, about 8.30 o'clock in the morning. Compare iii. 15.

20. Britanniam attigit. Near Dover. See map.

25. dum — convenirent, until the rest of the ships should come there.

176. 2. ut — administrarentur, as military science and especially the management of ships require (since these have a rapid and uncertain movement) that all things should be performed by them promptly. Note the omission of ut with administrarentur and that postularent following ut, as, would be the indicative in direct discourse. Compare ut — ratio — postulabat, ii. 22.

6. sublatis ancoris, the anchors having been weighed, i.e. weighing anchor.

7. aperto ac plano litore, between Walmer and Deal. See map.

CHAPTER 24.

9. quo genere = quibus.

10. egredi prohibebant. See note on suos ingredi prohibuerint, ii. 4. Notice the force of the imperfect.

13. ignotis locis. Compare locis frigidissimis, chap. 1.

14. militibus — desiliendum, the soldiers had to leap down.

15. simul et — et — et, etc. Observe the repetition of the conjunctions (Polysyndeton). It brings out in vivid picture what must be done at once.

17. insuefactos, trained to this.

CHAPTER 25.

177. 2. motus — expeditior. Compare. iii. 13, ut una celeritate et pulsu rerum praestaret.

3. naves — removeri, to be withdrawn a little. Obj. of iussit.

4. hostium — hostes. Compare castra — castris, i. 48.

5. quae res, this maneuver.

8. atque, and now.

9. qui — aquilam ferebat = aquilifer. The omitted antecedent of qui is the subject of inquit.

10. contestatus, calling upon.

ea res, his act, i.e., what he was about to do.

12. praestitero, I shall have discharged. The future perfect expresses here the promptness of the action.

14. cohortati inter se, exhorting one another. For inter se taking the place of the direct object, compare vi. 8, cum Galli cohortati inter se; and vi. 40, itaque inter se cohortati.

16. ex proximis — navibus = ii, qui in proximis navibus erant, ex iis (i.e. navibus) cum conspexissent. The subject of appropinquarunt is ii implied in ex proximis, (those) from the nearest.

CHAPTER 26.

18. *ab utrisque*, on both sides ; literally, by those on both sides.

19. *ordines servare*, keep their ranks.

20. *alius alia ex navi*, one from one vessel, another from another.

quibus signis—se aggregabat, assembled about whatever standards he met.

22. *singulares*, one by one.

178. 1. *in universos*, upon our collected forces. See *universi—desiluerunt*, chap. 25.

2. *scaphas longarum navium*, the boats belonging to the ships of war.

3. *iussit—submittebat*. Note the change in tense. The command was given once for all ; the sending of aid was continuous.

4. *simul* = *simul atque*, as soon as.

in arido. Compare chap. 24, *aut ex arido*.

CHAPTER 27.

9. *simul atque—receperunt*. Compare ii. 12, *priusquam—reciperent*.

10. *miserunt—polliciti sunt*. Notice the asyndeton.

11. *quae imperasset*. The pluperfect subjunctive is for the future perfect indicative of direct discourse.

12. *supra demonstraveram*. See chap. 21.

14. *oratoris modo*, in the character of ambassador.

17. *ut ignosceretur*, that pardon might be granted.

18. *in continentem*. See note on *confluentem*, chap. 16.

22. *remigrare in agros*, to retire to their country.

CHAPTER 28.

179. 1. *post diem quartum quam* = *quarto die, postquam*. Compare iv. 7, *post diem tertium*.

2. *supra demonstratum est*. See chaps. 22 and 23.

3. *ex superiore portu*. Compare chap. 23, *in ulteriorem portum*.

4. *solverunt*. See note on *solvit*, p. 175, l. 17.

6. *aliae—aliae*, some—others.

7. *quae—solis occasum*. Note the use of the adverb *propius*, and the meaning of *solis occasum*. For the latter, cf. i. 1.

10. *adversa nocte*, in spite of its being night.

CHAPTER 29.

11. **luna plena.** Astronomical calculation fixes this time of full moon on the night of the 30th of August, 55 B.C.

qui dies, *which period* (of full moon). Compare chap. 36, *die aequinoctii*.

12. **aestus maximos,** *spring tides.* Remember that the Romans were acquainted only with the Mediterranean, whose tide is scarcely appreciable.

14. **transportandum curaverat.** See note on *deducendum dedit*, p. 175.

1. 13. 19. **id quod,** *a thing which.* **id** is in apposition with the clause **magna facta.**

21. **quibus — possent.** Subjunctive of characteristic.

22. **quod omnibus constabat,** *because it was evident to all.*

23. **hiemari — oportere.** Note the fondness for the passive infinitive with an impersonal verb.

CHAPTER 30.

180. 1. **principes.** Subject of *duxerunt*.

2. **convenerant.** See chap. 27, *principesque undique convenire — coeperunt.*

4. **quae hoc — augustiora,** *which was smaller on this account.* See below.

6. **factu.** See note on *perfacile factu*, p. 68, l. 2.

CHAPTER 31.

10. **ex — discedere.** Compare chap. 27, *remigrare in agros.*

12. **ex eventu navium,** *from the fate of the ships.* Compare viii. 23, *quae Bellovacorum speculabantur eventum.*

13. **ex eo quod,** *from the fact that.*

14. **ad omnes casus,** *against every emergency.*

16. **quae — naves, earum,** *of those ships which, etc.*

17. **quae — usui,** *whatever was of use.*

19. **reliquis ut — effecit,** *he brought it about that the voyage could be made well enough with the rest.*

CHAPTER 32.

181. 1. **frumentatum.** Supine.

2. **neque ulla — interposita,** *no suspicion of war having arisen as yet.*

3. **hominum,** i.e. the Britons.

4. *ventitaret*, *kept coming again and again*. Note that the tense and the derivative ending combine to make this a double imperfect.

6. *quam consuetudo ferret*, *than usual*; literally, *than custom brought*.

7. *id, quod erat*, *that which was really the case*.

8. *aliquid — consilii*. In apposition with *id*.

10. *armari*, *to arm themselves*. The verb has a middle or reflexive force. The passive voice is a development of the middle, denoting the action upon the subject. A verb of this kind shows the easy transition to the passive. A survival of the middle voice is met with in the deponent verbs *ator*, *fruor*, etc., and the ablative after them is explained as an instrumental ablative; e.g. *vescor carne*, *I eat meat*; literally, *I support myself by means of meat*.

12. *aegre sustinere*, *to stand their ground with difficulty*. For *sustinere* used absolutely, cf. ii. 6, *sustinere non posse*, and chap. 11, at end.

conferta legione. The ablative absolute is best translated here by a coördinate clause: *he saw that the legion was crowded together, and that weapons*, etc.

CHAPTER 33.

19. *genus — hoc pugnae*, *their method of fighting from chariots is as follows*.

ex essedis is a prepositional phrase which is taken with *pugnae* almost in the sense of an adjective. *ex essedis pugnae*, *chariot fighting*. Compare v. 13, *omnes ex Gallia naves = omnes Gallicae naves*.

21. *cum se — insinuaverunt*, *when they have worked themselves in among the troops of cavalry*. For the use of *cum* with the indicative see note on *cum esset*, p. 113, l. 1.

182. 3. *ita mobilitatem — praestant*, *thus they display the speed of horse and the firmness of foot in battles*.

6. *incitatos equos*, *their horses at full speed*. *brevis*, *in a moment*.

7. *per temonem percurrere*, *run along the pole*.

CHAPTER 34.

10. *eius adventu*. Compare iii. 23, *quorum adventu*.

11. *hostes constiterunt, nostri — receperunt*. For the asyndeton, cf. i. 18, *concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet*.

12. *ad lacesendum*. Observe the omission of the object.

alienum tempus, *an unfavorable time*.

16. *quae — prohiberent*, *so as to keep our men in camp and hinder the enemy from fighting*.

20. *sui liberandi*, *of freeing themselves*. What part of speech is *sui*? See note on *sui colligendi*, p. 142, l. 15.

quanta — daretur. Indirect question after *demonstraverunt*.

CHAPTER 35.

183. 1. *idem* — *fore, the same thing would occur which, etc.*

2. *ut* — *effugerent*. In apposition with *idem*.

3. *de quo ante dictum est*. See chap. 21.

6. *ferre non potuerunt ac terga verterunt*, *were not able to bear, but turned their backs*. For this use of *ac*, *et*, and *que* after a negative clause, compare chap. 36, *non potuerunt et paulo infra delatae sunt*; also iii. 19, *ne unum quidem nostrorum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent*; and vii. 4, *non destitit tamen atque in agris habet delectum*. Our idiom requires the adversative conjunction.

7. *tanto spatio* — *quantum*, *as far as*; literally, *over as much space as*.

CHAPTER 36.

10. *legati* — *de pace venerunt*. Compare i. 27, *Helvetii* — *legatos de deditione* — *miserunt*; ii. 6, *qui legati de pace* — *venerant*; chap. 27, *legatos de pace miserunt*.

13. *die aequinoctii*, *the time of the equinox*, i.e. September 24. Caesar may have left the island, as Napoleon III. suggested, about September 12.

13. *hiemi navigationem subiciendam*, *that the voyage should be exposed to foul weather*.

17. *quos reliqui*, *as the rest*. *reliqui* for *reliquae*, since Caesar had in mind those in the ships rather than the ships themselves.

paulo infra. In the middle of the English Channel the current runs east, while along the shore of France it sets in westward.

portus capere, *to reach the port*. Compare chap. 26, *cursum tenere atque insulam capere*.

et — *delatae sunt*. See note on *ac*, chap. 35, *ac terga verterunt*.

CHAPTER 37.

19. *quibus ex navibus*, i.e. the two transports mentioned in chap. 36, *onerariae duae*.

22. *non ita magno*, *not very large*.

circumsteterunt, *surrounded them*. For the omission of an object, compare i. 48, *si qui* — *deciderat circumstitebant*.

184. 2. *ad clamorem*, *at the cry*.

5. *amplius horis quattuor*. What other construction does Caesar often use? Compare note to *amplius*, p. 125, l. 17.

7. *postea* — *quam* = *posteaquam* by tmesis.

CHAPTER 38.

12. **qui cum**, *since they*.

siccitates. The plural of the abstract noun is explained by the plural **paludum**. Compare vi. 30, **silvarum ac fluminum petunt propinquitates**.

13. **quo — reciperent**, *whither they could betake themselves*. Subjunctive of characteristic.

superiore anno. See iii. 28 and 29.

20. **reliquae neglexerunt**. Note the asyndeton.

21. **supplicatio**. Compare ii. 35, **dies quindecim supplicatio**.

EXERCISES IN LATIN COMPOSITION.

The numerals indicate the chapters in the Text upon which the Vocabulary of the Exercise is based.

I. 2.

489 (431, 4); M. 255; A. 255, *a*; G. 409; B. 227, 1; L. & M. 639. — 475 (416, *n*. 1); M. 258; A. 245, *b*; G. 408, *n*. 2; B. 219; L. & M. 612. — 480 (424); M. 238, 1; A. 253; G. 397; B. 226; L. & M. 650. — 477 (421, 1); M. 253; A. 249; G. 407; B. 218, 1; L. & M. 646. — 544 (491); M. 315; A. 286; G. 510; B. 258; L. & M. 803; 804.

OF the Helvetians, Orgetorix was by far the most wealthy. When Messala was consul, the nobility was incited by his desire for sovereignty to form a conspiracy. He persuades the state to go forth from the territory. ¹“Will it not be very easy, O Helvetians, since you excel all in valor, to get the power of the whole of Gaul? To this I can persuade you the more easily, because the character of the country confines you on every side; on the one side, the Rhine, a very deep river, separates our land from the Germans; on the other side Mt. Jura is between us and the Sequani.” These circumstances caused the Helvetians to range less widely and less easily make war upon all persons. Hence it resulted that the men were affected with great sorrow, since they were fond of war. In the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso these Helvetians thought that considering their renown for bravery their territory was too narrow, although it extends 240 miles.

¹ Introduce by *nonne*.

I. 3.

628 (542, III); M. 291; A. 300; G. 432; B. 338, 3; L. & M. 994. — 568 (497, II); M. 328; A. 317; G. 545, 1; B. 282; L. & M. 891. — 628 (544, 1); M. 291; A. 296; G. 427; B. 338, 3; L. & M. 995. — 635, 1 (547, *n*. 1); M. 302; A. 303, *r*.; G. 436; B. 340, 2; L. & M. 1007.

By these facts Orgetorix induced them to provide such things as were necessary for their departure. ¹ It was necessary that they should buy up as great a number

¹ *oportere*.

as possible of beasts of burden, make as large sowings as possible, in order that plenty of grain might be on hand, and establish peace with their neighbors. Two years are sufficient to execute their designs. The third year was fixed by them for their departure. Orgetorix,² having taken upon himself the embassy to the states, persuades Casticus to seize the power in his own state. Dumnorix was much beloved by the people, and attempts the same, since the daughter of Orgetorix had been given him in marriage. It was a very easy thing for the Helvetians to accomplish their attempts, because Orgetorix could obtain the sovereignty of his own state, and there was no doubt that they were the most powerful of Gaul. "I assure you,"³ says Orgetorix, "that I shall get the power with my own army." The Helvetians, incited by this speech, and² giving a pledge to one another, hope that they can get possession of the whole of Gaul.

² Ablative absolute.

³ inquit.

I. 5, 6.

479 (417, 2); M. 248; A. 250; G. 403; B. 223; L. & M. 655. — 462 (380, II, 2); M. 233; A. 258; G. 391; B. 229; L. & M. 600. — 568 (497, II); M. 328; A. 317; G. 545, 1; B. 282; L. & M. 891. — 591, 1 (503, 1); M. 383; A. 320; G. 631, 1; B. 283; L. & M. 836. — 755, n. 2 (642-644); M. 501, 4; 498; A. 376; G. App.; B. 371, d; L. & M. 1169; 1171.

After the death of Orgetorix the Helvetians attempted to do that which had been resolved upon, namely, to go forth from their territory. Thinking that they were ready for this undertaking, they set fire to their towns, about twelve in number. All the grain is burned, except what can be carried with them. The Helvetians take away the hope of a return home, and are ready to undergo all dangers. ¹ Each one should carry forth from home for himself provisions for three months. ² The Rauraci are persuaded to adopt the same plan. ³ And so the Rauraci burn down their towns and set out with the Helvetians, who had united to themselves the Boii, dwelling on the other side of the Rhine. Of the two routes by which it was possible to go forth from the country, one was so narrow that scarcely the wagons could be drawn in single file, over which a very high mountain hangs. ⁴ Hence they fear that a very few might hinder them; the other was much easier, and the Helvetians thought that they could persuade the Allobroges to allow them to pass through their territory. A day was appointed on which they all should meet at the Rhone. This day was not the 18th of April, but ⁵ without doubt they must meet on the 28th of March.

¹ cuique cibaria efferenda.

² Rauracis persuadetur.

³ itaque.

⁴ hac de causa vereri ne.

⁵ sine dubio.

I. 9, 10.

600, II (521, II, 2); M. 347; A. 325; G. 585; B. 288; L. & M. 858. — 426, I (385); M. 205; A. 227; G. 346; B. 187, II; L. & M. 530. — 643: 646 (524); M. 392: 403; A. 336; G. 650; B. 313: 319; L. & M. 1020: 1034. — 429 (386); M. 202; A. 228; G. 347; B. 187, III; L. & M. 638.

If the Sequani were unwilling, the Helvetians could not pass by the way which was left. They send Dumnorix to persuade them, since his popularity had great influence among the Sequani, and since Dumnorix himself was anxious for a revolution and wished to have as many states as possible attached to him. Therefore, ¹having undertaken the affair, he persuaded the Sequani not to hinder the Helvetians in their march, but allow them to pass without harm. When it was reported to Caesar that the Helvetians were intending to march through the territory of the Sequani, he saw that it would be attended with great danger to have warlike men in an open country. For these reasons Titus Labienus is appointed to the command of the fortifications ²which had been made. By forced marches Caesar proceeded to Italy in order to levy two legions and march with them by the nearest route across the Alps into Further Gaul. After having routed the Centrones, who attempted to hinder his army on the march, and ³having arrived in the territory of the Vocontii, he led his army among the Segusiavi, who were the first beyond the Province.

¹ Ablative absolute.

² Participle.

³ Introduce by a *cum* clause.

I. 12.

649, II (529, II); M. 394; A. 334; G. 467; B. 300; L. & M. 810. — 570 (500, II); M. 337; A. 319; G. 552; B. 284; L. & M. 902. — 497, ³ (442); M. 424; A. 191; G. 325, R. 6; B. 239: 241, 2.

The Saône flows through the territories of the Haedui with such incredible slowness that the eye cannot determine in which direction it flows. When spies informed Caesar that the Helvetians were crossing this river by rafts joined together, he sets out from the camp with three legions about the third watch, and comes up with a part of their forces, because all of them had not yet crossed the stream. This division ¹was encumbered with baggage and did not expect that Caesar would attack them. A great part of them was cut to pieces; the rest ²betaking themselves to flight concealed themselves in the nearest woods. Of the four cantons into which the Helvetian state is divided, this one is called Tigurinus, ³a canton which having left their home, and ⁴having slain Lucius Cassius the

¹ Participle.

² Introduce by *cum* clause.

³ Omit.

⁴ Ablative absolute.

consul, sent the Roman army under the yoke. Caesar ⁵was uncertain whether ⁶it happened by the design of the immortal gods ⁵or not that the part of the Helvetian state which had brought calamity upon the Roman people was the first to pay the penalty. Because Lucius Piso had been slain by the Tigurini, Caesar could avenge not only the public but also his private wrongs.

⁵ nescire utrum — necne.

⁶ fieri.

I. 14.

442, 5 (397); M. 225, 4; A. 216; G. 372; B. 201, 1; L. & M. 560: 563. — 378 (351, 1, n. 3); M. 385, 4; A. 210, c; G. 456; B. 162, 2, b; L. & M. 698: 701. — 454 (406, II); M. 227, 1; A. 219; G. 376; B. 206, b; L. & M. 588. — 237 (234); M. 295; A. 129; G. 251; B. 337, 7; L. & M. 987. — 431 (388); M. 207; A. 232; G. 355; B. 189, 1; L. & M. 991. — 579 (507, III); M. 366; A. 308; G. 597; B. 304; L. & M. 938.

"I feel less hesitation," ¹says Caesar, "because I remember those things which you have mentioned; and I feel the more indignant in proportion as they have happened to us undeservedly. We are not conscious of having done any wrong, for if we were conscious, it would not be difficult to be on guard. But we are not aware that we have done anything on account of which we should fear; and ²should we fear without cause? But even if I were willing to forget your former wrongs, can I also lay aside the remembrance of recent outrages? You attempted a march through the Province against my will, and you molested the Haedui. ³Do you insolently boast of your victory and wonder that you have committed wrongs for so long a time with impunity? But remember that the gods are wont to grant to persons a greater prosperity in order that they may suffer the more severely from a reverse of circumstances. Although these things are so, yet, if you give hostages to me in order that I may know that you will do what you ⁴promise, I will make peace with you."

¹ inquit.

² Introduce by **num**, implying what answer?

³ Introduce by **ne** enclitic.

⁴ Future perfect.

I. 18.

473, 2 (419, II); M. 246; A. 251; G. 400; B. 224; L. & M. 643. — 484, 2 (426, 2); M. 242, 2; A. 258, d; G. 411; B. 232, 2; L. & M. 620: 621. — 633, 1 (546, 1); M. 301; A. 302; G. 435; B. 340, a; L. & M. 1005: 1006. — 433 (390, II); M. 206; A. 233; G. 356; B. 191; L. & M. 547: 548.

Dumnorix, the brother of Diviciacus, was indicated by the speech of Liscus. But very many were present, and Caesar, ¹being unwilling that these matters should be discussed, ²dismissing the council, detained Liscus. When Caesar inquired from him about those things which he had said, Liscus spoke boldly.

¹ Introduce by a **quod** clause.

² Ablative absolute or a temporal clause.

"Dumnorix, O Caesar, is a man of great favor with the people on account of his liberality, and there is no ³doubt that he is eager for a revolution. For many years no one dared to bid against him when he bid. By these means he increased his own property in order that he might maintain constantly, at his own expense, a great number of cavalry. This man Dumnorix had great influence at home and among the neighbouring states, ⁴for he had given his mother in marriage to a most noble man among the Bituriges, and himself had taken a wife from the Helvetians, ⁵having given his sister in marriage into other states. Since he favors the Helvetians on account of this connection, he hates the Romans, O Caesar, because by their arrival they ⁶caused his power to become weak, and restored his brother, Diviciacus, to his former position of influence. If anything happens to the Romans, he will entertain the highest hope of gaining the power, but under the rule of the Romans he will despair of royalty."

³ *dubium quin.*

⁴ *namque.*

⁵ Ablative absolute or a temporal clause.

⁶ *facere ut.*

I. 22, 23.

497. 4 (440, 2, N. 1); A. 193; G. 291, R. 2; B. 241; L. & M. 565. — 471 (417). M. 239, 1; A. 247; G. 398; B. 217, 1; L. & M. 615: 618. — 600, II (521, II, 2); M. 347; A. 325; G. 585; B. 288; L. & M. 858. — 417 (379); M. 196; A. 257, *b*; G. 335; B. 181; L. & M. 513. — 446, 5 (398, 5); M. 258, 2; A. 223, *e*; G. 372, N. 3; B. 201, 3, *a*; L. & M. 553.

At day-break, when Labienus had possession of the summit of the mountain, and the enemy's camp was not farther off than a mile and a half, nor had the enemy discovered the arrival of Labienus, Considius at full speed comes up to him. "The mountain," he says, "which you, O Caesar, wished should be seized by Labienus, is in possession of the enemy." Caesar, ¹leading his forces to the next hill, draws them up in line of battle. He had ordered Labienus not to engage in battle unless he saw his forces near the enemy's camp, in order that they might make the attack upon the enemy at the same time; but, having taken possession of the mountain, to wait for our men, and refrain from battle. Late in the day Caesar learns that our men have possession of the mountain, and following the enemy, he pitches his camp three miles from theirs. On the next day he was not more than eighteen miles from Bibracte, the largest town of the Haedui, and since he must serve out grain to his army within two days, he advances to Bibracte in order to provide for a supply of grain. Caesar does not know ²whether the Helvetians thought that he, filled with terror, was retreating, or believed that they could cut him off from provisions.

¹ Introduce by a temporal clause. Why cannot the present participle be used?

² *utrum — an.*

I. 26.

302 (301); M. 145; A. 146, c; G. 208; B. 138; L. & M. 360. — 600, II (521, II, 2); M. 347; A. 325; G. 585; B. 288, B; L. & M. 858. — 417 (379); M. 197; A. 256, G. 336; B. 181; L. & M. 518.

The battle was fought vigorously. When the Helvetians could not withstand the attack of the Romans, they betook themselves, the one party to the mountain, the other to the baggage. Although no one could see a retreating enemy, yet ¹the battle had lasted until evening. The Helvetians fought also at the baggage till late at night, because their wagons had been placed as a rampart. The Romans were wounded by the weapons thrown from the higher ground against them. Late at night ²they got possession of the camp of the Helvetians and captured the daughter of Orgetorix. After that battle the enemy marched during the whole of the night, and arriving in the territory of the Lingones delayed there. Caesar had to send messengers to the Lingones because our men were not able to follow them on account of the wounds of the soldiers. If the Lingones had assisted them with grain, Caesar would have regarded them in the same light as the Helvetians.

¹ Impersonal construction.

² Sink into a participial construction.

I. 31.

568, 7 (497, II, 2); M. 328: 331; A. 317, b; G. 545, 2; B. 282, a; L. & M. 908. — 633 (546); M. 301; A. 302; G. 435; B. 340, a; L. & M. 1005: 1006. — 486 (429); M. 243; A. 256, 1; G. 393; B. 231; L. & M. 631.

There are two parties in Gaul, the power of which the Haedui and Arverni hold. The Arverni and the Sequani call upon the Germans, because these two parties have been struggling with one another for many years. The Germans, about 15,000, having crossed the Rhine, fell in love with the refinement of the Gauls. The Haedui, broken by engagements and calamities, were compelled to give as hostages to the Sequani the nobles of their state. They ¹promised that they would not demand hostages in return, nor refuse to be under their rule. Diviciacus fled from his state and came to the senate ²at Rome to ask aid. Ariovistus, the king of the Germans, has settled among the Sequani, and has seized upon a portion of their land, and is providing room and settlement for the Harudes, who have come a few months before. In a few years all the Germans will cross the Rhine, for the land of Gaul must not be compared with the land of the Germans. Moreover, Ariovistus, having defeated the forces of the Gauls, demands hostages; for he is a savage and his commands ought not to be borne. Unless

¹ polliceri.

² Romam; why?

there be some aid in Caesar, the Gauls must seek another dwelling-place, remote from the Germans. Diviciacus does not doubt that if these things should be disclosed to Ariovistus, he would punish all the hostages. Moreover, Caesar himself, either by his own influence or the recent victory, can prevent a greater number of Germans from being brought over the Rhine.

I. 35, 36.

592 (517); M. 382; A. 320, *e*; G. 633; L. & M. 839. — 576 (507, II); M. 364; A. 307; G. 596, 1; B. 303; L. & M. 936. — 579 (507, III); M. 366; A. 308; G. 597; B. 304; L. & M. 938. — 574 (507, I); M. 363; A. 306; G. 595; B. 302; L. & M. 933.

If Ariovistus had been treated with great kindness by Caesar, ¹ why should he make this return? If he should be invited to a conference, he would not think that he ought to say anything in regard to the common interests. Caesar demands of him that he should not bring any body of men across the Rhine. He ² commands him to restore the hostages which he has from the Haedui. The Roman people will entertain a feeling of friendship toward him, if he will do this. But if Caesar does not obtain these desires, he will not overlook the wrongs of the Haedui, because the senate had decreed that whoever should hold the province of Gaul, as far as it could be done in the interest of the republic, should defend the friends of the Roman people. But it is the right of war that if the Germans had conquered the Haedui they should govern them in whatever manner they pleased. Because Ariovistus did not dictate to the Roman people as to the manner in which they should use their right, he ought not to be obstructed by the Romans in his right. The Haedui ³ have tried the fortune of war, have engaged in arms, and have been conquered. Caesar is doing a great wrong, because he is making the revenues of Ariovistus less valuable to him. Ariovistus said that no one ever came into an encounter with him without ruin to himself. If Caesar should come into an engagement with him, he would know what the invincible Germans could achieve, for they are trained to arms above all others.

¹ *cur*.² *iubeo*.³ Use only one principal clause.

I. 40.

588, 2 (516, II); M. 357; 400; A. 321; 341; G. 628; B. 314, 3; L. & M. 1026, — 302, 6 (301, 1); M. 205, *n*.; A. 230; G. 217; B. 187, II, *b*; L. & M. 686. — 433 (390, II); M. 206; A. 233; G. 356; B. 191; L. & M. 547; 548. — 380 (353); M. 385, 5; A. 211; G. 458; L. & M. 705.

It is not the duty of centurions to inquire in what direction Caesar is marching. Why ¹ should any one judge that Ariovistus, having sought the friendship

¹ Present subjunctive, deliberative question.

of the Romans in the consulship of Caesar, would depart from his duty? Caesar is persuaded that he will not reject the favor of the Roman people. If the Romans should have to make war upon him, since he is driven on by madness, they ought not to despair of their own valor because they have made a trial of the same enemy within the memory of their fathers. These same men the Helvetians conquered, and in the unsuccessful battle of the Gauls Ariovistus fell upon them tired out by the long duration of the war; for he gave them no ² opportunity for an encounter, but gained the victory more by stratagem than valor. What, therefore, should the Romans fear? It is Caesar's concern that the Sequani furnish grain in order that they who ascribe their fear to a pretence in regard to provisions may not distrust him. If the soldiers were not obedient to the command of their general, Caesar would go with only the tenth legion.

² *sui potestatem.*

II. 4.

571, 1 (501, I); M. 341, 2; A. 332, *a*; G. 553, 3; B. 284; L. & M. 891; 892. — 642 (524); M. 392; A. 336; G. 650; B. 313; L. & M. 961. — 503 (449, I); M. 434; A. 196; G. 309, 1; B. 244, 1; L. & M. 1042.

The Belgae sprang from the Germans. They crossed the Rhine at an early date and settled there, driving out the Gauls who inhabited that region. They are the only people who prevented the Teutones from entering their territory. The result is that from the remembrance of those events they assume great haughtiness. The Remi say that they have known everything regarding their number, because they are united to them by alliances; ² and therefore they know what number each state of the Belgae has promised for that war. The Bellovaci are the most powerful of them in valor. These promised ³ to muster 100,000 armed men, demanding the command of the war. The Suessiones are their neighbors, who possess a very fertile country. Diviciacus, who was their king, is the most powerful man of all Gaul, and held the government of a great part of Britain. But their king now is Galba, upon whom they have conferred the direction of the whole war.

¹ Ablative absolute.

² *quam ob rem.*

³ Future infinitive.

II. 19, 20.

508, 5 (554, I, 2, *n.*); M. 465, *n.* 2; A. 156, *a*; G. 643; B. 341, 1, *c*; L. & M. 760. — 646 (524); M. 392; 403; A. 336; G. 650; B. 313; L. & M. 1020. — 642, 4 (523, III); M. 393; A. 339; G. 652; B. 316; L. & M. 1023.

Caesar, having sent on his cavalry, follows with all his forces. The plan of march is different from that which the Belgae had reported. The enemy from

time to time betaking themselves into the woods, and again making an attack upon the Romans, ¹caused them to ²fear to follow them in their retreat. The six legions having arrived measured out the work in order to fortify the camp. Having seen the first part of the baggage-train of the Romans, after they had arranged their line of battle and encouraged one another, rushing out suddenly with all their troops, they make an attack upon our cavalry. Caesar tells us that he had to do everything at one time; that he ³gave orders to his soldiers that they should display the standard which is the sign when it is necessary to run to arms; that the signal had to be given by the trumpet; that the soldiers had to be summoned who had proceeded some distance in order to seek materials for the rampart; that the line of battle had to be formed; that he had to encourage the soldiers; that the watchword had to be given. The sudden approach of the enemy prevented a great part of these arrangements, but Caesar said let the soldiers wait for no command from him, but do whatever seemed proper.

¹ *facere ut.*² *vereri ne.*³ *impero.*

III. 9, 10.

649, II, 3 (529, I); M. 394; A. 334; G. 460, *b*; B. 300; L. & M. 810. — 652 (529, II); M. 405; A. 342; G. 629; B. 324; L. & M. 793. — 591, 1 (503, I); M. 383; A. 320; G. 631, 1; B. 283; L. & M. 836.

Caesar says that he was informed of these things by Crassus, although he was far away. He orders ships of war to be built, and sailors to be provided for them. These are matters which can be quickly executed. Caesar hastens to the army as soon as the season of the year permitted. The Veneti, because they knew they had committed a great crime in that they had thrown into prison the ambassadors, a name which among all nations had always been sacred, prepared for war. They relied greatly on the character of their country, for they knew that the marches by land were cut off by estuaries. The Romans are not acquainted with the harbors of those localities where they would carry on the war, for navigation is very different in a narrow sea from what it is in the open ocean. Caesar is informed that they are fortifying their towns and conveying grain from the country. There is ¹no doubt that many things were urging Caesar to that war, for if he should overlook this part, the other nations would think that the same thing was permitted them. He thought that he ought to divide his army in order that more states might not unite in the conspiracy.

¹ *non dubium quin.*

III. 24, 25, 26.

641-649 (523-531); M. 391-405; A. 336-339; G. 648-661; B. 317-324; L. & M. 1020-1040.

Put in indirect discourse after Crassus dicit:

At the break of day he drew up all his forces and marshalled them in a double line. The auxiliaries he stationed in the centre, and waited to see what plan the enemy would adopt. Although they supposed they might fight safely, yet they thought it safer to gain the victory without a wound by cutting off the provisions. If the Romans should begin to retreat, they intended to attack them, since they would be encumbered in their march. They approved of this plan, and although the leaders led forth the Romans, yet they kept themselves in their camp. When Crassus observed this, he marched to the camp of the enemy to the great satisfaction of all his soldiers, for the enemy by their delay had made the Roman soldiers more eager for fight, who thought that delay ought to be made no longer in going to the camp. Some fill the ditch, and others throwing many darts drive the defenders from the fortifications. Crassus did not rely much on the auxiliaries, yet they were supplying stones and presented the appearance of men engaged in battle. The weapons of the enemy did not fall upon the Romans without effect, because they were fighting from their higher position. The cavalry went around the camp of the enemy and reported to Crassus that it had an easy approach at the ducuman gate. Crassus urges the commanders of the cavalry to arouse the men with promises of reward, and shows what he desires to be done. ¹They were commanded to lead forth the cohorts, which had been left as a guard for the camp, by a longer way, in order that the enemy might see them. With these cohorts which I have mentioned they arrived at the fortifications. The Romans hearing a shout began to fight more vigorously. The enemy were surrounded on all sides, and tried to seek safety in flight. The cavalry pursued these, and returned to the camp late at night.

¹ *impero*, impersonal construction. Why?

IV. 13, 14, 15.

543-551 (491-496); M. 315-317; A. 285-287; G. 509-519; B. 266-269; L. & M. 802-809.

Put in indirect discourse after Caesar dixit:

After this battle Caesar thought that he ought not to hear the ambassadors nor accept conditions from those who had sued for peace and made war by treachery. The forces of the enemy will be increased, and the cavalry will return. Would it not be the greatest madness to wait? Caesar knows the fickleness of the Gauls.

and feels how much influence the enemy have gained among them. A very opportune event occurred, namely, that a large body of Germans came to the camp practising the same treachery, but as they pretended, ¹for the sake of acquitting themselves for having engaged in battle the day before. Caesar was glad that they had come into his power and detains them. Leading all his forces out of the camp, he commanded the cavalry to follow the line which was in a state of fear in consequence of the late battle. Having completed a march of eight miles, he arrived at the camp of the enemy before the Germans could perceive what was taking place. By all these circumstances they are alarmed and are perplexed as to whether it would be better to defend the camp or seek safety by flight. The soldiers burst into the camp, aroused by the treachery of the preceding day. Those of the enemy who could get their arms withstood the Romans and engaged in battle among the wagons. The women and boys who had departed from home and crossed the Rhine began to flee in all directions. Caesar sent his cavalry to pursue these. The Germans, hearing the noise behind them, saw that their own families were being killed, and throwing away their arms fled out of camp. When they arrived at the Rhine, they despaired of future escape, because a great number of them had been killed. Accordingly they threw themselves into the river and perished, for they were overcome by the violence of the stream. The Roman soldiers returned to the camp all safe to a man, and with very few wounded. Caesar gave an opportunity of departing to those whom he had detained in the camp. But they feared torture from the Gauls, and expressed a desire to remain with Caesar.

¹ *sui purgandi causa.* What part of speech is *sui* ?

IV. 33, 34.

The student should be especially careful to avoid a wrong use of the present participle in this lesson.

The Britons have the following mode of fighting with the chariots. First, after having ridden in all directions, they throw their weapons in order that they may disturb the ranks of the enemy, for oftentimes the very fear of their horses is able to do this. Then after they have worked them in between the troops of cavalry, leaping from their horses, they fight on foot. The chariotcers, having withdrawn a little distance, so place the chariots that, if the Britons be overcome by the enemy, they may have an easy retreat. They have acquired so much skill by daily practice that they can check their horses even on a steep place, and are accustomed to guide them at full speed. Running along the pole they quickly return to their chariots. The Romans were disturbed by these circumstances, and Caesar brought

aid to them at a seasonable time, for although the enemy were provoking them, they would not engage in battle. Caesar thinking that he ought to hold his soldiers in his own quarter led back the legions to the camp, after a little time had intervened. The rest of the Britons departed. For many days in succession storms confined our men to the camp, but did not prevent the enemy from sending messengers to all parts ¹to report how good an opportunity was afforded of freeing themselves forever, if the Romans could be driven from the camp. Collecting a great force of cavalry they came upon the Roman camp.

¹ Relative clause of purpose.

VII. 20.

Vercingetorix is accused of treason, because he ¹moved his camp nearer the Romans, because he went away with all the cavalry, because he left so great forces under no command, because the Romans came with such haste after his departure. All these circumstances could not happen by chance. He preferred to hold the sovereignty of Gaul by the permission of Caesar rather than by their favor. Vercingetorix, being accused in such a way, replies as follows to these charges: "I moved the camp on account of a want of provisions, and you yourselves urged me to do this. I approached nearer the Romans because I was persuaded by the favorable location which could defend us. Moreover, the service of the cavalry will be more useful than in marshy ground. When I departed I gave the command to no one designedly, lest he should be driven by the desire of the multitude to an engagement with the Romans. You should give thanks to fortune, if the Romans have come by chance, and if any one has invited them, you should feel grateful to him, because you can see the smallness of their number. I do not desire power from Caesar, because I can have it by victory, for victory is assured to us. Listen to the Roman soldiers in order that you may know that I speak these words truly." Some slaves are brought forward whom Vercingetorix, having captured while they were on a foraging expedition, had tortured by hunger, in order that they might say that they, being legionary soldiers, had gone forth from camp to find some grain in the fields, that the whole army did not have strength to bear the labor of work, and that the general had decided to lead off his army. "These are the benefits," says Vercingetorix, "that you receive from me." He said moreover that he had made provision that no state should receive the army in its flight within its territory.

¹ Subjunctive. Why?

DE BELLO CIVILI, III. 41.

As soon as Caesar knew that Pompey was at Asparagium, setting out ¹for that place with his army, and having captured the town of the Parthiniens on his march, in which Pompey had a ²garrison, he ³reached Pompey on the third day, and pitched his camp near him. On the next day, leading forth all his forces, he gave Pompey an opportunity of an engagement. But when he perceived that he ⁴kept within ⁵his own quarter, leading back his army he thought that he must adopt some other plan. And so on the next day he set out with all his troops through a narrow road to Dyrrachium, ⁶hoping that Pompey would be compelled to go to Dyrrachium. It happened that Pompey was ⁷cut off from communication with that town, because he thought Caesar was compelled to depart through the scarcity of provisions. When he was informed by scouts in regard to the plan of Caesar, he moved his camp, hoping ⁸to meet him ⁹by taking a shorter road. Caesar, suspecting that this might happen, arrived in ¹⁰the morning at Dyrrachium and encamped there.

- ¹ eodem. ² praesidium. ³ pervenire ad. ⁴ tenere se. ⁵ suis locis.
⁶ sperare. ⁷ intercludi ab. ⁸ occurrere posse. ⁹ brevior itinere.
¹⁰ mane.

WORD LISTS.

I. — *Verbs which occur over 100 times.*

- | | | | |
|--------------|----------|--------------|----------|
| 1. cognosco, | know. | 7. possum, | be able. |
| 2. dico, | say. | 8. relinquo, | leave. |
| 3. facio, | do. | 9. sum, | be. |
| 4. habeo, | have. | 10. venio, | come. |
| 5. iubeo, | command. | 11. video, | see. |
| 6. mitto, | send. | | |

II. — *Verbs which occur from 75-100 times.*

- | | | | |
|----------------|----------|-----------------|----------|
| 12. constituo, | arrange. | 16. interficio, | kill. |
| 13. contendo, | strain. | 17. proficisco, | set out. |
| 14. do, | give. | 18. recipio, | recover. |
| 15. existimo, | suppose. | | |

III. — *Verbs which occur from 50-75 times.*

- | | | | |
|---------------|----------------|---------------|------------|
| 19. accipio, | receive. | 28. impero, | command. |
| 20. capio, | take. | 29. pervenio, | arrive. |
| 21. coepi, | begin. | 30. peto, | seek. |
| 22. cogo, | compel. | 31. pugno, | fight. |
| 23. contineo, | hold together. | 32. teneo, | hold. |
| 24. convenio, | come together. | 33. transeo, | go across. |
| 25. discedo, | depart. | 34. volo, | wish. |
| 26. fero, | bear. | 35. utor, | use. |
| 27. gero, | carry. | | |

IV. — *Verbs which occur from 40-50 times.*

- | | | | |
|-------------|------------|---------------|---------------|
| 36. absum, | be away. | 39. arbitror, | think. |
| 37. accido, | fall upon. | 40. conficio, | accomplish. |
| 38. adduco, | lead to. | 41. consisto, | take a stand. |

42. infero, *bring in.*
 43. instituo, *set in order.*
 44. intellego, *know.*

45. pono, *place.*
 46. prohibeo, *hold off.*

V.—Verbs which occur from 30–40 times.

47. ago, *drive.*
 48. appello, *call.*
 49. audio, *hear.*
 50. committo, *join together.*
 51. confirmo, *strengthen.*
 52. conicio, *throw together.*
 53. conloco, *place together.*
 54. conor, *attempt.*
 55. consuesco, *become accustomed.*
 56. deduco, *lead down.*
 57. demonstro, *show.*
 58. dimitto, *let go away.*

59. duco, *lead.*
 60. efficio, *make out.*
 61. exspecto, *wait for.*
 62. impedio, *entangle.*
 63. intermitto, *stop.*
 64. munio, *fortify.*
 65. paro, *prepare.*
 66. perterreo, *terrify.*
 67. reverto, *return.*
 68. sequor, *follow.*
 69. traduco, *lead across.*

VI.—Verbs which occur from 20–30 times.

70. accedo, *approach.*
 71. adeo, *go to.*
 72. administro, *perform.*
 73. amitto, *let slip.*
 74. animadverto, *attend to.*
 75. audeo, *dare.*
 76. circumvenio, *surround.*
 77. cohortor, *encourage.*
 78. comparo, *get ready.*
 79. compleo, *fill.*
 80. confero, *bring together.*
 81. confido, *trust.*
 82. consido, *settle.*
 83. defendo, *defend.*
 84. defero, *carry down.*
 85. deligo, *select.*
 86. despero, *despair.*
 87. educo, *lead out.*
 88. egredior, *march out.*
 89. eo, *go.*
 90. incendo, *burn.*
 91. inco, *go in.*
 92. moror, *delay.*
 93. nascor, *be born.*

94. nuntio, *report.*
 95. occupo, *seize.*
 96. oppugno, *attack.*
 97. obtineo, *hold.*
 98. orior, *arise.*
 99. ostendo, *show.*
 100. pello, *drive.*
 101. perfero, *carry through.*
 102. perspicio, *see through.*
 103. persuadeo, *persuade.*
 104. pertineo, *tend.*
 105. polliceor, *promise.*
 106. postulo, *demand.*
 107. praeicio, *put before.*
 108. praesum, *be before.*
 109. premo, *press.*
 110. progredior, *advance.*
 111. puto, *think.*
 112. reduco, *lead back.*
 113. reperio, *find.*
 114. resisto, *resist.*
 115. tollo, *raise.*
 116. trado, *hand over.*
 117. vereor, *fear.*

VII. — *Verbs which occur from 10-20 times.*

- | | | | |
|-------------------|------------------------|------------------|------------------------|
| 118. abdo, | <i>put away.</i> | 161. excedo, | <i>go out.</i> |
| 119. adfero, | <i>bring to.</i> | 162. excipio, | <i>take out.</i> |
| 120. adficio, | <i>affect.</i> | 163. excito, | <i>rouse.</i> |
| 121. adiungo, | <i>join to.</i> | 164. exeo, | <i>go out.</i> |
| 122. adrior, | <i>assail.</i> | 165. expedio, | <i>disentangle.</i> |
| 123. appropinquo, | <i>approach.</i> | 166. expello, | <i>drive out</i> |
| 124. adsum, | <i>be near.</i> | 167. experior, | <i>experience.</i> |
| 125. arcesso, | <i>summon.</i> | 168. exploro, | <i>examine.</i> |
| 126. armo, | <i>equip.</i> | 169. expugno, | <i>attack.</i> |
| 127. attingo, | <i>touch upon.</i> | 170. fugio, | <i>fly.</i> |
| 128. augeo, | <i>increase.</i> | 171. hiemo, | <i>pass the winter</i> |
| 129. cedo, | <i>make way.</i> | 172. hortor, | <i>encourage.</i> |
| 130. circumsum, | <i>stand around.</i> | 173. impetro, | <i>obtain.</i> |
| 131. cogito, | <i>consider.</i> | 174. incito, | <i>urge on.</i> |
| 132. communico, | <i>communicate.</i> | 175. incolo, | <i>dwell.</i> |
| 133. concedo, | <i>allow.</i> | 176. inquit, | <i>say.</i> |
| 134. concurro, | <i>run together.</i> | 177. insequor, | <i>follow up.</i> |
| 135. coniungo, | <i>join together.</i> | 178. instruo, | <i>fit up.</i> |
| 136. conloquor, | <i>speak together.</i> | 179. intercludo, | <i>cut off.</i> |
| 137. comprehendo, | <i>grasp together.</i> | 180. iudico, | <i>decide.</i> |
| 138. consequor, | <i>follow.</i> | 181. laboro, | <i>toil.</i> |
| 139. conspicio, | <i>spy.</i> | 182. lacesso, | <i>provoke.</i> |
| 140. conspicer, | <i>see.</i> | 183. licet, | <i>it is allowed.</i> |
| 141. consto, | <i>stand together.</i> | 184. maneo, | <i>remain.</i> |
| 142. consulo, | <i>take counsel.</i> | 185. moveo, | <i>move.</i> |
| 143. consumo, | <i>destroy.</i> | 186. nanciscor, | <i>get.</i> |
| 144. convoco, | <i>call together.</i> | 187. neglego, | <i>disregard.</i> |
| 145. curo, | <i>take care.</i> | 188. noceo, | <i>injure.</i> |
| 146. debeo, | <i>owe.</i> | 189. nosco, | <i>learn.</i> |
| 147. dedo, | <i>give over.</i> | 190. occido, | <i>kill.</i> |
| 148. deficio, | <i>fail.</i> | 191. occulto, | <i>conceal.</i> |
| 149. deicio, | <i>cast down.</i> | 192. occurro, | <i>run to.</i> |
| 150. desero, | <i>abandon.</i> | 193. offero, | <i>offer.</i> |
| 151. desisto, | <i>stand off.</i> | 194. oportet, | <i>it behooves.</i> |
| 152. desum, | <i>be lacking.</i> | 195. opprimo, | <i>overwhelm.</i> |
| 153. dimico, | <i>fight.</i> | 196. oro, | <i>pray.</i> |
| 154. diripio, | <i>seize.</i> | 197. pateo, | <i>lie open.</i> |
| 155. dispono, | <i>place about.</i> | 198. patior, | <i>suffer.</i> |
| 156. distribuo, | <i>assign.</i> | 199. perduco, | <i>lead through</i> |
| 157. divido, | <i>divide.</i> | 200. perficio, | <i>complete.</i> |
| 158. dubito, | <i>doubt.</i> | 201. permaneo, | <i>remain.</i> |
| 159. eripio, | <i>snatch away.</i> | 202. permitto, | <i>grant.</i> |
| 160. evoco, | <i>call out.</i> | 203. permoveo, | <i>influence.</i> |

204. <i>perturbo,</i>	<i>disturb.</i>	224. <i>renuntio,</i>	<i>report.</i>
205. <i>potior,</i>	<i>become master of.</i>	225. <i>repello,</i>	<i>drive back.</i>
206. <i>praemitto,</i>	<i>send forward.</i>	226. <i>respondeo,</i>	<i>reply.</i>
207. <i>probo,</i>	<i>approve.</i>	227. <i>retineo,</i>	<i>hold back.</i>
208. <i>procedo,</i>	<i>go forward.</i>	228. <i>scio,</i>	<i>know.</i>
209. <i>produco,</i>	<i>lead forward.</i>	229. <i>sentio,</i>	<i>perceive.</i>
210. <i>profugio,</i>	<i>flee forth.</i>	230. <i>servo,</i>	<i>guard.</i>
211. <i>proicio,</i>	<i>cast forth.</i>	231. <i>spero,</i>	<i>hope.</i>
212. <i>pronuntio,</i>	<i>publish forth.</i>	232. <i>statuo,</i>	<i>establish.</i>
213. <i>propono,</i>	<i>place before.</i>	233. <i>studeo,</i>	<i>be eager for.</i>
214. <i>provideo,</i>	<i>foresee.</i>	234. <i>subsequor,</i>	<i>follow on.</i>
215. <i>quaero,</i>	<i>search for.</i>	235. <i>succedo,</i>	<i>come up.</i>
216. <i>queror,</i>	<i>complain.</i>	236. <i>tempto,</i>	<i>try.</i>
217. <i>reddo,</i>	<i>give back.</i>	237. <i>timeo,</i>	<i>fear.</i>
218. <i>redeo,</i>	<i>go back.</i>	238. <i>transporto,</i>	<i>bring over.</i>
219. <i>redigo,</i>	<i>reduce.</i>	239. <i>valeo,</i>	<i>be strong.</i>
220. <i>refero,</i>	<i>bring back.</i>	240. <i>vasto,</i>	<i>lay waste.</i>
221. <i>reficio,</i>	<i>repair.</i>	241. <i>verso,</i>	<i>turn.</i>
222. <i>remaneo,</i>	<i>remain behind.</i>	242. <i>vulnero,</i>	<i>wound.</i>
223. <i>remitto,</i>	<i>send back.</i>		

VIII. — *Nouns which occur over 100 times.*

1. <i>bellum,</i>	<i>war.</i>	13. <i>hostis,</i>	<i>enemy.</i>
2. <i>castra,</i>	<i>camp.</i>	14. <i>legatus,</i>	<i>ambassador.</i>
3. <i>causa,</i>	<i>cause.</i>	15. <i>legio,</i>	<i>legion.</i>
4. <i>civitas,</i>	<i>citizenship.</i>	16. <i>locus,</i>	<i>place.</i>
5. <i>consilium,</i>	<i>deliberation.</i>	17. <i>miles,</i>	<i>soldier.</i>
6. <i>copia,</i>	<i>abundance.</i>	18. <i>navis,</i>	<i>ship.</i>
7. <i>dies,</i>	<i>day.</i>	19. <i>numerus,</i>	<i>number.</i>
8. <i>eques,</i>	<i>horseman.</i>	20. <i>oppidum,</i>	<i>stronghold.</i>
9. <i>equitatus,</i>	<i>cavalry.</i>	21. <i>pars,</i>	<i>part.</i>
10. <i>exercitus,</i>	<i>army.</i>	22. <i>proelium,</i>	<i>battle.</i>
11. <i>finis,</i>	<i>end.</i>	23. <i>res,</i>	<i>thing.</i>
12. <i>flumen,</i>	<i>river.</i>	24. <i>tempus,</i>	<i>time.</i>

IX. — *Nouns which occur from 75-100 times.*

25. <i>arma,</i>	<i>arms.</i>	27. <i>multitudo,</i>	<i>multitude.</i>
26. <i>homo,</i>	<i>human being.</i>	28. <i>populus,</i>	<i>people.</i>

X. — *Nouns which occur from 50-75 times.*

29. <i>ager,</i>	<i>land.</i>	32. <i>auxilium,</i>	<i>aid.</i>
30. <i>animus,</i>	<i>spirit.</i>	33. <i>frumentum,</i>	<i>grain.</i>
31. <i>annus,</i>	<i>year.</i>	34. <i>fuga,</i>	<i>flight.</i>

35. imperium, *command.*
 36. munitio, *fortification.*
 37. obses, *hostage.*
 38. passus, *pace.*
 39. periculum, *danger.*

40. praesidium, *garrison.*
 41. princeps, *chief.*
 42. silva, *forest.*
 43. spes, *hope.*

XI. — *Nouns which occur from 40-50 times.*

44. acies, *line.*
 45. adventus, *arrival.*
 46. cohors, *cohort.*
 47. hiberna, *winter quarters.*
 48. impedimentum, *hindrance.*
 49. impetus, *attack.*
 50. manus, *hand.*
 51. murus, *wall.*
 52. nihil, *nothing.*

53. nox, *night.*
 54. opus, *work.*
 55. pes, *foot.*
 56. provincia, *province.*
 57. ratio, *reckoning.*
 58. regio, *direction.*
 59. salus, *health.*
 60. signum, *sign.*

XII. — *Nouns which occur from 30-40 times.*

61. agmen, *army.*
 62. amicitia, *friendship.*
 63. barbarus, *foreigner.*
 64. collis, *hill.*
 65. concilium, *meeting.*
 66. consuetudo, *custom.*
 67. domus, *house.*
 68. fides, *faith.*
 69. fortuna, *fortune.*
 70. iniuria, *injustice.*

71. ius, *justice.*
 72. labor, *toil.*
 73. mons, *mountain.*
 74. natura, *nature.*
 75. nuntius, *messenger.*
 76. pons, *bridge.*
 77. porta, *gate.*
 78. pugna, *fight.*
 79. victoria, *victory.*
 80. usus, *use.*

XIII. — *Nouns which occur from 20-30 times.*

81. aditus, *approach.*
 82. agger, *mound.*
 83. altitudo, *height.*
 84. auctoritas, *prestige.*
 85. captivus, *captive.*
 86. casus, *accident.*
 87. celeritas, *swiftness.*
 88. centurio, *centurion.*
 89. clamor, *shout.*
 90. commeatus, *passage.*
 91. dux, *leader.*
 92. equus, *horse.*
 93. eruptio, *sally.*

94. explorator, *scout.*
 95. facultas, *ease.*
 96. fossa, *ditch.*
 97. frater, *brother.*
 98. inopia, *want.*
 99. latus, *side.*
 100. littera, *letter.*
 101. magistratus, *magistracy*
 102. magnitudo, *greatness.*
 103. modus, *measure.*
 104. mors, *death.*
 105. opinio, *notion.*
 106. oratio, *speech.*

107. ordo, *series.*
 108. palus, *marsh.*
 109. pax, *peace.*
 110. potestas, *power.*
 111. senatus, *senate.*

112. subsidium, *reserve.*
 113. tribunus, *tribune.*
 114. turris, *tower.*
 115. via, *way.*
 116. vulnus, *wound.*

XIV. — *Nouns which occur from 10–20 times.*

117. adolescens, *youth.*
 118. aedificium, *building.*
 119. aestas, *summer.*
 120. aestus, *heat.*
 121. aetas, *age.*
 122. amicus, *friend.*
 123. aqua, *water.*
 124. beneficium, *well-doing.*
 125. caedes, *massacre.*
 126. calamitas, *disaster.*
 127. caput, *head.*
 128. castellum, *fortress.*
 129. circuitus, *circuit.*
 130. cliens, *vassal.*
 131. condicio, *condition.*
 132. conloquium, *conference.*
 133. conspectus, *sight.*
 134. controversia, *dispute.*
 135. cursus, *running.*
 136. defectio, *defection.*
 137. difficultas, *difficulty.*
 138. diligentia, *care.*
 139. discessus, *departure.*
 140. dolor, *pain.*
 141. essedarii, *charioteers.*
 142. fama, *report.*
 143. filius, *son.*
 144. gladium, *sword.*
 145. hiems, *winter.*
 146. hora, *hour.*
 147. ignis, *fire.*
 148. imperator, *commander.*
 149. incommodum, *disadvantage.*
 150. intervallum, *interval.*
 151. iugum, *yoke.*
 152. laus, *praise.*
 153. legatio, *embassy.*
 154. liberi, *children.*

155. libertas, *freedom.*
 156. longitudo, *length.*
 157. mare, *sea.*
 158. mercator, *trader.*
 159. mos, *custom.*
 160. motus, *movement.*
 161. natio, *race.*
 162. nomen, *name.*
 163. officium, *service.*
 164. opéra, *work.*
 165. oppugnatio, *siege.*
 166. pagus, *district.*
 167. pater, *father.*
 168. pecunia, *money.*
 169. pecus, *cattle.*
 170. pedes, *footman.*
 171. peditatus, *infantry.*
 172. pilum, *javelin.*
 173. poena, *penalty.*
 174. portus, *harbor.*
 175. praeda, *booty.*
 176. praemium, *reward.*
 177. principatus, *first place.*
 178. profectio, *departure.*
 179. regnum, *kingdom.*
 180. rex, *king.*
 181. ripa, *bank.*
 182. scutum, *shield.*
 183. sententia, *opinion.*
 184. servitus, *slavery.*
 185. silentium, *silence.*
 186. socius, *companion.*
 187. sol, *sun.*
 188. species, *appearance.*
 189. statio, *position.*
 190. studium, *zeal.*
 191. summa, *sum.*
 192. supplicium, *punishment.*

193. suspicio, *suspicion.*
194. tempestas, *season.*
195. tergum, *back.*
196. terra, *earth.*
197. triduum, *three days.*
198. vadum, *ford.*

199. ventus, *wind.*
200. vigilia, *watch.*
201. vir, *man.*
202. vita, *life.*
203. voluntas, *willingness.*
204. vox, *voice.*

VOCABULARY.

1. The Arabic numeral after a definition indicates the number of times the Latin word occurs in the text of the first seven books: e.g. **ab** occurs 366 times.

2. In the case of words occurring not over three times, references to all the places of occurrence are given: e.g. **abies** occurs only in v. 12 (Bk. v. chap. 12).

3. The times of occurrence of many derivatives (especially participial and adverbial) are included under their primitives, and are not therefore affixed: e.g. **abditus** is included in the times of occurrence of **abdo**.

A

A. (1) An abbreviation for praenomen Aulus. (2) **a. d.**, *ante diem*. i. 6.

ā, **ab**, **abs**, prep. with the abl. (Eng. of, off). **ā** before consonants, **ab** before vowels and consonants, **abs** before **te**. — *from, by, on the part of, on, among, on the side of*; see Idioms. **ā**, 172; **ab**, 366; **abs**, v. 30.

abditus, partic., (**abdō**), *concealed, hidden, secret, remote*.

abdō, ere, **didī**, **ditus**, (**ab + dō**, *put*), *to put away; to hide*. 11.

abdūcō, ere, **dūxī**, **ductus**, (**ab + dūcō**), *to lead away, withdraw, take by force*. i. 11.

abeō, ire, **ivī** or **il**, **itus**, (**ab + eō**), *to go away, depart*. vi. 43, vii. 50.

abiciō, ere, **iēcī**, **iectus**, (**ab + iaciō**), *to throw away, cast*. 5.

abiēs, etis, f., *a fir tree*. v. 12.

abiungō, ere, **iūnxī**, **iunctus**, (**ab + iungō**), *to disjoin, separate, remove*. vii. 56.

abripīō, ere, **ripuī**, **reptus**, (**ab + rapiō**, *snatch*), *to tear away, snatch away, carry off*. v. 33.

abscidō, ere, —, **scisus**, (**abs + caedō**), *to cut off, cut*. iii. 14, vii. 73.

abscisus. See **abscidō**.

absēns, entis, adj., (**absum**), *absent, remote*. 5.

absimilis, e, adj., (**ab + similis**), *unlike, dissimilar*. iii. 14.

absistō, ere, **stitī**, —, (**ab + sistō**), *to keep away from, withdraw*. v. 17.

abstineō, ēre, **uī**, **tentus**, (**abs + teneō**), *to abstain from, keep aloof from, decline*. i. 22, vii. 47.

abstrahō, ere, **trāxī**, **tractus**, (**abs + trahō**), *to drag away*. iii. 2; vii. 14, 42.

absum, esse, **āfuī**, **āfutūrus**, (**ab + sum**), *to be away, be absent, distant; to take no part in; to stand aloof*. 43.

abundō, āre, **āvī**, —, (**ab + unda**, *wave*), *to overflow, abound, be rich in*. vii. 14, 64.

ac, conj., and. (After *aliter*, *simul*, etc., *than, as*.) 190.

accēdō, ere, **cessī**, —, (**ad + cēdō**), *to come to, approach, draw near to, arrive at; to be added; accēdēbat, it was added*. 27.

accelerō, āre, **āvī**, **ātus**, (**ad + celerō**, *hasten*), *to hasten, make haste*. vii. 87.

acceptus, a, um, adj., (accipiō), *accepted, agreeable, welcome.* i. 3.
accidō, ere, cidī, —, (ad + cadō), *to fall; to happen; to come to pass; accidit, it happens.* 43.
accidō, ere, cidī, cīsus, (ad + caedō), *to cut into.* vi. 27.
accipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus, (ad + capiō), *to receive, take, hear, acquire, suffer, endure.* 59.
acclivis, e, adj., (ad + clivus), *ascending, rising, steep.* ii. 29, iii. 19, vii. 19.
acclivitās, ātis, f., (acclivis), *an ascent, acclivity, a rising.* ii. 18.
Accō, ōnis, m., chieftain of the Senonēs, and head of their conspiracy, vi. 4, 44; vii. 1.
accommodātus, a, um, adj., (accommodō), *suitable, adapted.* iii. 13 (twice).
accommodō, āre, āvi, ātus, (ad + commodō, *arrange properly*), *to adjust, adapt, suit, accommodate.* ii. 21.
accūrātō, adv., (ad + cūra), *carefully, attentively, exactly; comp. accūrātius,* vi. 22.
accurrō, ere, curri and cucurri, cursus, (ad + currō), *to run to, hasten to,* i. 22, iii. 5.
accūsō, āre, āvi, ātus, (ad + causa), *to accuse, blame, censure.* i. 16, 19; vii. 20.
ācer, cris, cre, adj., *sharp, pungent, violent, severe.* 18.
acerbē, adv., (acerbus), *sharply, bitterly, keenly, harshly; comp. acerbius, sup. acerbissimē,* vii. 17.
acerbitās, ātis, f., (acerbus), *sharpness, bitterness, harshness, severity.* vii. 17.
acerbus, a, um, adj., (ācer), *sharp, bitter, fierce, severe.* vii. 14.
ācerimē, adv., sup. of ācriter.
acervus, ī, m., (ācer), *a heap, store, pile.* ii. 32.
aciēs, ēī, f., (cf. ācer), *a sharp edge; an*

army in line of battle, a line of battle; in aciē, in line of battle. 42.
ācriter, adv., (ācer), *sharply, vehemently, courageously, eagerly; comp. ācrius, sup. ācerimē.*
āctuārius, a, um, adj., (agō), *easily moved, light.* v. 1.
āctus, a, um. See agō.
acūtus, a, um, adj., (acuō, *sharpen*), *sharp, pointed.* v. 18, vii. 73.
ad, prep. with the acc., (Eng. at), *to, towards, in, for, among, near, on, about (with numerals).* See Idioms. 702.
adāctus, a, um. See adigō.
adaequō, āre, āvi, ātus, (ad + aequō), *to make equal, to equal.* 6.
adamō, āre, āvi, ātus, (ad + amō, *love*), *to take a liking to, to desire, love.* i. 31.
addō, ere, didi, ditus, (ad + dō, *put*), *to put to, add, join.* 9.
addūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus, (ad + dūcō), *to lead to, draw towards, conduct, induce.* 41.
ademptus, a, um. See adimō.
adeō, adv., (ad + eō), *to such a degree, thus far, so far, so.* 4.
adeō, īre, īvi or īi, itus, (ad + eō), *to go to, approach, encounter.* 20.
adeptus, a, um. See adipiscor.
adequitō, āre, āvi, —, (ad + equitō, *ride on horseback*), *to ride up to or towards.* i. 46.
aderō, ferre, attuli, adlātus, irr., (ad + ferō), *to bring to, offer, present; to afford, produce.* 16.
adficiō, ere, fēci, fectus, (ad + faciō), *to do to, influence, move; to show, treat, visit.* See Idioms. 11.
adfigō, ere, fixi, fixus, (ad + figō, *fix*), *to fix to, fasten to, attach to.* iii. 14.
adfingō, ere, flinxi, fictus, (ad + fingō), *to make to, devise, invent; to add falsely.* vii. 1.

adfinitās, ātis, f., (**adfinis, adjoining**), *relationship by marriage, connection.*

i. 18, ii. 4.

adfirmātiō, ōnis, f., (**adfirmō, assure**), *assurance, declaration, assertion.* vii. 30.

adfixus, a, um. See **adfigō.**

adflictō, āre, āvi, ātus, (adfligō), *to dash against, toss, torment.* iii. 12, iv. 29.

adflictus, a, um. See **adfligō.**

adfligō, ere, flixī, flictus, (ad + fligō, *strike against*), *to strike, beat or dash against; to shatter, destroy.* 4.

adfore, adfutūrus, adforem. See **adsum.**

adhaereō, ēre, —, —, (ad + haereō), *to cleave to, adhere, stick.* v. 48.

adhibeō, ēre, uī, itus, (ad + habeō), *to hold to, bring in, call in, admit, use.* 7.

adhortor, āri, ātus, (ad + hortor), *dep., to arouse, encourage.* 5.

adhūc, adv., (ad + hūc), *until now, thus far, still, as yet.* iii. 22.

adiaceō, ēre, cui, —, (ad + iaceō), *to lie adjacent, border upon, be near.* vi. 33.

Adiatunnus, ī, m., *chieftain of the Sontiatēs.* iii. 22.

adiciō, ēre, iēcī, iectus, (ad + iaciō), *to throw towards, cast, to add to.* 6.

adigō, ere, ēgī, āctus, (ad + agō), *to drive to, drive in, force, compel.* 8.

adimō, ere, ēmī, emptus, (ad + amō), *to take away, deprive of, remove.* v. 6, vii. 18.

adipiscor, ī, adeptus, dep., (ad + apiscor, get), *to obtain, acquire, attain.* v. 39.

aditus, ūs, m., (adeō), *approach, entrance, access.* 20.

adiudicō, āre, āvī, ātus, (ad + iudicō), *to adjudge, assign, award.* vi. 37.

adiungō, ere, iūnxī, iunctus, (ad + iungō), *to join to, unite to, annex.* 10.

adiutor, ōris, m., (adiuvō), *a helper, an assistant.* v. 38, 41.

adiuvō, āre, iūvī, iūtus, (ad + iuvō), *to assist, help, succor, aid.* 5.

adlātus, a, um. See **adferō.**

adliciō, ere, lexi, lectus, (ad + laciō, allure), *to allure to, entice, attract.* v. 55, vii. 31.

admātūrō, āre, —, —, (ad + maturō), *to quicken, mature, ripen.* vii. 54.

administer, trī, m., (ad + manus), *a servant, attendant, assistant.* vi. 16.

administrō, āre, āvī, ātus, (ad + ministrō, serve), *to serve, wait upon, manage, guide.* 23.

admīror, āri, ātus, (ad + mīror), *dep., to wonder at, be surprised.* 5.

admittō, ere, misi, missus, (ad + mittō), *to send to, let go, allow, receive; equō admissō, with horse at full speed.* 6.

admodum, adv., (ad + modus), *with measure, very; with numerals, about, at least.* 8.

admoneō, ēre, uī, itus, (ad + moneō), *to warn, advise, suggest, put in mind.* v. 49.

adolēscō, ere, olēvī, ultus, (ad + olēscō, grow), *to grow up, mature, increase.* vi. 18.

adorior, irī, ortus, dep., (ad + orior), *to attack, assail; to begin, attempt.* 17.

adquirō, ere, quisivī, quisitus, (ad + quaerō), *to acquire, obtain, procure.* vii. 59.

adripiō, ere, uī, reptus, (ad + rapiō, snatch), *to seize, lay hold of, appropriate.* v. 33.

adroganter, adv., (adrogāns, proud), *proudly, haughtily.* i. 40.

adrogantia, ae, f., (adrogāns, proud), *insolence, presumption, pride.* i. 33, 46, vii. 52.

adsiduus, a, um, adj., (*adsideō, sit by*), *continual, incessant, diligent.* vi. 22; vii. 24, 41.

adsistō, ere, stiti, —, (*ad + sistō*), *to stand by, be present, appear.* vi. 18.

adsuēficiō, ere, fēci, factus, (adsuētus, accustomed, + faciō), *to accustom.* 4.

adsuēscō, ere, suēvī, suētus, (ad + suescō, be accustomed), *to accustom one's self, habituate, be accustomed.* vi. 28.

adsum, esse, fui, —, irreg., (*ad + sum*), *to be present or at hand, be near; to aid.* 12.

Aduātuca, ae, f., a stronghold in the territory of the Eburōnēs, perhaps near the modern Limburg. vi. 32, 36-40.

Aduātucī, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe, of Germanic origin, on the left side of the river Meuse. They were later called Tongri. ii. 4, 16, 29, 31; v. 27, 38 seq., 56; vi. 2, 33. **Aduātucōrum oppidum**, ii. 29, 2 (different from Aduātuca), situated (according to Göler) on the hill which bears now the name Falhize, opposite the modern town Huy, — according to Napoleon, at the modern Namur.

adolēscēns, entis, m., (*adolēscō*), *a young man.* With names, *the younger*, like our *Jr.* 18.

adolēscēntia, ae, f., (*adolēscēns*), *youth.* i. 20.

adolēscēntulus, ī, m., (*adolēscēns*), *a young man.* iii. 21.

adventus, ūs, m., (*adveniō, come to*), *arrival, a coming, an approach.* 46.

adversārius, a, um, adj., (*adversus*), *facing another, hostile.* **adversārius, ī, m.**, *an opponent, enemy.* vii. 4.

adversus, a, um, adj., (*advertō*), *opposite, facing, fronting, opposed, hostile.* See Idioms. 12.

adversus, prep. with the acc., (*advertō*), *against, towards, opposite to.* iv. 14.

advertō, ere, ī, versus, (ad + vertō), *to turn to or towards, with animum, to turn one's mind to, observe, notice.* i. 24, v. 18.

advocō, āre, āvī, ātus, (ad + vocō), *to call to, summon.* vii. 52.

advolō, āre, āvī, ātus, (ad + volō), *to fly to, hasten to, rush upon, run to.* v. 17, 39; vii. 72.

aedificium, ī, n., (*aedificō*), *an edifice, a building.* 18.

aedificō, āre, āvī, ātus, (aedēs, house, + faciō), *to build, construct, erect.* iii. 9, v. 1, vi. 22.

aeger, gra, grum, adj., *sick, aching, faint, weary.* v. 40; vi. 36, 38.

aegrō, adv., (*aeger*), *hardly, with difficulty, scarcely; comp. aegrius, sup. aegerrimō.* 8.

Aemilius, ī, m., *L.*, commander of a decuria of Gallic cavalry. i. 23.

aequāliter, adv., (*aequālis, equal*), *equally, uniformly.* ii. 18.

aequinoctium, ī, n., (*aequus + nox*), *the equinox, i.e. when the day and night are of equal length.* iv. 36.

aequitās, ātis, f., (*aequus*), *equality, evenness, justice; animi aequitās, evenness of temper, peace of mind.* i. 40, vi. 22.

aequō, āre, āvī, ātus, (aequus), *to make equal; to level.* i. 25, vi. 22.

aequus, a, um, adj., *even, level, just, right, favorable.* 16.

aerārius, a, um, adj., (*aes*), *of copper, brass, or bronze.* iii. 21.

aereus, a, um, adj., (*aes*), *of copper, copper.* v. 12.

aes, aeris, n., *brass, copper, money, bronze; aes aliēnum, debt.* iv. 31, v. 12, vi. 13.

aestās, ātis, f., *summer.* 11.

aestimātiō, ōnis, f., (aestimō), *valuation, estimate.* vi. 19.

aestimō, āre, āvi, ātus, (aes), *to value, estimate, regard, determine, esteem.* 4.

aestivus, a, um, adj., (aestās), *of summer.* vi. 4.

aestuārium, ī, n., (aestus), *an estuary, inlet.* ii. 28, iii. 9.

aestus, ūs, m., *heat; the tide.* 14.

aetās, ātis, f., (cf. aevum, age), *age; life.* 11.

aeternus, a, um, adj., (aevum, age), *eternal, perpetual.* vii. 77.

Āfricus, ī, m., (sc. ventus), *the southwest wind.* v. 8.

Agedincum, ī, n., capital of the Senonēs in Celtic Gaul, the modern Sens in the Champagne. (The modern name of the city corresponds to the old name of the tribe. See Ambiānī, Avaricum, Bellovacī, Cadurcī, Coriosolitēs, Dūrocortorum, Lemovicēs, Lexovii, Lingonēs, Lutētia, Nannetēs, Novodūnum (1), Petrocorii, Redonēs, Rēmi, Rutēni, Samarobriva, Santonēs, Sedūni, Segni, Senonēs, Suessionēs, Tarusātēs, Turonēs.) vi. 44; vii. 10, 57, 59, 62.

ager, gri, m., (cf. agō, drive), *a field, land, territory, country.* 70.

agger, eris, m., (ad + gerō), *a mound, rampart.* See p. 48. 25.

aggredior, ī, gressus, dep., (ad + gradior, advance), *to go to, go against; to attack.* 4.

aggregō, āre, āvi, ātus, (ad + grex, flock), *to bring together in a flock, join, attach, ally.* iv. 26, vi. 12.

agitō, āre, āvi, ātus, (agō), *to toss; to drive; to debate, discuss, deliberate.* vii. 2.

āgmen, inis, n., (agō), *an army on the march, a column, troop; primum āgmen, the van, front; novissimum āgmen, the rear.* 33.

agō, ere, ēgi, āctus, *to drive, conduct, lead, carry off; to do, live, treat, plead; grātiās agere, to thank, return thanks.* 38.

agri cultūra. See cultūra.

alacer, cris, cre, adj., *lively, brisk, cheerful, animated, joyous.* 4.

alacritās, ātis, f., (alacer), *liveliness, alacrity, ardor.* i. 41, 46; iv. 24.

ālārii, ōrum, m. pl., (āla, wing), *the auxiliaries who were stationed on the wings.*

ālārius, a, um, adj., (āla, wing), *of a wing, stationed on the wings.* i. 51 (twice).

albus, a, um, adj., *white.* v. 12.

alcēs, is, f., *the elk.* vi. 27.

Alēsia, ae, f., a fortified town of the Mandubii, the modern St. Reine d'Alise, near Semur, between the two rivers Loze (Oze) and Ozerain. vii. 68, seq.; viii. 14, 34.

Alexandria, ae, f., a city in northern Egypt. Under the Ptolemies capital of the land. viii. preface.

aliās, adv., (alius), *otherwise, at another time; aliās—aliās, at one time—at another time, or sometimes—sometimes.* 4.

aliēnō, āre, āvi, ātus, (aliēnus), *to alienate, estrange.* vi. 41, vii. 10.

aliēnus, a, um, adj., (alius), *of another, another's; unfavorable; foreign.* 8.

aliō, adv., (alius), *in another place, elsewhere.* vi. 22.

aliquamdiū, adv., (aliquam, acc. sing. fem. of aliquis, some, + diū, cf. quam, acc. sing. fem. of relative + diū, and tam, acc. sing. fem. of the demonstrative + diū), *for some time.* i. 40, v. 23.

aliquandō, adv., (alius + quandō), *at some time, sometimes; at length.* vii. 27, 77.

aliquantō, adv., (aliquantus), *some-what; a little.* iii. 13.

aliquantus, a, um, adj., (**alius** + **quantus**), *somewhat, a little, some*. v. 10.
aliquis, qua, quod or quid, indef. pron., (**alius** + **quis**), *some one, any one, some, any, something*. 26.

aliquot, indef. num. adj., (**alius** + **quot**), *some, several, a few*. iii. 1, 2; iv. 9.

aliter, adv., (**alius**), *otherwise, differently*; **aliter ac**, *otherwise than*. 7.

alius, a, ud, gen. **alius**, adj., *another, other*; **alius — alius**, *one — another*; **alii — alii**, *some — others*. 85.

Allobrogēs (sing. **Allobrox**), um., m. pl., acc. **Allobrogas**, a strong Celtic tribe between Rhodanus (Rhône), Isara (Isère), and Lacus Lemannus (Lake Geneva) in the modern Dauphinée and Savoy. Subdued in 121 B.C. by Q. Fabius Maximus. i. 6, 10, 11, 14, 28; iii. 1, 6; vii. 64, 65. Capital: **Vienna**, q.v.

alō, ere, uī, itus or tus, *to nourish, support, sustain, maintain*. 9.

Alpēs, ium, f. pl., *the Alps*. i. 10; iii. 1, 2, 7; iv. 10. 6.

alter, era, erum, gen. **alterius**, adj., *one of two, the other, the second*; **alter — alter**, *the one — the other*. 55.

alternus, a, um, adj., (**alter**), *one after another, mutual, alternate*. vii. 23.

altitūdō, inis, f., (**altus**), *height, depth*. 24.

altum, ī, n., (**altus**, sc. **mare**), *the deep, the sea*. iii. 12; iv. 24, 28.

altus, a, um, adj., (**alō**), *high, tall, lofty; deep*. 15.

alūta, ae, f., *soft leather*. iii. 13.

ambactus, ī, m., *a vassal*. vi. 15.

Ambārri, ōrum, m. pl., a Celtic tribe, on the banks of the Arar (Saône). i. 11 (**necessārii** et **cōnsanguinei** **Hæduōrum**), 14.

Ambiāni, ōrum, m. pl., a Belgic tribe near the seacoast, inhabiting the modern Département de Somme. Their

capital: **Samarobrīva** (the modern **Amiens** [see **Agedincum**]). ii. 4, 15; vii. 75; viii. 7.

Ambibariī, ōrum, m. pl., a Celtic tribe in the modern Normandie, where a town **Ambières** still exists; belonged to the **civitates Aremoricae**. vii. 75.

Ambiliāti, ōrum, m. pl., a small Celtic tribe, on the banks of the **Samara** (Somme). iii. 9 (perhaps not different from the preceding).

Ambiorix, īgis, m., chieftain of the **Eburōnēs**. v. 24, 26, 27, 32-37, 38; vi. 2, 5, 9, 30, 31, 33, 43; viii. 24, 25.

Ambivaretī, ōrum, m. pl., a Celtic tribe, **Hæduōrum clientēs**. vii. 75, 90.

Ambivaritī, ōrum, m. pl., a Belgic tribe, on the left side of the river **Meuse**, near the modern **Breda**. iv. 9.

ambō, ae, ō, num. adj., *both*. v. 44.

āmentia, ae, f., (**ā** + **mēns**), *madness, folly*. i. 40, v. 7.

āmentum, ī, n., a strap or thong, by means of which javelins or spears were thrown with greater impulse. v. 48.

amicitia, ae, f., (**amicus**), *friendship, alliance*. 30.

amicus, a, um, adj., (cf. **amō**, *love*), *friendly*. 13.

amicus, ī, m., *a friend, ally*.

āmittō, ere, mīsi, missus, (**ā** + **mittō**), *to send away, dismiss; to lose*. 20.

amor, ōris, m., (cf. **amō**, *love*), *love, affection*. i. 20.

amplē, adv., (**amplus**), *abundantly, largely*. 23.

amplificō, āre, āvi, ātus, (**amplus** + **faciō**), *to enlarge, increase, extend*. ii. 14, vi. 12.

amplitūdō, inis, f., (**amplus**), *greatness, bulk, grandeur*. iv. 3, vi. 28, vii. 54.

amplius (comp. of **amplus**), *more*. 20.

amplus, a, um, adj., *large, great, ample, extensive*. 8.

an, conj., *or, whether*. It usually introduces the second member of an alternative question. 9.

Anartēs, ium, m. pl., a tribe in Dacia, at the banks of the Tibiscus (modern Theiss) in the modern Siebenbürgen. vi. 25.

Ancalitēs, um, m. pl., a Britannic tribe, in the modern Oxford. v. 21.

anceps, ipitis, adj., (**am-** before consonants for **ambi-**, a locative of the same stem as **ambō**, both, + **caput**) (*double-headed*), *double, two-fold; doubtful, dangerous*. i. 26, vii. 76.

ancora, ae, f., *an anchor*. 8.

Andecumborius, ī, m., an ambassador of the Rēmī. ii. 3.

Andēs, ium, or **Andī, ōrum**, m. pl., a Celtic tribe in the modern Anjou, northward from the modern Loire. Capital: Iuliomagus (modern *Angers sur la Mayenne*). **Andēs**, ii. 35, iii. 7, viii. 26. **Andī**, vii. 3. Chieftain: Dumnācus.

anfractus, ūs, m., (**am-**; see **am-** in **anceps** + **frangō**), *a turning or winding of a way, circuit, circuitous route*. vii. 46.

angulus, ī, m., *a corner, an angle*. v. 13.

angustē, adv., (**angustus**), *closely, narrowly; sparingly*, v. 23.

angustiae, ārum, f. pl., (**angustus**), *narrowness, narrow defile; straits, perplexity*. 7.

angustus, a, um, adj., (**angō**, *squeeze*), *narrow, close, contracted; steep*. 13.

anima, ae, f., *air, breath; life, soul, spirit*. vi. 14.

animadvertō, ere, ī, versus, (**animus** + **ad** + **vertō**), *to turn the mind to; to notice; to punish*. 22.

animal, ālis, n., (**anima**), *an animal*. vi. 17, 19.

animus, ī, m., *the mind, the soul, life, consciousness; will, design, intention; courage, heart*. 66.

annōtinus, a, um, adj., (**annus**), *of a year, a year old*. v. 8.

annus, ī, m., *a year*. 52.

annuus, a, um, adj., (**annus**), *yearly, annual*. i. 16.

anser, eris, m., *a goose*. v. 12.

ante, prep. with the acc., (**Eng. an-swer**), *before, beyond*. 35.

ante, adv., *before, previously, above*. 30.

anteā, adv., (**ante** + **eā**, a case form of **is**), *before, aforesaid, formerly*. 8.

antecēdō, ere, cessī, (**ante** + **cedō**), *to go before, precede; to excel, surpass*. 9.

antecursor, ōris, m., (**ante** + **cursor**, *runner*), *a forerunner, advance guard, pioneer*. v. 47.

anteferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, (**ante** + **ferō**), *to bear before, set before*. v. 44 (twice).

antemna, ae, f., *a sailyard*. iii. 14 (twice), 15.

antepōnō, ere, posuī, positus, (**ante** + **pōnō**), *to place before, prefer*. iv. 22.

antevertō, ere, ī, (**ante** + **vertō**), *anticipate, place before, prefer, forestate*. vii. 7.

antiquitus, adv., (**antiquus**), *anciently, of old time, formerly*. 6.

antiquus, a, um, adj., (**ante**), *old, ancient, antique*. i. 18, 45; vii. 32.

Antistius, ī, m., *C. Antistius Regīnus*, one of Caesar's legates. vi. 1; vii. 83, 90.

Antōnius, ī, m., *M.*, one of Caesar's legates. vii. 31; viii. 2, 24, 36, 48, 50.

aperiō, ire, uī, tus, (**ab** + **pariō**), *to open, uncover, reveal, disclose*. 24.

apertē, adv., (**apertus**), *openly, publicly*. vi. 21, vii. 59.

apertus, a, um, adj., (**aperiō**), *uncovered, unprotected, open, exposed, naked, lying open*.

Apollō, inis, m., son of Jupiter and Latona, and god of music, poetry, archery, and healing. vi. 17 (twice).

apparō, āre, āvī, ātus, (ad + parō), to
prepare, place in order, furnish, equip,
procure. vii. 17, 26, 41.

appellō, āre, āvī, ātus, (ad + obsolete
pellō), to call, name; to accost, ad-
dress. 38.

appellō, ere, pulī, pulsus, (ad +
pellō), to drive to, steer to, approach,
bring to, direct. vii. 60.

appetō, ere, ivī or ii, itus, (ad + petō),
to seek for, strive for, covet, catch at,
aim at. i. 43, vii. 4.

applicō, āre, āvī, ātus, (ad + plicō,
fold), to join, attach; to apply, bring
in contact with. vi. 27.

apportō, āre, āvī, ātus, (ad + portō),
to carry, conduct, convey. v. 1.

approbō, āre, āvī, ātus, (ad + probō),
to approve, applaud, praise, commend.
vii. 21.

appropinquō, āre, āvī, ātus, (ad +
propinquō, draw near), to approach,
draw nigh, come on. 16.

appulsus, a, um. See appellō.

Aprilis, e, adj., (aperiō), of April;
Aprilis, is, m., the month of April.
i. 6, 7.

aptus, a, um, adj., (apiscor, get), suita-
ble, proper, fitted, adapted. iii. 13, v. 16,
vii. 22.

apud, prep. with acc., at, with, before,
among. See Idioms. 43.

aqua, ae, f., water. 10.

aquatiō, ōnis, f., (aquor, get water),
the act of getting water. iv. 11.

aquila, ae, f., an eagle: the Roman en-
sign. 4.

Aquillōia, ae, f., a town in Gallia Trāns-
padāna, bearing its old name to the
present day. i. 10.

aquilifer, erī, m., (aquila + ferō), a
standard bearer. v. 37.

Aquitānia, ae, f., one of the three main
parts of Gaul between the Garumna
(Garonne) and the Pyrenees. i. 1; iii.

11, 20, 27; vii. 31; viii. 46. See Gallia
(b. 1), Auscī, Bigerriōnēs, Cocosā-
tēs, Elusātēs, Garumnī, Gatēs, Ni-
tiobrogēs, Ptiāniī (?), Sibuzātēs,
Sontiātēs, Tarbellī, Tarusātēs, Vo-
cātēs.

Aquitāni, ōrum, m. pl., the inhabitants
of Aquitania. i. 1, iii. 21.

Aquitānus, a, um, adj., Aquitanian. 4.
Arar, aris (acc. im), m., (later name
Sauconna, modern name Saône), a river
flowing through the land of the Sēquani
and Haeduī. Empties into the Rhoda-
nus (Rhône).

arbiter, tri, m., an arbitrator, a judge,
an umpire. v. 1.

arbitrium, i, n., (arbiter), the decision
of an arbitrator, a determination, a
decision; pleasure, will. i. 36, vi. 11,
vii. 75.

arbitror, āri, ātus, dep., (arbiter), to
think, judge, imagine, suppose. 40.

arbor, oris, f., a tree. 7.

arcessō, ere, ivī, itus, to call, invite,
send for. 10.

ārdeō, ēre, ārsi, ārsus, to burn, blaze,
be on fire; to be impatient; to be ex-
cited. v. 29, 34.

Arduenna silva, f., a ridge of mountains
from the Rhēnus (Rhine) to the Scaldis
(Schelde), through the land of the Rēmi
and Nervii. v. 3; vi. 29, 31, 33. Modern
name: Ardennes.

arduus, a, um, adj., high, steep, lofty,
arduous; difficult to reach. ii. 33, vii. 47.

Arecomici, ōrum, m. pl. See Volcae.

Aremoricae civitatēs, f., the tribes
which border on the seacoast between
Liger (Loire) and Sēquana (Seine) in
the modern Bretagne and Normandie.
A Celtic word composed of are = 'ad'
and mor = 'mare.' v. 53; vii. 75; viii.
31. The nations which compose the
Aremoricae civitatēs are given at
ii. 34 without that name being added.

argentum, ī, n., *silver*. vi. 28, vii. 47.
argilla, ae, f., *white clay, argil, potter's clay*. v. 43.
āridus, a, um, adj., (āreō, *be dry*), *dry, arid, parched, thirsty*; ex āridō, *on dry land*. 4.
ariēs, etis, m., *a ram, a battering ram*. ii. 32, iv. 17, vii. 23.
Ariovistus, ī, m., *king of the Suēbī*. i. 31, 32, 34, 36, 38, 40, 41-47, 50, 52, 53; v. 29; vi. 12.
Aristius, ī, m., *M.*, one of Caesar's military tribunes. vii. 42.
arma, ōrum, n. pl., *arms; war, warfare; rigging, tackling; the implements for all uses*. 80.
armāmenta, ōrum, n. pl., (armō), *implements, utensils for all purposes; cordage, cables, rigging of a ship*. iii. 14, iv. 29.
armātūra, ae, f., (armō), *armor; soldiers, soldiery*. 4.
armātus, a, um, partic. pass., (armō), *armed*: armātus, ī, m., *a soldier, an armed man*.
armō, āre, āvī, ātus, (arma), *to arm, equip; to fortify, strengthen*, 17.
Arpinēius, ī, m., *C.*, a Roman knight. v. 27, 28.
ars, artis, f., *art, method; skill, contrivance, stratagem*. vi. 17.
artē, adv., (artus), *closely, tightly, strictly*. iv. 17, vii. 23.
articulus, ī, m., (artus), *a joint, knot, juncture*. vi. 27.
artificium, ī, n., (artifex, *artificer*), *art, workmanship, skill; craft, artifice*. vi. 17, vii. 29.
artus, a, um, adj., (arceō, *shut in*), *close, narrow, confined, dense*. vii. 18.
Arvernī, ōrum, m. pl., *a powerful Celtic tribe in the modern Auvergne; city: Gergovia. They claimed to have descended from the Trojans (Lucan, i. 427: Arvernique ausi Lātiō sē fin-*

gere frātrēs sanguine ab Ilacō populī). i. 31, 45; vii. 3, 4, 5 seq., 34 seq., 64 seq., 75, 89 seq.; viii. 44, 46 (Arvernus sing.). See Vercassivellaunus, Vercingetorix, Celtillus, Gobarnitiō, Epasnactus, Critognātus.
arx, arcis, f., (cf. arceō, *shut in*), *a height, lofty place, citadel, stronghold*. i. 38, vii. 84.
ascendō, ere, ī, scēnsus, (ad + scandō, *climb*), *to mount up, go up, ascend*. 8.
ascēnsus, ūs, m., (ascendō), *an ascent, acclivity*. 9.
asciscō, ere, scīvī, scītus, (ad + sciscō, *approve, cf. sciō*), *to approve, receive, admit, join*. i. 5, iii. 9.
aspectus, ūs, m., (aspiciō, *look at*), *a seeing, beholding; appearance, looks, aspect*. v. 14; vii. 56, 76.
asper, era, erum, adj., *rough; severe, harsh, wild, cruel*. v. 45.
at, conj., *but, yet*. 31.
Atius, ī, m., *Q. Varius*, a prefect of horse. viii. 28.
atque, conj., (ad + que), *and, as, than*. 427.
Atrebātēs, um, m. pl., *a Belgian tribe. Capital: Nemetocenna (the modern Arras in the province of Artois)*; sing., Atrebās, iv. 35; vi. 6; viii. 6, 47. Nom. plur., Atrebātēs, ii. 4, 23; iv. 21; vii. 75. Dat. plur., Atrebātīs, ii. 16. Acc. plur., Atrebātas, viii. 7. Chieftain: Commius.
Atrius, ī, m., *Q.*, naval praefect, admiral. v. 9.
attexō, ere, —, tus, (ad + texō, *weave*), *to weave on, unite, add, join*. v. 40.
atingō, ere, tigī, tāctus, (ad + tangō), *to touch, border on, come in contact with; to arrive at, reach*. 10.
attribuō, ere, uī, ūtus, (ad + tribuō), *to assign, bestow, give, impute, ascribe*. 8.

attuli. See *adferō*.

auctor, ōris, m., (*augeō*), *an author, originator, a maker, an adviser, a director*. 4.

auctōritās, ātis, f., (*auctor*), *authority, influence, power, reputation*. 29.

auctus, a, um, partic. pass., (*augeō*), *increased*. i. 43.

audācia, ae, f., (*audāx*, *bold*), *boldness, presumption*. i. 18, vi. 34, vii. 5.

audācter and audāciter, adj., (*audāx*, *bold*), *boldly, confidently, courageously*. 7.

audeō, ēre, ausus, intr. semi-dep., *to dare, attempt*. 28.

audiō, īre, īvi, itus, *to hear, listen, perceive, obey*. 30.

auditiō, ōnis, f., (*audiō*), *hearing; report, rumor*. iv. 5, vii. 42.

augeō, ēre, auxi, auctus, *to increase, enlarge, improve, advance, command*. 14.

Aulercī, ōrum, m., *a great Celtic tribe*; vii. 57. Divided into four parts: (a) *Aulercī Brannovices* between the Saône and Loire; vii. 75. (b) *Aulercī Diablintres* in the modern province la Maine; iii. 9. (c) *Aulercī Cenomāni* in the Département de Sarthe; vii. 4, 75; viii. 7. (d) *Aulercī Eburovices* in the modern Normandie; capital: *Mediolānum* (modern *Evreux*); ii. 34, iii. 17, vii. 75. Chieftain: *Camulogenus*.

Aulus, i, m., *a praenomen*. i. 6.

auriga, ae, m., *a charioteer*. iv. 33.

auris, is, f., *the ear*. vi. 26, vii. 4.

Aurunculēius, *L. Cotta*, one of Caesar's legates. ii. 11; iv. 22, 23-37.

Auscī, ōrum, m., *a powerful tribe in Aquitania in the modern Département des Gers. Capital: Climberrum or Augusta (the modern Auch)*. iii. 27.

ausus, a, um. See *audeō*.

aut, conj., *or, or else*. 42.

autem, conj., *but; moreover*. 29.

autumnus, i, m., (*augeō*), *autumn*. vii. 25.

auxi. See *augeō*.

auxiliāris, e, adj., (*auxilium*), *auxiliary, aiding*. iii. 25.

auxilior, āri, ātus, dep., (*auxilium*), *to assist, help, aid*. iv. 29; vii. 25, 50.

auxilium, i, n., (*augeō*), *assistance, aid, help; remedy, auxiliary force*. 71.

Avaricēnsis, e, adj., (*Avaricum*), *of Avaricum*. vii. 47.

Avaricum, i, n., (*modern Bourges*), *a stronghold of the Biturigi on the banks of the Avara (modern Eore)*. vii. 13, 15, 18, 29 seq., 47, 52. [For the modern name *Bourges* = *Biturigi* see *Agedincum*.]

avāritia, ae, f., (*avārus*, *covetous*), *greedy desire, covetousness, avarice*. i. 40, vii. 42.

āvehō, ere, vexi, vectus, (*ā + vehō*), *to carry or convey away*. vii. 55.

āversus, a, um, partic. pass., (*āvertō*), *turned away, put to flight*. i. 26, ii. 26.

āvertō, ere, i, versus, (*ā + vertō*), *to turn away, remove, alienate*. 6.

avis, is, f., *a bird*. iv. 10.

avus, i, m., *a grandfather*. i. 12, iv. 12.

Axona, ae, f., (*modern Aisne*), *a river in Belgic Gaul, which empties into the Isara (modern Oise)*. ii. 5, 9.

B

Bacēnis silva, f., *the western part of the modern Thüringer Wald (forming a part of the Hercynia silva), divides the land of the Cherusci and Suēbi*. vi. 10.

Baculus, i, m. See *Sextius* (2).

Balbus, i, m. See *Cornelius*.

Baleārēs, ium, f. pl., *inhabitants of the Balearic Islands in the Mediterranean Sea, near the Spanish coast. Skillful slingers (funditōrēs)*. ii. 7.

Baleāris, e, adj., *Balearic*. ii. 7.
balteus, i, m., *a belt, a sword belt*. v. 44.
Balventius, i, m., *T.*, a Roman centurion. v. 35.

barbarus, a, um, adj., *barbarous, wild, uncultivated, savage*. 31.

Basilus, i, m. See *Minucius*.

Batāvōrum insula, f., "the island of the Batāvī," formed by the Vacalus (the northern branch of the Rhine) and the North Sea, the modern Buturve or Betau in Guelders. iv. 10.

Belgae, ārum, m. pl., the inhabitants of northern Gaul between the Sēquana (Seine), Mātrona (Marne), and Rhēnus (Rhine), of chiefly Germanic origin. i. 1; ii. 1 *seq.*, 14 *seq.*; 38; iii. 7, 11; iv. 38; v. 24; viii. 6, 38, 54. See *Ambiāni*, *Ambivaritī*, *Atrebātēs*, *Bellovacī*, *Caeroesī*, *Caletī*, *Ceutronēs*, *Condrūsī*, *Eburōnēs*, *Geidumnī*, *Grudiī*, *Levacī*, *Menapii*, *Morini*, *Nervii*, *Paemāni*, *Pleumoxii*, *Rēmi*, *Segni*, *Suessiōnēs*, *Viromandui*. It seems as if *Belgae* was also the name of a tribe (v. 12, 1).

Belgium, i, n., *the land of the Belgae*. v. 12, 24, 25; viii. 46, 49, 54.

bellicōsus, a, um, adj., (*bellicus*), *warlike*. i. 10, 33; iv. 1.

bellicus, a, um, adj., (*bellum*), *of war, warlike*. vi. 24.

bellō, āre, āvī, ātus, (*bellum*), *to wage war, carry on war*. 4.

Bellovacī, ōrum, m. pl., a Belgic tribe between the Sēquana (Seine), Samara (Somme), and Isara (Oise). The modern city Beauvais derives its name from it. Their town Bratuspantium (ii. 13) is the ruin Bratspanthe near the modern Breteuil. ii. 4, 5, 10, 13, 14; v. 56; vii. 59, 75; viii. 6, 7, 12, 14 *seq.*, 20, 38. Chieftain: *Correus*.

bellum, i, n., (*old duellum*), *war, cf. duo*, *war*. 171.

bene, adv., (*bonus*), *well, prosperously, happily*; comp. *melius*, sup. *optimē*. iii. 18, v. 57, vii. 44.

beneficium, i, n., (*bene + faciō*), *a kindness, benefit, favor, service*. 15.

benevolentia, ae, f., (*bene + volō*), *benevolence, good will, kindness*. v. 25 vii. 43.

Bibracte, is, n., capital of the Haedui, situated between the Arar (Aisne) and Liger (Loire), modern Autun in Bourgogne. (Locative: *Bibractī*, vii. 55, *Bibracte*, vii. 90.) i. 23; vii. 55, 63, 90; viii. 2, 4. Later name: *Augustodūnum*.

Bibrax, actis, f., a town of the Rēmi, either the modern Beaurieux, or situated on the top of the modern hill Vieux Laon. ii. 6.

Bibroci, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe in the southeastern part of Britain (modern Bray?). v. 21.

biduum, i, n., (*bis + diēs*), *two days*. 8.

biennium, i, n., (*bis + annus*), *two years*. i. 3.

Bigerriōnēs, um, m. pl., a tribe in Aquitānia. Modern Bigorre near the Pyrenees on the banks of the Adour. iii. 27.

bini, ae, a, distr. num. adj., (*bis*), *two by two, two*. 5.

bipartitō, adv., (*bis + partiō*), *in two divisions or lines*. i. 25, v. 32.

bipedālīs, e, adj., (*bis + pes*), *two feet long, wide, or thick*. iv. 17.

bis, num. adv., (for *dvīs*, same stem as *duo*), *twice*. v. 55, 66; vii. 73.

Biturigēs, um, m., a Celtic tribe. (1) *Biturigēs Vibisci* on the banks of the Garumna (Garonne), in the modern Médoc. Capital: *Burdigala* (*Bordeaux*). (2) *Biturigēs Cubi* in the modern Berry, Bourbonnais, and Touraine. Towns: *Noviodūnum* (*Nouan*), and *Avaricum* (*Bourges*). i. 18; vii. 5, 8, 9, 15; viii. 2 *seq.*, 11.

Boduōgnātus, ī, m., chieftain of the Nervii. ii. 23.

Boia, ae, f., the land of the Boii. vii. 14.

Boii, ōrum, m. pl., a Celtic tribe, which emigrated from Gaul into Germany (Bohemia). A part of them associated themselves with the Helvētīi. i. 5, 25, 28, 29; vii. 9, 10, 17, 57. Capital: Gorgobina, vii. 9.

bonitās, ātis, f., (bonus), goodness, advantage, favor, excellence. i. 28.

bonus, a, um, adj., (old duonus, good; cf. duo), good, well-disposed; comp. melior, sup. optimus; bonum, ī, n., an advantage, a good; bona, ōrum, n. pl., property, effects, goods. 9.

bōs, bovis, m. and f., an ox or cow. vi. 26, 28.

bracchium, ī, n., the arm. i. 25, vii. 56.

Brannovicēs, um, m. pl., a Celtic tribe, clients of the Haeduī. vii. 75. See Aulerci.

Brannovī, ōrum, m. pl. Probably a variant form of the above. vii. 75.

Bratuspantium, ī, n., a town of the Bellovacī, q. v.; ii. 13.

brevis, e, adj., short, transitory, brief. 8.

brevitās, ātis, f., (brevis), shortness. ii. 20, 30.

breviter, adv., (brevis), shortly, briefly, summarily. vii. 54.

Britanni, ōrum, m. pl., the inhabitants of Britannia. iv. 21; v. 11, 14, 21.

Britannia, ae, f., Britain (England and Scotland inhabited by Celts and an aboriginal tribe, Calēdonēs). iii. 9; iv. 20 seq.; v. 8, 12; vi. 13. See Anca-litēs, Bibroci, Cassi, Cenimāgni, Segontiāci, Trinobantēs. River: Tamesis. Chieftains: Taximagulus, Segovax, Mandubrācius, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Cassivelaunus. See Lugotorix. District: Cantium.

Britannicus, a, um, adj., (Britannia), of Britain. v. 4.

brūma, ae, f., (brevis), the winter solstice; winter. v. 13.

Brūtus, i, m., C., commander of Caesar's fleet. iii. 11, 14; vii. 9, 87.

C

C, for the Greek aspirate *ϥ*, *ϥ*, used by the Romans as the sign for 100, and later made to conform in shape to the initial letter of centum.

C., for *Gaius*. 4.

Cabillōnum, ī, n., a town of the Haeduī, modern Chalons-sur-Saône (Arar). vii. 42, 90.

Cabūrus. See Valerius.

cacūmen, inis, n., the top, extremity, point. vii. 73.

cadāver, eris, n., (cadō), a dead body, a corpse. ii. 27, vii. 77.

cadō, ere, cecidī, casūrus, to fall, perish, die. 5.

Cadurcī, ōrum, m. pl., a Celtic tribe in Aquitānia (in the modern Quercy). The modern Cahors is very likely identical with their old town Divōna. See Luc-terius. vii. 4, 64, 75; viii. 30, 32, 34. Town: Uxellodūnum.

caedēs, is, f., (caedō), a cutting, murder, slaughter. 12.

caedō, ere, cecidī, caesus, (for *scaidō, cut, cf. scindō, cut), to cut down, cut, fell; to beat, destroy, kill. iii. 29 (twice).

caelestis, e, adj., (caelum, sky), heavenly; plur., the gods. vi. 17.

caerimōnia, ae, f., a religious ceremony, sacred rites. vii. 2.

Caeroesi, ōrum, m. pl., a Belgic tribe, near the modern Liège. ii. 4.

caeruleus, a, um, adj., blue, azure, dark blue. v. 14.

Caesar, aris, m. (1) *C. Iūlius*, the author of the Commentārii, cf. Introduction. (2) *L.*, relative of (1) and his legate. vii. 65.

caesus, a, um. See caedō.

calamitās, ātis, f., disaster, injury, loss. 13.

Calēnus, i, m. See Fufius.

Caletī, ōrum, or Caletēs, um, m. pl., a Belgic tribe in the modern Normandie on both sides of the Sēquana (Seine), which belonged to the civitatēs Aremoricæ, q. v. Caletī, ii. 4, viii. 7. Caletēs, vii. 75.

callidus, a, um, adj., (calleō, be skillful), skillful, cunning, shrewd, experienced. iii. 18.

cālō, ōnis, m., a soldier's servant. 8.

campester, tris, tre, adj., (campus), of a plain; level, flat. 4.

campus, i, m., a plain, field. iii. 26, vii. 79.

Camulogenus, i, m., chieftain of the Aulerci. vii. 57, 59, 62.

Canīnius Rebilus, m., one of Cæsar's legates. vii. 83, 90; viii. 24, 27, 30, 33.

canō, ere, cecini, —, to sing, play upon an instrument; to sound, foretell. vii. 47.

Cantabrī, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe in Hispania Terraconnēnsis, in the modern Biscaya. Subdued by Augustus in a war from 25 to 19 B.C. iii. 26.

Cantium, i, n., the modern Kent in Britain. v. 13, 14, 22.

capillus, i, m., the hair. v. 14, vii. 48.

capiō, ere, cēpī, captus, to take; to seize, take prisoner; to get, reach; to choose, select; to captivate. See Idioms. 64.

capra, æ, f., a she-goat, a roe. vi. 27.

captivus, a, um, adj., (capiō), captive, taken prisoner, enslaved. 22.

captus, ūs, m., (capiō), capacity, understanding, notion. iii. 3.

captus, a, um. See capiō.

caput, itis, n., the head; person, man; mouth of a river, fountain, source. 11.

careō, ēre, uī, —, to be without, in want, free from; to be deprived of. vi. 38, vii. 17.

carīna, æ, f., the keel of a ship. iii. 13.

Carnutēs, um, m. pl., a tribe on both sides of the Liger (Loire), in the modern Orléans and Chartrain. Capital: Cēnabum (later civitās Aurelianārum, hence the modern name Orléans). ii. 35; v. 25, 29, 56; vi. 2 seq., 13, 44; vii. 2, 3, 11, 75; viii. 4, 5, 31, 38, 46. Their chieftains: Tasgētius, Cotuātus, Conconnetodumnus.

carō, carnis, f., flesh. v. 14, vi. 22.

carpō, ere, sī, tus, to pull, pluck; to blame, upbraid, slander, revile. iii. 17.

carrus, i, m., carrum, i, n., a wagon. 9.

cārus, a, um, adj., dear, beloved. v. 33, vii. 19.

Carvilius, i, m., a king of the Britons. v. 22.

casa, æ, f., a hut, a cabin of turf or straw. v. 43.

cāseus, i, m., cheese. vi. 22.

Cassī, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe in the south-east of Britain (modern Caishon?)

Cassiānus, a, um, adj., (Cassius), with Cassius. i. 13.

cassis, idis, f., a helmet. vii. 45.

Cassius, i, m., L. Cassius Longinus, Roman consul, defeated in 107 B.C. in an expedition against the Helvetii. i. 7, 12.

Cassivellaunus, i, m., a chieftain of the Britons. v. 11, 18-22.

castellum, i, n., (castrum, fort), a castle, fort, redoubt. 13.

Casticus, i, m., a noble Sequanian. i. 3.

castīgō, āre, āvī, ātus, to punish, reprove, correct, chastise. ii. 8.

castra, ōrum, n. pl., (castrum, fort), a camp, an encampment. 273.

cāsus, ūs, m., (cadō), a fall; accident, misfortune, chance; danger, extremity. 23.

- Catamantaloedēs**, is, m., a chieftain of the Sēquani. i. 3.
- catēna**, ae, f., a chain; fetter. 4.
- Caturigēs**, um, m. pl., a tribe in Gallia Provincia, in the modern Dauphiné (now Département des Hautes Alpes). i. 10.
- Catuvolcus**, i, m., chieftain of the Eburonēs. v. 24, 26; vi. 31.
- causa**, ae, f., a cause, reason; pretext, pretense; situation, condition; causā, for the sake, on account. 147.
- cautē**, adv., (caveō), cautiously, prudently, warily. v. 49.
- cautēs**, is, f., a cliff, a rock. iii. 13.
- cautus**, a, um, partic. pass. (caveō), cautious, wary, careful.
- Cavarillus**, i, m., chieftain of the Haeduī. vii. 67.
- Cavarīnus**, i, m., chieftain of the Senonēs. v. 54, vi. 5.
- caveō**, ēre, cāvī, cautus, to be on one's guard, take care; to take security. i. 14, vi. 2, vii. 2.
- cēdō**, ere, cessī, cessus, to yield, withdraw, retreat, retire. 12.
- celer**, eris, ere, adj., swift, speedy. iv. 23, vii. 47.
- celeritās**, ātis, f., (celer), swiftness, speed, celerity. 28.
- celeriter**, adv., (celer), swiftly, rapidly, quickly. 65.
- cēlō**, āre, āvī, ātus, to conceal, keep secret, hide. ii. 32, 33; vii. 80.
- Celtae**, ārum, m. pl., the inhabitants of Gaul between the Sēquana (Seine) and Garumna (Garonne). i. 1. See Introduction.
- Celtillus**, i, m., father of Vercingetorix. vii. 4.
- Cēnabēnsēs**, ium, m. pl., the inhabitants of Cēnabum, q. v.; vii. 11.
- Cēnabum**, i, m., capital of the Carnutēs, q. v., the modern Orléans (according to Napoleon, however, the modern Gien), vii. 3, 11, 17, 28; viii. 5, 6.
- Cēnimāgnī**, ōrum, m. pl., a Britannie tribe in the modern Suffolk. v. 21.
- Cenomānī**, ōrum, m. pl. See Aulercl.
- cēnsēō**, ēre, uī, sus, to estimate, judge; to decree, ordain, determine. 8.
- cēnsus**, ūs, m., (cēnsēō), a census; tribute, tax. i. 29.
- centum**, num., a hundred. 9.
- centuriō**, ōnis, m., (centum), a centurion. 25.
- cēpl**. See capiō.
- cernō**, ere, crēvī, certus, to see, perceive; to understand; to decide, determine. 7.
- certāmen**, inis, n., (certō, strive), a contest, a battle, an engagement. iii. 14, v. 44.
- certē**, adv., (certus), certainly, assuredly; at least. 5.
- certus**, a, um, adj., (cernō), established, determined, certain. See Idioms. 46.
- cervus**, i, m., a stag; stakes resembling stag's horns. vi. 26, vii. 72.
- cēspes**, itis, m., a turf or sod. iii. 25; v. 42, 51.
- cēterus**, a, um, adj., the rest, residue, remainder. 8.
- Centronēs**, um, m. pl. (1) A Belgic tribe in the western part of Flanders, near the modern Courtray or Brugge. v. 39. (2) A tribe in Gallia Provincia. Their capital: Darantasias (modern Ceutron in Savoy). i. 10.
- Cevenna mōns**, a mountain ridge in the southern part of Gaul, in the southwest connected with the Pyrenees, separating the lands of the Arverni and Helvii. Modern name: Cévennes. vii. 8, 56.
- Chēruscī**, ōrum, m. pl., a German tribe between the Weser, Elbe, Harz, and Aller, near the modern Hildesheim and Paderborn. vi. 10.
- cibārius**, a, um, adj., (cibus), of or for food; cibāria, ōrum, n. pl., food, provisions. i. 5, iii. 18, vi. 10.

- cibus**, *i*, m., *food, victuals, provender*.
iv. 1, vi. 38, vii. 78.
- Cicerō**, *ōnis*, m., *Q. Tullius*, one of Caesar's legates, the brother of M. Tullius Cicero, the orator. v. 24, 38 seq.; vi. 36; vii. 90.
- Cimberius**, *i*, m., chieftain of the Suēbī. i. 37.
- Cimbri**, *ōrum*, m. pl., a Germanic tribe, emigrating from their original seats in Jutland and on the shore of the North Sea. They were about to invade Italy, but were conquered by Marius (101 B.C.), near Vercellae. i. 33, 40; ii. 4, 29; vii. 77.
- Cingetorix**, *igis*, m. (1) A chieftain of the Trēveri. v. 3, 56; vi. 8. (2) A chieftain of the Britons. v. 22.
- cingō**, *ere*, *cinxī*, *cinctus*, to gird, encompass, environ, surround. 6.
- cippus**, *i*, m., a sharp stake, a palisade. vii. 73.
- circinus**, *i*, m., (cf. *circum*), a pair of compasses. i. 38.
- circiter**, adv., (cf. *circum*), about, near. 57.
- circueō**, *ire*. See *circumeō*.
- circuitus**, *ūs*, m., (cf. *circum*), a circuit; circumference; a way around. 10.
- circum**, prep. with acc., (acc. sing. of *circus*), around, about. 10.
- circumcidō**, *ere*, *cidi*, *cisus*, (circum + *caedō*), to cut around. v. 42, vii. 36.
- circumcisus**, *a*, um, partic. pass., (*circumcidō*), cut around; steep, craggy. vii. 36.
- circumclūdō**, *ere*, *clūsī*, *clūsus*, (circum + *claudō*), to shut around, hem in, surround. vi. 28.
- circumdō**, *dare*, *dedi*, *datus*, (circum + *dō*, put), to place around; to encompass. 6.
- circumdūcō**, *ere*, *dūxī*, *ductus*, (circum + *ducō*), to lead around. i. 38, iii. 26.
- circumeō**, *ire*, *ivi* or *ii*, *itus*, (circum + *eō*), to go around; to surround. 4.
- circumfundō**, *ere*, *fūdī*, *fūsus*, (circum + *fundō*), to pour around; to encompass, (pass., pour in, rush together). 4.
- circumiciō**, *ere*, *iēcī*, *iectus*, (circum + *iaciō*), to cast around; to compass. ii. 6.
- circummittō**, *ere*, *mīsī*, *missus*, (circum + *mittō*), to send around. v. 51, vii. 63.
- circummūniō**, *ire*, *ivi*, *itus*, (circum + *mūniō*), to fortify all around. ii. 30.
- circumplector**, *i*, —, (circum + *plectō*, twine), dep., to embrace; to surround. vii. 83.
- circumsistō**, *ere*, *stetī*, —, (circum + *sistō*), to stand around; besiege. 10.
- circumspiciō**, *ere*, *spēxī*, *spectus*, (circum + *speciō*, look), to look around, weigh, ponder, consider. v. 31; vi. 5, 43.
- circumvallō**, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, (circum + *vallō*, make a rampart), to surround with a rampart, circumvallate; to besiege, invest. 4.
- circumvehor**, *i*, *vectus*, (circum + *vehō*), dep., to be carried round; to ride around, sail around. vii. 45.
- circumveniō**, *ire*, *vēnī*, *ventus*, (circum + *veniō*), to come around, surround, invest; to encompass; to circumvent. 27.
- cis**, prep. with acc., on this side of. ii. 3, iv. 4.
- Cisalpina Gallia**, f., vi. 1. See *Gallia*.
- cisalpinus**, *a*, um, adj., (cis + *alpes*), on this side of the Alps; *cisalpine*. vi. 1.
- Cisrhēnāni Germāni**, m. pl. vi. 2.
- cisrhēnānus**, *a*, um, adj., (*Rhēnus*), on this side of the Rhine. vi. 2.
- Cita**, ae, m. See *Fūfius*.
- citātus**, *a*, um, partic. pass., (*citō*), urged; rapid. iv. 10.

citerior, *us*, gen. *ōris*, adj., (cf. *cis*),
hither, nearer. 9.

citō, adv., (*citus*, *swift*), quickly. iv. 3.

citō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, (*citus*, *swift*), to
rouse, excite; to hasten, summon. iv. 10.

citrā, prep. with acc., (*cis*), on this side
of. 6.

citrō, adv., (*cis*), hither; ultrō citrō-
que, to and fro. i. 42.

cīvis, *is*, m. and f., a citizen. 5.

cīvītās, *ātis*, f., (*cīvis*), citizenship, a
state. 182.

clam, adv., (acc. sg. fem., cf. *cēlō*),
secretly. 6.

clāmitō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, (*clāmō*, cry), to
cry out, shout, exclaim. v. 7, 29.

clāmōr, *ōris*, m., (*clāmō*, cry), a loud
cry, clamor, noise. 24.

clandestīnus, *a*, *um*, adj., (*clam*), se-
cret, private, hidden. vii. 1, 64.

clārus, *a*, *um*, adj., clear, manifest, evi-
dent; illustrious; distinct, loud. v. 30.

classis, *is*, f., a fleet. 5.

Claudius, *i*, m., Appius, consul in 54 B.C.
v. 1.

claudō, *ere*, *clausī*, *clausus*, (for
*clāvidō, lock, cf. *clāvis*, key), to
shut, encompass; āgmen claudere,
to bring up the rear. 6.

clāvus, *i*, m., a nail. iii. 13.

clēmētia, *ae*, f., (*clēmēns*, mild),
mildness, mercy, clemency. ii. 14, 31.

cliēns, *entis*, m. and f., a client, vassal,
retainer. 10.

clientēla, *ae*, f., (*cliēns*), clientship,
protection, patronage. 5.

clīvus, *i*, m., an ascent, elevation, a steep.
vii. 46, 47.

Clōdīus, *i*, m., P. Clōdīus Pulcher, Cice-
ro's enemy, assassinated by Milo in
52 B.C. vii. 1.

Cn. (= Gnaeus), m., a praenomen. 5.

coacervō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, (*com* +
acervō, heap up), to heap up, accu-
mulate, amass, pile up. ii. 27, vii. 70.

coāctus, *a*, *um*. See *cōgō*.

coāctus, *ūs*, m., (*cōgō*), compulsion.
v. 27.

coāgmentō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, (*cōgō*), to
join together, connect, construct. vii.
23.

Cocosātēs, *um*, m., a tribe in Aquitānia
in the modern Gascogne. iii. 27.

coēgī. See *cōgō*.

coēmō, *ere*, *ēmī*, *ēemptus*, (*com* +
emō), to buy up, purchase various arti-
cles. i. 3, vii. 55.

coēō, *ire*, *ivī* or *īī*, *itus*, (*com* + *eō*), to
go or come together, meet, assemble, col-
lect. vi. 22.

coepī, coepisse, coeptus, (*com* +
apiō, fasten), I began, commenced.
64.

coeptus, *a*, *um*, from *coepī*.

coerceō, *ēre*, *uī*, *itus*, (*com* + *arceō*,
shut in), to embrace, confine; to sur-
round, check, curb. i. 17, v. 7.

cōgitātiō, *ōnis*, f., (*cōgitō*), a think-
ing, reflection, thought, design, project.
vi. 22, vii. 32.

cōgitō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, (*com* + *agitō*),
to think, reflect upon, ponder, meditate.
10.

cōgnātiō, *ōnis*, f., (*com* + *nāscor*), re-
lationship by blood, kindred, relatives.
vi. 22, vii. 32.

cōgnōscō, *ere*, *ōvī*, *itus*, (*com* +
nōscō), to ascertain, learn, investigate,
discover. 130.

cōgō, *ere*, *coēgī*, *coāctus*, (*com* +
agō), to drive together, collect, assem-
ble; to compel, force, urge. 67.

cohors, *tis*, f., (cf. *hortus*, inclosure),
a cohort. 45.

cohortātiō, *ōnis*, f., (*cohortor*), an
exhortation, encouraging. ii. 25.

cohortor, *ārī*, *ātus*, dep., (*com* + *hor-*
tor), to exhort, encourage. 25.

coīre. See *coeō*.

collis, *is*, m., a hill, hillock, ascent. 36.

colō, ere, uī, cultus, to cultivate, attend to; to honor, worship, reverence. v. 12, vi. 17.

colōnia, ae, f., (colōnus, colonist), a colony, settlement. vi. 24.

color, ōris, m., color, complexion, hue, tint. v. 14, vi. 28, vii. 88.

com-, (older form of **cum**, with, retained in composition), together, completely. It is written **com-** before **p, b, m**; **cor-** before **r**; **co-** before vowels, **gn**, and **h**; **con-** before other consonants.

combūrō, ere, bussī, būstus, (cf. būstum, a place of burning), to burn up. i. 5.

comes, itis, m. and f., (com + eō), a companion, fellow, associate, comrade. vi. 30.

comitia, ōrum, n. pl., (comitium), the comitia; i.e. an assembly of the Roman people for electing magistrates. See below.

comitium, ī, n., (com + eō), a part of the Roman forum where voting was held. vii. 67.

comitor, āri, ātus, dep., (comes), to accompany, follow, attend, wait upon. vi. 8.

commeātus, ūs, m., (commeō), a passage; provisions, victuals, supplies; a furlough. 21.

commemorō, āre, āvī, ātus, (com + memorō, recount), to call to mind, mention, remind; to relate. 6.

commendō, āre, āvī, ātus, (com + mandō), to commit, intrust, commend. iv. 27.

commeō, āre, āvī, ātus, (com + meō, go), to go to and fro, come and go, resort, frequent. i. 1, vii. 36.

comminus, adv., (com + manus), hand to hand, in close combat. i. 52, v. 44, vii. 50.

commissūra, ae, f., (committō), a joining, joint, juncture. vii. 72.

committō, ere, mīsi, missus, (com + mittō), to join together; to intrust, commit; to risk, permit; committere proelium, to join or commence battle. 35.

Commius, ī, m., chieftain of the Atre-bātēs. iv. 21, 27, 35; v. 22; vi. 6; vii. 75, 76; viii. 6, 7, 10, 21, 23, 47.

commodē, adv., (commodus), fitly, suitably, conveniently. 10.

commodum, ī, n., (commodus), advantage, convenience; profit, utility. 8.

commodus, a, um, adj., (com + modus), convenient, suitable, advantageous; agreeable, favorable. 5.

commonefaciō, ere, fēcī, factus, (com + moneō + faciō), to remind, admonish, warn. i. 19.

commoror, āri, ātus, dep., (com + moror), to stop, pause, linger, stay. v. 7, vii. 32.

commoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, (com + moveō), to move, disturb, excite; to affect, influence. 9.

communicō, āre, āvī, ātus, (commūnis), to communicate, share, impart; to plan, concert. 11.

communiō, ire, ivī or ii, itus, (com + mūniō), to fortify, fence about, secure. i. 8, v. 49, vi. 7.

commūnis, e, adj., (com + mūnus), common, ordinary, general, belonging to the public. 31.

commūtātiō, ōnis, f., (commūtō), a change. 8.

commūtō, āre, āvī, ātus, (com + mūtō), to change, exchange, alter. 5.

comparō, āre, āvī, ātus, (compār, equal), to compare. i. 31, vi. 24.

comparō, āre, āvī, ātus, (com + parō), to prepare, provide, get ready; to acquire. 19.

compellō, ere, pulī, pulsus, (com + pellō), to drive together, assemble, collect; to force, compel, constrain. 7.

compendium, ī, n., (com + pendō), *what is weighed together, gain.* vii. 43.

comperiō, ire, perī, pertus, (com + pariō), *to learn, discover, ascertain.* 8.

complector, ī, plexus, dep., (com + plectō, *twine*), *to embrace, encircle, inclose.* i. 20; vii. 72, 74.

compleō, ēre, ēvī, —, (com + pleō, *fill*), *to fill, finish, complete.* 20.

complūrēs, a, or ia, gen. ium, adj., (com + plūs), *a great many, very many.* 39.

comportō, āre, āvī, ātus, (com + portō), *to bring together, collect, bring.* 8.

comprehendō, ere, dī, sus, (com + prehendō), *to seize, bring together, arrest; to include, embrace.* 11.

comprobō, āre, āvī, ātus, (com + probō), *to approve, confirm, sanction, make good.* v. 58.

compulsus, a, um. See **compellō**.

cōnātum, ī, n., (cōnor), *an attempt, effort, endeavor.* i. 3.

cōnātus, ūs, m., (cōnor), *an attempt, endeavor, undertaking, effort.* i. 8.

concēdō, ere, cessī, cessus, (com + cēdō), *to retire; to grant, yield; to allow, permit.* 14.

concertō, āre, āvī, ātus, (com + certō, *strive*), *to contend, strive.* vi. 5.

concessus, ūs, m., (concēdō), *permission, leave, allowing.* vii. 20.

concidō, ere, cidi, cīsus, (com + caedō), *to cut to pieces, destroy, slay; to divide.* i. 12, ii. 11, iii. 9.

concidō, ere, cidi, —, (com + cadō), *to fall, die, perish.* 8.

conciliō, āre, āvī, ātus, (concilium), *to gain over, obtain, reconcile.* 4.

concilium, ī, n., *an assembly, a council, a meeting.* 35.

concisus, a, um. See **concidō**.

concitō, āre, āvī, ātus, (com + citō),

to excite, stir up, rouse, provoke, urge. 5.

conclāmō, āre, āvī, ātus, (com + clamō, *cry*), *to cry out, proclaim, shout.* 9.

conclūdō, ere, clūsī, clūsus, (com + claudō), *to shut up, inclose, confine.* iii. 9.

Conconnetodumnus, ī, m., *chieftain of the Carnutēs.* vii. 3.

concrepō, āre, uī, itus, (com + crepō, *sound*), *to make a noise, rattle, ring, clash.* vii. 21.

concurrō, ere, curri or cucurri, cursus, (com + currō), *to run or rush together, meet, charge, engage in fight; to concur, happen together.* 14.

conkursō, āre, —, —, (com + cursō, *run*), *to rush together, run up and down.* v. 33, 50.

conkursus, ūs, m., (concurrō), *a running together, an engagement, collision.* 8.

condemnō, āre, āvī, ātus, (com + damnō), *to condemn, charge with* vii. 19.

condiciō, ōnis, f., (condicō, *agree*), *condition, quality, state; terms, stipulation.* 17.

condōnō, āre, āvī, ātus, (com + dōnō), *to give up, forgive; to bestow.* i. 20 (twice).

Condrūsī, ōrum, m. pl., *a Belgic tribe on the right side of the Mosa (Meuse), near Liège.* ii. 4, iv. 6, vi. 32.

condūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, (com + dūcō), *to bring together, conduct; to hire.* 6.

cōnfectus, a, um. See **cōnficiō**.

cōnferciō, ire, —, fertus, (com + farciō, *stuff*), *to stuff, cram, press together, crowd.* 9.

cōnferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, (com + ferō), *to bring together, gather; to compare; to ascribe, impute.* 26.

cōnfertus, a, um, partic. pass., (cōnferciō), dense, crowded, full, thick, close. 9.

cōnfestim, adv., immediately. 7.

cōnficiō, ere, fēci, fectus, (com + faciō), to accomplish, make, perform, compose, finish, execute; to weaken, exhaust; to collect, furnish. 48.

cōnfidō, ere, fisus, semi-dep., (com + fidō, trust), to confide in, trust, rely on. 23.

cōnfigō, ere, fixi, fixus, (com + figō, fix), to fasten together. iii. 13.

cōnfinis, e, adj., (com + finis), contiguous, adjoining, bordering upon. vi. 3.

cōnfinium, i, n., (cōnfinis), a boundary, border, limit, frontier. v. 24.

cōnfiō, fieri, —, used as pass. of **conficiō**, to be accomplished, performed. vii. 58.

cōnfirmātiō, ōnis, f., (cōnfirmō), assurance, proof, confirmation. iii. 18.

cōnfirmō, āre, āvi, ātus, (com + firmō), to strengthen, establish, confirm, encourage; to secure, affirm. 32.

cōnfishus, a, um. See **cōnfidō**.

cōnfiteor, ēri, fessus, dep., (com + fateor, acknowledge), to acknowledge, confess, own, admit, grant, concede. v. 27.

cōnfixus, a, um. See **cōnfigō**.

cōnflagrō, āre, āvi, ātus, (com + flagro, burn), to be on fire, burn. v. 43.

cōnflīctō, āre, āvi, ātus, (cōnfligō), to strike or dash together; to trouble, distress. v. 35.

cōnfligō, ere, flixi, flictus, (com + fligō, strike), to strike or dash together, engage, fight. 4.

cōnfluēns, entis, m., (confluo), the confluence. iv. 15. **Cōnfluēns Mosae et Rhēni**, m., see **Mosa**.

cōnfluō, ere, fluxi, —, (com + fluō), to flow together; to flock together. vii. 44.

cōnfugiō, ere, fūgi, —, (com + fugiō), to flee for succor, have recourse to. vi. 5.

cōnfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsus, (com + fundō), to pour together, join, mix. vii. 75.

concredior, i, gressus, dep., (com + gradior, advance), to move with; to accost, meet; to contend, fight, engage. 8.

congressus, ūs, m., (concredior), a meeting. iii. 13.

coniciō, ere, conieci, coniectus, (com + iaciō), to throw or hurl together, discharge, cast; to divine, conjecture. 36.

coniectūra, ae, f., (coniciō), conjecture, conclusion. vii. 35.

coniunctim, adv., (coniungō), conjointly, together. vi. 19.

coniungō, ere, iūnxi, iūnctus, (com + iungō), to join together, unite, associate. 19.

coniūnx, ugis, m. and f., (coniungō), husband; wife. vii. 14.

coniūrātiō, ōnis, f., (coniūrō), a conspiracy, confederacy, combination. 5.

coniūrō, āre, āvi, ātus, (com + iūrō), to conspire, swear together, plot, combine. 5.

conlātus, a, um. See **conferō**.

conlaudō, āre, āvi, ātus, (com + laudō), to praise, extol, commend. 4.

conligō, āre, āvi, ātus, (com + ligō, bind), to bind together, connect. i. 25.

conligō, ere, lēgi, lēctus, (com + legō, collect), to collect, gather together, assemble; to acquire, obtain. 8.

conlocō, āre, āvi, ātus, (com + locō, place), to put, place, erect, set up; to arrange. See **Idioms**. 34.

conloquium, i, n., (conloquor), conference, interview, conversation. 15.

conloquor, i, locūtus, dep., (com + loquor), to converse, speak with, confer. 11.

cōnor, āri, ātus, dep., to undertake, strive, attempt, endeavor. 33.

conquiescō, ere, quiescī, quiescētus, (com + quiescō, be quiet), to repose, be at rest. vii. 46.

conquirō, ere, quisivī, quisitus, (com + quaerō), to search for, seek after, collect, procure. 6.

conquisitus, a, um. See **conquirō**.

cōnsanguineus, a, um, adj., (com + sanguis), related by blood, kindred. 4.

cōnsanguineus, i, m., a relation, a relative. See above.

cōnscendō, ere, i, scēsus, (com + scandō, climb), to ascend, mount, embark. iv. 23; v. 7, 39.

cōnscientia, ae, f., (com + sciō), joint knowledge; conscience, consciousness, feeling. v. 56.

cōnsciscō, ere, scivī, scītus, (com + sciscō, approve, cf. sciō), to determine, decree, execute. See Idioms. i. 4, iii. 24.

cōnscius, a, um, adj., (com + sciō), conscious, privy to, witness of, accessory, accomplice. i. 14.

cōnscribō, ere, scripsī, scriptus, (com + scribō), to write together, enlist, enroll, levy. 9.

cōnsecrō, āre, āvī, ātus, (com + sacrō, make sacred), to make sacred, consecrate, hallow. vi. 13, 17.

cōnsector, āri, ātus, dep., (consequor), to follow after eagerly, pursue. 6.

cōnsecūtus, a, um. See **cōnsequor**.

cōnsēnsiō, ōnis, f., (cōnsentiō), agreement, consent, unanimity. vii. 76.

cōnsēnsus, ūs, m., (cōnsentiō), agreement, consent. 7.

cōnsentiō, ire, sēnsī, sēnsus, (com + sentiō), to agree, be of the same opinion; to conspire. ii. 3 (twice), v. 29.

cōnsequor, i, secūtus, dep., (com + sequor), to follow, overtake, pursue, acquire, obtain, attain. 16.

cōnservō, āre, āvī, ātus, (com +

servō), to preserve, defend, protect, maintain; to observe; to save. 8.

Cōnsidius, i, m., P., a soldier in Caesar's army. i. 21, 22.

cōnsidō, ere, sēdī, sessus, (com + sidō for si(s)e d-ō, same root as sedēō, sit), to sit down, settle, encamp; to stop. 24.

cōnsilium, i, n., deliberation, advice, counsel, wisdom, purpose, plan, design, judgment, determination; a council. 123.

cōnsimilis, e, adj., (com + similis), very similar, like. ii. 11, v. 12, vi. 27.

cōnsistō, ere, stitī, stitus, (com + sistō), to stand, halt, stay, remain; to consist. 46.

cōnsōbrinus, i, m., a cousin. vii. 76.

cōnsōlor, āri, ātus, dep., (com + sōlor, comfort), to console, solace, comfort, encourage, cheer. 5.

cōnspectus, ūs, m., (conspiciō), look, sight, presence, view. 17.

cōnspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus, (com + speciō, look), to see, observe, behold, discern. 17.

cōnspicor, āri, ātus, dep., to see, descry, observe, discern. 11.

cōnspirō, āre, āvī, ātus, (con + spirō, breath), to blow together; to agree, conspire. iii. 10.

cōnstanter, adv., (cōnstāns, steadfast), firmly, consistently, steadily. ii. 2, iii. 25.

cōnstantia, ae, f., (constāns, steadfast), firmness, consistency, resolution. i. 40, vii. 77.

cōnsternō, āre, āvī, ātus, to alarm, terrify, dismay. vii. 30.

cōnsternō, ere, strāvī, strātus, (com + sternō, strew), to strew over. iv. 17, 23.

cōnstipō, āre, āvī, ātus, (com + stipō, stuff), to press or crowd together, pack. v. 43.

- cōstituō**, ere, uī, ūtus, (com + statuō), to place, put, set down, station; to appoint, determine, fix; to arrange, construct. 89.
- cōnstō**, āre, stitī, —, (com + stō), to stand, exist, remain, continue; to agree, depend upon; cōnstat, it is evident. 14.
- cōnstrātus**, a, um. See cōnsternō.
- cōnsuēscō**, ere, suēvī, suētus, (com + suēscō, be accustomed), to be accustomed, accustom one's self, be wont. 38.
- cōnsuētūdō**, inis, f., (cōnsuēscō), custom, habit, use, intimacy. 31.
- cōnsuētus**, a, um. See cōnsuēscō.
- cōnsul**, ulis, m., a consul. 9.
- cōnsulātus**, ūs, m., (cf. cōnsul), consulship. i. 35.
- cōnsulō**, ere, uī, ultus, (cf. cōnsul), to consult, deliberate, take counsel, provide for; to respect. 12.
- cōnsultō**, āre, āvī, ātus, (cōnsultum), to consult, deliberate, take counsel. v. 53, vii. 77.
- cōnsultō**, adv., (cōnsultum), designedly, on purpose. 5.
- cōnsultum**, ī, n., (cōnsulō), decree, deliberation, decision, statute. i. 43.
- cōnsūmō**, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, (com + sumō), to waste, destroy, eat up, to spend. 14.*
- cōnurgō**, ere, surrēxī, surrēctus, (com + surgō, rise), to rise together, pay respect, rise up. v. 31, vi. 23.
- contabulō**, āre, āvī, ātus, (com + tabula), to cover with board, plank, floor. v. 40, vii. 22.
- contāgiō**, ōnis, f., (contingō), contact; contagion, infection. vi. 13.
- contāminō**, āre, āvī, ātus, (com + tangō), to pollute, stain, defile, contaminate. vii. 43.
- contegō**, ere, tēxī, tēctus, (com + tegō), to cover, conceal. vii. 85.
- contemnō**, ere, tempsī, temptus, (com + temnō, slight), to despise, slight, contemn. v. 51.
- contemptiō**, ōnis, f., (contemnō), contempt, scorn, disdain. 4.
- contemptus**, ūs, m., (contemnō), contempt, disdain, scorn. ii. 30.
- contendō**, ere, ī, tentus, (com + tendō), to stretch, endeavor, draw, exert one's self; to maintain, contend; to go to, hasten. 75.
- contentiō**, ōnis, f., (contendō), straining, endeavor, contest, zeal, dispute. 7.
- contentus**, a, um, adj., (contineō), content, satisfied. vii. 64.
- contestor**, āri, ātus, dep., (com + testor, witness), to call to witness, conjure, invoke. iv. 25.
- contexō**, ere, uī, tus, (com + texō, weave), to weave, join together, connect, construct. iv. 17, vi. 16, vii. 23.
- contigi**. See contingō.
- continēns**, entis, partic. pres., (contineō), bordering upon, adjoining; uninterrupted, continual.
- continēns**, entis, f., (contineō, sc. terra), the continent. 10.
- continenter**, adv., (contineō), continually, uninterruptedly. i. 1, 26; iii. 5.
- continentia**, ae, f., (contineō), moderation, self-control. vii. 52.
- contineō**, ēre, tinuī, tentus, (com + teneō), to hold together, restrain; to occupy, keep, hold. 53.
- contingō**, ere, tigī, tāctus, (com + tangō), to touch, border on; to occur happen. 8.
- continuātiō**, ōnis, f., (continuo), continuance, connection, continuation. iii. 29.
- continuo**, adv., (continuus), at once, immediately. vii. 42.
- continuus**, a, um, adj., (contineō), continuous, successive. 4.

- cōntiō**, ōnis, f., (**conventiō**, *meeting, com + veniō*), an assembly, a council, a meeting. v. 52; vii. 52, 53.
- cōntiōnor**, āri, ātus, dep., (**cōntiō**), to harangue, address the people, make a speech. vi. 47.
- contrā**, prep. with acc., (abl. sing. fem.), contrary to, against, opposite to. 4.
- contrā**, adv., (**contrā**), on the contrary, on the other hand. 53.
- contrahō**, ere, trāxi, trāctus, (**com + trahō**), to draw together, collect, unite, contract, draw in. 5.
- contrārius**, a, um, adj., (**contrā**), contrary, opposite; **ex contrāriō**, on the contrary. 4.
- contrōversia**, ae, f., (**controversus**, *disputed*), contention, controversy, dispute, debate. 14.
- cōntuli**. See **cōnferō**.
- contumēlia**, ae, f., *disgrace, insult, violence, rudeness, outrage*. 7.
- convalescō**, ere, valui, —, (cf. **valeō**), to become strong; to gain strength. vi. 36.
- convallis**, is, f., (**com + vallis**), a valley inclosed on all sides. iii. 20, v. 32.
- convehō**, ere, vexi, vectus, (**com + vehō**), to collect, bring together. vii. 74.
- conveniō**, ire, vēni, ventus, (**com + veniō**), to assemble, meet; to be agreed upon, suit; to flock; **convenit**, it is agreed upon; it is fit, right. 61.
- conventus**, ūs, m., (**conveniō**), a court, assembly, meeting, assizes. 7.
- convertō**, ere, i, versus, (**com + vertō**), to turn about, direct, alter, change. 13.
- Convictolitāvis**, is, (acc. 1m.), m., a noble Haeduan. vii. 32, 33, 37, 42, 55, 67.
- convincō**, ere, vici, victus, (**com + vincō**), prove, overcome, convince. i. 40.
- convocō**, āre, āvi, ātus, (**com + vocō**), to summon, call together, assemble. 17.
- coorior**, iri, ortus, dep., (**com + orior**), to rise, rise in mutiny, break out, appear; to intervene, come to pass, occur. 5.
- cōpia**, ae, f., (**com + ops**), abundance, plenty, number, supply, resources; provisions; **cōplae**, f. pl., troops, forces. 148.
- cōpiōsus**, a, um, adj., (**cōpia**), copious, rich, well supplied. i. 23.
- cōpula**, ae, f., a grapnel. iii. 13.
- cor**, cordis, n., the heart; **cordi esse**, to be dear. vi. 19.
- cōram**, adv., (acc. sg. fem., cf. **com + ōs**, *face*), in presence of, before. i. 32, vi. 8.
- Coriosolitēs**, um, m. pl., a tribe in the modern Bretagne near Corseult (near St. Malo). vii. 75. Acc. **Coriosilitas**. ii. 34, iii. 7 (**civitas Aremorica**).
- corium**, i, n., skin or hide of a beast, leather. vii. 22.
- Cornēlius** Balbus, m., an intimate friend of Caesar. viii. preface.
- cornū**, ūs, n., a horn, trumpet, cornet; wing of an army. 14.
- corōna**, ae, f., chaplet, crown, wreath. iii. 16, vii. 72.
- corpus**, oris, n., a body, person. 13.
- Correus**, i, m., chieftain of the Bellovacī. viii. 6, 7, 17 *sq.*
- corrumpō**, ere, rūpi, ruptus, (**com + rumpō**, *break*), to damage, injure, destroy, corrupt, waste. vii. 55, 64.
- cortex**, icis, m. and f., bark. ii. 33.
- Cōrus**, i, m., the northwest wind. v. 7.
- cotidiānus**, a, um, adj., (**cotidiē**), every day, daily; usual. 8.
- cotidiē**, adv., (**quot + diē**), every day, daily. 11.
- Cotta**, ae, m. See **Aurunculēius**.
- Cotuātus**, i, m., chieftain of the Carnutēs. vii. 3, viii. 38.
- Cotus**, i, m., a noble Haeduan. vii. 32, 33, 39, 67.

crassitūdō, *inis*, *f.*, (*crassus*, *thick*), *thickness*. iii. 13, vii. 73.

Crassus, *i*, *m.*, (1) *M. Licinius*, triumvir, with Caesar and Pompēius, died 53 B.C., on expedition against the Parthae. i. 21, iv. 1, viii. 53. (2) *P. Licinius*, the son of (1), one of Caesar's legates. i. 52; ii. 34; iii. 7, 8, 20 ff.; viii. 46. (3) *M. Licinius*, son of (1), and brother of (2), Caesar's quaestor. v. 24, 46; vi. 6.

crātis, *is*, *f.*, *a hurdle, fascine, wicker-work*. 8.

crēber, *bra. brum*, *adj.*, *repeated, frequent, crowded*. 14.

crēbrō, *adv.*, *often, frequently*. vii. 41.

crēdō, *ere*, **crēdidī**, **crēditus**, *to trust, believe, suppose, imagine, give credit to, think; to commend*. 7.

cremō, *āre*, **āvī**, **ātus**, *to burn*. i. 4, vi. 19.

creō, *āre*, **āvī**, **ātus**, *to make, produce, create, elect, appoint*. 5.

Crēs, *ētis*, *adj.*, *Cretan*. ii. 7.

crēscō, *ere*, **crēvī**, **crētus**, *to increase, grow, thrive, become greater, come forth; to rise in influence*. i. 20, vii. 55.

Crētes, (*sing. Crēs*), *um*, *m. pl.*, *inhabitants of the island Crēta, skillful bowmen*. (Acc. *Crētas*.) ii. 7.

Critognātus, *i*, *m.*, *a noble Arvernian*. vii. 77.

cruciātus, *ūs*, *m.*, (**cruciō**, *torture*), *torture, torment, distress*. 9.

crūdēlitās, *ātis*, *f.*, (**crūdēlis**, *cruel*), *cruelty*. i. 32, vii. 77.

crūdēlīter, *adv.*, (**crūdēlis**, *cruel*), *cruelly*. i. 31, vii. 38.

crūs, **crūris**, *n.*, *the leg*. vi. 27.

cubile, *is*, *n.*, *a couch, a bed*. vi. 27.

culmen, *inis*, *n.*, *the summit, top of a thing*. iii. 2.

culpa, *ae*, *f.*, *an offense, fault*. iv. 27, v. 32.

cultūra, *ae*, *fem.*, (**colō**), *cultivation agri cultūra, cultivation of the field, agriculture*. 6.

cultus, *ūs*, *m.*, (**colō**), *refinement, culture, cultivation, dress, mode of living*. 4.

cum, *prep.* with the *abl.*, (old form *com* retained in composition), *with, among, along with*. In composition, *together, completely*. 250.

cum, *conj.*, (*acc. sing. of relative*), *when, since, although*. 289.

cunctātiō, *ōnis*, *f.*, (**cunctor**), *lingering, delay, hesitation*. iii. 18, 24.

cunctor, *ārī*, **ātus**, *dep.*, *to linger, delay; to doubt, hesitate*. iii. 23, iv. 25.

cūctus, *a, um*, *adj.*, (**coniūctus**), *all together, all, entire, the whole*. ii. 29; vii. 10, 11.

cuneātim, *adv.*, (**cuneus**), *in form of a wedge*. vii. 28.

cuneus, *i*, *m.*, *a wedge*. vi. 40.

cuniculus, *i*, *m.*, *a rabbit; mine, burrow*. 5.

cupidē, *adv.*, (**cupidus**), *eagerly*. 4.

cupiditās, *ātis*, *f.*, (**cupidus**), *eagerness, desire, avarice, cupidity*. 6.

cupidus, *a, um*, *adj.*, (*cf. cupiō*), *eager, desirous, fond*. 5.

cupiō, *ere*, **ivī**, **itus**, *to wish, desire, long for; to favor, wish well to; to covet*. 5.

cūr, *adv.*, *why*. 5.

cūra, *ae*, *f.*, *attention, diligence, care*. i. 32, 40; vii. 65.

Curiō, *ōnis*, *m.*, *C. Scribonius*, *a tribune of the plebs*. viii. 52.

cūrō, *āre*, **āvī**, **ātus**, (**cūra**), *attend to, take care, care for*. 12.

currō, *ere*, **cucurri**, **cursus**, *to run, flow*. vii. 24.

currus, *ūs*, *m.*, *a chariot, car, wagon*. iv. 33.

cursus, *ūs*, *m.*, *a running, speed, race, course, voyage*. 13.

custōdia, *ae, f.*, (*custōs*), *guard, custody, charge, care, the act of keeping.* 5.

custōdiō, *ire, ivi, itus*, (*custōs*), *to watch, keep, guard, observe.* vi. 4.

custōs, *ōdis, m. and f.*, *a keeper, watch, guard, preserver, spy.* 5.

D

D, half of the Greek aspirate Φ, φ, (see **M**, sign for 1000); used by the Romans as the sign for 500.

D., for *Decimus*.

Dāci, *ōrum, m. pl.*, *a Thracian tribe in Dacia (modern Hungary, Siebenbürgen, Bukowina, Galicia, southern part). Roman province since 105 B.C.* vi. 25.

dāmnō, *āre, āvi, ātus*, (*damnum*), *to sentence, condemn.* i. 4, v. 55.

damnum, *i, n.*, *damage, loss, injury.* vi. 44.

Dānuvius, *i, m.*, *the Danube (Donau).* vi. 25.

dē, *prep. with the abl.*, (*abl. form*), *down from, from, concerning, for, after, during, of.* See **Idioms**. In composition, *down, away, off.* 205. See page 57 e.

dēbeō, *ēre, uī, itus*, (*dē + habeō*), *to owe, be in debt; dēbet, ought; pass., to be due.* 13.

dēcēdō, *ere, cessi, cessus*, (*dē + cēdō*), *to go away, depart, withdraw.* 5.

decem, *ten.* 11.

dēcernō, *ere, crēvi, crētus*, (*dē + cernō*), *to decide, determine, resolve, decree, deliberate; to fight, contend, engage.* 8.

dēcertō, *āre, āvi, ātus*, (*dē + certō*, *strive*), *to strive, contend for, fight.* 6.

dēcessus, *ūs, m.*, (*dēcēdō*), *a going away, departure, withdrawal.* iii. 13.

Decetia, *ae, f.*, *a town of the Haedui on the Liger (Loire), the modern Decize.* vii. 33.

dēcidō, *ere, idi, —*, (*dē + cadō*), *to fall from, fall down.* i. 48.

decimus, *a, um, num. adj.*, *tenth.* 15.

dēcipiō, *ere, cēpi, ceptus*, (*dē + capiō*), *to ensnare, catch, deceive, beguile.* i. 14.

dēclārō, *āre, āvi, ātus*, (*dē + clarō*, *make clear*), *to proclaim, declare, manifest, evince.* i. 50.

dēclivis, *e, adj.*, (*dē + clivus*), *descending, sloping.* 4.

dēclivitās, *ātis, f.*, (*dēclivis*), *a declivity, a descent.* vii. 85.

dēcrētum, *i, n.*, (*dēcernō*), *a resolution, decree, decision.* vi. 13 (twice), vii. 34.

dēcrētus, *a, um.* See *dēcernō*.

decumānus, *a, um, adj.*, (*decem*), *of or belonging to the tenth.* ii. 24, iii. 25, vi. 37.

decuriō, *ōnis, m.*, *the commander of a decuria or ten horsemen; a decurion.* i. 23.

dēcurrō, *ere, cucurri or curri, cursus* (*dē + currō*), *to run down, to hasten.* 4.

dēdecus, *oris, n.*, (*dē + decus, honor*), *dishonor, disgrace, infamy, shameful action.* iv. 25.

dedi. See *dō*.

dēdidī. See *dēdō*.

dēditicius, *a, um, adj.*, (*dēdō*), *having surrendered.* 4.

dēditicius, *i, m.*, (*dēdō*), *one who has surrendered, a prisoner.*

dēditio, *ōnis, f.*, (*dēdō*), *capitulation, surrender.* 19.

dēditus. See *dēdō*.

dēdō, *ere, didi, ditus*, (*dē + dō*), *to surrender, give up, devote, submit, give.* 16.

dēdūcō, *ere, dūxi, ductus*, (*dē + dūcō*), *to bring or pull down, conduct, remove, withdraw; to influence, induce, lead, move; to accompany, conduct, e.g. a bride to her husband.* 31.

dēest. See dēsum.

dēfatigātiō, ōnis, f., (dēfatigō), *exhaustion, weariness*. iii. 19.

dēfatigō, āre, āvī, ātus, (dē + fatigō, *tire*), *to fatigue, exhaust, weary*. 5.

dēfectiō, ōnis, f., (dēficiō), *revolt, defection; failure, want*. 12.

dēfendō, ere, ī, fēnsus (dē + obsolete fendō, *smite*), *to keep off, ward off, repel; to protect*. 28.

dēfēnsiō, ōnis, f., (dēfendō), *defense*. ii. 7, vii. 23.

dēfēnsor, ōris, m., (dēfendō), *a defender, protector; defense, advocate*. 8.

dēferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, (dē + ferō), *to carry or bring away, convey; to report, inform, confer, offer*. 26.

dēfessus, a, um, adj., (dēfetiscor, *be weary*), *fatigued, wearied*. 6.

dēficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, (dē + faciō), *to be wanting, fail; to withdraw, revolt, forsake, leave; animō dēficere, to be disheartened*. 13.

dēfigō, ere, fixī, fixus, (dē + figō, *fix*), *to fix down, fasten, plant*. iv. 17; v. 18, 44.

dēfiniō, ire, ivī, itus, (dē + finiō), *to limit, define, determine, prescribe, resolve, explain*. vii. 83.

dēfixus, a, um. See dēfigō.

dēfluō, ere, fluxī, fluxus, (dē + fluō), *to flow down, flow apart*. iv. 10.

dēfore = dēfutūrum esse, *to be about, to be wanting*. v. 5, 6.

dēfōrmis, e, adj., (dē + fōrma), *misshapen, ugly, unsightly, deformed*. iv. 2, vii. 23.

dēfugiō, ere, fūgī, —, (dē + fugiō), *to shun, flee, avoid*. vi. 13.

dēfui. See dēsum.

dēiciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, (dē + iaciō), *to throw down, dislodge, overthrow, prostrate, kill, slay; to disappoint*. 12.

dēiectus, ūs, m., (dēiciō), *a declivity, depression, steep place, descent*. ii. 8, 22, 29.

dēinceps, adv., (dēin, *next* + capiō), *successively, besides, next in succession, after that, moreover*. 6.

dēinde, adv., (dē + inde), *afterwards, then, next*. 7.

dēlātus, a, um. See dēferō.

dēlectō, āre, āvī, ātus, (dē + laciō, *allure*), *to please, delight, allure*. iv. 2.

dēlēctus, ūs, m., (dēligō), *a levy, conscription*. vi. 1 (twice); vii. 1, 3.

dēleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus, *to efface, destroy, overthrow; to blot out*. 6.

dēlīberō, āre, āvī, ātus, (dē + lībra, *balance*), *to discuss, consider, advise, determine*. i. 7, iv. 9, vii. 15.

dēlībrō, āre, āvī, ātus, (dē + liber, *bark*), *to peel, take off the bark*. vii. 73.

dēlictum, ī, n., (dēlinquō, *fail in duty*), *an offense, crime, sin, fault*. vii. 4.

dēligō, āre, āvī, ātus, (dē + ligō, *bind*), *to tie, fasten, bind*. 4.

dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus, (dē + legō, *collect*), *to select, choose, pick out, detach, cull*. 26.

dēlītēscō, ere, lītūl, —, (dē + latēscō, *hide*), *to be concealed, lie hid, lurk*. iv. 32.

dēmēntia, ae, f., (dēmēns, *without mind*), *folly, madness*. iv. 13.

dēmetō, ere, messui, messus, (dē + metō), *to cut down, reap*. iv. 32.

dēmigrō, āre, āvī, ātus, (dē + migrō, *migrate*), *to depart, migrate*. iv. 4, 19; v. 43.

dēminuō, ere, ī, ūtus, (dē + minuō), *to lessen, diminish, abate, withdraw*. 6.

dēmīssus, a, um, partic. pass., (dēmittō), *drooping, dejected*.

dēmīttō, ere, mīsi, missus, (dē + mittō), *to send down, sink, lower, let fall, thrust*. 9.

dēmō, ere, dēmpsī, dēemptus, (dē + emō), *to remove, take off, take away*. v. 48.

dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātus, (dē + mōnstrō, *point out*), to show, point out, demonstrate, declare, mention, name, state. 37.

dēmōror, āri, ātus, (dē + moror), to detain, hinder, delay, stop, abide, remain. iii. 6.

dēmum, adv., finally, at length. 4.

dēnegō, āre, āvī, ātus, (dē + negō), to deny, refuse, not suffer. i. 42.

dēnī, ae, a, dist. num. adj., ten by ten, ten. i. 43, v. 14.

dēnique, adv., finally, at last, at least. 5.

dēnsus, a, um, adj., dense, close, crowded, thick. 7.

dēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus, (dē + nūntiō), to declare, announce; to denounce, threaten. i. 36, v. 54, vi. 10.

dēpellō, ere, pulli, pulsus, (dē + pellō), to drive down, drive away, dislodge, avert, remove. 4.

dēperdō, ere, didi, ditus, (dē + perdō), to lose. i. 43, iii. 28, v. 54.

dēpereō, ire, ii, —, (dē + pereō), to be lost, perish, be undone. v. 23, vii. 31.

dēpōnō, ere, posui, positus, (dē + pōnō), to lay aside, put down, place, station; to give up, lose. 8.

dēpopulor, āri, ātus, dep., (dē + populor), to ravage, lay waste, plunder. 6.

dēportō, āre, āvī, ātus, (dē + portō), to convey away, carry, transfer from one place to another. iii. 12.

dēposcō, ere, poposci, —, (dē + poscō), to demand, request earnestly. vii. 1.

dēpositus, a, um. See dēpōnō.

dēprecātor, ōris, m., (dēprecor), an intercessor. i. 9, vi. 4.

dēprecor, āri, ātus, dep., (dē + precor, pray), to avert by prayer, supplicate, beg, implore, deprecate, excuse. 5.

dēprehendō, ere, ī, hēnsus, (dē + prehendō), to seize, catch, surprise. 5.

dēpūgnō, āre, āvī, ātus, (dē + pūgnō), to contend, fight it out. vii. 28.

dēpulsus, a, um. See dēpellō.

dērivō, āre, āvī, ātus, (dē + rivus), to draw off, derive. vii. 72.

dērogō, āre, āvī, ātus, (dē + rogō), to detract from, take away. vi. 23.

dēscendō, ere, ī, scēnsus, (dē + scandō, climb), to come down, descend. 5.

dēsecō, āre, ui, tus, (dē + secō), to cut off. vii. 4.

dēserō, ere, ui, tus, (dē + serō, unite), to disunite, desert, leave, forsake. 10.

dēsertor, ōris, m., (dēserō), a deserter. vi. 23.

dēsertus, a, um, partic. pass., (dēserō), deserted, solitary, lonely, uninhabited. ii. 29, v. 53.

dēsiderō, āre, āvī, ātus, to long for; to desire, miss, need, regret. 7.

dēsidia, ae, f., (dē + sedeo, sit), inactivity, idleness. vi. 23.

dēsignō, āre, āvī, ātus, (dē + signō, mark), to mark out, specify, denote. i. 18.

dēsiliō, ire, ui, ultus, (dē + saliō, leap), to leap down. 8.

dēsistō, ere, stiti, stitus, (dē + sistō), to stand off, cease, give over. 13.

dēspectus, ūs, m., (dēspiciō), prospect, height, elevation. 5.

dēspērātiō, ōnis, f., (dēspērō), desperation, despair. v. 33.

dēspērātus, a, um, partic. pass., (dēspērō), desperate. 12.

dēspērō, āre, āvī, ātus, (dē + spērō), to despair. 20.

dēspiciō, ere, spexi, spectus, (dē + speciō, look), to look down on, despise, disregard, disdain. 7.

dēspoliō, āre, āvī, ātus, (dē + spoliō), to deprive of, despoil, plunder, strip. ii. 31.

dēstinō, āre, āvi, ātus, *to make fast, fasten, design; to resolve, determine; to send, appoint.* iii. 14; vii. 22, 72.

dēstitī. See dēsistō.

dēstituō, ere, uī, ūtus, (dē + statuō), *to set aside, forsake, abandon.* i. 16.

dēstringō, ere, īnxī, īctus, (dē + stringō, strip), *to tear off, strip, draw, unsheathe.* i. 25, vii. 12.

dēsum, esse, fuī, —, (dē + sum), *to be wanting, fail.* 12.

dēsuper, adv., (dē + super, above), *from above, above.* i. 52.

dēterior, us, adj. comp., *worse.* i. 36.

dēterreō, ēre, uī, itus, (dē + terreō), *to prevent, hinder, frighten.* 5.

dētestor, āri, ātus, dep., (dē + testor, witness), *to imprecate, execrate, curse.* vi. 31.

dētineō, ēre, tinuī, tentus, (dē + teneō), *to hold off, stop, hinder.* iii. 12, vii. 37.

dētractō, āre, āvi, ātus, (dē + tractō, draw), *to hold off, refuse, avoid.* vii. 14.

dētractus, a, um. See dētrahō.

dētrahō, ere, trāxī, tractus, (dē + trahō), *to take off, remove, withdraw.* 5.

dētrimentōsus, a, um, adj., (dētrimentum), *injurious, detrimental.* vii. 33.

dētrimentum, ī, n., (dēterō, wear away), *damage, loss, harm.* 9.

dētrūdō, ere, trūsī, trūsus, (dē + trūdō, thrust), *to thrust off, remove.* ii. 21.

dētulī. See dēferō.

dēturbō, āre, āvi, ātus, (dē + turbō, confuse), *to drive or cast down, beat, overthrow, drive away, dislodge.* v. 43, vii. 86.

deūrō, ere, ussī, ūstus, (dē + ūrō, burn), *to burn up, set on fire.* vii. 25.

deus, ī, m., *a god.* 10.

deūstus, a, um. See deūrō.

dēvehō, ere, vexī, vectus, (dē + vehō), *to carry or bring down, convey, remove.* i. 43, v. 47, vii. 88.

dēveniō, īre, vēnī, ventūrus, (dē + veniō), *to come down, reach, arrive at.* ii. 21.

dēvexus, a, um, adj., (dēvehō), *inclining downward, sloping.* vii. 88.

dēvincō, ere, vici, victus, (dē + vincō), *to subdue, conquer completely.* vii. 34.

dēvocō, āre, āvi, ātus, (dē + vocō), *to call, call away.* vi. 7.

dēvōtus, a, um, partic. pass., (dēvo-veō), *attached, devoted.* iii. 22.

dēvoveō, ēre, vōvi, vōtus, (dē + voveō), *to vow, promise, to devote.* iii. 22, vi. 7.

dexter, era, erum, and tra, trum, adj., *right, on the right; dextra, ae, f., (sc. manus), the right hand.* 13.

Diablintrēs, um, m. pl. See Aulerci.

diciō, ōnis, f., (dicō), *dominion, power, authority, rule.* i. 31, 33; ii. 34.

dicō, āre, āvi, ātus, *to dedicate, offer, devote, vow.* vi. 12, 13.

dicō, ere, dixī, dictus, (old deicō, say), *say, name, appoint, determine, agree to, promise.* See Idioms. 107.

dictiō, ōnis, f., (dicō), *a pleading.* i. 4.

dictum, ī, n., (dicō), *a word, command, saying.* v. 6.

didūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, (dis + dūcō), *to draw apart, divide, disperse.* iii. 23, vi. 34.

diēs, ēī, m. and f., *a day, time; in diēs, daily; diem ex diē, day after day.* 186.

differō, ferre, distulī, dilātus, (dis + ferō), *to carry hither and thither, scutter; delay; to differ, be different.* 9.

difficilis, e, adj., (dis + facilis), *difficult.* 7.

difficultās, ātis, f., (difficilis), *difficultly.* 14.

difficulter, adv., (*difficilis*), *with difficulty*. vii. 58.

diffidō, ere, *fisus sum*, semi-dep., (*dis + fidō*, *trust*), *to mistrust, distrust, despair, fear, despair of*. v. 41; vi. 36, 38.

diffundō, ere, *fūdī*, *fusus*, (*dis + fundō*), *to pour out, scatter, spread out, extend, diffuse*. vi. 26.

digitus, *i*, m., *a finger*. iii. 13, vii. 73.

dignitās, *ātis*, f., (*dignus*), *merit, dignity, worth, standing*. 13.

dignus, *a*, um, adj., (for **decnos*, cf. *deceat*, *is fit*), *worthy*. vii. 25.

dīi (for *deivī*, *dīvī*, *dīi*). See *deus*.

dīiudicō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, (*dis + iudicō*), *to decide, distinguish, determine*. v. 44.

diligenter, adv., (*diligēns*, *choosing out, carefully*), *attentively, carefully, accurately*. 9.

diligentia, *ae*, f., (*diligēns*, *choosing out, carefully*), *attention, carefulness, industry, caution*. 13.

diligō, ere, *lēxī*, *lēctus*, (*dis + legō*, *select*), *to love*. vi. 19.

dīmētiōr, *īri*, *mēnsus*, (*dis + mētiōr*), *dep.*, *to measure off*. ii. 19, iv. 17.

dīmīcātiō, *ōnis*, f., (*dīmīcō*), *a fight, skirmish, struggle, risk*. vii. 86.

dīmīcō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, (*dis + micō*, *shake*), *to contend, fight*. 18.

dimidium, *i*, n., (*dīmīdius*), *the half*. v. 13.

dīmīdius, *a*, um, adj., (*dis + medius*), *half*. vi. 31.

dīmīttō, ere, *mīsī*, *missus*, (*dis + mitto*), *to send away, discharge, let go; to release, reject, leave, abandon, renounce*. 36.

dīrēctē, (*dīrēctus*), adv., *straight*. iv. 17.

dīrēctus, *a*, um, partic. pass., (*dīrigō*), *direct, straight, level, upright, steep*. 4.

dīrigō, ere, *rēxī*, *rēctus*, (*dis + regō*), *to arrange, direct, guide, dispose, steer, regulate*. vi. 8.

dirimō, ere, *ēmī*, *emptus*, (*dis + emō*), *to part, divide, separate, interrupt, break off*. i. 46.

diripiō, ere, *ripui*, *reptus*, (*dis + rapiō*, *snatch*), *to snatch different ways, tear asunder; to plunder, lay waste, ravage*. 10.

dis (same stem as *duo*), inseparable particle in composition, *apart*. It is written *dir-* before vowels; *dif-* before *f*; *dis-* before *c*, *t*, *p*, *q*, before *s* (when *a* vowel follows) and before consonants *i*; *dī-* before voiced consonants.

Dīs, *Ditis*, m., (cf. *dives*), *Pluto, the god of the lower world*. vi. 18.

discēdō, ere, *cessī*, *cessus*, (*dis + cēdō*), *to withdraw, depart, go away*. 50.

disceptātor, *ōris*, m., (*disceptō*, *decide*), *an umpire, mediator, judge*. vii. 37.

discernō, ere, *crēvī*, *crētus*, (*dis + cernō*), *distinguish, determine; to separate*. vii. 75.

discessus, *ūs*, m., (*discēdō*), *separation, departure*. 11.

disciplina, *ae*, f., (*discō*), *learning, instruction, discipline, system*. 8.

disclūdō, ere, *clūsī*, *clūsus*, (*dis + claudō*), *to divide, keep apart*. iv. 17, vii. 8.

discō, ere, *didicī*, —, (for **dicscō*, *learn*), *to learn, study, understand*. 4.

discrīmen, *inis*, n., (*discernō*), *separation, difference, distinction; danger, peril, hazard*. vi. 38.

discutiō, ere, *cussī*, *cussus*, (*dis + quatiō*, *shake*), *to scatter, remove, disperse, shatter*. vii. 8.

disiciō, ere, *iēcī*, *iectus*, (*dis + iaciō*), *to disperse, rout, scatter*. i. 25; iii. 15, 20.

dispār, *aris*, adj., (*dis + pār*), *unlike, unequal, different*. v. 16, vii. 39.

disparō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, (*dis + parō*), *to divide, separate*. vii. 28.

dispergō, ere, spersī, spersus, (dis + spargō, scatter), to disperse, scatter, distribute. 11.

dispōnō, ere, posuī, positus, (dis + pōnō), to arrange, distribute, station. 17.

disputātiō, ōnis, f., (disputō), discussion, debate. v. 30, 31.

disputō, āre, āvī, ātus, (dis + putō), to debate, argue, discuss. vi. 14.

dissēnsiō, ōnis, f., (dissentiō), disagreement, discord, variance, strife. 6.

dissentiō, ire, sēnsī, sēnsus, (dis + sentiō), to disagree, differ in opinion or in sentiment. v. 29, vii. 29.

disserō, ere, —, —, (dis + serō), to sow here and there, put into the ground. vii. 73.

dissimulō, āre, āvī, ātus (dis + simulō), to conceal, disguise, dissemble. iv. 6.

dissipō, āre, āvī, ātus, (dis + obsolete supō, throw), to scatter, throw asunder. ii. 24, v. 58, vi. 35.

dissuādeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsus, (dis + suādeō, make sweet, advise), to dissuade. vii. 15.

distineō, ēre, tinuī, tentus, (dis + teneō), to keep separate, divide, keep apart, hinder, detain, prevent. 6.

dīstō, āre, —, —, (dis + stō), to stand apart, be distant. * 5.

īstrahō, ere, trāxī, trāctus, (dis + trahō), to draw apart, separate. vii. 23.

distribuō, ere, ī, ūtus, (dis + tribuō), to divide, distribute. 12.

distulī. See differō.

dītissimus. See dīves.

dīū, adv., (cf. dies), long, for a long time; by day. 21.

diurnus, a, um, adj., (diēs), by day, daily, in the daytime. 4.

diūtinus, a, um, adj., (diū), lasting, long. v. 52.

diūturnitās, ātis, f., (diūturnus), long duration. i. 40, iii. 4.

diūturnus, a, um, adj., (diū), lasting long, of long duration. i. 14.

dīversus, a, um, adj., (divertō, turn apart), separate, turned in different directions, remote, different. 6.

dīves, itis, adj., rich; comp. dīvitior, or dītior, sup. dīvitissimus or dītissimus. i. 2.

Diviciācus, ī, m. (1) Chieftain of the Haeduī. i. 3, 16, 18, 20, 31, 41; ii. 5, 10, 14, seq.; vi. 12; vii. 39. (2) Chieftain of the Suessionēs. ii. 4.

Divicō, ōnis, m., a noble Helvetian. i. 13, 14.

dividō, ere, vīsī, vīsus, to divide, separate. 16.

dīvinus, a, um, adj., (dīvus, divine), divine. ii. 31; vi. 13, 21.

dō, dare, dedi, datus, to give, grant, concede. See Idioms. 95.

dō (confused with dō, give, same word as Eng. do, cf. don = do on, doff = do off), put, place.

doceō, ēre, uī, tus, to instruct, teach, inform. 22.

documentum, ī, n., (doceō), a lesson, example, warning, essay, trial. vii. 4.

doleō, ēre, uī, itūrus, to regret, grieve, be pained. 4.

dolor, ōris, m., (doleō), pain, grief, vexation, resentment. 10.

dolus, ī, m., fraud, deceit, stratagem. i. 13, iv. 13.

domesticus, a, um, adj., (domus), private, domestic, of a house or family. ii. 10, v. 9.

domicilium, ī, n., (domus), a home, dwelling, abode. 4.

dominor, āri, ātus, dep., (dominus), to rule, govern. ii. 31.

dominus, ī, m., (domus), a master, lord, owner, proprietor. vi. 13.

Domitius, *ī*, m., *L. Domitius Ahēnō-barbus*, consul in 54 B.C., general of Pompey the Great. v. 1.

domus, *ūs*, and *ī*, f., a house, home, habitation; **domī**, at home; **domum**, homeward, home; **domō**, from home. 33.

Donnotaurus, *ī*, m. See **Valērius**.

dōnō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, (*dōnum*), to present, confer, give; to pardon, forgive. i. 47, vii. 11.

dōnum, *ī*, n., (*dō*), a present, gift, reward. vii. 31.

dorsum, *ī*, n., the back; **dorsum iugī**, the slope or ridge of a hill. vii. 44.

dōs, *dōtis*, f., (*dō*), a dowry. vi. 19 (twice).

Drappēs, *is*, m., chieftain of the *Senonēs*. viii. 30-37, 44.

Druidēs, *um*, m. pl., the Druids, the priests of the Gauls. See p. 29. 7.

Dubis, *is*, m., (modern Doubs), a river which empties into the Arar (Saône).

dubitātiō, *ōnis*, f., (*dubitō*), uncertainty, doubt. i. 14, v. 48, vii. 40.

dubitō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, (cf. *dubius*), to hesitate, doubt. 13.

dubius, *a*, *um*, adj., (*duo*), uncertain, doubtful, hesitating; **dubium**, *ī*, n., doubt, uncertainty. 4.

ducentī, *ae*, *a*, num. adj., (*duo* + *centum*), two hundred. 7.

dūcō, *ere*, *dūxi*, *ductus*, (old *doucō*, lead), to lead, draw; to think, consider, account; to construct, build. See Idioms. 37.

ductus, *ūs*, m., (*dūcō*), lead, command, conduct. vii. 62.

dum, adv., (acc. of pron. stem *do*), while, until. 27.

Dumnācus, *ī*, m., chieftain of the *Andēs*. viii. 26-31.

Dumnorix, *īgis*, m., brother of *Diviciā-cus* (1). i. 3, 9, 18 seq.; v. 6, 7.

duo, *ae*, *o*, num. adj., two. 77.

duodecim, (num. adj.), twelve. i. 5, vi. 29.

duodecim, *a*, *um*, (num. adj.), the twelfth. ii. 23, 25; vii. 62.

duodēnī, *ae*, *a*, dist. num. adj., twelve by twelve, twelve, twelve each. v. 14; vii. 36, 75.

duodēviginti, num. adj., eighteen. 4.

duplex, *icis*, adj., (*duo* + *plicō*, fold), twofold, double. ii. 29, iii. 24, vii. 36.

uplicō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, (*duplex*), to double. iv. 36, vi. 1.

Duratus, *ī*, m., chieftain of the *Pictonēs*. viii. 26, 27.

dūritia, *ae*, f., (*dūrus*), hardness, endurance, hardness, severity. vi. 21.

dūrō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, (*dūrus*), to harden; to endure. vi. 28.

Dūrocortum, *ī*, n., capital of the *Rēmī* in Belgic Gaul, the modern Rheims. vi. 44.

dūrus, *a*, *um*, adj., hard, severe, harsh. 4.

Dūrus, *ī*, m. See **Laberius**.

dux, *ducis*, m. and f., (cf. *dūcō*), a guide, a leader. ♥ 27.

E

ē or **ex**, prep. with the abl., out of, from, after, on account of, in, on. See Idioms.

ē before consonants, **ex** before vowels and consonants. **ē** 20, **ex** 447.

Eburōnēs, *um*, m. pl., a Belgic tribe on the right side of the Meuse, between the modern Liège and Aix-la-Chapelle. ii. 4; iv. 6; v. 24, 28, 39; vi. 5, 31, 34, 35, 43. See **Aduātuca**. Chieftains: **Catuvolcus**, **Ambiorix**.

Eburovicēs, *um*, m. pl. See **Aulerci**.

ēdiscō, *ere*, *didicī*, —, (**ex** + *discō*), to commit to memory, learn by heart. vi. 14.

ēditus, *a*, *um*, partic. pass., (**ēdō**), raised, high, lofty, elevated. 4.

ēdō, ere, didī, ditus, (ex + dō), to put forth, publish, make known, exhibit. i. 31.

ēdoceō, ēre, uī, tus, (ex + doceō), to instruct, inform, relate, teach. 4.

ēducō, ere, dūxī, ductus, (ex + dūcō), to draw out, bring out, lead forth. 22.

effarciō, ire, —, fertus, (ex + facriō, stuff), to cram, stuff, fill. vii. 23.

effeminō, āre, āvī, ātus, (ex + fēmina), to effeminate, enervate. i. 1, iv. 2.

effero, ferre, extulī, ēlātus, (ex + ferō), to produce, bring forth, raise, lift up, elate; to proclaim, divulge. 9.

efficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, (ex + faciō), to accomplish, effect, occasion, bring to pass, produce, render. 32.

effodiō, ere, fōdī, fossus, (ex + fodiō), to tear out, dig out. vii. 4.

effugiō, ere, fūgī, —, (ex + fugiō), to flee away, avoid, shun, escape. iv. 35, v. 58, vi. 30.

egēns, entis, partic. adj., (egeō), in want, needy, destitute. vii. 4.

egeō, ēre, uī, —, to be destitute, needy, in want. vi. 11, vii. 4.

egestās, ātis, f., poverty, need, want. vi. 24.

ēgī. See agō.

ego, mei, pers. pron., I. 10.

ēgredior, ī, gressus, dep., (ex + gradior, step), to depart from, go out, go beyond, leave; to disembark. 27.

ēgregiō, adv., (ēgregius), excellently, admirably, eminently. 6.

ēgregius, a, um, adj., (ex + grex, flock), excellent, eminent, remarkable, admirable, distinguished, surpassing. 4.

ēgressus, ūs, m., (ēgredior), a landing, departure, going out, egress. v. 8.

ēiciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, (ex + iaciō), to cast or drive out, banish, expel; sē ēicere, to rush out. 9.

ēiusmodī, adv., (is + modus), of that nature, such. 8.

ēlābor, ī, lapsus, dep., (ex + labor), to slip away, escape, get off. v. 37.

ēlātus, a, um. See efferō.

Elaver, Elaveris, n., (modern Allier), coming from the mōns Cevenna (Cévennes), and emptying into the Liger (Loire). vii. 34, 35, 53.

ēlēctus, a, um, partic. pass., (ēligō), selected, picked, chosen. ii. 4.

elephantus, ī, m., an elephant. vi. 28.

Eleuteti, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe in Celtic Gaul, subject to the Arvernī. vii. 75.

ēliciō, ere, uī, —, (ex + laciō, allure), to draw out, elicit, lure forth, entice. v. 50, vi. 8, vii. 32.

ēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus, (ex + legō, choose), to pick out, select. ii. 4.

Elusātēs, ium, m. pl., a tribe in Aquitania, in the northwest of the modern Département des Gers. Capital: Elusa (near the modern Eauze).

ēmigrō, āre, āvī, —, (ex + migrō, migrate), to remove, emigrate, depart. i. 31.

ēmineō, ēre, uī, —, (ex + obsolete mineō, project), to stand out, project. vii. 72, 73 (twice).

ēminus, adv., (ex + manus), from a distance, at a distance. vii. 24.

ēmittō, ere, mīsi, missus, (ex + mittō), to send out, let go, dismiss, throw, cast aside, hurl, discharge. 7.

emō, ere, ēmī, ēemptus, to buy, purchase. i. 16, ii. 33.

ēnāscor, ī, nātus, dep., (ex + nāscor), to spring or grow out, sprout out. ii. 17.

enim, conj., for, now, indeed. 19.

ēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus, (ex + nūntiō), to disclose, divulge, reveal, declare. 8.

eo, ire, ivī or ii, itūrus, to go, proceed, pass. 27.

eo, adv., (is), thither, there, to that place, to such an extent, on that account, therefore. 67.

eōdem, adv., (*idem*), *to the same place, to the same end.* 9.

Epasnactus, *i*, m., an Arvernian. viii. 44.

ephippiātus, *a*, um, adj., (cf. *ephippium*), *using saddles.* iv. 2.

ephippium, *i*, n., (Greek), *a saddle, horse cloth.* iv. 2.

epistula, *ae*, f., *a letter, epistle.* v. 48 (three times).

epulae, *ārum*, f. pl., *banquets, feasts.* vi. 28.

eques, *itis*, m., (*equus*), *a horseman, cavalry; knight, a member of the order of knights in rank between the patricians and plebeians.* 119.

equester, *tris, tre*, adj., (*eques*), *of the cavalry, equestrian.* 14.

equitātus, *ūs*, m., *cavalry.* 110.

equus, *i*, m., *a horse.* 28.

Eratosthenēs, *is*, m., *a famous geographer and astronomer, born in Cŷrēnē, died in 194 B.C.; president of the library at Alexandria.* vi. 24.

ērēctus, *a*, um, partic. pass., (*ērigō*), *elevated, erect, high, upright.* iii. 13.

ergā, prep. with acc., *towards.* v. 54.

ergō, conj., *therefore, then.* vii. 77 (twice).

ērigō, *ere, rēxī, rēctus*, (*ex + regō*), *to raise, elevate, erect.* iii. 13, vi. 27.

ērīpiō, *ere, ripuī, reptus*, (*ex + rapiō*, *snatch*), *to snatch away, tear or take away, wrest; to rescue, liberate.* 11.

errō, *āre, āvī, ātus*, *to wander, err, be mistaken.* v. 41, vii. 29.

ērumpō, *ere, rūpī, ruptus*, (*ex + rumpō*, *break*), *to burst forth, sally forth, rush forth.* iii. 5.

ēruptiō, *ōnis*, f., (*ērumpō*), *a breaking, bursting forth, a sally, a sortie.* 23.

essedārius, *i*, m., (*essedum*), *one who fought from a war chariot.* 4.

essedum, *i*, n., *a war chariot of the Gauls and Britons.* 6.

Esuvii, *ōrum*, m. pl., *a Celtic tribe in the modern Normandie.* ii. 34, iii. 7, v. 24.

et, conj., *and, even, also; et — et, both — and.* 890.

etiam, conj., (*et + iam*), *also, likewise; yet, even, still.* 94.

etsi, conj., (*et + sī*), *even if, although.* 18.

ēvādō, *ere, vāsī, vāsus*, (*ex + vādō*, *go*), *to escape, come out, go forth or from.* iii. 19.

ēvellō, *ere, ī, vulsus*, (*ex + vellō*, *pluck*), *to pluck or pull out.* i. 25.

ēveniō, *ire, vēnī, ventus*, (*ex + veniō*), *to come out, happen, result.* iv. 25.

ēventus, *ūs*, m., (*ēveniō*), *an event, issue, occurrence.* 6.

ēvocāti, *ōrum*, (*ēvocō*), m. pl., *old soldiers who, after having served their time, were called out as volunteers.* See p. 36 e. vii. 65.

ēvocātus, *a*, um, part., (*ēvocō*), *called out.*

ēvocō, *āre, āvī, ātus* (*ex + vocō*), *to call forth, challenge, summon, invite.* 15.

ēvolō, *āre, āvī, ātus*, (*volō*, *fly*), *to fly out, sally out, rush forth.* iii. 28, vii. 27.

ex. See *ē*.

exāctus, *a*, um. See *exigō*.

exagitō, *āre, āvī, ātus*, (*ex + agitō*), *to harass, disturb, persecute.* ii. 29, iv. 1.

exāminō, *āre, āvī, ātus*, (*exāmen*, *the needle of a balance*), *to weigh, ponder, examine.* v. 12.

exanimō, *āre, āvī, ātus* (*ex + animus*), *to exhaust, weaken; to destroy, kill.* 7.

exārdescō, *ere, ārsī, ārsus*, (*ex + ārdescō*, *blaze*), *to blaze out, kindle; to be excited, inflamed; to break out.* v. 4.

exaudiō, *ire, ivī or īi, itus*, (*ex + audiō*), *to listen to, hear, regard.* 6.

excēdō, ere, cessī, cessus, (ex + cēdō), to depart, withdraw, go out, retire. 16.

excellō, ere, —, celsus, (ex + obsolete cellō), to excel, surpass, be eminent. v. 13.

excelsus, a, um, adj., (excellō), lofty, high, elevated. vi. 26.

exceptō, āre, āvī, ātus, (excipiō), to pick or take up. vii. 47.

excidō, ere, cidī, cīsus, (ex + caedō), to cut out, banish, remove, destroy, demolish. vii. 50.

excipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, (ex + capiō), to take out, incur, receive, sustain, meet; to succeed, follow after; to undergo. 12.

excitō, āre, āvī, ātus (ex + citō), to arouse, excite, call forth, incite, impel, stimulate, spur on; to construct, raise, erect; to kindle. 10.

exclūdō, ere, clūsī, clūsus, (ex + claudō), to shut out, cut off; to prevent, hinder. 4.

excōgitō, āre, āvī, ātus, (ex + cōgitō), to contrive, devise, consider. v. 31.

excruciō, āre, āvī, ātus, (ex + cruciō, torment), to torment, torture. vi. 19; vii. 20, 38.

excubitor, ōris, m., (cf. excubō), a sentinel, guard, watch. vii. 69.

excubō, āre, uī, itus, (ex + cubō, lie), to lie out on guard, watch. vii. 11, 24 (twice).

exculcō, āre, —, —, (ex + calcō, tread), to tread down. vii. 73.

excursiō, ōnis, f. (cf. excurrō, run forth), an excursion, attack, sally, incursion. ii. 30.

excūsātiō, ōnis, f., (excūsō), an excuse, apology, defense. vi. 4.

excūsō, āre, āvī, ātus, (ex + causa), to excuse, plead in excuse, defend. iv. 22.

exemplum, ī, n., (eximō, take out), example, pattern, model; manner, way, kind; copy, sample, precedent; purport. i. 8, 31; vii. 77.

exeō, īre, ii, itus, (ex + eō), to go out or away, depart, march out, leave. 10.

exerceō, ēre, uī, itus, (ex + arceō, shut out), to drive on, keep busy, occupy, exercise, practice, train. 5.

exercitātiō, ōnis, f., (exercitō, train), exercise, practice. 7.

exercitātus, a, um, partic. pass., (exercitō, train), exercised, practiced, versed, trained. i. 36, ii. 20.

exercitus, ūs, m., (cf. exerceō), an army. 131.

exhauriō, īre, hausī, haustus, (ex + haurio, drain), to drain, draw out, remove. v. 42.

exigō, ere, ēgī, āctus, (ex + agō), to drive out; to complete, finish; to exact, demand; to spend, pass; to ponder, consider. iii. 28, vi. 1.

exiguē, adv., (exiguus), hardly, scarcely, briefly, slightly, shortly. vii. 71.

exiguitās, ātis, f., (exiguus), scantiness in number or measure, poverty, shortness, small number. 5.

exiguus, a, um, adj., (exigō), scanty in number or measure, short, mean, slight. 5.

eximius, a, um, adj., (eximō, take out), distinguished, uncommon, extraordinary, excellent, select. ii. 8.

existimātiō, ōnis, f., (existimō), judgment, opinion; reputation. i. 20, v. 44.

existimō, āre, āvī, ātus, (ex + aestimō), to reckon, consider, suppose, judge, esteem. 78.

exitus, ūs, m., (exeō), departure; outlet, passage; close, end, conclusion. 8.

expediō, īre, ivī, itus, (ex + pēs), to extricate, free, liberate; to expedite, facilitate; to arrange, prepare, make ready; to procure. 18.

expeditiō, ōnis, f., (expediō), an expedition. v. 10.

expeditus, a, um, partic. pass., (expediō), unimpeded, free, easy, ready at hand, light-armed. 15.

expellō, ere, puli, pulsus, (ex + pellō), to drive away, banish, expel. 13.

experior, iri, pertus, dep., (ex + pariō), to make trial of, try, prove, put to test, know by experience, wait. 10.

explō, āre, āvi, ātus, (ex + piō, purify), to make complete satisfaction, atone for, expiate, make good, make amends for. v. 52.

expleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus, (ex + pleō, fill), to fill up, complete, finish, satisfy, suit, appease, supply. 6.

explōrātor, ōris, m., (explōrō), an explorer, a spy, scout. 23.

explōrātus, a, um, partic. pass., (explōrō), certain, ascertained, sure. 11.

explōrō, āre, āvi, ātus, (ex + plōrō, cry out), to search out, seek, discover, explore; to examine, investigate, ascertain; to reconnoiter, spy out. 14.

expōnō, ere, posui, positus, (ex + pōnō), to set forth; to explain; to draw up, marshal; to land, disembark. 9.

exportō, āre, āvi, ātus, (ex + portō), to carry out, convey away. iv. 18.

exposcō, ere, poposci, —, (ex + poscō), to ask earnestly, beg, entreat. vii. 19.

exprimō, ere, pressi, pressus, (ex + premō), to press or squeeze out, extort, wrest; to express, declare, represent; to raise up, elevate. i. 32, vii. 22.

expūgnātiō, ōnis, f., (expūgnō), the storming of a place; storming. vi. 41, vii. 36.

expūgnō, āre, āvi, ātus, (ex + pūgnō), to take by assault, storm, subdue. 12.

exquirō, ere, quisivī, quisitus, (ex + quaerō), to search diligently; to make

inquiry, ask, investigate, examine. i. 41, iii. 3.

exsequor, ī, cūtus, dep., (ex + sequor), to follow, pursue, perform, accomplish. i. 4.

exserō, ere, serui, sertus, (ex + serō, join), to thrust out; to uncover. vii. 50.

exsistō, ere, stitī, —, (ex + sistō), to make come forth, step out, emerge; to spring up, arise, become, be. 5.

exspectō, āre, āvi, ātus, (ex + spectō), to watch for, await; to long for, anticipate; to hope for; to wait to see. 34.

exspoliō, āre, āvi, ātus, (ex + spoliō), to strip off, plunder. vii. 77.

extinguō, ere, inxi, inctus, (ex + stingūō, extinguish), to put out, extirpate, destroy, annihilate. v. 29.

extō, āre, —, —, (ex + stō), to stand out or above; to appear; to project. v. 18.

extruō, ere, struxi, structus, (ex + struō, build), to pile or heap up thoroughly; to raise, build, erect, construct. 5.

exsul, ulis, m. and f., an exile. v. 55.

exter or exterus, a, um, adj., (ex), outward, external, outer, foreign; comp. exterior, sup. extrēmus or extimus, extreme, outermost, last, farthest, most remote, end of. 27.

exterreō, ēre, ui, itus, (ex + terreō), to dismay, terrify. vii. 43, 77.

extimēscō, ere, timui, —, (ex + timescō, fear), to dread, fear greatly. iii. 13.

extorqueō, ēre, torsi, tortus, (ex + torquēō, twist), to wrest, extort. vii. 54.

extrā, prep. with the acc., (abl. sing. fem.), outside of, besides, beyond. 7.

extrahō, ere, traxi, tractus, (ex + trahō), to draw out or forth, withdraw, release, spend, waste. v. 22.

extrēmus, a, um. See **exter**.
extrūdō, ere, trūsī, trūsus, (ex + trūdō, thrust), to thrust out, exclude, keep back. iii. 12.
extuli. See **efferō**.
exuō, ere, uī, ūtus, to divest, deprive, despoil, strip off, draw out or off. 4.
exūro, ere, ussī, ūstus, to burn up. i. 5.
oxūtus, a, um. See **exuō**.

F

faber, brī, m., (cf. **facio**), a workman in iron, artificer, smith. v. 11.
Fabius, ī, m., Q. Fabius Mācimus Allobrogicus, conquered in 121 B.C. the united forces of the Allobrogēs, Arvernī, and Rutēnī. i. 45.
Fabius, ī, m., C., one of Caesar's legates. v. 24; vii. 90; viii. 6-24, 27, 31, 37, 54.
Fabius, ī, m., L., centurion of the VIIIth Gallic legion. vii. 47, 50.
facile, adv., (facilis), readily, easily. 39.
faciō, e, adj., (faciō), easy, ready, courteous, affable. 7.
facinus, oris, n., (faciō), a deed, action, exploit, crime; daring deed. 9.
faciō, ere, fēcī, factus, (fa-c-io, same root as dō in abdō, Eng. do; see dō), to make, do; to construct, render, cause; to give, furnish. See Idioms. 324.
factiō, ōnis, f., (faciō), a party, side, faction. 5.
factum, ī, n., (faciō), a deed, act, exploit. 5.
factus, a, um. See **fiō**.
facultās, ātis, f., (facilis), ability, power, abundance, number, stock, resources, means, opportunity. 27.
fāgus, ī, f., a beech tree. v. 12.
fallō, ere, fefelli, falsus, to deceive, cheat, dupe, disappoint, escape notice, elude observation. ii. 10, iv. 13, vii. 50.

falsus, a, um, adj., (fallō), unfounded, false, deceitful. vi. 20.
falx, falcis, f., a sickle; a military implement, shaped like a sickle, used in sieges to pull down walls. 6.
fāma, ae, f., (for, speak), report, fame, rumor; renown, reputation, character. 12.
famēs, is, f., famine, hunger. 6.
familia, ae, f., (famulus, servant), a household including the slaves; the Gallic clansmen. 8.
familiāris, e, adj., (familia), of a family, private; rēs familiāris, family estate, private property. 9.
familiāris, is, m., (familia), a friend. 4.
familiāritās, ātis, f., (familiāris), intimacy, friendship, intimate acquaintance. v. 3.
fās, n. indecl., (for, speak), divine law, the will of heaven; right, duty, justice. 4.
fastigātō, adv., (fastigātus), sloping. iv. 17.
fastigātus, a, um, adj., (fastigium), sloping to a point, descending, sloping. ii. 8, iv. 17.
fastigium, ī, n., summit, top, height, eminence slope, descent, declivity. vii. 69, 73, 85.
fātum, ī, n., (fari, speak), fate, destiny, an oracle. i. 39.
Faustus, ī, m. See Sulla.
faveō, ēre, fāvi, fautūrus, to favor, countenance. i. 18, vi. 7.
fax, facis, f., firebrand, torch. vii. 24.
fēlicitās, ātis, f., (fēlix, happy), happiness, felicity, good fortune, success. i. 40, vi. 43.
fēliciter, adv., (fēlix, happy), happily, successfully, auspiciously. iv. 25.
fēmina, ae, f., (fē-mina, she who suckles), a woman. vi. 21, 26; vii. 73.
femur, oris, n., the thigh. v. 35.

fera, ae, f., (ferus), a wild beast. vi. 25, 28.

ferāx, ācis, adj., (ferō), fruitful, fertile, productive. ii. 4.

ferō, adv., within a little, nearly, about, for the most part, generally. 45.

ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, to bear, carry; obtain, acquire; to suffer, tolerate, endure; to report, show, make known; to go, flee; fertur, it is said. 66.

ferrāmentum, ī, n., (ferrum), a tool, implement. v. 42.

ferrāria, ae, f., (ferrum), an iron mine. vii. 22.

ferreus, a, um, adj., (ferrum), of iron, iron. 4.

ferrum, ī, n., iron; sword. i. 25; v. 12, 30.

fertilis, e, adj., fertile, fruitful. vi. 24, vii. 13.

fertilitās, ātis, f., (fertilis), fertility, fruitfulness. ii. 4.

ferus, a, um, adj., wild, rude, cruel, barbarous. 5.

fervefactus, partic. (fervefaciō, make hot), made hot, melted, hot. v. 43, vii. 22.

ferveō, ēre, —, —, to be boiling or red hot, glow with heat. v. 43.

fibula, ae, f., a clasp, brace. iv. 17.

fictus, a, um, partic. pass., (fingō), formed, fictitious, false. iv. 5.

fidēlis, ē, adj., (fidēs), faithful, trusty, sure. iv. 21, vii. 76.

fidēs, ei, f., trust in a person or thing, belief, protection, security; promise, engagement, good faith. 35.

fidūcia, ae, f., (fidō, trust), confidence, reliance, assurance, courage. vii. 19, 38, 76.

figūra, ae, f., (fingō), form, shape; kind, quality, species, nature. 5.

filia, ae, f., (cf. fē in fēmina), a daughter. 4.

filius, ī, m., (cf. fē in fēmina), a son. 13.

fingō, ere, finxi, fictus, to work in plastic material, frame, make; to contrive, devise, invent; to feign. i. 39, iv. 5, vi. 37.

finiō, ire, ivi, itus, (finis), to limit, bound, put within boundaries; to finish, terminate, compute. iv. 16; vi. 18, 25.

finis, is, m. and f., an end, limit; boundary, territory. 126.

finitimus, a, um, adj., (finis), bordering upon, adjoining, neighboring; finitimi, ōrum, m. pl., neighbors. 40.

fīō, fieri, factus, as pass. of faciō, to become; to be made, done; certior fieri, to be informed; fit, it happens. See faciō.

firmiter, adv., (firmus), firmly, resolutely. iv. 26.

firmitūdō, inis, f., (firmus), firmness, strength, solidity. iii. 13, iv. 17.

firmō, āre, āvi, ātus, (firmus), to make firm and fast, support, fortify; to encourage, animate. vi. 29.

firmus, a, um, adj., strong, steadfast; brave, valiant. 11.

fistūca, ae, f., a rammer, pile driver. iv. 17.

flāgitō, āre, āvi, ātus, to demand earnestly, entreat, importune. i. 16.

flamma, ae, f., flame, blaze, glow. v. 43 (twice), vi. 16.

flectō, ere, flexi, flexus, to bend, bow, turn; to prevail upon, guide, direct. iv. 33, vi. 25.

fleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus, to weep, cry, lament. 6.

flētus, ūs, m., (fleō), a weeping, lamentation. i. 32, v. 33.

flō, āre, āvi, ātus, to blow. v. 7.

flōrens, entis, partic. pres., (flōreō, bloom), flourishing, prosperous, fine, in the prime, influential. i. 30, iv. 3, vii. 32.

flōs, flōris, m., a flower. vii. 73.

fluctus, ūs, m., (fluō), a wave. 4.
 flūmen, inis, n., (fluō), a river, stream;
 flumine secundō, down stream; flu-
 mine adversō, up stream. 102.
 fluō, ere, fluxi, fluxus, to flow. i. 6, 12.
 fodiō, ere, fōdi, fossus, to dig, dig up,
 dig out. vii. 73.
 foedus, eris, n., a league, treaty, com-
 pact. vi. 2.
 forem = essem, fore = futūrus esse.
 foris, adv., outside, out of doors, without,
 abroad. vii. 76.
 fōrma, ae, f., form, figure, shape; a
 model, pattern; beauty. 4.
 fors, fortis, f., (ferō), chance, luck, haz-
 ard, fortune; forte, abl., by chance. 5.
 fortis, e, adj., brave. 9.
 fortiter, adv., (fortis), bravely, firmly.
 13.
 fortitūdō, inis, f., (fortis), courage,
 bravery, fortitude. i. 2.
 fortuitō, adv., (fors), by chance, acci-
 dentally. vii. 20.
 fortūna, ae, f., (fors), chance, fortune,
 fate, lot. 39.
 fortūnātus, a, um, adj., fortunate, pros-
 perous, lucky. vi. 35.
 forum, ī, n., a market place, public place,
 forum. vii. 28.
 fossa, ae, f., (fodiō), a trench, ditch,
 fosse. 27.
 fovea, ae, f., a pitfall, pit. vi. 28.
 frangō, ere, frēgi, frāctus, to break,
 dash to pieces, crush, soften, discour-
 age. i. 31, iv. 29.
 frāter, tris, m., a brother. 27.
 frāternus, a, um, adj., (frāter), broth-
 erly, fraternal, of a brother. i. 20, 36.
 fraus, fraudis, f., deceit, guile, fraud,
 treachery. vii. 40.
 fremitus, ūs, m., (fremō, roar), a mur-
 muring, resounding noise, clamor. ii.
 24, iv. 14, v. 32.
 frequēns, entis, adj., (farcio, stuff),
 crowded. iv. 11, 13; vii. 63.

frētus, a, um, adj., relying on, depend-
 ing on. iii. 21, vi. 5.
 frigidus, a, um, adj., (frigus), cold. iv. 1.
 frigus, oris, n., cold, coolness. 4.
 frōns, frontis, f., the forehead, brow,
 front; ā fronte, in front. 6.
 fructuōsus, a, um, adj., (fructus),
 fruitful, fertile, productive. i. 30.
 fructus, ūs, m., (fruor), fruit, produce,
 profit, employment, result, effect. 4.
 frūmentārius, a, um, adj., (frūmen-
 tum), of corn, fertile in corn; rēs
 frūmentāria, corn, a supply of corn,
 provisions. 26.
 frūmentātiō, ōnis, f., (frūmentor), a
 procuring of corn, foraging. vi. 39;
 vii. 16, 64.
 frūmentor, āri, ātus, dep., (frūmen-
 tum), to fetch corn, forage. 7.
 frūmentum, ī, n., (fruor), corn, grain.
 55.
 fruor, ī, fructus, dep., to enjoy. iii. 22.
 frūstrā, adv., in a deceived manner, with-
 out effect, to no purpose, in vain. 4.
 Fūfius, ī, m. (1) Q. Fūfius Calēnus, one
 of Caesar's legates. viii. 39. (2) C. Fū-
 fius Cita, Roman knight. vii. 3.
 fuga, ae, f., flight. 70.
 fugiō, ere, fūgi, fugitūrus, to flee; to
 take to flight, run away, flee from,
 avoid, shun. 18.
 fugitivus, a, um, adj., (cf. fugiō), fugi-
 tive; fugitivus, ī, m., a deserter. i. 23.
 fugō, āre, āvi, ātus, (fuga), to cause to
 flee; to put to flight, rout. vii. 68.
 fūmō, āre, —, —, (fūmus), to smoke.
 vii. 24.
 fūmus, ī, m., smoke. ii. 7, v. 48.
 funda, ae, f., a sling. 5.
 funditor, ōris, m., (funda), a slinger. 4.
 fundō, ere, fūdi, fūsus, to pour, shed,
 cast; to found; to scatter, throw, rout,
 prostrate. iii. 6, vii. 24.
 fungor, ī, fūctus, dep., to perform,
 discharge, execute. vii. 25.

fūnis, is, m., a cable, rope. 4.
fūnus, eris, n., a funeral, funeral rites.
 vi. 19 (twice).
furor, ōris, m., rage, madness. i. 40,
 ii. 3, vii. 42.
fūrtum, ī, n., (fūr, thief), theft. vi. 16.
fūsilis, e, adj., (fundō), melted, liquid,
 pliant, molten. v. 43.
futūrus, a, um, serves as future partic.
 to sum.

G

Gabalī, ōrum, m. pl., a Celtic tribe in
 the modern Gevaudan. vii. 7, 64, 75.
Gabīnius, ī, m., A., consul in 58 B.C.
gaesum, ī, n., a long heavy javelin of
 the Gauls. iii. 4.
Galba, ae, m. (1) *Servius Sulpicius*,
 one of Caesar's legates in Gaul. iii. 1,
 3, 5, 6; viii. 50. (2) A chieftain of the
Suessiōnēs. ii. 2, 13.
galea, ae, f., a helmet. ii. 21.
Gallī, ōrum, m. pl., inhabitants of Gaul.
Gallia, ae, f., Gaul, divided into (a) *Gallia*
citerior or *cisalpina* or *togata*
 (viii. 24, 52), (i. 24, 54; ii. 1; v. 1;
 viii. 23), the plain of the Po, in north-
 ern Italy. (b) *Gallia ulterior* or *trans-*
alpina, being the greatest part of the
 modern France, Switzerland, the Neth-
 erlands, and the part of Germany on the
 left side of the Rhine. Subdivisions:
 (1) *Aquitania*, between the Pyrenees,
 the Garumna, the Ocean, and the Pro-
 vincia, inhabited by Iberian tribes; only
 the Biturigēs were Celtic. Visited once
 by Caesar (viii. 46). (2) *Gallia Celtica*
 (sometimes, i. 1, 30, 31; ii. 3, called
 simply Gallia), (= *Gallia Lugdunēnsis*,
 later), between the Garumna and Sē-
 quana, between the Ocean and the Alps,
 inhabited by Celts. (3) *Gallia Belgica*,
 chiefly inhabited by Germans, from the
 Sēquana to the Rhine. (c) *Gallia prō-*
vincia (i. 19, 28, 35, 44), the modern

Provence, including the land of the
Allobrogēs; called also simply *prō-*
vincia (i. 1, 2, 6, 7, 33; ii. 29; vii. 55),
 or *ulterior prōvincia*, i. 10, (later) *Gal-*
lia Narbonēnsis. See *Volcae*, *Vo-*
contii, *Ceutronēs*, *Caturigēs*. See
 pp. 16-25. 160.

Gallicus, a, um, adj., *Gallic*. 16.
gallīna, ae, f., a hen. v. 12.
Gallus, ī, m. See *Trebius*.
Gallus, a, um, adj., *Gallic*; **Gallus**, ī,
 m., a Gaul. 101.
Garumna, ae, f., modern *Garonne*.
 This river forms the boundary line be-
 tween *Aquitania* and Celtic Gaul. i. 1.
Garumnī, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe in
Aquitania. iii. 27.
Gatēs, ium, m. pl., a tribe in *Aquitania*
 in the modern Gaure. iii. 27.
gaudeō, ēre, *gāvisus sum*, semi-dep.,
 to be glad, rejoice. iv. 13.
gāvisus, a, um. See *gaudeō*.
Geidumnī, ōrum, m. pl., a Belgic tribe.
 v. 39.
Genava, ae, f., a town of the *Allobrogēs*
 on the shore of the *lacus Lemannus*, the
 modern Geneva. i. 6, 7.
gener, erī, m., son-in-law. v. 56.
generātim, adv., (genus), by kinds,
 classes, species, nations; generally, in
 general. i. 51, vii. 19.
gēns, gentis, f., a tribe, nation, race,
 kind, class, clan. 8.
genus, eris, n., birth, descent, origin,
 race, stock; offspring, sort, species,
 kind, style, child. 33.
Gergovia, ae, f., a town (perhaps capi-
 tal) of the *Arvernī*, situated on a hill,
 not far from the river Elaver (*Allier*),
 with steep slopes towards the north and
 east, while it is gentle towards the
 south. Between this height and the
 modern brook Auzon there is a small
 hill, on which the smaller camp of
 Caesar was pitched. vii. 36, 49. The

- larger camp was situated east-southeast from Gergovia, near the modern village Orcet.
- Germānia**, *ae, f.*, *Germany*, means with Caesar, the land between the Rhine, Danube, Weichsel, and the ocean. Description of inhabitants, *iv. 1, vi. 21 seq.* See *Suēbī*, *Cherusci*, *Ubiī*, *Sugambri*, *Marcomanni*, *Usipetēs*, *Tencterī*, *Harūdēs*, *Nemetēs*, *Tribocēs*, *Vangionēs*, *Latobrigi*, *Tulingi*, *Se-dusii*, *Cimbri*, *Teutoni*. See *pp. 26-28, 7.*
- Germānicus**, *a, um, adj.*, *German, Germanic.* *iv. 16.*
- Germānus**, *a, um, adj.*, *German, of Germany.* *88.*
- gerō**, *ere, gessi, gestus*, *to carry on; bear, rule, govern, accomplish; to wage, manage, conduct.* *69.*
- gladius**, *i, m.*, *a sword.* *10.*
- glāns**, *glandis, f.*, *an acorn; an acorn-shaped ball, bullet.* *v. 43, vii. 81.*
- glēba**, *ae, f.*, *a clod, lump, piece.* *vii. 25.*
- glōria**, *ae, f.*, *glory, fame, renown.* *5.*
- glōrior**, *ārī, ātus, dep.*, *to glory, boast, pride one's self.* *i. 14.*
- Gobannitiō**, *ōnis, m.*, *Vercingetorix's uncle.* *vii. 4.*
- Gorgobina**, *ae, f.*, *a town of the Boii, who, with Caesar's permission, had settled in the land of the Haedui (according to Napoleon, the modern St. Parize-le-Châtel; according to Göler, the modern Guerche). Also identified with the modern Charlieu or Gergeau, near Orléans.* *vii. 7.*
- Graecus**, *a, um, adj.*, *Greek.* *i. 29, v. 48, vi. 14.*
- Graecus**, *i, m.*, *a Greek.* *vi. 24.*
- Grāioceli**, *ōrum, m. pl.*, *a Gallic tribe somewhere around the Mons Cenis.* *i. 10. Town: Ōcelum.*
- grandis**, *e, adj.*, *great, large.* *4.*
- grātia**, *ae, f.*, *favor, regard, love, friendship, courtesy, popularity, gratitude, acknowledgment; grātiā, for the sake of, on account of; grātiās agere, to thank; grātiām referre, to requite, return a favor.* *25.*
- grātulātiō**, *ōnis, f.*, *(grātulor), a manifestation of joy; rejoicing, congratulation, joy.* *i. 53, v. 53, vii. 79.*
- grātulor**, *ārī, ātus, dep.*, *(grātus), to manifest one's joy, congratulate, rejoice; to give thanks.* *i. 30.*
- grātus**, *a, um, adj.*, *pleasing, agreeable, thankful, grateful.* *i. 44, vi. 16.*
- gravis**, *e, adj.*, *heavy, weighty, grave, important, dignified; grievous, severe, oppressive.* *17.*
- gravitās**, *ātis, f.*, *(gravis), weight, heaviness, dignity, severity, power, influence.* *iv. 3, v. 16.*
- graviter**, *adv.*, *(gravis), heavily, strongly, grievously, severely, unwillingly, with displeasure.* *iii. 18.*
- gravō**, *āre, āvi, ātus, (gravis), to burden, weigh down, oppress; pass., to be burdened, feel vexed, be reluctant, hesitate.* *i. 35.*
- Grudii**, *ōrum, m. pl.*, *a Belgic tribe in the east of Flanders.* *v. 39.*
- gubernātor**, *ōris, m.*, *(gubernō, steer), a pilot.* *iii. 9, v. 10.*
- gustō**, *āre, āvi, ātus, to taste, partake of.* *v. 12.*

H

habēō, *ēre, uī, itus, to have, possess, hold, cherish, use, regard; grātiām habēre, to feel grateful.* *176.*

Haedui, *ōrum, m. pl.*, *a mighty Celtic tribe, between the Liger (Loire) and Arar (Saône). They were allies of the Roman people. Their capital was Bibracte. Towns: Cavillōnum, Decetia, Matiscō, Noviodūnum.* *i. 10, 11, 16, 31, 32, 33, 43, 48; ii. 5, 14 v. 54;*

- vi. 4, 12; vii. 5, 17, 32, 33, 37, 40, 43, 54, 55, 63, 75, 89, 90; viii. 46. See also *Ambarri*. Chieftains: *Diviciacus*, *Cavarillus*. Persons: *Viridomarus*, *Valetiacus*, *Cotus*, *Liscus*, *Litavicus*, *Dumnorix*, *Convictolitavis*. *Haeduus*, a, um, adj., *Haeduan*; *Haeduus*, i, m., a *Haeduan*. 122.
- haesitō*, āre, āvi, ātus, (haereō, *cling*), to remain fixed, stick fast, be rooted. vii. 19.
- hāmus*, i, m., a *hook*. vii. 73.
- harpagō*, ōnis, m., a *grappling hook*, *grapple*, *drag*. vii. 81.
- Harūdēs*, um, m. pl., a Germanic tribe, relic of the Cimbrian invasion, between the Rhine, Main, and Danube. i. 31, 37, 51.
- haud*, adv., *not*. v. 54.
- Helvēticus*, a, um, adj., *Helvetian*. vii. 9.
- Helvētīi*, ōrum, m. pl., a Celtic tribe between *Iūra*, *lacus Lemannus*, *Rhodanus*, and *Rhēnus*, divided into four clans (*pāgi*), of which Caesar mentions two, (1) *pāgus Verbigenus*, i. 27; (2) *pāgus Tigurinus*, i. 12. See *Verucloetius*, *Nammēius*, *Orgetorix*, *Diviciō*.
- Helvētius*, a, um, adj., *Helvetian*. 67.
- Helvīi*, ōrum, m. pl., a Celtic tribe in the modern Vivarez or Languedoc (*Cévennes*). vii. 8, 64.
- Hercynia silva*, the *Hercynian forest*, a collective name for the German mountain ridges from the sources of the Danube to the frontiers of Dacia, comprising the modern Schwarzwald, Odenwald, Böhmerwald, Mährische Berge, Karpathen. vi. 24, 25.
- Hercynius*, a, um, adj., *Hercynian*.
- hērēditās*, ātis, f., (*hērēs*, *heir*), *heirship*, *inheritance*. vi. 13.
- hiberna*. See *hibernus*.
- hibernāculum*, i, n., (*hibernus*), *winter tent*, *winter quarters*. ii. 35.
- Hibernia*, ae, f., *Ireland*. v. 13.
- hibernus*, a, um, adj., (*hiems*), of *winter*, *winter*; *hiberna*, ōrum, n. pl., (*sc. castra*), *winter quarters*. 46.
- hic*, haec, hōc, dem. adj., pron., *this*, *this one*, *this man*, *the latter*, *such*, *that*; hōc, on *this account*; hōc, with *comparatives*, *the more*, *the*. 655.
- hic*, adv., *here*, *in this place*. 4.
- hiemō*, āre, āvi, ātūrus, (*hiems*), to *pass the winter*, *winter*. 17.
- hiems*, emis, f., *winter*. 17.
- hinc*, adv., *hence*, *from this place*. vi. 25, 40.
- Hispania*, ae, f., *Spain*, divided by the *Hibērus* (*Ebro*), into *Hispania citerior* (*eastern part*), and *ulterior* (*western part*). i. 1; iii. 23; v. 1, 13; vii. 55. 6.
- Hispanus*, a, um, adj., *Spanish*. v. 26.
- homō*, inis, m. and f., a *man*, *woman*, *human being*. 88.
- honestus*, a, um, adj., (*honor*), *respectable*, *honorable*, *esteemed*, *distinguished*, *noble*. i. 53, v. 45, vii. 3.
- honor*, ōris, m., *honor*, *respect*, *esteem*, *official duty*, *post of honor*. *honōris causā*, out of *respect*. 8.
- honōrificus*, a, um, adj., (*honor* + *faciō*), *honorable*. i. 43.
- hōra*, ae, f., an *hour*. 16.
- horreō*, ēre, uī, —, to *dread*, *tremble at*. i. 32.
- horribilis*, e, adj., (*horreō*), to *be dreaded*, *dreadful*, *horrible*, *terrible*. vii. 36.
- horridus*, a, um, adj., (*horreō*), *rugged*, *dire*, *rough*. v. 14.
- hortor*, āri, ātus, dep., to *exhort*, *encourage*, *urge*. 18.
- hospes*, itis, m. and f., a *host*, *stranger*, *guest*. i. 53, v. 6, vi. 23.
- hospitium*, i, n., (cf. *hospes*), *hospitality*, *friendship*. 5.
- hostis*, is, m. and f., (*Eng. GUEST*), an *enemy*. 285.

hūc, adv., (**hīc**), *hither, to this place; thus far, to this.* 22.

hūiusmodī, adv., (**hīc** + **modus**), *of such a nature, of this kind, such.* iii. 3, vii. 22.

hūmānitās, ātis, f., (**hūmānus**), *humanity; culture, refinement.* i. 1, 47.

hūmānus, a, um, adj., (**homō**), *human, humane; civilized, polished.* iv. 3, v. 14.

humerus, ī, m., *the shoulder.* vii. 50, 56.

humilis, e, adj., (**humus**, *ground*), *low, humble, poor, abject, base, vile.* 6.

humilitās, ātis, f., (**humilis**), *lowness, weakness, insignificance, meanness.* v. 1, 27.

I

iaceō, āre, uī, —, *to lie, lie down, lie dead; to extend.* ii. 27, vii. 25.

iaciō, ere, iēcī, *iactus*, *to cast, throw, hurl, fling; to throw up, construct.* 7.

iactō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**iaciō**), *to throw, fling, toss, cast, hurl; to speak or make mention of; to discuss, examine, talk about.* i. 18, 25; vii. 47.

iactūra, ae, f., (**iaciō**), *a throwing away; loss, damage, hurt, sacrifice.* vi. 12; vii. 26, 77.

iaculum, ī, n., (**iaciō**), *a dart, javelin.* v. 43, 45.

iam, adv., *already, now, soon.* 67.

ibi, adv., *there, in that place; then.* 51.

Iccius, ī, m., a **Rōman**. ii. 3, 6, 7.

ictus, ūs, m., (**icō**, *strike*), *a blow, stroke.* i. 25, vii. 25.

idcirco, adv., *therefore, for this reason.* v. 3.

idem, eadem, **idem**, dem. adj. pron., (**is** + particle **dem**), *the same, at once, also.* 113.

identidem, adv., (**idem** + **idem**), *repeatedly, at intervals, now and then.* ii. 19.

idōneus, a, um, adj., *suitable, fit, proper, worthy, capable.* 20.

Idūs, uum, f. pl., *the Ides: the 13th day of the month, but the 15th of March, May, July, and October.* i. 7.

ignis, is, m., *fire.* 13.

ignōbilis, e, adj., (**in** + **nōbilis**), *unknown, obscure, humble, mean, of low birth.* v. 28.

ignōminia, ae, f., (**in** + **nōmen**), *dishonor, disgrace, ignominy.* vii. 17 (twice), 80.

ignōrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *not to know, be ignorant of.* 5.

ignōscō, ere, nōvī, nōtus, (**in** + **nōscō**), *to forgive, pardon, excuse.* 4.

ignōtus, a, um, adj., (**in** + **nōtus**), *unknown.* iv. 24.

ille, illa, illud, dem. adj. pron., *that, he, she, that man, that woman, that thing.* 120.

illic, adv., (**loc. ille** + particle **ce**), *there, in that place.* i. 18, vii. 20.

illō, adv., (**ille**), *thither, to that place, to that thing or purpose.* vi. 13, vii. 45.

Illyricum, ī, n., a land in the southeast of Italy, bordering on the Adriatic Sea, belonging to Caesar's province. ii. 35, iii. 7, v. 1.

imbēcillitās, ātis, f., (**imbēcillus**, *weak*), *feebleness, weakness, imbecility.* vii. 77.

imber, bris, m., *rain.* 4.

imitor, ārī, ātus, dep., *copy after, resemble, counterfeit.* vi. 40, vii. 22.

immānis, e, adj., *enormous, immense, wild, savage, cruel.* iv. 1, vi. 16.

immineō, ere, —, —, (**in** + **mineō**, *pro* + *ject*), *to hang over, project; to be near.* vi. 38.

immittō, ere, mīsi, missus, (**in** + **mittō**), *to send or let in; to hurl, cast, throw, let loose upon; to introduce.* 5.

immolō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**in** + **mola**, *meal*), *to sacrifice, immolate, offer.* vi. 16 (twice), 17.

immortalis, e, adj., (in + mortālis, mortal), immortal. 7.

immūnis, e, adj., (in + mūnus), exempt from public service or taxation; free from. vii. 76.

immūnitās, ātis, f., (immūnis), exemption from public service, freedom. vi. 14.

imparātus, a, um, adj., (in + parātus), unprepared, not ready. vi. 30.

impedimentum, ī, n., (impediō), impediment, hindrance, burden, obstacle; plur., baggage of an army. 48.

impediō, ire, īvi, itus, (in + pēs), to entangle, hamper, embarrass, perplex; to bind, tie; to obstruct, hinder, impede. 39.

impeditus, a, um, partic. pass., (impediō), obstructed, difficult, troublesome.

impellō, ere, puli, pulsus, (in + pellō), to push, drive against, drive forward, set in motion, impel; to urge to, induce, incite. 9.

impendeō, ēre, —, —, (in + pendeō, hang), to hang over, overhang, impend, threaten. i. 6, iii. 2.

impendō, ere, ī, pēnsus, (in + pendō), to expend, employ. iv. 2.

impēnsus, a, um, partic. pass., (impendō), expensive, dear; large, great. iv. 2.

imperātor, ōris, m., (imperō), a commander in chief, general; a chief, leader. 18.

imperātum, ī, n., (imperō), command. 9.

imperfectus, a, um, adj., (in + perfectus, done), unfinished. vi. 12.

imperitus, a, um, adj., (in + peritus), inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant, unacquainted with. 9.

imperium, ī, n., direction, command, government, power, order. 57.

imperō, āre, āvi, ātus, (in + parō), to command, order, enjoin, require, demand, order to be provided. 67.

impetrō, āre, āvi, ātus, (in + patrō, accomplish), to accomplish, effect, procure, obtain. 18.

impetus, ūs, m., (impetō, attack), attack, assault, charge, onset; impetuosity, force. 49.

impius, a, um, adj., (in + pius, reverent), irreverent, ungodly. vi. 13.

implicō, āre, āvi, ātus, or uī, itus, (in + plicō, fold), to unfold; to involve, entangle, entwine, interlace. vii. 73.

implōrō, āre, āvi, ātus, (in + plōrō, cry out), to implore, entreat. 4.

impōnō, ere, posui, positus, (in + pōnō), to place upon, set over; to impose, impose upon; to embark. 5.

importō, āre, āvi, ātus, (in + pōrtō), to import. 5.

imprimis, adv., among the first, especially. (Cf. in and primus.)

improbus, a, um, adj., (in + probus, sterling), shameless, wicked, unprincipled. i. 17.

imprōvisō, adv., (imprōvisus), suddenly, unexpectedly.

imprōvisus, a, um, adj., (in + prōvisus, foreseen), unexpected, unforeseen, sudden. 7.

imprūdēns, tis, adj., (in + prūdēns, foreseeing), not foreseeing, imprudent, unaware, ignorant, unsuspecting. iii. 29, v. 15.

imprudentia, ae, f., (imprūdēns) want of foresight, inadvertence. iv. 27, v. 3.

impūbēs, eris, adj., (in + pūbēs, under age, youthful; unmarried; chaste continent. vi. 21.

impūgnō, āre, āvi, ātus, (in + pūgnō), to assail, attack, oppose, charge, invade i. 44, iii. 26.

impulsus, a, um. See impellō.

impulsus, ūs, m., (impellō), instigation, impulse. v. 25.

impūne, adv., (in + poena), *with impunity, without punishment.* i. 14.

impūnitās, ātis, f., (impūnis, *without punishment*), *impunity.* i. 14.

imus, a, um. See **inferus**.

in-, negative prefix, (Eng. un-).

in, prep. with acc. or abl., *in, into, to, at, during; among, with; on, about, concerning; against, towards.* See Idioms. **in** with abl., 543; **in** with acc., 542.

inānis, e, adj., *empty, void; useless, vain, idle.* v. 23, vii. 19.

incautē, adv., (incautus), *unwarily, inconsiderately, incautiously.* vii. 27.

incautus, a, um, adj., (in + caveō), *unwary, heedless, inconsiderate, off one's guard.* vi. 30.

incendium, i, n., (incendō), *a conflagration, fire.* 6.

incendō, ere, dī, sus, (in + candeō, *glow*), *to kindle, set on fire, burn; to inflame, excite.* 21.

incertus, a, um, adj., (in + certus), *doubtful, not sure, not to be relied upon.* 6.

incidō, ere, cidī, —, (in + cadō), *to fall into or upon, fall among, meet; to fall out, occur, happen.* 5.

incidō, ere, cidī, cīsus, (in + caedō), *to cut into.* ii. 17.

incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, (in + capiō), *to commence, take; to attempt, undertake.* 8.

incitō, āre, āvī, ātus, (in + citō), *to incite, urge on, encourage, rouse.* 15.

incōgnitus, a, um, adj., (in + cōgnitus, *known*), *unknown.* iv. 20, 29.

incolō, ere, coluī, —, (in + colō), *to abide or dwell in a place, inhabit.* 15.

incolumis, e, adj., *safe, uninjured, unimpaired, sound, whole.* 19.

incommodē, adv., (incommodus), *unfortunately.* v. 33.

incommodum, i, n., (incommodus), *disadvantage, loss, defeat, harm.*

incommodus, a, um, adj., (in + commodus), *inconvenient, unfortunate, hurtful.* 14.

incrēdibilis, e, adj., (in + crēdibilis, *believable*), *incredible, wonderful, astonishing, strange.* 6.

increpitō, āre, āvī, ātus, (increpō, *sound against*), *to reprove, rebuke, taunt, blame.* ii. 15, 30.

incumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitus, (in + cumbō), *to recline or lean upon, to apply one's self to, attend to.* vii. 76.

incursiō, ōnis, f., (incurrō, *run upon*), *an incursion, invasion; an attack, assault, charge.* 4.

incursus, ūs, m., (incurrō, *run upon*), *attack, onset, charge, assault.* vii. 36.

incūsō, āre, āvī, ātus, (in + causa), *to blame, complain of, accuse.* i. 40, ii. 15.

inde, adv., *thence, from that place; after that, next, then.* 15.

indiciū, i, n., (index, *sign*), *discovery, information, proof, token, mark.* 4.

indicō, ere, dixī, dictus, (in + dicō), *to declare, disclose, reveal, show, tell.* 8.

indictus, a, um, adj., (in + dicō), *unsaid, unpleaded.* vii. 38.

indigne, adv., (indignus), *undeservedly, unworthily, basely.* vii. 38.

indignitās, ātis, f., (indignus), *insult, unworthiness.* ii. 4, vii. 56.

indignor, āri, ātus, dep., (indignus), *to scorn, disdain; to be enraged at, angry with, displeased.* vii. 19.

indignus, a, um, adj., (in + dignus), *unworthy, dishonorable, shameful, unbecoming, base, indecent.* v. 35; vii. 17, 38.

indiligēns, tis, adj., (in + diligēns, *choosing out, careful*), *careless, negligent.* ii. 33, vii. 71.

indiligerter, adv., (indiligēns, *choosing out, careful*), *carelessly, negligently.* ii. 33.

indiligentia, ae, f., (indiligēns, *choosing out, careful*), *negligence, carelessness*. vii. 17.

indūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus, (in + dūcō), *to introduce; to induce, influence; to cover, draw on*. 4.

indulgentia, ae, f., (indulgēns, *favoring*), *favor, indulgence*. vii. 63.

indulgeō, ēre, dulsī, dultus, *to favor, indulge, gratify*. i. 40, vii. 40.

induō, ere, uī, ūtus, *to put on, clothe, furnish with; sē induere, to be entangled in*. vii. 73, 82.

industriē, adv., (industrius, *busy*), *diligently, industriously*. vii. 60.

indūtiae, ārum, f. pl., *armistice, truce*. iv. 12, 13.

Indutiomārus, ī, m., *chieftain of the Treveri*. v. 3, 4, 26, 53, 55, 57, 58.

ineō, ire, īi, itus, (in + eō), *to go into, enter; to begin, enter upon, form*. 21.

inermis, e, or inermus, a, um, adj., (in + arma), *unarmed, defenseless, without arms*. 4.

iners, tis, adj., (in + ars), *sluggish, indolent, inactive, lazy, spiritless*. iv. 2.

infāmia, ae, f., (in + fāma), *dishonor, disgrace, infamy*. vi. 23, vii. 56.

infāns, antis, adj., (in + fārī, *speak*), *that cannot speak*. See noun.

infāns, antis, m. and f., *an infant, child*. vii. 28, 47.

infectus, a, um, adj., (in + faciō), *unaccomplished, unfinished*. vii. 17.

inferō, ferre, intulī, inlātus, (in + ferō), *to bring into, bring on, inflict; to introduce, interpose; signa inferre, to attack; to advance the standards*. 19.

inferus, a, um, adj., *below, underneath, low; comp. inferior, lower, inferior; sup. infimus or imus, the lowest, last, deepest, lowest part of*. 19.

infestus, a, um, adj., *unsafe, insecure; hostile, dangerous; embittered*. vi. 8, 51.

inficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, (in + faciō), *to color, stain, dye*. v. 14.

infidēlis, e, adj., (in + fidēlis), *unfaithful, treacherous, faithless*. vii. 59.

infigō, ere, fixī, fixus, (in + figō, *fix*), *to fasten in, fix in*. vii. 73.

infimus, a, um. See *inferus*.

infinītus, a, um, adj., (in + finītus, *bounded*), *without bounds, limitless, vast, infinite*. v. 12; vi. 10, 43.

infirmītās, ātis, f., (infirmus), *weakness, feebleness, inconstancy, fickleness*. iv. 5, 13; vii. 26.

infirmus, a, um, adj., (in + firmus), *weak, inconstant, fickle, light-minded*. 5.

inflectō, ere, flexī, flexus, (in + flectō), *to bend; to change, alter*. i. 25, ii. 17.

influō, ere, fluxī, fluxus, (in + fluō), *to empty into, flow into*. 8.

infodiō, ere, fōdī, fossus, (in + fodiō), *to dig in, to bury*. vii. 73.

infrā, prep. with acc., and adv., (abl. sing. fem.), *under, below, underneath; smaller than*. 4.

ingēns, entis, adj., *huge, vast*. i. 39, iv. 10, v. 3.

ingrātus, a, um, adj., (in + grātus), *thankless, disagreeable, unthankful, ungrateful, unacceptable*. vii. 30.

ingredior, ī, gressus, (in + gradior, *advance*), *to get into; to enter, advance; to engage in, commence*. ii. 4, v. 9.

iniciō, ere, iēcī, ictus, (in + iaciō), *to cast into, inspire, bring into; to occasion, cause*. 5.

inimicitia, ae, f., (inimicus), *enmity, hostility*. vi. 12.

inimicus, a, um, adj., (in + amicus), *unfriendly, hostile, inimical*. 7.

iniquītās, ātis, f., (iniquus), *unevenness, unfavorable position, difficulty, injustice, unfairness*. 8.

iniquus, a, um, adj., (in + aequus), *uneven, unequal; disadvantageous, unfavorable, unjust*. 16.

initium, *i*, *n.*, (*ineō*), commencement, beginning; element. 23.

iniungō, *ere*, *iūnxī*, *iūctus*, (*in* + *iungō*), to attach, fasten on; to inflict, occasion, impose, bring upon. vii. 77.

iniūria, *ae*, *f.*, (*in* + *iūs*), injustice, injury, damage, wrong. 32.

iniussū, *ablat.* (*in* + *iussū*), without command. i. 19, v. 28.

inlātus, *a*, *um*. See *inferō*.

inligō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, (*in* + *ligō*, bind), to bind on, fasten, connect. iv. 17, v. 45.

inlūstris, *e*, *adj.*, (*in* + *lūstrō*, make bright), light, clear, bright, luminous; plain, evident; illustrious. vi. 19; vii. 3, 32.

innāscor, *i*, *nātus*, *dep.*, (*in* + *nāscor*), to be born in; to grow, have its origin, spring in. i. 41, vii. 42.

innātus, *a*, *um*, *partic. pass.*, (*innāscor*), innate, inborn, natural. i. 41, vii. 42.

innitor, *i*, *nixus*, *dep.*, (*in* + *nitor*), to lean on rest upon; to support one's self by. ii. 27.

innocēns, *entis*, *adj.*, (*in* + *nocēns*), innocent, harmless. vi. 9, 16.

innocentia, *ae*, *f.*, (*innocēns*), uprightness, integrity, blamelessness. i. 40.

inopia, *ae*, *f.*, (*inops*, needy), scarcity, poverty, want. 24.

inopināns, *antis*, *adj.*, (*in* + *opinor*, think), not expecting, unawares, ignorant. 8.

inquam, *def.*, I say. 13.

inrideō, *āre*, *risī*, *risus*, (*in* + *rideō*, laugh), to laugh at, ridicule. ii. 30.

inridiculē, *adv.*, unwittingly. i. 42.

inrumpō, *ere*, *rūpi*, *ruptus*, (*in* + *rumpō*, break), to break into, rush into, invade; to storm, force one's way into. 5.

inruptiō, *ōnis*, *f.*, (*inrumpō*), an invasion, attack, irruption. vii. 70.

insciēns, *entis*, *adj.*, (*in* + *sciō*), unaware, ignorant, not knowing. i. 19, v. 7.

inscientia, *ae*, *f.*, (*insciēns*), inexperience, ignorance. 4.

inscius, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, (*in* + *sciō*), not knowing, ignorant, unaware. iv. 4, vii. 77.

insequor, *i*, *cūtus*, *dep.*, (*in* + *sequor*), to follow, pursue, harass. 18.

inserō, *ere*, *uī*, *tus*, (*in* + *serō*), to put in, insert, ingraft. iii. 14.

insidiae, *ārum*, *f. pl.*, (*insideō*, sit on), an ambush, ambuscade; artifice, stragem, treachery. 8.

insidior, *ārī*, *ātus*, *dep.*, (*insidiae*), to wait for, watch for, lie in wait, form an ambuscade. vi. 34.

insigne, *is*, *n.*, (*insignis*), a distinctive mark, badge, decoration. 4.

insignis, *e*, *adj.*, (*in* + *signum*), remarkable, distinguished, extraordinary. i. 12, ii. 20, vii. 50.

insiliō, *īre*, *uī*, —, (*in* + *saliō*, to leap), to leap or spring into; to leap upon, spring upon. i. 52.

insimulō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, (*in* + *simulō*), to charge, accuse. vii. 20 (twice), 38.

insinuō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, (*in* + *sinuō*, wind into), to work one's way into; to arrive at, reach, come among. iv. 33.

insistō, *ere*, *stitī*, —, (*in* + *sistō*), to set foot upon, stand; to begin, adopt, press hard upon. 5.

insolenter, *adv.*, (*insolēns*, unwont), in an unusual manner, haughtily, insolently, excessively. i. 14.

inspectō, *āre*, —, —, (*in* + *spectō*), to look at, view, behold. vii. 25.

instabilis, *e*, *adj.*, (*in* + *stō*), variable, uncertain, unsteady. iv. 23.

instar, *n. indecl.*, (for *instār* (*e*), cf. *instō*), likeness, image. ii. 17.

instigō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, to incite, stimulate. v. 56.

instituō, ere, i, ūtus, (in + statuō), to put, set, place into, rear, construct, build, erect; to prepare, make ready, furnish, provide, arrange, institute, establish, appoint; to determine, resolve; to educate; to fix upon. 49.

institūtum, i, n., (instituō), a plan, purpose, design; habit, custom; institution. 9.

instō, āre, stitī, statūrus, (in + stō), to stand on or upon; to follow closely up, pursue; to be near at hand; to draw near, approach; to threaten. 7.

instrūmentum, i, n., (instruō), an implement, tool, utensil, instrument. v. 31, vi. 30.

instruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus, (in + struō, build), to put into; to build into; to arrange, draw up; to furnish, equip. 19.

insuēfactus, a, um, adj., (in + suēscō, be accustomed, + faciō), accustomed, habituated, trained. iv. 24.

insuētus, a, um, adj., (in + suēscō, be accustomed), unaccustomed, unused, unwonted. v. 6, vii. 30.

insula, ae, f., an island. 18.

insuper, adv., (in + super, above), above, upon, besides, moreover. iv. 17, vii. 23.

integer, gra, grum, adj., fresh, new, vigorous; entire, whole, untouched, unimpaired. 11.

integō, ere, tēxī, tēctus, (in + tegō), to cover. vii. 22, 73, 79.

intellegō, ere, lēxī, lēctus, (inter + legō, choose), to perceive, discern, understand, perceive. 45.

intendō, ere, dī, tus, (in + tendō), to direct towards, stretch out, endeavor, strive. 4.

intentus, a, um, partic. pass., (intendō), attentive, intent upon, on the alert, fixed upon, intent. iii. 22, 26; vii. 80.

inter, prep. with the acc., (in + suffix tero), among, between, within. See Idioms. 81.

intercēdō, ere, cessī, cessus, (inter + cēdō), to come between, intercede, plead for. 10.

intercipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, (inter + capiō), to seize, capture, intercept, obstruct. 4.

interclūdō, ere, clūsī, clūsus, (inter + claudō), to shut or cut off, prevent, debar. 13.

interdicō, ere, dixī, dictus, (inter + dicō), to forbid, prohibit, exclude. 7.

interdiū, adv., (inter + diū), in the daytime; by day. i. 8; vii. 69, 72.

interdum, adv., (inter + dum), sometimes. i. 14, 39.

intereā, adv., (inter + eā, case form of is), in the meantime, meanwhile. 9.

intereō, ire, ii, itūrus, (inter + eō), to be lost, undone; to perish. 8.

interesse. See *intersum*.

interficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, (inter + faciō), to slay, kill, destroy. 83.

intericiō, ere, iēcī, iectus, (inter + iaciō), to throw or put between; pass, to intervene. 9.

interim, adv., meanwhile, in the meantime. 31.

interior, us, comp. adj., inner, interior; sup. *intimus*. 6.

interiōrēs, those in the interior.

interitus, ūs, m., (intereō), destruction, ruin, annihilation, death. v. 47.

intermittō, ere, misī, missus, (inter + mittō), to place between, interrupt, neglect, break off; to cease. 33.

interneciō, ōnis, f., (inter + necō), a slaughter, massacre; destruction. i. 13, ii. 28.

interpellō, āre, āvī, ātus, (inter + obsoleto pellō), to disturb, interrupt, hinder, prevent. i. 44.

interpōnō, ere, posuī, positus, (inter + pōnō), to place between, allege, adduce, propose, apply. 8.

interpres, etis, m. and f., mediator, interpreter. i. 19, v. 36.

interpretor, āri, ātus, dep., (interpres), to expound, explain, interpret. vi. 13.

interrogō, āre, āvī, ātus, (inter + rogō), to inquire, ask; to accuse. vii. 20.

interrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus, (inter + rumpō, break), to break down. vii. 19, 34.

interscindō, ere, idī, issus, (inter + scindō), to tear down, destroy. ii. 9, vii. 24.

intersum, esse, fuī, futūrus, (inter + sum), to be between; to be present; to take part in; interest, imp., it concerns; it is important. 9.

intervallum, ī, n., (inter + vāllus), distance, interval. 10.

intervenīō, īre, vēnī, ventus, (inter + venīō), to come between; to intervene, arrive, happen, occur. vi. 37, vii. 20.

interventus, ūs, m., (intervenīō), interposition, intervention. iii. 15.

intexō, ere, uī, tūs, (in + texō, weave), to weave into; to cover, interlace. ii. 33.

intoleranter, adv., (in + tolerō), excessively, immoderately. vii. 51.

intrā, prep. with acc., in, within, during. 19.

intritus, a, um, adj., (in + terō, rub), not exhausted; not worn out. iii. 26.

intrō, adv., within.

intrō, āre, āvī, ātus, to go into, enter, penetrate. ii. 17; vii. 8, 73.

intrōdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, (intrō + ducō), to lead into. ii. 5, 10; iii. 20.

introeō, īre, ivī, —, (intrō + eō), to go into. v. 43.

introitus, ūs, m., (introeō), entrance. v. 9.

intrōmittō, ere, mīsi, missus, (intro + mittō), to let in or send; to introduce. 4.

intrōrsus, adv., (intrōversus, turned inward), inwardly, within, into the interior, inland. 5.

intrōrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptus, (intrō + rumpō, break), to break or burst into; to enter by force; to break. v. 51.

intueor, ēri, tuitus, dep., (in + tueor), to look at, regard, behold. i. 32.

intus, adv., on the inside, within. v. 45, vi. 37.

inūsitātus, a, um, adj., (in + ūsitātus), uncommon, unusual, unwonted, extraordinary, strange. ii. 31, iv. 25 (twice).

inūtilis, e, adj., (in + ūtilis), unprofitable, useless. 5.

inveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus, (in + venīō), to come upon, find, meet with; to find out, discover, contrive. 6.

inventor, ōris, m., (inveniō), author, inventor, originator. vi. 17.

inveterāscō, ere, rāvi, —, (in + veterāscō, grow old), to grow old; to become established; to settle. ii. 1, v. 41.

invicem, adv., (in + vicis), one after another, by turns, mutually, alternately. iv. 1, vii. 85.

invictus, a, um, adj., (in + victus), unconquered, unvanquished, invincible. i. 36.

invidēō, ēre, vīdī, visus, (in + videō), to grudge; to envy. ii. 31.

invidia, ae, f., (invidus, envious), envy, jealousy, grudge, ill-will, hatred, malice. vii. 77.

inviolātus, a, um, adj., (in + violō), inviolate, inviolable. iii. 9.

invītō, āre, āvī, ātus, to allure, entice, invite. 4.

invītus, a, um, adj., unwilling, reluctant, against one's will. 7.

ipse, a, um, intens. pers. pron., himself, herself, itself; adj. pron., very, precisely, exactly. 190.

irācundia, ae, f., (irācundus), rage, anger, passion. vi. 5, vii. 42.

irācundus, a, um, adj., passionate, angry, irascible. i. 31.

is, ea, id, dem. adj. pron., this, that, such; eō, ablat., on that account, for this reason; eā, abl., in that way; pers. pron., he, she, it. 962.

iste, a, ud, dem. adj. pron., this of yours; that, this, such; pers. pron., he, she, it. vii. 77.

ita, adv., in this way, thus, so, in such a manner. 42.

Italia, ae, f., Italy.

itaque, conj., (ita + que), therefore, so, thus, to such a degree. 29.

item, adv., likewise, also, in like manner. 28.

iter, itineris, n., (eō), a march, journey, way. 112.

iterum, adv., again. 4.

Itius portus, m., a Gallic port in the land of the Morini opposite the Britannic coast, perhaps the port of the modern Boulogne (Gesoriacum). If Caesar started from here also in his first expedition, we have to take Ambleteuse near Boulogne as portus ulterior (iv. 23, 1), or superior (iv. 27, 1).

itūrus, a, um. See eō.

iuba, ae, f., a mane. i. 48.

iubeō, āre, iussī, iussus, to order, command, bid. 112.

iudicium, ī, n., (iūdex, a judge), a judging, trial, judgment, decision, sentence, opinion. 10.

iudicō, āre, āvī, ātus, (iūs + dicō), to judge, determine, decide, declare; to deem, consider, think. 19.

iugum, ī, n., a yoke; the yoke; a symbol of submission. For description, see note to i. 7, p. 330; height, ridge, summit. 13.

iumentum, ī, n., (iungō), a beast of burden, draught animal, ox, horse, etc. 7.

iūctūra, ae, f., (iungō), a junction, joint, union. iv. 17.

iungō, ere, iūnxī, iunctus, to join, unite, bind, fasten. 5.

iūnior. See iuvenis. vii. 1.

iūnius, ī, m., Q., a Spaniard. v. 27 seq.

Iuppiter, Iovis, m., king of the gods. vi. 17.

Iūra, ae, f., the modern Jura, a mountain ridge from the Rhone to the Rhine, forming the boundary line between the Sequani and the Helvētīi.

iūrō, āre, āvī, ātus, to swear. i. 31, vi. 12.

iūs, iūris, n., law, right, justice, power, authority. 10.

iūsiurandum, iūrisiurandī, n., (iūs + iūrō), an oath. 21.

iussū, (iubeō), abl., by command; by order. viii. 3.

iūstitia, ae, f., (iūstus), equity, justice, uprightness. 4.

iūstus, a, um, adj., (iūs), right, fair, just, customary, appropriate. 7.

iuvenis, e, adj., young; iuvenis, is, m., a youth: comp., iūnior. vii. 1.

iuventūs, ūtis, f., (cf. iuvenis), youth; young persons. iii. 16; vi. 14, 23.

iuvō, āre, iūvī, iūtus, to aid, help, assist. 5.

iūxtā, adv. and prep., (cf. iungō, a preposition first in Caesar), near by, close to, by, next to, near to, near. ii. 26.

K

Kalendae, ārum, f. pl., the first day of the Roman month. i. 6.

L

L, for the Greek aspirate Λ, λ, used by the Romans as the sign for 50; written 1 and finally 1

L., for *Lūcius*.

Laberius, ī, m., *Q. Laberius Dūrus*, a military tribune. v. 15.

Labiēnus, ī, m., *T. Attius*, most prominent of Caesar's legates (he joined in the Civil War the party of Pompey, and fell in the battle of Munda). i. 10, 21, 54; v. 57; vi. 7; vii. 34; viii. 6, 23 seq., 45, 52.

lābor, ī, lapsus, dep., to fall down, slip down; to err, commit a fault; to miss by falling. v. 3, 55.

labor, ōris, m., toil, labor, exertion, work; fatigue, hardship, trouble, distress. 31.

labōrō, āre, āvi, ātus, (labor), to toil, labor; to suffer, be distressed; to be in danger or difficulty. 12.

labrum, ī, n., a lip, the edge or rim. v. 14, vi. 28, vii. 72.

lāc, lactis, n., milk. iv. 1, v. 14, vi. 22.

laccessō, ere, ivi, itus, (laciō, allure), to attack; assail, provoke, irritate, challenge. 10.

lacrima, ae, f., a tear. i. 20, 39.

lacrimō, āre, āvi, ātus, (lacrima), to weep. vii. 38.

lacus, ūs, m., a lake. i. 2, 8; iii. 1.

laedō, ere, laesi, laesus, to strike, injure, violate, harm. vi. 9.

laetatiō, ōnis, f., (laetor, rejoice), joy. v. 52.

laetitia, ae, f., (laetus), gladness, joy, exultation, delight. v. 48, vii. 79.

laetus, a, um, adj., glad, joyful. iii. 18.

languidē, adv., (languidus), feebly, faintly, languidly. vii. 27.

languidus, a, um, adj., feeble, faint, sluggish. iii. 5.

languor, ōris, m., faintness, weariness, listlessness. v. 31.

lapis, idis, m., a stone. 8.

laqueus, ī, m., a snare, noose. vii. 22.

largior, iri, itus, dep., (largus, copi-

ous), to give bountifully, bestow, distribute, supply, impart. i. 18, vi. 24.

largiter, adv., (largus, copious), liberally, largely. i. 18.

largitiō, ōnis, f., (largior), liberal giving. i. 9.

lassitūdō, inis, f., (lassus, weary), fatigue, weariness, lassitude. ii. 23, iv. 15.

lātē, adv., (lātus), extensively, widely. 8.

latebra, ae, f., (lateō), a lurking place, hiding place, retreat, covert. vi. 43.

lateō, ēre, uī, —, to skulk, lurk, lie hidden, concealed. ii. 19, iii. 14.

lātitudō, inis, f., (lātus), width, breadth, extent. 9.

Latobrigi, ōrum, m. pl., a Germanic tribe in the south of the modern Baden. i. 5, 28, 29.

latrō, ōnis, m., a robber, bandit. iii. 17, vii. 38.

latrōcinium, ī, n., (latrō), robbery. vi. 16, 23, 35.

lātus, a, um, adj., wide, broad, spacious, extensive. 10.

lātus, a, um. See ferō.

latus, eris, n., the flank, side. 25.

laudō, āre, āvi, ātus, (laus), to commend, praise. v. 8.

laus, laudis, f., fame, praise, renown, merit. 13.

lavō, āre and ere, lāvī, lautus and lōtus, to bathe, wash. iv. 1.

laxō, āre, āvi, ātus, to widen, open, loosen, extend. ii. 25.

lēgātiō, (lēgō, commission), ōnis, f., a deputation, legation, embassy. 15.

lēgātus, ī, m., (lēgō, commission), an ambassador, lieutenant, deputy, delegate. 123.

legiō, ōnis, f., (legō, choose), a legion. 188.

legiōnārius, a, um, adj., (legiō), of a legion, legionary. 7.

Lemannus, ī, m., (lacus L.), the Lake of Geneva, Lake Leman. i. 2, 8; iii. 1.

Lemōnum, ī, n., a town of the Pictonēs, in Celtic Gaul, the modern Poitiers. viii. 26.

Lemovicēs, um, m. pl., a Celtic tribe in the modern Département de la haute Vienne. Their capital, Augustoritum, = the modern Limoges. vii. 4, 75, 88; viii. 46. Chieftain: Sedulius.

lēnis, e, adj., mild, easy, soft, smooth; gently rising, sloping. 7.

lēnitās, ātis, f., (lēnis), smoothness, mildness, gentleness. i. 12.

lēniter, adv., (lēnis), mildly, gently. 5.

Lentulus, ī, m., L. Cornēlius, consul in 49 B.C. Caesar's adversary, who, after the battle of Pharsālus, fled to Egypt, where he was assassinated. viii. 50.

Lēpontī, ōrum, m. pl., a Celtic tribe in the Alps, between St. Gotthard and Lago Maggiore. iv. 10.

lepus, oris, m., a hare. v. 12.

Leuci, ōrum, m. pl., a Celtic tribe in the south of Lorraine. i. 40.

Levacī, ōrum, m. pl., a Belgic tribe near the modern Ghent. v. 39.

levis, e, adj., light, trifling, trivial, slight, fickle. 11.

levitās, ātis, f., (levis), fickleness, inconstancy, lightness. ii. 1, vii. 43.

levō, āre, āvī, ātus, (levis), to alleviate, relieve, aid, lighten. v. 27.

lēx, lēgis, f., a law. 14.

Lexovī, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe in the modern Normandy, near the mouth of the Sēquana (Seine). They belonged to the civitatēs Aremoricae. Their capital, Noviomagus, = the modern Lisieux. iii. 9, 11, 17, 29; vii. 75.

libenter, adv., (libēns, willing), cheerfully, willingly. i. 44, iii. 18, vi. 4.

liber, era, erum, adj., unrestrained, free. 11.

liberālitās, ātis, f., (liberālis, liberal), liberality, generosity. i. 18, 43.

liberāliter, adv., (liberālis, liberal), graciously, kindly. ii. 5; iv. 18, 21.

liberō, adv., (liber), frankly, boldly, freely. 4.

liberī, ōrum, m. pl., children. 15.

liberō, āre, āvī, ātus, (liber), to release, liberate, free. 5.

libertās, ātis, f., (liber), liberty, freedom. 19.

librīlis, e, adj., (libra, balance), weighing a pound. vii. 81.

licentia, ae, f., (licet), license, freedom, liberty; boldness, lawlessness, presumption. vii. 52.

liceor, ērī, licitus, dep., to bid at auction. i. 18 (twice).

licet, ēre, licuit or licitum est, impers., it is allowed, it is permitted; one may or can. 17.

Liger, eris, m., the modern river Loire, forming the boundary line between the Haeduī and Biturigēs. vii. 55. Acc., Ligerem, vii. 11, 56; Ligerim, vii. 5. Abl., Ligere, iii. 9; Ligerī, vii. 59, viii. 27.

lignātiō, ōnis, f., (cf. lignum, wood), procuring wood. v. 39.

lignātor, ōris, m., (cf. lignum, wood), a woodman, woodcutter. v. 26.

līlīum, ī, n., a lily; a military work in the form of a lily. vii. 73.

līnea, ae, f., a string, a line. vii. 23.

Lingonēs, um, m. pl., a Celtic tribe near the sources of Meuse and Marne; the Arar divides their land from that of the Sēquanī. Capital: Andematunnum = modern Langres. i. 40; iv. 40; vi. 44; vii. 9, 66; viii. 11. Acc., Lingonas, i. 26.

lingua, ae, f., the tongue; speech, language. i. 1 (twice), 47.

lingula, ae, f., (lingua), a tongue of land. iii. 12.

linter, tris, f., a skiff, boat. i. 12, 53; vii. 60.

linum, ī, n., *linen, flax*. iii. 13.
 lis, litis, f., *dispute, strife, damages, law-suit*. v. 1.
 Liscus, ī, m., a noble Haeduan. i. 16, 17.
 Litavīcus, ī, m., a Haeduan. vii. 37 seq., 54, 55, 67.
 littera, ae, f., *a letter of the alphabet; pl., an epistle, letter, document*. 22.
 litus, oris, n., *the bank, shore, coast, strand*. 6.
 loccus, ī, m., (pl. loca and locī), (for stlocus), *a spot, place, position, condition, rank, station*. 277.
 longē, adv., (longus), *at a distance, far*. 65.
 longinquus, a, um, adj., (cf. longus), *remote, long, removed, of long duration, long continued*. 5.
 longitūdō, inis, f., (longus), *length*. 11.
 longurius, ī, m., (longus), *a long pole*. iii. 14, iv. 17, vii. 84.
 longus, a, um, adj., *long, distant*. 83.
 Longus, ī, m. See Cōnsidius.
 loquor, ī, locūtus, dep., *to declare, say, speak*. 8.
 lōrica, ae, f., *a coat of mail, corselet; breastwork, parapet*. v. 40; vii. 72, 86.
 Lūcānius, ī, m., a centurion. v. 35.
 Lucterius, ī, m., a Cadurcan. vii. 5, 7, 8; viii. 30, 32, 34, 35, 39, 44.
 Lugotorix, igis, m., a Briton. v. 22.
 lūna, ae, f., (cf. lūceō, shine), *the moon*. i. 50, iv. 29, vi. 21.
 Lutetia, ae, f., a town of the Parisii, on an island of the Sēquana (Seine), the modern *Paris*. vi. 3; vii. 57, 58.
 lūx, lūcis, f., (lūceō, shine), *daylight, light*. 18.
 lūxuria, ae, f., (lūxus, excess), *luxury; extravagance, excess*. ii. 15.

M

M, for the Greek aspirate Φ, φ, used by the Romans as the sign for 1000; later

written M, and finally made to conform in shape to the initial letter of Mille.
 M., for Mārcus.
 māceria, ae, f., *an inclosure, a wall*. vii. 69, 70.
 māchinātiō, ōnis, f., (māchinor, contrive), *a machine*. ii. 30, 31; iv. 17.
 maestus, a, um, adj., (maereō, grieve), *mournful, sad, sorrowful*. vii. 80.
 Magetobriga, ae, f., a town in Celtic Gaul. Situation unknown. i. 31.
 magis, comp. adv., (cf. māgnus), *rather, more; sup. māximē*. 15.
 magistrātus, ūs, m., (magister, master), *a magistracy, officer, magistrate*. 21.
 māgnificus, a, um, adj., (māgnus + faciō), *magnificent, splendid*. vi. 19.
 māgnitūdō, inis, f., (māgnus), *size, magnitude, extent*. 28.
 māgnopere, adv., (māgnus + opus), *very much, greatly, exceedingly, strongly*. 7.
 māgnus, a, um, adj., *great, large, extensive; powerful, important; comp. māior, sup. māximus*. 353.
 māiestās, ātis, (māius, great), *greatness, dignity, grandeur, splendor, majesty*. vii. 17.
 māior, comp. of māgnus.
 māiōrēs, um, m. pl., (māior), *ancestors, forefathers*. 16.
 malacia, ae, f., *a calm at sea, dead calm*. iii. 15.
 male, adv., (malus), *ill, badly, unfortunate, adversely, unsuccessfully; comp. pēius, sup. pessimē*. i. 40.
 malefīcium, ī, n., (male + faciō), *an offence, evil deed, damage, mischief, harm*. 4.
 Mallius, ī, m., proconsul of Gaul in 78 B.C. iii. 20.
 mālō, mälle, mālui, (mag(e), rather [cf. magis] + volō), *to choose rather; to prefer*. iii. 8, 20.

mālus, **ī**, **m.**, *a pole, mast.* iii. 14, vii. 22.
malus, **a**, **um**, *adj., evil, bad, injurious, mischievous, destructive; comp. pēior, sup. pessimus.* i. 40.
mandātum, **ī**, **n.**, (**mandō**), *order, commission, command, charge.* 7.
mandō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, (**manus** + **dō**), *to commit to one's charge, commission, bid.* 19.
Mandubiī, **ōrum**, **m. pl.**, *a Celtic tribe between the Haedui and Lingonēs, in the modern Département Côte d'Or. Capital: Alēsia.* vii. 68, 71, 78.
Mandubracius, **ī**, **m.**, *chieftain of the Trinobantēs in Britain.* v. 20, 22.
māne, *adv., (old locative), in the morning.* iv. 13, v. 10, vii. 18.
maneō, **ēre**, **mānsī**, **mānsus**, *to stay, continue, remain.* 9.
manipulāris, **e**, *adj., (manipulus), of or belonging to a company, manipular; in pl. as noun, soldiers of same company.* vii. 47, 50.
manipulus, **ī**, **m.**, (**manus** + **plēnus**), *a bundle, handful; a company of soldiers.* ii. 25; vi. 34, 40.
mānsuēfiō, **flerī**, **factus**, *irr. pass., (manus + suētus, accustomed + fiō), to be tamed.* vi. 28.
mānsuētūdō, **inis**, **f.**, (**cf. mānsuēfiō**), *gentleness, clemency, mildness.* ii. 14, 31.
manus, **ūs**, **f.**, *a hand, an armed force, company, crowd; art, power.* 47.
Mārcellus, **ī**, **m.** (1) *M. Claudius, consul in 51 B.C.* viii. 53. (2) *C. Claudius, consul in 50 B.C.* viii. 48. (3) *C. Claudius, consul in 49 B.C.* viii. 50. All three Caesar's adversaries.
Marcomannī, **ōrum**, **m. pl.**, *a Germanic tribe on the upper Main.* i. 51.
mare, **is**, **n.**, *the sea.* 18.
Mare nostrum, **n.**, *the Mediterranean.* v. 1.
maritimus, **a**, **um**, *adj., (mare), maritime, of or on the sea.* 11.

Marius, **ī**, **m.**, *G., famous for his victories over the Cimbri and Teutonēs.* i. 40.
Mārs, **Mārtis**, **m.**, *the god of war; battle, war, strife.* vi. 17 (twice), vii. 19.
mās, **maris**, **m.**, *a male.* vi. 26.
matara, **ae**, **f.**, *a pike, javelin.* i. 26.
māter, **tris**, **f.**, *a mother.* 6.
māteria, **ae**, **f.**, and **māteries**, **ēī**, **f.**, (**māter**), *matter, material, wood, timber; māteria, 8; māteriēs, vii. 24.*
māterior, **ārī**, **—**, (**māteria**), *to fell or procure timber.* vii. 73.
Matiscō, **ōnis**, **f.**, *a town of the Haedui, on the Arar; modern Mâcon.* vii. 90.
mātrimōnium, **ī**, **n.**, (**cf. mater**), *marriage.* i. 3, 9.
Mātrona, **ae**, **f.**, *modern Marne, has its source in the land of the Lingonēs, and empties into the Sēquana.* i. 1.
mātūrō, *adv., (mātūrus), early, seasonably; speedily, soon, quickly.* 5.
mātūrēscō, **ere**, **mātūruī**, **—**, *to become ripe, ripen.* vi. 29.
mātūrō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, (**mātūrus**), *to make ripe; to hasten, make haste.* 4.
mātūrus, **a**, **um**, *adj., ripe, mature; timely, seasonable, right, suitable, proper, fit.* 7.
māximē, *adv., in the highest degree, very, most, especially.* vii. 68.
māximus, **a**, **um**, *sup. of māgnus.*
Māximus, **ī**, **m.** *See Fabius.*
medeor, **ērī**, *dep., to heal, cure, remedy; to correct, relieve, take care.* v. 24.
mediocris, **e**, *adj., (medius), middling, ordinary, moderate.* 7.
mediocriter, *adv., (mediocris), ordinarily, in an ordinary degree.* i. 39.
Mediōmaticēs, **ium**, **m. pl.**, *iv. 10; or Mediōmaticī. ōrum, vii. 75. Celtic tribe on the upper Mosel. Capital: Divodurum, later Metis, modern Metz.*
mediterrāneus, **a**, **um**, *adj., (medius + terra), inland, remote from the sea.* v. 12.

medius, a, um, adj., *middle, in the midst.* 29.

Meldī, ōrum, m. pl., a Celtic tribe between the modern Meaux and Melun on both sides of the *Mātrona*. v. 5.

melior, us, comp. of *bene*.

melius, comp. of *bene*.

Melodūnum, ī, n., a town of the *Sēquanī*, on an island of the *Sēquana* (*Seine*), modern *Melun*. vii. 58, 60, 61.

membrum, ī, n., a *limb, member*. iv. 24, vi. 16.

memini, isse, defect., to *recollect, remember*. iii. 6, vii. 37.

memoria, ae, f., (*memor, mindful*), *recollection, memory*. 21.

Menapiī, ōrum, m. pl., a Belgic tribe between the Meuse and Schelde. The modern Cassel is the old *Castellum Menapiōrum*. ii. 4; iii. 9, 28; iv. 4, 22, 38; vi. 2, 5, 6, 9, 33.

mendācium, ī, n., (*mendāx, false*), a *falsehood*. vii. 38.

mēns, mentis, f., the *mind; feelings, disposition, intellect, judgment, reason; heart, soul, courage*. 8.

mēnsis, is, m., a *month*. 4.

mēnsūra, ae, f., (*mētior*), *measurement, measure*. v. 13, vi. 25.

mentiō, ōnis, f., *mention*. vi. 38.

mercātor, ōris, m., (*mercōr, trade*), a *trader, merchant*. 11.

mercātūra, ae, f., (*mercōr, trade*), *traffic, commerce, trade*. vi. 17.

mercēs, ēdis, f., (*mereō*), *hire, pay, wages, salary, reward*. i. 31.

Mercurius, ī, m., *Mercury*, son of *Jupiter* and *Maia*, and messenger of the gods. vi. 17.

mereō, ēre, uī, itus, and *mereor*, ērī, itus, dep., to *be worthy of a thing, obtain; to deserve, merit, serve*. 15.

meridiānus, a, um, adj., (*meridiēs*), of *midday, noon*. v. 8.

meridiēs, ēī, m., (*medius + diēs*), *noon, midday, the south*. 7.

meritō, adv., (*meritum*), *justly, deservedly, according to desert*. 4.

meritum, ī, n., (*mereor*), *desert, merit, favor, kindness, service*. 5.

Messāla, ae, m., *M. Valērius*, consul in 61 B.C. i. 2, 35.

mētior, irī, mēnsus, dep., to *measure out, measure, deal out*. i. 16, 23; vii. 71.

Metius, ī, m., a guest-friend of *Ariovistus*. i. 47, 53.

metō, ere, messui, messus, to *mow, reap, gather in, harvest*. iv. 32.

metus, ūs, m., *dread, fear*. 8.

meus, a, um, poss. adj. pron., *my, of mine, mine*. 4.

mīles, itis, m. and f., a *soldier*. 169.

mīlia. See *mille*.

militāris, e, adj., (*mīles*), *warlike, military, soldierly*. 18.

militia, ae, f., (*mīles*), *war, warfare, military service*. vi. 14, vii. 14.

mille, num. adj. and subs., a *thousand*; pl. *mīlia*, ium. 115.

minimē, adv., (sup. of *parum*), *least of all, least, by no means, not in the least, not at all*. 7.

minimus, a, um, adj., (sup. of *parvus*), *the smallest, least*. 4.

minor, us, adj., (comp. of *parvus*), *less, smaller, inferior*. 19.

Minucius, ī, m., *L. Minucius Basilus*, general of *Caesar's* cavalry. vi. 29, vii. 90.

minuō, ere, uī, ūtus, to *diminish, impair; to remove, settle, put an end to; to weaken, grow small*. 10.

minus, adv., (comp. of *parvum*), *less, not*. 33.

mīrōr, ārī, ātus, dep., to *admire, wonder*. i. 32, v. 54, vii. 44.

mīrus, a, um, adj., *wonderful*. i. 34, 41.

miser, era, erum, adj., *unfortunate, pitiable, wretched, lamentable*. i. 32, ii. 28, vi. 35.

misericordia, *ae, f., compassion, pity, mercy.* 4.

miseror, *ārī, ātus, dep., to lament, deplore, compassionate, commiserate.* i. 39, vii. 1.

missus, *ūs, m., a dispatching, sending.* v. 27, vi. 7.

mīte, *adv., gently, mildly.* vii. 43.

mittō, *ere, mīsi, missus, to let go, send, dismiss, break up, cast, hurl, throw, launch.* 160.

mōbilis, *e, adj., (moveō), movable; fickle, changeable.* iv. 5.

mōbilitās, *ātis, f., (mōbilis), changeableness; speed, rapidity.* ii. 1, iv. 33.

mōbiliter, *adv., (mōbilis), quickly, rapidly, easily.* iii. 10.

moderor, *ārī, ātus, dep., (modus), to restrict, moderate, manage, direct, regulate, govern.* iv. 33, vii. 75.

modestia, *ae, f., (modestus, moderate), unassuming conduct, moderation, discretion.* vii. 52.

modo, *adv., (modus), only, merely, but, just, even, lately; nōn modo, not only; modo — modo, sometimes — sometimes, now — now.* 23.

modus, *i, m., extent, measure, way, manner, mode.* 26.

moenia, *ium, n. pl., (mūniō), defensive walls, ramparts, bulwarks, fortifications, defenses, a walled town.* 4.

mōlēs, *is, f., a huge mass; a mole, dam, dike.* iii. 12.

molestō, *adv., (molestus, troublesome), with trouble, in a troublesome way, annoyingly; molestō ferō, I take it ill, I am displeased.* ii. 1.

mōlimentum, *i, n., (mollor, strive), effort, exertion, endeavor.* i. 34.

molitus, *a, um.* See **molō**.

molliō, *ire, ivi, itus, (mollis), to make soft, soften; to make gentle; to lighten, ease.* vii. 46.

mollis, *e, adj., mild, gentle, soft, weak, feeble, sloping.* iii. 19, v. 9.

mollitia, *ae, f., (mollis), weakness, effeminacy.* vii. 77.

mollitiēs, *ēi, f., (mollis), irresolution, effeminacy, timidity, weakness.* vii. 20.

molō, *ere, ui, itus, to grind.* i. 5.

mōmentum, *i, n., (moveō), weight, influence, importance.* vii. 39, 85.

Mona, *ae, f., the island Anglesey, between England and Ireland.* v. 13.

moneō, *ēre, ui, itus, to warn, admonish, advise, tell.* 8.

mōns, *montis, m., a mountain.* 33.

mora, *ae, f., hindrance, delay, obstacle.* 4.

morbus, *i, m., sickness, disease.* vi. 16, 17.

Morinī, *ōrum, m. pl., a Belgic tribe, near the shore between Schelde and Lys, in the modern Département Pas de Calais.*

moriōr, *i, mortuus, dep., to die.* i. 4, iii. 22, vi. 13.

Moritasgus, *i, m., chieftain of the Senonēs.* v. 54.

moror, *ārī, ātus, to stay, tarry, delay, linger, hinder, detain.* 20.

mors, *mortis, f., death.* 20.

mōs, *mōris, m., custom, manner, usage, character, practice.* 18.

Mosa, *ae, f., the modern river Meuse or Maas, coming from the Vosges; it empties into the Vacalus (modern Waal), a branch of the Rhine, hence* iv. 15, *cōnfluēns Mosae et Rhēni.* iv. 9, 10, 12, 15; v. 24; vi. 33.

mōtus, *ūs, m., (moveō), movement, rising, rebellion, disturbance.* 14.

moveō, *ēre, mōvi, mōtus, to move, set in motion; to influence, affect; to excite, occasion, remove, break up.* 17.

mulier, *eris, f., a woman, wife.* 8.

mūliō, *ōnis, m., a muleteer.* vii. 45.

multitūdō, inis, f., (**multus**), a great number, multitude, crowd, populace, the common people. 83.

multō, āre, āvi, ātus, (**multa**, fine), to fine, punish, deprive of. vii. 54.

multō, adv., (**multus**), by far, much. 12.

multum, adv., (**multus**), greatly, much, far, especially. 17.

multus, a, um, adj., many, much; comp. plūs, sup. plūrimus. See Idioms. 70.

mūlus, i, m., a mule. vii. 45.

Munātiūs, i, m., one of Caesar's legates. v. 24, 25.

mundus, i, m., the universe; the heavens, world. vi. 14.

mūnimentum, i, n., (**mūniō**), a fortification, defense, bulwark. ii. 17.

mūniō, īre, īvi or īi, ītus, to fortify, protect, secure. 37.

mūnitiō, ōnis, f., (**mūniō**), defense, fortification. 73.

mūnitus, a, um, partic. pass., (**mūniō**), secured, fortified. 20.

mūnus, eris, n., a gift, present; function, office, charge. i. 43, vi. 18, vii. 25.

mūrālis, e, adj., (**mūrus**), mural. iii. 14, v. 40, vii. 82.

mūrus, i, m., a wall. 48.

mūsculus, i, m., (**mūs**, mouse), a little mouse; a warlike machine. vii. 84.

mutilus, a, um, adj., mutilated, maimed. vi. 27.

mūtō, āre, āvi, ātus, to alter, change; to avoid; to improve. vii. 45.

N

nactus, a, um. See **nanciscor**.

nam or **namque**, conj., for. **nam**, 46; **namque**, 5.

Nammēius, i, m., a noble Helvetian. i. 7.

Namnetēs, um, m. pl., a Celtic tribe north of the Liger (Loire). Capital: **Condivincum** = modern *Nantes*. iii. 9.

nanciscor, i, nactus or nanctus, dep., to meet with, acquire, find, obtain. 17.

Nantuātēs, um, m. pl., a Celtic tribe in the Alps. iii. 1, 6; iv. 10.

Narbō, ōnis, m., a town of the Volcae Arecomici in Gallia Prōvincia, the modern *Narbonne*. iii. 20, vii. 7, viii. 46.

nāscor, i, nātus, dep., to be born, be produced, arise. 20.

Nasua, ae, m., a noble Treveran. i. 37.

nātālis, e, adj., (**nāscor**), natal, of birth. vi. 18.

nātiō, ōnis, (**nāscor**), f., a people, nation, race. 16.

nātīvus, a, um, adj., (**nāscor**), natural. vi. 10.

nātū, m., ablat., (**nātus**), by birth, in age; **māiōrēs nātū**, the older persons (ancestors). ii. 13, 28; iv. 13.

nātūra, ae, f., (**nāscor**), nature, character, disposition. 30.

nātus, a, um. See **nāscor**.

nauta, ae, m., a sailōr. iii. 9, v. 10.

nautilus, a, um, adj., (**nauta**), naval, nautical. iii. 8.

nāvālis, e, adj., (**nāvis**), naval. iii. 19, v. 22.

nāvicula, ae, f., (**nāvis**), a skiff, little boat. i. 53.

nāvigātiō, ōnis, f., (**nāvigō**), a sailing, navigation, voyage. 6.

nāvigium, i, n., a vessel, (cf. **nāvis**). iii. 14, iv. 26, v. 8.

nāvigō, āre, āvi, ātus, to steer or navigate a ship, navigate, sail over. 7.

nāvis, is, f., a ship, bark, vessel; **nāvis longa**, a ship of war. 115.

nāvō, āre, āvi, ātus, to perform vigorously or diligently. ii. 25.

nē, conj., (originally an unrestricted negative; as in **nē** — **quidem**, **nēmō**, **negō**).

nequeō, nesciō, etc.), *that not, lest*; **nē** — quidem, *not even* (the emphatic word being between). 153.
ne, enclit. conj., *whether*; **ne** — **ne**, *whether — or* (in direct questions often omitted in translating). 10.
nec, conj., *neither, nor, and not, but not*; **nec** — **nec**, or **neque** — **neque**, *neither — nor*. **nec**, 31; **neque**, 263.
necessariō, adv., (**necessarius**), *necessarily, of necessity*. 15.
necessarius, a, um, adj., *necessary, pressing*. 20.
necessarius, i, m., *a relative, friend, kinsman*. i. 11.
necesse, adj., indecl., *necessary*. 9.
necessitas, ātis, f., (**necesse**), *necessity*. 6.
necessitūdō, inis, f., (**necesse**), *necessity, need, want; relationship, intimacy, friendship*. i. 43.
necne, conj., (**nec** + **ne**), *or not*. i. 50.
necō, āre, āvi, ātus, *to kill, destroy, slay*. 6.
necubi, adv., *lest anywhere, that nowhere*. vii. 35.
nefarius, a, um, adj., (**nefās**), *wicked, impious, base, abominable*. vii. 38, 77.
nefās, n., (**ne** + **fās**), indecl., *criminal, impious; a disgrace, impiety, abomination, villany*. vii. 40.
neglegō, ere, lēxi, lēctus, (**nec** + **legō**, *select*), *to disregard, slight, neglect*. 12.
negō, āre, āvi, ātus, *to refuse, deny, say no*. 5.
negōtiōr, āri, ātus, (**negōtium**), *dep., to trade, carry on a business, traffic*. vii. 3, 42, 55.
negōtium, i, n., (**nec** + **ōtium**), *occupation, business; matter, affair, difficulty, fact*. 14.
Nemetēs, um, m. pl., *a Germanic tribe on the left side of the Rhine, near the modern city of Spire*. i. 51, vi. 25.

Nemetocenna, ae, f., *capital of the Atrebātēs, the modern Arras*. viii. 46, 52.
nēmō, inis, m. and f., (**nē** + **hemō**, *man*, for later **homō**), *no one, nobody, no man*. 14.
nēquāquam, adv., (**ne** + **quāquam**, *anyway*), *in no wise, by no means*. iv. 23, vii. 77.
neque, conj., (**nē** + **que**). See **nec**.
nēquiquam, adv., (**nē** + **quīquam**, *anyhow*), *in vain, to no purpose*. ii. 27.
nēquis is more properly written **nē quis**. See **quis**.
Nervicus, a, um, adj., *Nervian*. ii. 27.
Nerviī, ōrum, m. pl., *a Belgic tribe between the (modern) Sambre and Schelde, in Namur and Hennegau. Capital: Bagacum (Bavay)*. ii. 4, 15 seq.; v. 24, 38 seq. Chieftain: **Bo-duōgnātus**.
nervus, i, m., *a nerve, sinew; strength, vigor, force*. i. 20, vi. 21.
neu or **nēve**, conj., *and not, nor, neither*. **neu**, 11; **nēve**, 4.
neuter, tra, trum, adj., (**nē** + **uter**), *neither of two, neither*. ii. 9, vii. 63.
nex, necis, f., *death, murder, slaughter*. i. 16; vi. 19, 23.
nihil, n., indecl. (**ne** + **hilum**, *a trifle*), *nothing, naught; nihilō setius, nevertheless; nihilō minus, nevertheless*. 54.
nimis, adv., *very, too much, exceedingly*. vii. 36.
nimius, a, um, adj., *too much, too great, excessive, immoderate*. vii. 29.
nisi, conj., (**ne** + **sī**), *if not, except, unless*. 24.
Nitiobrogēs, um, m. pl., *a tribe in Aquitānia, about the Garonne (Lat.: Garumna). Capital: Aginum, modern Agen*. vii. 7, 31, 46, 75. King: **Teutomatus**.

nitor, *i*, **nīsus** or **nīxus**, *dep.*, to endeavor, strive, exert one's self, attempt. 4.

nix, **nivis**, *f.*, snow. vii. 8 (twice), 55.

nōbilis, *e*, *adj.*, (**nōscō**), noted, renowned, famous, illustrious, noble. 10.

nōbilitās, **ātis**, *f.*, (**nōbilis**), reputation, renown, fame, worth, nobleness. *7.

nocēns, *entis*, *partic. pres.* (**noceō**), hurtful, pernicious, guilty, criminal. vi. 9.

noceō, **ēre**, **uī**, **itus**, to hurt, injure, harm. 12.

noctū, *adv.*, by night. 16.

nocturnus, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, (**nox**), of night, nocturnal. 10.

nōdus, *i*, *m.*, a joint; knot, tie, bond. vi. 27.

nōlō, **nōlle**, **nōluī**, —, *irr.*, (**nē** + **volō**), to be unwilling; to dislike, not to wish well to. 11.

nōmen, **inis**, *n.*, (**nōscō**), a name; reason, account, excuse, pretense. 18.

nōminātim, *adv.*, (**nōminō**), by name, expressly. 4.

nōminō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, (**nōmen**), to call by name; to appoint. ii. 18. vii. 39, 73.

nōn (**nē** + **ūnum**, see under **nē**), *adv.*, not, no. 313.

nōnāgintā, *num. adj.*, ninety. i. 29.

nōndum, *adv.*, (**nōn** + **dum**), not yet. 9.

nōnnihil, *adv.*, (**nōn** + **nihil**), something, somewhat. iii. 17.

nōnnūllus, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, (**nōn** + **nūllus**), some. 24.

nōnnumquam, *adv.*, (**nōn** + **numquam**, never), sometimes. 4.

nōnus, *a*, *um*, *num. adj.*, (**novem**), the ninth. ii. 23, iv. 23, v. 53.

Nōrēia, *ae*, *f.*, a town of the Norici, where in 113 B.C. the Roman consul C. Carbō was defeated by the Cimbrī; the modern Neumarkt in Steiermark. i. 5.

Nōricus, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, Norican. i. 5, 53.

Nōricus ager, *m.*, the land of the Norici. (Norici, Latin. The Celtic name is Taurisci.) At the time of Caesar a kingdom comprising the modern Carinthia, Steiermark, and Austria. King: **Vocciō**, *q.v.*

nōscō, **ere**, **nōvī**, **nōtus**, to learn, become acquainted with, know. 12.

noster, **tra**, **trum**, *poss. adj. pron.*, ours, of ours, our. 233.

nōtitia, *ae*, *f.*, (**nōtus**), knowledge, acquaintance. vi. 21, 24.

nōtus, *a*, *um*, *partic. pass.*, (**nōscō**), known, well known, noted. 7.

novem, nine. 4.

Noviodūnum, *i*, *n.* (1) A town of the Suessionēs, on the Axona (Aisne), the modern Soissons. ii. 12. (2) A town of the Haeduī, on the left side of the Liger (Loire), the modern Nevers. vii. 55. (3) A town of the Biturigēs Cubi, west of the Liger (Loire), between Cēnabum and Avaricum. It has been identified with the modern (a) Sancerre (Napoleon), (b) Nouan le Fuzelier (Göler).

novitās, **ātis**, *f.*, (**novus**), newness, novelty, strangeness. iv. 34, vii. 58.

novus, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, new, strange, recent, unusual; *sup.* **novissimus**, the latest, last, newest; **āgmen novissimum**, the rear; **novissimī**, the rear, rear men. 34.

nox, **noctis**, *f.*, night. 46.

noxia, *ae*, *f.*, (**noceō**), crime, offense, fault. vi. 16.

nūbō, **ere**, **nūpsī**, **nūptus**, to veil; to marry, be married. i. 18.

nūdō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, (**nūdus**), to uncover, bare, strip, expose; to deprive. 7.

nūdus, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, naked, bare, unprotected, uncovered. i. 25, vi. 21, vii. 47.

nūllus, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, (**nē** + **ullus**), none, no, not any. 56.

num, interrog. adv., *whether*. i. 14.
nūmen, inis, n., (nuō, nod), *the will of the gods; command, deity, divinity*. vi. 16.
numerus, ī, m., *quantity, number, position, rank, estimation, account*. 105.
Numidae, ārum, m. pl., *a tribe of North Africa. They served as auxiliaries in Caesar's army*. ii. 7, 24.
nummus, ī, m., *a piece of money, coin*. v. 12 (twice).
numquam, adv., (nē + umquam), *never*. 4.
nunc, adv., (num + c[e]), *at present, now*. 8.
nūntiō, āre, āvi, ātus, (nūntius), *to bring news, report, inform, warn*. 28.
nūntius, ī, m., *tidings, news, message, order; reporter, messenger, courier*. 34.
nūper, adv., *recently, lately, not long ago*. 4.
nūsquā, (nē + ūsquā, anywhere), adv., *nowhere, in no case*. vii. 17.
nūtus, ūs, m., (nuō, nod), *a nod, beck, will; command, pleasure; gravity, weight*. i. 31, iv. 23, v. 43.

O

ob, prep. with acc., *against, on account of, for, for the sake of*. In composition, *against, opposite*. 15.
obaerātus, a, um, adj., (ob + aes), *involved in debt*. i. 4.
obducō, ere, dūxī, ductus, (ob + dūcō), *to lead against or to, draw forward, draw out; to construct*. ii. 8.
obeō, īre, īvi, itus, (ob + eō), *to traverse, go through, come, to go against; to execute, perform, do*. v. 33.
obiectus, a, um, partic. pass., (obicīō) *lying before or opposite, open to, exposed, intervening*. vi. 10, 37; vii. 59.

obicīō, ere, iēcī, iectus, (ob + iaciō), *to throw before, throw up, expose, oppose; to present, offer*. 6.
obitus, ūs, m., (obeō), *death*. ii. 29.
oblātus, a, um. See offerō.
obliquē, adv., (obliquus), *obliquely*. iv. 17.
obliquus, a, um, adj., *oblique, slanting, sidewise*. vii. 73.
obliviscor, ī, oblītus, dep., *to forget*. i. 14, vii. 34.
obsecrō, āre, āvi, ātus, (ob + sacro, consecrate), *to implore, entreat, beseech*. i. 20; vii. 8, 38.
obsequentia, ae, f., (obsequēns, submitting), *obsequiousness, compliance*. vii. 29.
observō, āre, āvi, ātus, (ob + servō), *to watch, regard, notice; to obey*. 4.
obses, idis, m. and f., (ob + sedeō), *a pledge, security, hostage*. 71.
obsessiō, ōnis, f., (obsideō), *a siege*. vi. 36, vii. 36.
obsideō, ēre, sēdī, sessus, (ob + sedeō, sit), *to besiege, blockade*. 6.
obsidiō, ōnis, f., (obsideō), *a blockade, siege; imminent peril*. 7.
obsignō, āre, āvi, ātus, (ob + signō, mark), *to seal, sign, execute, make*. i. 39.
obsistō, ere, stitī, stitus, (ob + sistō), *to oppose, withstand, stop, hinder*. vii. 29.
obstinātē, adv., (obstinātus, persistent), *firmly, resolutely*. v. 6.
obstringō, ere, inxī, ictus, (ob + stringō, bind), *to tie, bind, fetter; to oblige, put under obligation*. i. 9, 31.
obstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus, (ob + struō, build), *to barricade, stop up, block up*. v. 50, 51; vii. 41.
obtemperō, āre, āvi, ātus, (ob + temperō), *to submit to, comply with, obey*. iv. 12.

obtestor, āri, ātus, dep., (ob + testor, witness), to call solemnly to witness, protest; to supplicate, adjure, beseech. 4.

obtineō, ēre, tinuī, tentus, (ob + teneō), to possess, hold, retain, obtain, accomplish, effect, preserve. 25.

obtuli. See offerō.

obveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus, (ob + veniō), to come to meet; to befall. ii. 23; vii. 28, 81.

obviam, adv., (ob + via), in the way, against, towards. vii. 12, 28.

occāsio, ōnis, f., (occidō), opportunity, occasion. 6.

occāsus, ūs, m., (occidō), a setting, going down; the west; destruction, downfall, end. 7.

occidēns, entis, partic. pres., (occidō), going down, setting. v. 13.

occidō, ere, cidī, occāsus, (ob + cadō), to perish, fall; to set, go down. vi. 37.

occidō, ere, cidī, cīsus, (ob + caedō), to kill, cut down, slay; to beat severely. 18.

occultātiō, ōnis, f., (occultō), concealment. vi. 21.

occultē, (occultus), adv., secretly, privately. vii. 83.

occultō, āre, āvī, ātus, (occultus), to secrete, cover, conceal, hide. 13.

occultus, a, um, adj., (occultō, cover), concealed, hidden, secret. 9.

occupātiō, ōnis, f., (occupō), a seizing, occupying; employment, occupation. iv. 16, 22.

occupō, āre, āvī, ātus, (ob + capiō), to seize upon, attack, invade, occupy, to engross, employ. 28.

occurrō, ere, curri, cursus, (ob + currō), to go, come or run to meet, fall in with; to resist, oppose; to occur, present itself. 14.

Ōceanus, ī, m., the ocean: (1) the At-

lantic. iii. 7, mare Ōceanus. (2) the North Sea. i. 1, iii. 9, iv. 10, vi. 33. 16.

Ōcelum, ī, n., a town of the Graioceli in cisalpine Gaul, modern Oulx in Piedmont. i. 10.

octāvus, a, um, num. adj., the eighth. ii. 23, v. 35.

octingentī, ae, a, num. adj., (octō + centum), eight hundred. iv. 12; v. 7 13.

octō, eight. 7.

octōdecim, num. adj., eighteen. 4.

Octodūrus, ī, m., a town of the Veragri, modern Martigny, on the river Dranse, in Wallis. iii. 1.

octōgintā, num. adj., eighty. 7.

octōnī, ae, a, distr. num. adj., eight by eight, eight each, eight. vii. 73, 75.

oculus, ī, m., the eye. 6.

ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus, defect., I hate, detest. i. 18, iii. 10.

odium, ī, n., enmity, odium, hatred, ill will, dislike, detestation. vi. 5, 9.

offendō, ere, ī, fēnsus, (ob + obsolete fendō, smite), to run or hit against; to take offense; to blame, displease. i. 19, vi. 36.

offēnsiō, ōnis, f., (offendō), harm, offense; aversion, dislike. i. 19.

offerō, ferre, obtulī, oblātus, (ob + ferō), to bring before, offer, give, present; to expose; to promise. 10.

officium, ī, n., a favor, service, kindness; honor, respect, deference; employment, office, charge, duty. 16.

omittō, ere, misi, missus, (ob + mittō), to let go, lay aside; to postpone; to slight, cease, disregard. ii. 17; vii. 34, 88.

omnīnō, adv., (omnis), entirely, wholly, altogether, utterly, only. 21.

omnis, e, adj., every, all, the whole, of every kind. 519.

onerārius, a, um, adj., (onus), fitted for burdens, transport; nāvis onerāria, a transport ship. 4.
onerō, āre, āvī, ātus, (onus), to load, lade, fill. v. 1.
onus, eris, n., a load, burden; freight, cargo; trouble. 5.
opera, ae, f., (opus), labor, work, pains; help, assistance; operam dare, to take pains. 11.
opiniō, ōnis, f., belief, opinion, supposition; rumor, fame. 25.
oportet, ēre, uit, —, impers., it is proper, it behooves, it ought, it must be, it is necessary. 18.
oppidānī, ōrum, m. pl., (oppidum), citizens, townspeople.
oppidānus, a, um, adj., (oppidum), of a town. 5.
oppidum, ī, n., a town. 130.
oppōnō, ere, posui, positus, (ob + pōnō), to place against or opposite, station, place. vi. 36; vii. 56, 65.
opportūnē, adv., (opportūnus), seasonably, fitly, opportunely, suitably, properly, conveniently. iv. 13, 22.
opportunitās, ātis, f., (opportūnus), fitness, convenience, advantage, favorableness, opportunity, the right chance. 7.
opportūnus, a, um, adj., (ob + portus), suitable, convenient, fit, proper. 10.
oppositus, a, um, adj. See oppōnō.
opprimō, ere, pressī, pressus, (ob + premō), to suppress, press down; to overthrow, overpower, prostrate, fall upon suddenly, surprise. 11.
oppūgnātiō, ōnis, f., (oppūgnō), assault, attack, siege, an assaulting. 19.
oppūgnō, āre, āvī, ātus, (ob + pūgnō), to attack, assail, beset, fight against. 23.
ōps, ōpis, f., strength, power, assistance, aid, succor; interest, influence. 9.

optātus, a, um, partic. pass., (optō, wish), longed for, wished for, dear, desired, wished. vi. 42.
optimē, adv., (sup. of bene), most excellently, best. i. 45, vii. 71.
optimus, a, um, (sup. of bonus), most excellent, best, very good. 4
opus, eris, n., a work, labor, art, deed, business; tantō opere, so greatly; quantō opere, how much, how greatly. 46.
opus, n., indecl., necessity, need. 8.
ōra, ae, f., the margin, shore, edge, region. 4.
ōrātiō, ōnis, f., (ōrō), language, speech, oration, harangue. 22.
ōrātor, ōris, m., (ōrō), an orator, speaker. iv. 27.
orbis, is, m., a circle; a region of country; a rank or file of soldiers; orbis terrārum, the world, earth. 4.
Orcynia silva, f., Greek name for Hercynia silva. vi. 24.
ōrdō, inis, m., order, series, row; method, arrangement. 27.
Orgetorix, igis, m., a noble Helvetian. i. 2 seq., 9, 26.
orior, irī, ortus, dep., to arise, begin, rise; to spring. 21.
ōrnāmentum, ī, n., (ōrnō), embellishment, honor. i. 44, vii. 15.
ōrnātus, a, um, partic. pass., (ōrnō), furnished, equipped. iii. 14.
ōrnō, āre, āvī, ātus, to equip, furnish, ornament, adorn, honor. iii. 14, vii. 33.
ōrō, āre, āvī, ātus, to speak, implore, beseech, ask. 11.
ortus, ūs, (orior), a rising. vii. 41.
ōs, ōris, n., the mouth, countenance, face. v. 35, vi. 39.
Osismi, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe belonging to the civitatēs Aremoricae, in the northwest of Gaul (modern Département Finistère). ii. 34, iii. 9, vii. 75.

ostendō, ere, ī, tentus, (ob + tendō),
to display, show, manifest, disclose. 20.
ostentātiō, ōnis, f., (ostentō), display,
show, pretense. vii. 45, 53.
ostentō, āre, āvī, ātus, (ostentus,
made manifest), to display, show, mani-
fest, exhibit. 4.
ōtium, ī, n., ease, quiet, leisure, rest,
idleness. vii. 66.
ōvum, ī, n., an egg. iv. 40.

P

P., for Pūblius.
pābulātiō, ōnis, f., (pābulor), a forag-
ing. 7.
pābulātor, ōris, m., (pābulor), a for-
ager. v. 17.
pābulor, āri, ātus, dep., (pābulum), to
forage. v. 17; vii. 14, 18.
pābulum, ī, n., (pāscō, feed), forage,
fodder. 6.
pācātus, a, um, partic. pass., (pācō),
peaceful, pacified, quiet, calm, serene.
10.
pācō, āre, āvī, ātus, to tranquillize,
subdue, conquer. 11.
pactum, ī, n., (paciscor, bargain), a
compact, agreement, rule, condition.
vii. 83.
Padus, ī, m., the river Po in upper Italy.
v. 24.
Paemānī, ōrum, m. pl., a Belgic tribe
east of the river Meuse, near the modern
Liège. ii. 4.
paene, adv., nearly, almost. 17.
paenitet, ēre, uit, impers., to repent, be
sorry, regret; mē paenitet, I repent,
am sorry. iv. 5.
pāgus, ī, m., a district, canton. 11.
palam, adv., publicly, openly. v. 25; vi.
7, 18.
palma, ae, f., the palm of the hand; the
palm tree; victory. vi. 36.
palūs, ūdis, f., a marsh, swamp, fen, bog.
24.

paluster, tris, trē, adj., (palūs), marshy,
boggy, swampy. vii. 20.
pandō, ere, ī, passus, (cf. pateō), to
open, throw open, spread out. 4.
pār, paris, adj., equal, like, even, similar,
strong. 18.
parātus, a, um, partic. pass., (parō),
prepared, ready, furnished, provided,
fitted. 13.
parcē, adv., sparingly, moderately, fru-
gally. v. 71.
parcō, ere, peperci or parsī, parsus,
to abstain, forbear, spare. 7.
parēns, entis, m. and f., (pariō), a par-
ent, mother or father. v. 14, vi. 14, vii.
66.
parentō, āre, —, ātus, (parēns), to per-
form funeral rites of parents or near
relatives; to avenge, appease. vii. 17.
pāreō, ēre, uī, —, to comply with, submit
to, obey. 6.
pariō, ere, peperī, partus, to bring
forth, produce; to gain, acquire. v. 43,
vi. 40.
Parisī, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe in Celtic
Gaul. Capital: Lutetia, modern Paris.
vi. 3; vii. 4, 34, 57, 75.
pariter, adv., (pār), equally.
parō, āre, āvī, ātus, to provide, order,
dispose, procure, furnish, obtain, ac-
quire. 33.
pars, tis, f., share, portion, part; party,
side; region, place; ex parte, in part.
244.
Parthicus, a, um, adj. from Parthī, a
Scythian tribe in Asia in the modern
Khorassan.
partim, adv., partly, in part. 6.
partiō, ire, ivī, itus, partior, iri, itus,
dep., to divide, distribute. 5.
partus, a, um. See pariō.
parum, adv., (a by-form of parvus), too
little, not enough, not much; comp.
minus, sup. minimē. iii. 18, vii.
66.

parvulus, a, um, adj., (dim. parvus), *little, small, slight, puny, trifling*. 5.
parvus, a, um, adj., *small, little, slight*; comp. minor, sup. minimus. 5.
passim, adv., (pandō), *everywhere, here and there*. iv. 14.
passus, ūs, m., (pandō), *a pace, a measure of five Roman feet*; mille passuum, a Roman mile. See note to I. 2, p. 326. 62.
passus, a, um. See pandō.
passus, a, um. See patior.
patefaciō, ere, fēcī, factus, (pateō + faciō), *to throw open; to discover, disclose, open*. ii. 32, vii. 8.
patefiō, fierī, factus, as pass. of patefaciō. iii. 1.
patēns, entis, partic. pass., (pateō), *unobstructed, accessible, open*. i. 10, vii. 28.
pateō, ēre, uī, —, *to be open, accessible, extend; to be clear, evident or known*. 13.
pater, tris, m., *a father*. 14.
paterfamiliae. See pater and familia.
patienter, adv., (patior), *tamely, patiently*. vii. 77.
patientia, ae, f., (patior), *a suffering, enduring, patience*. vi. 24, 26.
patior, ī, passus, dep., *to endure, suffer, bear; to permit, allow*. 19.
patrius, a, um, adj., (pater), *paternal, fatherly, native*. ii. 15.
pātrōnus, ī, m., (pater), *protector, patron, defender, advocate, champion*. vii. 40.
patruus, ī, m., (pater), *father's brother, uncle*. vii. 4.
pauci, ae, a, adj., *a few, few*. 38.
paucitās, ātis, f., (paucus, few), *small number, fewness*. 9.
paulātim, adv., (paulus, little), *by degrees, gradually*. 11.
paulisper, adv., *a short time, for a little while*. 7.

paulō. See paulum.
paululum, adv., *somewhat, a little*. ii. 8.
paulum, adv., *somewhat, a little*; paulō, abl. of paulus, *a little*. 50.
Paulus, ī, m., *L. Aemilius*, consul in 50 B.C. viii. 48.
pāx, pācis, f., *peace*. 27.
peccō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to offend, err, transgress*. i. 47.
pectus, oris, m., *the breast*. vii. 47.
pecūnia, ae, f., (pecus), *money, wealth*. 12.
pecus, oris, n., *a herd, cattle*. 13.
pedālis, e, adj., (pēs), *of a foot, a foot long or broad*. iii. 13.
pedes, itis, m., (pēs), *a foot-soldier, infantry*. 10.
pedester, tris, tre, adj., (pēs), *infantry; on land; on foot; pedestrian*. 8.
peditātus, ūs, m., (pēs), *infantry*. 10.
Pedius, ī, m., *Q. Caesar's nephew (sister's son) and legate*. ii. 2, 11.
pēior, us, adj., (comp. of malus), *worse; a worse thing*. i. 31.
pellis, is, f., *a hide, skin; tent*. 7.
pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus, (for pel-nō), *to expel, drive away, rout*. 20.
pendō, ere, pependī, pēnsus, *to weigh, consider, think upon; to pay; to undergo*. 6.
penitus, adv., *inwardly, within*. vi. 10.
per, prep. with the acc., *through, through the midst of, throughout, during; along; on account of, for; in composition, thoroughly*. 103.
peragō, ere, ēgī, āctus, (per + agō), *to carry through, accomplish, finish, end*. 4.
perangustus, a, um, adj., (per + angustus), *very narrow*. vii. 15.
percipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, (per + capiō), *to acquire, obtain; to learn, perceive, hear of*. 4.
percontātiō, ōnis, f., (percontor, inquire), *inquiry*. i. 39, v. 13.

percurrō, ere, cucurrī or currī, cur-
sus, (per + currō), to traverse; to
run through and over. iv. 33.

percutiō, ere, cussī, cussus, (per +
quatiō, shake), to smite, kill, slay.
v. 44.

perdiscō, ere, didicī, —, (per + discō),
to learn by heart, learn thoroughly. vi.
14.

perditus, a, um, partic. pass., (perdō),
profligate, abandoned. iii. 17, vii. 4.

perdō, ere, didī, ditus, (per + dō), to
destroy, lose, ruin. iii. 17, vii. 4.

perdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, (per +
dūcō), to convey through, bring, lead;
to persuade; to promote, advance; to
protract, prolong. 13.

perendinus, a, um, adj., after to-morrow.
v. 30.

pereō, ire, ī or ivī, itūrus, (per + eō),
to die, be lost, perish. 4.

perequitō, āre, āvī, —, (per + equitō,
ride on horseback), to ride around, ride
through. iv. 33, vii. 66.

perexiguus, a, um, adj., (per + exi-
guus), very little, small. v. 15.

perfacilis, e, adj., (per + facilis), very
easy. i. 2, 3; vii. 64.

perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, (per + ferō),
to bear or carry through; to convey,
bring; to suffer, support, undergo; to
bring news, report. 20.

perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, (per + fa-
ciō), to accomplish, perform, finish,
complete, cause. 14.

perfidia, ae, f., treachery, perfidy. 6.

perfringō, ere, frēgī, frāctus, (per
+ frangō), to burst through, break
through, rout, shatter; to infringe,
violate. i. 25, vii. 85.

perfuga, ae, m., (cf. perfugiō), a de-
serter. 6.

perfugiō, ere, fūgī, —, (per + fugiō),
to flee for succor, take refuge. i. 27,
v. 45.

perfugium, ī, n., (cf. perfugiō), a shel-
ter, refuge. iv. 38.

pergō, ere, perrēxi, perrāctus, (per
+ regō), to continue, go on, proceed.
iii. 18.

periclitor, āri, ātus, dep., (cf. pericu-
lum), to prove, try, essay; to be in
danger, risk, hazard. ii. 8, vi. 34, vii.
56.

periculōsus, a, um, adj., (periculum),
perilous, hazardous. i. 33, vii. 8.

periculum, ī, n., experiment, trial; peril,
hazard, danger, risk. 55.

peritus, a, um, adj., acquainted with,
experienced, skilled. i. 21, iii. 21, vii. 83.

perlātus, a, um. See perferō.

perlegō, ere, lēgī, lēctus, (per + legō,
collect, read), to read through. v. 48.

perluō, ere, ī, ūtus, (per + luō, wash),
to wash, bathe. vi. 21.

permāgnus, a, um, adj., (per + māg-
nus), very great. vii. 31.

permaneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus,
(per + maneō), to continue, remain;
to hold out, persist, endure. 10.

permisceō, ēre, cui, ixtus, (per + mis-
ceō, mingle), to mingle, mix together,
blend. vii. 62.

permittō, ere, mīsi, missus, (per +
mittō), to send through; to intrust,
commit, allow, grant, suffer, permit.
10.

permixtus, a, um. See permisceō.

permovēō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, (per +
moveō), to move through, stir up well;
to influence, induce; to arouse. 16.

permulceō, ēre, sī, sus, (per + mul-
ceō, soothe), to appease, allay, soothe.
iv. 6.

perniciēs, ēī, f., (per + nex), ruin, de-
struction, disaster. i. 20, 36.

perpaucī, ae, a, adj., (per + paucus,
few), very few. 7.

perpendiculum, ī, n., (per + pendō).
a plumb line, plummet. iv. 17

perpetior, *i*, **pessus**, *dep.*, (**per** + **patior**), to suffer patiently, bear, endure. vii. 10.

perpetuō, *adv.*, (**perpetuus**), *perpetually, continuously*. i. 31, vii. 41.

perpetuus, *a, um, adj.*, (**per** + **petō**), *uninterrupted, continuous, perpetual*. 16.

perquirō, *ere, —*, **quīsitus**, (**per** + **quaerō**), to search for, ask, inquire; to investigate. vi. 9.

perrumpō, *ere, rūpī*, **ruptus**, (**per** + **rumpō**, *break*), to break through, enter forcibly. 8.

perscribō, *ere, scripsī*, **scriptus**, (**per** + **scribō**), to write out, record. v. 47, 49.

persequor, *i*, **secūtus**, *dep.*, (**per** + **sequor**), to pursue, press upon, follow, avenge, revenge; to accomplish, perform. 7.

perseverō, *āre, āvī*, **ātus**, (**per** + **severus**, *strict*), to persist, persevere. i. 13, v. 36.

persolvō, *ere, solvī*, **solūtus**, (**per** + **solvō**), to discharge, release; to pay completely, pay; **poenās persolvere**, to suffer punishment. i. 12.

perspiciō, *ere, spexī*, **spectus**, (**per** + **speciō**, *look*), to see through, look through, observe, perceive, examine, view. 24.

perstō, *āre, stiti*, **stātūrus**, (**per** + **stō**), to stand fast, continue, persevere. vii. 26.

persuādeō, *ēre, suāsī*, **suāsus**, (**per** + **suādeō**, *make sweet, advise*), to convince, persuade. 20.

perterreō, *ēre, —*, **itus**, (**per** + **terreō**), to terrify, frighten greatly. 33.

pertinācia, *ae, f.*, (**per** + **tenāx**, *holding*), obstinacy, perversity, stubbornness. i. 42, v. 31.

pertineō, *ēre, uī, —*, (**per** + **teneō**), to extend, stretch out; to belong, pertain; to tend. 22.

pertulī. See **perferō**.

perturbātiō, *ōnis, f.*, (**perturbō**), *confusion, disturbance, trouble*. iv. 29.

perturbō, *āre, āvī*, **ātus**, (**per** + **turbō**, *confuse*), to disturb greatly, confuse, trouble, embroil, embarrass. 19.

pervagor, *ārī*, **ātus**, *dep.*, (**per** + **vagor**), to rove about, wander about. vii. 9.

pervenio, *ire, vēnī*, **ventus**, (**per** + **veniō**), to come to, arrive at, reach, arrive. 58.

pēs, **pedis**, *m.*, a foot, step; **pedem referre**, to draw back, retire. 44.

petō, *ere, ivī or iī*, **itus**, *aim, seek*, to attack, assail; to covet; to repair to, travel to. 66.

Petrocorii, *ōrum, m. pl.*, a tribe in Celtic Gaul on the right side of the Garumna (Garonne). Capital, **Vesunna**, modern *Périgueux*. vii. 75.

Petrōnius, *i, m.*, a centurion. vii. 50.

Petrosidius, *i, m.*, an aquilifer. v. 37.

phalanx, *angis, f.*, (φάλαγξ), a phalanx. 4.

Pictionēs, *um, m. pl.*, a Celtic tribe on the left side of the Liger (Loire), neighbors of the **Santonēs**, in the modern *Poitou*. iii. 11; vii. 4, 75; viii. 26. Town: **Lemōnum**. Chieftain: **Durātius**.

pietās, *ātis, f.*, (**pius**, *dutiful*), filial love, devotion, performance of duty. v. 27.

pilum, *i, n.*, dart, javelin. 11.

pilus, *i, m.*, a company of the **triārii**; a company of soldiers armed with the pilum. iii. 5, v. 35, vi. 38.

pinna, *ae, f.*, a feather; **parapet**, *pinnae*. v. 40, vii. 72.

Pirūstae, *ārum, m. pl.*, an Illyrian tribe. v. 1.

piscis, *is, m.*, a fish. iv. 10.

Pisō, *ōnis, m.* (1) **L. Calpurnius Pisō** *Caesōnius*, Caesar's father-in-law, consul in 58 B.C. i. 6, 12. (2) **L. Calpurnius Pisō**, legate of Cassius in 107 B.C.

i. 12. (3) *M. Pupius Pisō Calpurnianus*, consul 61 B.C. i. 2, 35. (4) An Aquitanian. iv. 12.
 pix, picis, f., *pitch*. vii. 22, 24, 25.
 placeō, ēre, uī, itus, *to be agreeable, please, satisfy, soothe, calm*. 7.
 placidē, adv., (*placidus, calm*), *quietly, calmly, mildly, gently*. vi. 8.
 plācō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to calm, reconcile, appease*. vi. 16.
 plānē, adv., (*plānus*), *clearly, distinctly, quite, entirely*. iii. 26, vi. 43.
 plānitēs, ēī, f., (*plānus*), *a plain; a flat surface, level ground*. 9.
 plānus, a, um, adj., *level, plain, even, smooth*. iii. 13, iv. 23.
 plēbes, eī, f., and plēbs, plēbis, f., *plebeians, the common people, populace*. 9.
 plēnē, adv., (*plēnus*), *entirely, fully*. iii. 3.
 plēnus, a, um, adj., *full, entire, complete*. iii. 2, iv. 29, vii. 76.
 plērūque, adv., (*plērusque*), *generally, commonly*. 15.
 plērūque, aque, umque, adj., *the most, most; pl., very many, most*. 7.
 Pleumoxiī, ōrum, m. pl., *a Belgic tribe in the west of Flanders*. v. 39.
 plumbum, ī, n., *lead; plumbum album, tin*. v. 12.
 plūrimum, adv., (*sup. of multum*), *most of all, especially, exceedingly*. 11.
 plūrimus, a, um, adj., (*sup. of multus*), *most, very much; pl., very many, most*. 8.
 plūs, plūris, adj., (*comp. of multus*), *more; plūrēs, more, many, several*. 16.
 plūs, adv., (*comp. of multum*), *more*. 8.
 pluteus, ī, m., *a parapet, breastwork*. vii. 25, 41, 72.
 pōculum, ī, n., *goblet, cup*. vi. 28.
 poena, ae, f., *penalty, satisfaction, punishment*. 10.

pollex, icis, m., *the thumb*. iii. 13.
 polliceor, ērī, itus, dep., *to promise; to offer one's self for*. 26.
 pollicitātiō, ōnis, f., (*pollicitor, promise*), *a promise*. 5.
 Pompēius, ī, m., *Cn.* (1) Pompey (the Great). vi. 1 (see *Introd.*). (2) An interpreter of Titūrius. v. 36.
 pondus, eris, n., *a burden, weight, load, heaviness*. 4.
 pōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *to place, set; to build, to station*. See *Idioms*. 43.
 pōns, pontis, m., *a bridge*. 32.
 poposcī. See *poscō*.
 populātiō, ōnis, f., (*populor*), *a laying waste, ravaging, depopulating, plundering*. i. 15.
 populor, ārī, ātus, dep., (*populus*), *to lay waste, ravage, pillage, spoil, plunder*. 5.
 populus, ī, m., *a nation, people, multitude*. 82.
 porrēctus, a, um. See *porrigō*.
 porrigō, ere, rēxī, rēctus, (*prō + regō*), *to stretch, spread out, extend; hold out, offer*. ii. 19.
 porrō, adv., *farther on, forward, besides*. v. 27.
 porta, ae, f., *a gate*. 34.
 portō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to convey, carry, conduct, bear*. 5.
 portōrium, ī, n., (*portō*), *a duty, tax, impost*. i. 18, iii. 1.
 portus, ūs, m., *a harbor, port; asylum, shelter*. 16.
 poscō, ere, poposcī, —, *to ask for, demand*. 5.
 positus, a, um. See *pōnō*.
 possessiō, ōnis, f., (*possideō*), *a property, possession, estate*. 4.
 possideō, ēre, sēdī, sessus, *to hold, occupy, own, possess*. 4.
 possum, posse, potuī, irr., (*potis, able + sum*), *to be able; to have power, avail*,

- have influence; plūrimum posse, to be very powerful.* 306.
- post**, adv., and prep. with the acc., *behind, since, after, below, beneath.* 41.
- posteā**, adv., (**post** + **eā**, case form of **is**), *afterwards.* 12.
- posteā quam**, adv., *after.* 9.
- posterus**, a, um, adj., (**post**), *coming after, following, next, ensuing; posterī, ōrum*, m. pl., *descendants, posterity; comp. posterior, sup. postrēmus and postumus.* 29.
- postpōnō**, ere, posui, positus, (**post** + **pōnō**), *to place after, value less; to postpone, neglect, disregard.* v. 7, vi. 3.
- postquam**, conj., (**post** + **quam**), *after, after that, as soon as.* 8.
- postrēmō**, adv., (**postrēmus**), *finally, at last.* 4.
- postrēmus**, a, um, adj., (**sup.** of **posterus**), *the last, latest, hindmost.*
- postridiē**, adv., *the day after, on the following day.* 7.
- postulātum**, ī, n., (**postulō**), *a request, demand.* 4.
- postulō**, āre, āvi, ātus, *to require, demand, ask, beg.* 21.
- potēns**, entis, adj., (**possum**), *able, powerful, strong; rich.*
- potentātus**, ūs, m., (**potēns**), *dominion, power, rule.* i. 31.
- potentia**, ae, f., (**potēns**), *power.* 7.
- potētās**, ātis, f., (**potēns**), *power, ability, opportunity; rule, empire, dominion.* 27.
- potior**, iri, itus, dep., (**potis**, *able*), *to become master of; to gain, acquire, take, obtain.* 15.
- potius**, comp. adv., *sooner, rather; sup. potissimē and potissimum.* 6.
- prae**, prep. with the abl., (**dat. form**), *before, for, on account of, in comparison with.* In composition, *before, before all, very.* ii. 30, vii. 44.
- praeacūtus**, a, um, adj., (**prae** + **acūtus**), *pointed, sharpened, made sharp.* 6.
- praebeō**, ēre, uī, itus, (**prae** + **habeō**), *to offer, afford, furnish; to present; to exhibit, show.* 5.
- praecaveō**, ēre, cāvī, cautus, (**prae** + **caveō**), *to take precaution, be on one's guard against.* i. 38.
- praecēdō**, ere, cessī, cessus, (**prae** + **cēdō**), *to go before, precede; to surpass, excel, be superior to.* i. 1.
- praeceps**, cipitis, adj., (**prae** + **caput**), *rapid, headlong, hasty; sudden, steep, precipitous.* ii. 24, iv. 33, v. 17.
- praecceptum**, ī, n., (**praecipio**), *direction, instruction; precept, counsel.* 5.
- praecipio**, ere, cēpi, ceptus, (**prae** + **capiō**), *to anticipate; to order, instruct, direct.* 8.
- praecipitō**, āre, āvi, ātus, (**praeceps**), *to precipitate, plunge, throw headlong.* iv. 15, vii. 50.
- praecipuē**, adv., (**praecipuus**), *particularly, especially.* i. 40, vii. 40.
- praecipuus**, a, um, adj., (**cf. praecipio**), *especial, particular, peculiar, remarkable.* v. 54.
- praecūdō**, ere, clūsi, clūsus, (**prae** + **claudō**), *to hinder, shut up, close.* v. 9.
- praecō**, ōnis, m., *a herald.* v. 51.
- praecurrō**, ere, cucurri or curri, —, (**prae** + **currō**), *to run before; to surpass, excel, outstrip.* vi. 39; vii. 9, 37.
- praeda**, ae, f., *booty, plunder, spoil, prey.* 19.
- praedicō**, āre, āvi, ātus, *to publish, declare, report, assert.* 4.
- praedor**, āri, ātus, dep., (**praeda**), *to pillage, ravage, spoil, rob.* 7.
- praedūcō**, ere, dūxi, ductus, (**prae** + **dūcō**), *to draw before; to construct* vii. 46, 69.

praefectus, *i*, *m.*, (**praeficiō**), *a commander of cavalry; overseer.* 8.

praefērō, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātus*, *irr.*, (**prae + ferō**), *to bear before; prefer.* i. 17, ii. 27, v. 54.

praeficiō, *ere*, *fēcī*, *fectus*, (**prae + faciō**), *to set over, preside over, delegate, depute, constitute.* 26.

praefigō, *ere*, *fixī*, *fixus*, (**prae + figō**, *fix*), *to set up in front, fasten before.* v. 18.

praeful. See **praesum**.

praemetuō, *ere*, —, —, (**prae + metuō**), *to fear beforehand, fear.* vii. 49.

praemittō, *ere*, *mīsī*, *missus*, (**prae + mittō**), *to send in advance; to dispatch.* 15.

praemium, *i*, *n.*, *advantage, profit; recompense, reward.* 18.

praeeoccupō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, (**prae + occupō**), *to seize beforehand.* vi. 41, vii. 26.

praeeoptō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, (**prae + optō**, *wish*), *to choose rather, wish in preference.* i. 25.

praeparō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, (**prae + parō**), *to provide, prepare.* 4.

praepōnō, *ere*, *posuī*, *positus*, (**prae + pōnō**), *to appoint over, set over; to place first.* i. 54, vi. 40.

praerumpō, *ere*, —, *ruptus*, (**prae + rumpō**, *break*), *to break off.* iii. 14, vi. 7, vii. 86.

praeruptus, *a*, *um*, *partic. pass.*, (**praerumpō**, *break*), *steep, abrupt.* vi. 7, vii. 86.

praesaepiō, *ire*, *psī*, *ptus*, (**prae + saepiō**, *hedge in*), *to block up, barricade.* vii. 77.

praescribō, *ere*, *psī*, *ptus*, (**prae + scribō**), *to write before; to order, appoint.* 4.

praescriptum, *i*, *n.*, (**praescribō**), *direction, order, command.* i. 36.

praesēns, *entis*, *adj.*, (**praesum**), *present, in person, at hand.* 8.

praesentia, *ae*, *f.*, (**praesēns**), *the present, presence.* 5.

praesentiō, *ire*, *sēnsī*, *sēnsus*, (**prae + sentiō**), *to see beforehand, foresee, presage, foretell, foreknow.* v. 54, vii. 30.

praesertim, *adv.*, *particularly, especially.* 11.

praesidium, *i*, *n.*, (**prae + sedeō**, *sit*), *protection, defence; guard, reserve, escort; post, station.* 64.

praestō, *āre*, *stitī*, *stitus*, (**prae + stō**), *to stand before, surpass, be superior to; to afford, furnish; to show.* 16.

praestō, *adv.*, *ready, present, at hand.* v. 26.

praesum, *esse*, *fuī*, —, *irr.*, (**prae + sum**), *to be over, rule over, have command over.* 26.

praeter, *prep.* with the *acc.* (**prae + suffix tero**), *beyond, except; against.* 15.

praetereā, *adv.*, (**praeter + eā**, *case form of is*), *moreover, besides.* 11.

praetereō, *ire*, *ī*, *itus*, (**praeter + eō**), *to pass or go by, pass over, neglect.* 4.

praeteritus, *a*, *um*, *partic. pass.*, (**praetereō**), *past.*

praetermittō, *ere*, *mīsī*, *missus*, (**praeter + mittō**), *to pass over, neglect, let pass by.* iv. 13, vi. 34, vii. 55.

praeterquam, *adv.*, (**praeter + quam**), *besides, beyond, except.* i. 5, vii. 77.

praetor, *ōris*, *m.*, (**prae + eō**), *a leader, chief, commander, magistrate, praetor.* i. 21.

praetōrius, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, (**praetor**), *befitting a praetor, praetorian, belonging to a general.* i. 40, 42.

praefūstus, *partic.*, (**prae + ūrō**), *burned at the end.* v. 40; vii. 22, 73.

praevertō, *ere*, *i*, —, (**prae + vertō**), *to prevent; to prefer; to get the start of, anticipate.* vii. 33.

prāvus, a, um, adj., *crooked, distorted; bad, wrong, depraved, wicked.* vii. 39.

precēs. See **prex**.

prehendō or **prendō**, ere, ī, **prehēnsus**, (**prae** + obsolete **hendō**, *get*), to seize, grasp. i. 20.

premō, ere, **pressi**, **pressus**, to press upon, press, strain, harass, pursue, urge. 24.

prendō. See **prehendō**.

pretium, ī, n., *value, worth, price.* i. 18, iv. 2.

prex, **precis**, f., *an entreaty, prayer; imprecation.* 8.

prīdiē, adv., *on the day before.* 5.

primipīlus, m., (**primus** + **pīlus**), *the chief centurion.* 4.

prīmō, adv., *at first.* 12.

prīmum, adv., *first, in the beginning; quam prīmum, as soon as possible; cum prīmum, as soon as.* 22.

prīmus, a, um, adj., (*sup. of prior*), *first, foremost, principal, excellent, illustrious; in the van, in front.* 62.

prīnceps, ipis, adj., (**primus** + **capiō**), *foremost, the first.* 11.

prīncipātus, ūs, m., (**prīnceps**), *pre-eminence, sovereignty, rule, dominion.* 11.

prīncipēs, rulers, chiefs, leaders. 39.

prior, us, gen. **ōris**, adj., *first, former, previous, foremost.* 4.

prīstinus, a, um, adj., *old, former, ancient, original.* 9.

prius, adv., *sooner, before.* vii. 47.

priusquam (**prius** + **quam**), adv., *before.* 30.

prīvātīm, adv., (**prīvātus**), *privately, in private.* i. 17; v. 3, 55.

prīvātus, a, um, (**prīvō**, *deprive*), adj., *private.* 8.

prīvātus, ī, m., (**prīvō**, *deprive*), *a private citizen.* 4.

prō, prep. with the abl., *before, in front of, right opposite to; according to, for*

as; in place of. See **Idioms**. In composition, *before, forth.* 79.

probō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to approve, be satisfied; to examine, try; to prove, show, demonstrate.* 18.

prōcēdō, ere, **cessi**, —, (**prō** + **cēdō**), *to advance, proceed, go forth.* 15.

Procillus, ī, m. See **Valerius**.

prōclinō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**prō** + **clinō**, *lean*), *to bend forward, incline.* vii. 42.

prōcōnsul, ulis, m., (**prō** + **consul**), *a proconsul.* iii. 20, v. 1.

procul, adv., *far, far off, at a distance.* 11.

prōcumbō, ere, **cubui**, **cubitus**, (**prō** + **cumbō**, *lie*), *to fall forward, fall down, lean.* 5.

prōcūrō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**prō** + **cūrō**), *to take care of, attend to, look after.* v. 13.

prōcurrō, ere, **cucurri** or **curri**, **cursus**, (**prō** + **currō**), *to rush forward, run forth.* 5.

prōdeō, ire, īi, itus, (**prō** + **particle de** + **eō**), *to advance, come forth, go out.* 4.

prōditiō, ōnis, f., (**prōdō**), *treachery; discovery.* 4.

prōditor, ōris, m., (**prōdō**), *a traitor.* vi. 23.

prōdō, ere, **didī**, **ditus**, (**prō** + **dō**), *to give or bring forth, divulge, disclose, manifest; to report, relate, hand down; to betray, abandon.* 7.

prōdūcō, ere, **dūxī**, **ductus**, (**prō** + **dūcō**), *to lead forth, bring out; to draw out, lengthen, prolong.* 14.

proelior, āri, ātus, dep., (**proelium**), *to combat, contend, fight.* 6.

proelium, ī, n., *a battle.* 121.

profectiō, ōnis, f., (**proficiscor**), *a departure.* 10.

profectus, a, um. See **proficiō**.

profectus, a, um. See **proficiscor**.

prōferō, ferre, tullī, lātus, (**prō** + **ferō**), *to bring forth, say, produce; to*

- put off; to enlarge, prolong.* vii. 48, 82, 84.
- prōficiō**, ere, fēcī, fectus, (prō + faciō), *to advance, gain ground; to obtain, effect, accomplish, bring about.* 7.
- proficiscor**, ī, fectus, dep., *to set out, go, travel, march, depart, begin.* 79.
- profiteor**, ēri, fessus, dep., (prō + fateor, acknowledge), *to declare publicly, acknowledge, confess, avow; to promise.* 4.
- prōfigō**, āre, āvī, ātus, (prō + anteclassical **figō**, strike), *to throw or dash down; to overthrow, conquer, overcome, destroy.* ii. 23, vii. 13.
- prōfluō**, ere, fluxī, —, (prō + fluō), *to issue, flow forth.* iv. 10.
- profugiō**, ere, fūgī, —, (prō + fugiō), *to flee for refuge; to flee from; to escape.* 12.
- prōfuī**. See **prōsum**.
- prōgnātus**, a, um, adj., (prō + (g)nātus), *sprung from, born.* ii. 29, vi. 18.
- prōgredior**, ī, gressus, (prō + gradior, advance), *to go forth, advance, proceed.* 27.
- prohibeō**, ēre, uī, itus, (prō + habeō), *to hold back, keep in check, restrain, hinder, keep from; to preserve, keep, defend.* 43.
- prōiciō**, ere, iēcī, iectus, (prō + iaciō), *to cast forth or forward; to throw away, fling down; to resign, renounce, reject; to abandon, forsake, neglect.* 10.
- proinde**, adv., (prō + inde) *therefore, then, hence.* 4.
- prōlātus**, a, um. See **prōferō**.
- prōmineō**, ēre, uī, —, (prō + mineō, project), *to stand or jut out, overhang, project.* vii. 47.
- prōmiscuē**, adv., (prōmiscuus, confused), *promiscuously.* vi. 21.
- prōmittō**, ere, mīsi, missus, (prō + mittō), *to let go, let grow.* v. 14.
- prōmoveō**, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, (prō + moveō), *to move forwards, advance.* 4.
- prōptus**, a, um, adj., *quick, active, prompt.* iii. 19.
- prōmunturium**, ī, n., (prōmineō), *a headland, promontory.* iii. 12.
- prōnē**, adv., *in an inclined position, leaning forward.* iv. 17.
- prōnūntiō**, āre, āvī, ātus, (prō + nūntiō), *to make known publicly, announce, proclaim, report, tell, narrate.* 15.
- prope**, prep. with the acc., and adv., *near, nearly.* 23.
- prōpellō**, ere, pulī, pulsus, (prō + pellō), *to drive before one's self, propel, impel, urge on; to put to flight, hurl.* 4.
- properō**, āre, āvī, ātus, (properus, swift), *to make haste, hasten.* ii. 11, 35; v. 33.
- propinquitās**, ātis, f., (propinquus), *nearness, proximity; relationship.* 7.
- propinquus**, a, um, adj., *neighboring, near, not far off, related; propinquus, ī, m., a kinsman, relative.* 18.
- propior**, ius, gen. ōris, comp. adj., *nearer; sup. proximus.* 12.
- prōpōnō**, ere, posuī, positus, (prō + pōnō), *to put, place, or set forth; to present; to explain, represent; to make known, declare, say, relate.* 17.
- proprius**, a, um, adj., *one's own, peculiar, special, particular.* vi. 22, 23.
- propter**, prep. with the acc., (prope + suffix **tero**), *near; on account of; for.* 58.
- propterea**, conj., (propter + eā, case form of is), *therefore, on that account.* 20.
- prōpūgnātor**, ōris, m., (prōpūgnō), *a defender.* vii. 25.
- prōpūgnō**, āre, āvī, ātus, (prō + pūgnō), *to go forth to fight; to defend; to make sorties.* ii. 7, v. 9, vii. 86.

prōpulī. See prōpellō.

prōpulsō, āre, —, ātus, (prō + pulsō, drive), to repel, repulse, drive back. i. 49, vi. 15.

prōra, ae, f., the prow. iii. 13.

prōruō, ere, ī, tus, (prō + ruō, fall), to demolish, pull down. iii. 26.

prōsequor, ī, secūtus, dep., (prō + sequor), to follow; to pursue, attack, assail. 4.

prōspectus, ūs, m., (prōspiciō), a sight, view, prospect. ii. 22, v. 10, vii. 81.

prōspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus, (prō + obsolete specio, look), to look forward; to take care of, provide for. i. 23, v. 7, vii. 50.

prōsternō, ere, strāvī, strātus, (prō + sternō), to throw down, overthrow. vii. 77.

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, —, (prō + sum), to be of use, do good; to benefit, profit; to avail; to conduce. vi. 40.

prōtegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus, (prō + tegō), to shelter, protect, defend. v. 44.

prōterreō, ēre, uī, itus, (prō + terreō), to frighten away, terrify. v. 58, vii. 81.

prōtinus, adv., right on; continually, constantly; immediately, instantly. 5.

prōturbō, āre, āvī, ātus, (prō + turbō, confuse), to drive off in confusion. ii. 19, vii. 81.

prōvehō, ere, vexī, vectus, (prō + vehō), to carry forwards, convey away; to drive away; prōvehor as dep., to sail, ride, drive. iv. 28, v. 8.

prōveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus, (prō + veniō), to come forth; to turn out. v. 24.

prōventus, ūs, m., (prōveniō), a fortunate issue; success; result. vii. 29, 80.

prōvideō, ēre, vidī, vīsus, (prō + videō), to see before; to discern; to look out for, take care of; to foresee. 19.

prōvincia, ae, f., a province; the Province. See Gallia. 47.

prōvinciālis, e, adj., (prōvincia), provincial, of a province. vii. 7.

prōvolō, āre, āvī, —, (prō + volō), to fly forth, hasten forth, rush out. ii. 19.

proximē, adv., last, lately. 6.

proximus, a, um, adj., (sup. of prior), next, nearest, last. 47.

prūdētia, ae, f., (prūdēns, foreseeing), foresight, wisdom, discretion. ii. 4.

Ptiānī, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe in Aquitania.

pūbēs and pūber, eris, adj., adult, grown up; pūberēs, um, m. pl., adults, men. v. 56.

pūblicē, adv., (pūblicus), publicly; by the state, in the name of the state. 6.

pūblicō, āre, āvī, ātus, (pūblicus), to make public property, confiscate. v. 56, vii. 43.

pūblicus, a, um, adj., public, common, of the state. 27.

pudet, ēre, uit or puditum est, impers., to be ashamed; me pudet, I am ashamed. vii. 42.

pudor, ōris, m., modesty, shame; respect, regard; disgrace, ignominy. i. 39, 40.

puer, erī, m., a child, a boy. 5.

puerilis, e, adj., (puer), boyish, childish, youthful. vi. 18.

pūgna, ae, f., fight, battle. 34.

pūgnō, āre, āvī, ātus, (pūgna), to combat, contend, fight. 58.

pulcher, chra, chrum, adj., fair, beautiful; noble, glorious. vii. 15, 77.

Pulīō, ōnis, m., a centurion. v. 44.

pulsus, a, um. See pellō.

pulsus, ūs, m., a stroke. iii. 13.

pulvis, eris, m., dust. iv. 32.

puppis, is, f., the stern. iii. 13, 14.

purgō, āre, āvī, ātus, to cleanse, make clean; to excuse, exculpate, clear. 4.

putō, āre, āvi, ātus, *to prune, clean, reckon, count, think, suppose.* 20.

Pyrēnaeus, a, um, adj., *Pyrenean.*

Pyrēnaei montēs, *m. pl., the Pyrenees, between France and Spain.* i. 1.

Q

Q., *for Quintus.*

quā, *adv., in which place; where, wherever; how; on which side.* 9.

quadrāgēni, ae, a, dist. num. adj., *forty each.* iv. 17, vii. 23.

quadrāgintā, *num. adj., forty.* 5.

Quadrātus, i, m. *See Volusēnus.*

quadringenti, ae, a, num. adj., *four hundred.* i. 5, v. 46, vii. 72.

quaerō, ere, quaesivī, quaesitus, *to seek, search for; to get, procure, obtain; to need, ask, require; to investigate, examine into.* 15.

quaestiō, ōnis, f., (**quaerō**), *inquiry, investigation, examination; trial.* 5.

quaestor, ōris, m., (**quaerō**), *a quaestor.* 8.

quaestus, ūs, m., (**quaerō**), *profit, gain, acquisition.* vi. 17.

quālis, e, adj., *of what nature, of what sort, what; as, such as.* i. 21 (twice).

quam, *adv. and conj., (acc. sg. fem. of the relative; cf. tam, acc. sg. fem. of the demonstrative), how, how much, in what manner; as, than; with sup., as possible; quam māximus, as large as possible.* 113.

quamdīū, *adv., (quam + diū), as long as, how long.* i. 17.

quamobrem, *conj., (quam ob rem), wherefore.* 8.

quamvis, *adv., (quam + vis), as much as you will; as you will; however, although, though, very.* iv. 2.

quandō, *adv., (quam + dō, to); to what (time); when; sī quandō, if ever.* iii. 12.

quantus, a, um, adj., *how great, how*

much, so much; quantō—tantō, the—the. 40.

quantusvis, tavīs, tumvis, adj., (**quantus + vis**), *as much as you will; however much, however great; any.* v. 28.

quārē, *conj., (quārē), wherefore, why.* 8.

quārtus, a, um, num. adj., *fourth.* 13.

quasi, *conj., as if, as it were, just as if; nearly.* vii. 38.

quattuor, *num., four.* 20.

que, *conj. (the bare relative stem), and; que—que, or que—et, both—and* 892.

quemadmodum, *adv., (quem ad modum), after the manner of, just as, how, as. See quis and modus.*

queror, i, questus, *dep., to lament, complain of, bewail.* 10.

quī, quae, quod, *rel. and adj. pron., who, which, what, that.* 1214.

quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *indef. pron., (quī + cumque, whenever, giving indefinite sense), whoever, whatever, whosoever; all that, every, all.* 12.

quidam, quaedam, quoddam, *and quiddam, indef. pron., (quis + dam, pronoun stem dō, giving indefinite sense), a certain one, some one, some, something, somebody.* 17.

quidem, *adv., truly, indeed, at least, assuredly, in truth; nē—quidem, not even.* 42.

quies, ētis, f., *quiet, rest, repose.* 5.

quiētus, a, um, adj., (**quiēscō**, *rest*), *at rest, calm, quiet, peaceful.* 4.

quīn, *conj., (quī + nē), whereby not, but that; that not; that, but; quīn etiam, moreover, nay even.* 25.

quīnam, quāenam, quodnam, *interrog. adj. pron., (quis + nam, interrogative particle, not in its ordinary sense of for, but emphasizing the question), who? which? what? what, pray? ii. 30, v. 44.*

quincunx, *uncis*, m., the five spots on dice; in **quincuncem**, after the manner of these spots, — :. vii. 73.

quīndecim, num. adj., (*quinque* + *decem*), *fifteen*. 8.

quīngentī, *ae*, a, num. adj., (*quinque* + *centum*), *five hundred*. 5.

quīnī, *ae*, a, dist. num. adj., *five each*, *five*. 4.

quīnquāgintā, num. adj., *fifty*. 6.

quinque, *five*. 10.

quīntus, a, um, num. adj., *fifth*. 4.

quis, *quae*, *quid*, interrog. pron., *who?* *which?* *what?* *quid*, adv., *why?* *how?*

indef. pron., *any one*, *one*; *somebody*, *something*, [especially after *nē*, *sī*, *nisi*]. The fem. sing. is *qua*, as *nē qua*, etc., when used adjectively. 158.

quisnam, *quaenam*, *quidnam*, interrog. pron., *who*, *pray?* *which*, *pray?* *what*, *pray?* See *quīnam*.

quispiam, *quaequam*, *quodpiam* or *quidpiam* or *quippiam*, *indef. pron.*, (*quis* + particle *pe* + *iam*), *some*, *any*; *some one*, *any one*; *something*, *anything*. v. 35, vi. 17.

quisquam, *quaequam*, *quidquam* or *quicquam*, *indef. pron.*, (*quis* + *quam*), *some*, *any*, *any one*, *anything*. 26.

quisque, *quaeque*, *quodque* or *quidque* or *quicque*, *indef. pron.*, (*quis* + *que*, the stem of the relative, giving indefinite sense), *each*, *every*, *every one*, *all*, *everything*. 45.

quisquis, *quaequae*, *quodquod* or *quidquid* or *quicquid*, *indef. pron.*, (*quis* + *quis*), *whoever*, *whatever*, *each*, *all*. ii. 17, vii. 46.

quīvis, *quaevis*, *quodvis* or *quidvis*, *indef. pron.*, (*quī* + *vis*, *you wish*), *any one you please*; *every one*, *any one*; *whoever*; *anything*. ii. 31, iii. 13, iv. 2.

quō, adv. and conj.; as adv., old dat. of *quī*, *whither*, *where*; to *what place*;

after *sī*, to *any place*, *anywhere*. *quō* as a conj. is the abl. of *quī*, *whereby that*, in order that (usually with comparatives). 42.

quoad, adv., *as long as*, *as far as*; *till*, *until*. 4.

quod, conj., (acc. sg. neuter of relative, *as to which fact*), *because*, *that*, *in that*, *in so far as*; *quodsi*, *and if*, *but if*. 299.

quōminus, conj., (see *quō*), *that not*, *so that not*. iv. 22, vii. 19.

quoniam, conj., (*quom* [old form of *cum*] + *iam*), *because*, *since*. 15.

quoque, conj., *too*, *also*. 10.

quōqueversus, adv., *in every direction*. iii. 23.

quot, *indecl. adj.*, *as*, *as many as*; *how many*. vii. 19.

quotannis, adv., (*quot* + *annus*), *yearly*, *every year*. 4.

quotiēns, adv., *as often as*; *how often*. i. 43, v. 34.

R

rādix, *icis*, f., *a root*; *the base of a mountain*. 5.

rādō, *ere*, *rāsī*, *rāsus*, *to smooth*, *scrape*, *shave*. v. 14.

rāmus, *i*, m., *a bough*, *branch*. 4.

rapiditās, *ātis*, f., (*rapidus*, *swift*), *velocity*, *swiftness*, *rapidity*. iv. 17.

rapīna, *ae*, f., (*rapīō*, *snatch*), *robbery*, *rapine*, *plundering*. i. 15.

rārus, a, um, adj., *far apart*, *scattered*, *thin*, *scanty*, *dispersed*; *single*; *few*. 6.

ratiō, *ōnis*, f., (*reor*, *suppose*), *account*, *calculation*, *computation*; *transaction*, *affair*; *regard*, *respect*, *concern*, *care*, *consideration*; *judgment*, *understanding*, *reason*; *method*, *manner*, *fashion*; *motive*; *stratagem*. 41.

ratis, *is*, f., *a raft*. i. 8, 12; vi. 35.

Rauracī, *ōrum*, m. pl., *a Celtic tribe*, *neighbors of the Helvētīi from the*

- mouth of the Arar to Basel. i. 5, 29; vi. 25; vii. 75.
- re-, red-,** inseparable particle in composition, *back, again*.
- rebelliō, ōnis, f., (re + bellum),** a rebellion, revolt. iii. 10; iv. 30, 38.
- Rebilus, ī, m.** See Caninius.
- recēdō, ere, cessi, cessus, (re + cēdō),** to retreat, withdraw, depart, retire. v. 43.
- recēns, entis, adj.,** recent, fresh, new, vigorous. 9.
- recēnsēō, ēre, uī, —, (re + cēnsēō),** to reckon up, enumerate, review, count over. vii. 76.
- receptāculum, ī, n., (receptō, take back),** a shelter; a receptacle; a lurking place. vii. 14.
- receptus, a, um.** See recipiō.
- receptus, ūs, m., (recipiō),** a retreat, shelter, refuge. iv. 33, vi. 9, vii. 47.
- recessus, ūs, m., (recēdō),** a retreat. v. 43.
- recidō, ere, cidi, cāsūrus, (re + cadō),** to fall back, recoil; to occur, happen; to fall upon, light upon. vii. 1.
- recipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus, (re + capiō),** to take back; to recover, get again; to take, capture; to engage, undertake; sē recipere, to withdraw, betake one's self. 76.
- recitō, āre, āvi, ātus, (re + citō),** to read aloud. v. 48.
- reclinō, āre, āvi, ātus (re + clinō, lean),** to lean backwards, recline. vi. 27 (twice).
- rēctē, adv.,** in a straight line; correctly, well. vii. 6, 80.
- rēctus, a, um, adj., (regō),** direct, exact, straight. vi. 25; vii. 23, 46.
- recuperō, āre, āvi, ātus,** to recover, regain. 4.
- recūsō, āre, āvi, ātus, (re + causa),** to object, refuse, decline, reject. 9.
- rēda, ae, f.,** a Gallic carriage. i. 51, vi. 30.
- redactus, a, um.** See redigō.
- reddō, ere, didi, ditus, (re + dō),** to give back, return, restore; to yield, give up, surrender; to cause. 11.
- redēemptus, a, um.** See redimō.
- redeō, īre, ii, itus, (re + particle de + eō),** to come back; to be reduced; to descend. 10.
- redigō, ere, ēgi, āctus, (re + agō),** to drive or bring back; to render; to reduce, diminish; to make, compel, force. 10.
- redimō, ere, emī, emptus, (re + emō),** to buy back; to release, redeem, ransom; to hire, procure, farm, acquire, purchase. i. 18, 37, 44.
- redintegrō, āre, āvi, ātus, (re + integrō, make whole),** to restore, renew, revive, recruit. 9.
- reditiō, ōnis, f.,** a return. i. 5.
- reditus, ūs, m.,** a return. iv. 30; vi. 29, 36.
- Rēdonēs, um, m. pl.,** a Celtic tribe in Brittany, about the modern Rennes. ii. 34, vii. 75.
- redūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus, (re + dūcō),** to bring or conduct back, remove, draw back, withdraw. 28.
- referō, ferre, rettuli, relātus, (re + ferō),** to carry, bring, draw, or give back; referre pedem, to retreat. 16.
- reficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, (re + faciō),** to make anew, restore, rebuild; to refresh, reinvigorate, reassure, recruit. 11.
- refringō, ere, frēgi, frāctus, (re + frangō),** to break, break open; to destroy; to repress. ii. 33, vii. 56.
- refugiō, ere, fūgi, —, (re + fugiō),** to flee away; to retreat, flee back. v. 35, vii. 31.
- Reginus, ī, m.** See Antistius.
- regiō, ōnis, f., (regō),** course, direction; territory, region; ē regiōne, opposite. 41.

rēgius, a, um, adj., (rēx), *kingly, royal, regal*. vii. 32.

rēgnō, āre, āvi, ātus, (rēgnum), *to rule, reign, govern*. v. 25.

rēgnum, ī, n., (rēgō), *sovereignty; kingdom; royal power*. 19.

rēgō, ere, rēxi, rēctus, *to direct, govern, rule, conduct*. iii. 13, vi. 17.

regredior, ī, gressus, dep., (re + gradior, step), *to return*. v. 44.

rēiciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, (re + iaciō), *to hurl back, drive back, repel; to fling down, cast off, reject*. 6.

relanguēscō, ere, languī, —, (re + languēscō, grow weak), *to grow weak; to become enfeebled*. ii. 15.

relātus, a, um. See referō.

relēgō, āre, āvi, ātus, (re + lēgō, dispatch), *to remove, send away*. v. 30.

relictus, a, um. See relinquo.

rēligiō, ōnis, f., *piety, religion, plighted faith; religious rites; superstition*. 5.

relinquō, ere, liquī, lictus, (re + linquō, leave), *to leave behind, abandon, leave*. 78.

reliquus, a, um, adj., (cf. relinquo), *remaining, the rest of; future, to come; reliquum, ī, n., the rest*. 173.

remaneō, ēre, mānsī, —, (re + maneo), *to continue, remain, last, endure*. 10.

rēmex, igis, m., *a rower*. iii. 9.

Rēmī, ōrum, m. pl., *a Belgic tribe between the Mātrona (Marne) and Axona (Aisne)*. See Iccius, Andecumborius. Capital: Durocortorum, modern Rheims. ii. 3 ff., 6; iii. 11; v. 3, 24, 53 f., 56; vi. 4, 12, 44; vii. 63, 90; viii. 6, 11. Their chieftain: Vertiscus.

rēmigō, āre, āvi, ātus, (rēmus + agō), *to row*. v. 8.

remigrō, āre, āvi, —, (re + migrō, migrate), *to return, remove back*. iv. 4, 27.

reminiscor, ī, —, dep., *to remember*. i. 13.

remissus, a, um, partic. pass., (remitto), *remiss, relax, loose, slack*. v. 12.

remittō, ere, misi, missus, (re + mitto), *to hurl back, send back; to abate, slacken, relax, relieve*. 16.

remollēscō, ere, —, —, (mollis), *to become enervated*. iv. 2.

remōtus, a, um, partic. pass., (removeō), *distant, remote*. 4.

removeō, ēre, mōvi, mōtus, (re + moveō), *to remove, take away*. 8.

remūneror, āri, ātus, dep., (re + mūnerō, give), *to reward, remunerate*. i. 44.

rēmus, ī, m., *an oar*. 8.

rēnō, ōnis, m., *a reindeer*. vi. 21.

renovō, āre, āvi, ātus, (re + novō, make new), *to renew*. iii. 2, 20.

renūntiō, āre, āvi, ātus, (re + nūntiō), *to bring back word; to report*.

repellō, ere, pulli, pulsus, (re + pellō), *to drive back, repulse*. 10.

repentē, adv., *suddenly*. 5.

repentinō, adv., *suddenly*. ii. 33.

repentinus, a, um, adj., *unexpected, sudden*. 14.

reperiō, īre, perī, pertus, (re + pariō, bring forth), *to discover, ascertain, find; to devise, invent*. 27.

repetō, ere, īvi, itus, (re + petō), *to claim, demand*. i. 30, 31.

repleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus, (re + pleō, fill), *to refill, supply*. vii. 56.

reportō, āre, āvi, ātus, (re + portō), *to carry or bring back, convey*. iv. 29; v. 23.

reposcō, ere, —, —, (re + poscō), *to exact, demand back*. v. 30.

repraesentō, āre, āvi, ātus, *to perform immediately, do*. i. 40.

reprehendō, ere, ī, hēnsus, (re +prehendō), *to censure, rebuke, reprove*. 4.

reprimō, ere, pressi, pressus, (re + premō), *to restrain, check, prevent*. iii. 14, vii. 8.

- repudiō, āre, āvī, ātus, (cf. pudeō, *be ashamed*), to refuse, reject, decline. i. 40.
- repugnō, āre, āvī, ātus, (re + pugnō), to oppose, fight against, disagree with, be contrary to, be inconsistent; to stand opposed. i. 19, iii. 4, vii. 42.
- repulī. See repellō.
- repulsus, a, um. See repellō.
- requirō, ere, quisivī, quisitus, (re + quaerō), to seek again; to seek after, search for; to demand, require; to miss, look in vain for. vi. 34, vii. 63.
- rēs, rei, f., a thing, affair, business, purpose, circumstance, event, fact. The student must be very careful in his translation of this word. It was natural for the Latin to read into *rēs* a great multiplicity of meanings. If the student attempts to reproduce these meanings by use of the English word *thing*, he has a translation slovenly in the extreme. *Res* is an empty conception, which must be filled by the context. "When the Roman read *haec res*, or *eius rei*, or *quam rem*, he knew for himself whether it was a deed or a thought, a demand or a concession, an aim or an action, a fact or an assumption, a hope or a fear, a purpose or a result, an object or a relation; but an (English) author is compelled repeatedly to remind his reader of what he is actually treating" (Cauer, *die Kunst des Übersetzens*, p. 53). 394. *rēs publica*, the republic, commonwealth, state; the public affairs. 15.
- resarciō, ire, —, sartus, (re + sarcio, *mend*), to restore, repair. vi. 1.
- rescindō, ere, scidi, scissus, (re + scindō), to destroy, tear down. 7.
- resciscō, ere, ivī, itus, (re + sciscō, *inquire*, cf. *scio*), to learn, ascertain. i. 28.
- rescribō, ere, scripsi, scriptus, (re + scribō), to write again, transfer. i. 42.
- reservō, āre, āvī, ātus, (re + servō), to retain, reserve, preserve. 4.
- resideō, ēre, sēdī, —, (re + sedeō, *sit*), to rest, remain, abide; to be left. vii. 77.
- residō, ere, sēdī, —, (re + sidō, for *sis[e]dō*, same root as *sedeō*, *sit*), to settle, sit down, subside, grow calm. vii. 64.
- resistēns, entis, partic. pres., (resistō), resolute, firm. 4.
- resistō, ere, stitī, —, (re + sistō), to stand back, halt; to withstand, oppose; to continue, remain. 21.
- respicō, ere, spexi, spectus, (re + obsolete *speciō*, *look*), to look back; to have a care for, be mindful of. 4.
- respondeō, ēre, ī, spōnsus, (re + spondeō, *promise*), to reply, answer. 16.
- respōnsum, ī, n., (respondeō), a reply, answer. 4.
- respuō, ere, ī, —, (re + spuō, *spit*), to spit out; to repel, reject, refuse. i. 42.
- restinguō, ere, stinxī, stinctus, (re + stinguō, *extinguish*), to quench, extinguish, put out. vii. 24, 25.
- restitī. See resistō.
- restituō, ere, ī, ūtus, (re + statuō), to replace, restore, reinstate; to deliver up, give up; to renew. 7.
- retineō, ēre, tinuī, tentus, (re + teneō), to keep back, detain, retain; to hinder, restrain, check, keep, hold fast, maintain. 18.
- retrahō, ere, trāxī, trāctus, (re + trahō), to draw or bring back; to recover. v. 7.
- rettulī, (for *re-t[e]tulī*, the old reduplicated form of *tulī*). See referō.
- revellō, ere, velli, vulsus, (re + vellō, *pull*), to tear away, pluck away. i. 52, vii. 73.
- revertō, ere, tī, —, and revertor, ī, sus, dep., (re + vertō), to turn back, return. 34.

revinciō, ire, vinxi, victus, (re + vinciō), to tie, fasten, bind. 5.

revocō, āre, āvi, ātus, (re + vocō), to recall, call back. 5.

rēx, rēgis, m., a king. 14.

Rhēnus, i, m., the Rhine, the boundary line between Gallia and Germania; Caesar crossed it twice; (a) iv. 17, near the modern Neuwied; (b) vi. 9 ff., near the modern Andernach. In the land of the Batāvi it divides itself into two streams (multis capitibus, iv. 10, 5, is wrong; Vergil, Aen. viii. 727, calls the Rhēnus bicornis) of which the Vacalus (modern Waal) receives the Meuse near the modern Workum. i. 1; ii. 4; iii. 11; iv. 10, 15; v. 3; vi. 9; vii. 65; viii. 13. 62.

Rhodanus, i, m., the Rhone, the boundary line between Allobrogēs and Helvētīi. i. 1, 2, 6, 8, 10 ff., 33; iii. 1; vii. 65. 13.

rīpa, ae, f., the bank of a river. 18.

rīvus, i, m., a brook, stream. v. 49, 50.

rōbur, oris, n., hard oak; strength, power. iii. 13.

rogō, āre, āvi, ātus, to ask, question; to request, solicit, inquire; rogāre militēs sacramentō, to bind soldiers by an oath. 9.

Rōma, ae, f., Rome. i. 31, vi. 12, vii. 90.

Rōmānus, a, um, adj., Roman. 172.

Rōmānus, i, m., a Roman.

Rōscius, i, m., L., legate of Caesar, praetor urbānus in 49 B.C. v. 24, 53.

rōstrum, i, n., the beak or bill of a bird; the beak of a ship. iii. 13, 14.

rota, ae, f., a wheel. i. 26, iv. 33.

rubus, i, m., a bramble bush, bramble. ii. 17.

Rūfus, i, m. See Sulpicius.

rūmor, ōris, m., report, rumor, talk. 6.

rūpēs, is, f., a rock or cliff. ii. 29.

rūrsus, adv., again, anew; back, backwards. 24.

Rutēni, ōrum, m., a tribe in Celtic Gaul. Capital: Segodūnum (modern Rhodes). i. 45; vii. 5, 75, 90.

Rutilus, i, m. See Semprōnius.

S

Sabinus, i, m. See Titūrius.

Sabis, is, m., modern Sambre, empties into the Mosa. ii. 16, 18.

sacerdōs, ōtis, m. and f., a priest or priestess. vii. 33.

sacrāmentum, i, n., (sacrō, consecrate), an oath. vi. 1.

sacrificium, i, n., (sacrificō, offer sacrifice), a sacrifice. 5.

saepe, adv., often, frequently. 12.

saepēs, is, f., a hedge, fence. ii. 17, 22.

saepenumero, adv., (saepe numero), often, frequently, time and again. 5.

saevio, ire, ī, itus, (saevus, fierce), to be cruel or fierce. iii. 13.

sagitta, ae, f., an arrow. iv. 25; vii. 41, 81.

sagittārius, i, m., (sagitta), a bowman, archer. 7.

sagulum, i, n., a small military cloak. v. 42.

saltus, ūs, m., a woodland pasture; a forest; a mountain pass. vi. 43, vii. 19.

salūs, ūtis, f., security, safety; welfare, deliverance, prosperity. 48.

Samarobriva, ae, f., capital of the Ambianī, q. v., modern Amiens. v. 24, 47, 53.

sancio, ire, sānxi, sānctus, to render sacred or inviolable; to appoint, establish, decree, ordain. i. 30, vi. 20, vii. 2.

sānctus, a, um, adj., (sancio), holy, sacred, inviolable. iii. 9, vi. 23, vii. 66.

sanguis, inis, m., blood. vii. 20, 50.

sānitās, ātis, f., (sānus), health, soundness; good sense, discretion. i. 42, vii. 42.

sānō, āre, āvī, ātus, (sānus), to cure, restore, heal, repair, alia; to obviate. vii. 29.

Santonēs, um, Santonī, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe in Celtic Gaul on the north side of the Garumna. Capital: Mediōlānum = modern Saintes. i. 10, 11; iii. 11; vii. 75.

sānus, a, um, adj., sensible, sound, sober, discreet. v. 7.

sānxī. See sancio.

sapiō, ere, ivī, —, to understand, know. v. 30.

sarcina, ae, f., a pack, bundle, load; baggage. 4.

sarmentum, ī, n., brushwood, twigs. iii. 18.

satis, adv., sufficiently, enough. 24.

satisfaciō, ere, fēcī, factus, (satis + faciō), to give satisfaction, satisfy, content; to apologize, ask pardon for. 6.

satisfactiō, ōnis, f., (satisfaciō), reparation, satisfaction, excuse, apology. i. 41, vi. 9.

satus, a, um. See serō.

saucius, a, um, adj., wounded. iii. 4, v. 36.

saxum, ī, n., a rock, stone. 7.

scāla, ae, f., a scaling ladder. v. 43, vii. 81.

Scaldis, is, m., the modern Schelde. vi. 33. It is exceedingly probable that Caesar meant here the Sabis (modern Sambre), which empties into the Meuse, near modern Namur.

scapha, ae, f., a boat, skiff. iv. 26.

scelerātus, a, um, adj., (scelus), accursed, impious, wicked, vicious. vi. 13, 34.

scelus, eris, n., an evil deed; crime, guilt, sin. i. 14.

scienter, adv., (sciēns, knowing), expertly, skillfully. vii. 22.

scientia, ae, f., skill, knowledge, science, experience. 6.

scindō, ere, scidī, scissus, to cut, tear, rend, split, divide; to destroy, demolish, break down. iii. 5, v. 51.

sciō, ire, ivī or ii, itus, to know, understand, perceive. 12.

scorpiō, ōnis, m., a scorpion, a military engine for throwing darts, stones, etc. vii. 25 (twice).

scribō, ere, scripsī, scriptus, to write. 5.

scrobis, is, m. and f., a ditch, pit, trench. vii. 73 (twice), 82.

scūtum, ī, n., a buckler, shield. 10.

sē-, sēd-, a preposition in the early Latin meaning without, later used only as an inseparable particle in composition, apart, off, away.

secō, āre, uī, tus, to cut off, cut down; to mow. vii. 14.

sēcrētō, adv., (sēcernō, separate), apart, separately, secretly. i. 18, 31.

sectiō, ōnis, f., (secō), division, lot; spoils, booty. ii. 33.

sector, āri, ātus, dep., to follow, pursue, hunt after, pursue eagerly. vi. 35.

sectūra, ae, f., (secō), a cutting, digging. iii. 21.

secundum, prep. with acc., (secundus), along, after, near; according to; close to, next. 4.

secundus, a, um, adj., (sequor), next, following; successful, prosperous, favorable. 18.

secūris, is, f., (secō), an ax. vii. 77.

secus, adv., otherwise, differently. See sētius.

secūtus, a, um. See sequor.

sed, conj., but, now. 104.

sēdecim, num. adj., sixteen. i. 8, 49; vii. 16.

sēdēs, is, f., (sedeō, sit), a seat; a home, dwelling place, habitation. 5.

sēditiō, ōnis, f., (sēd- + *itio, a going, cf. eō), insurrection, sedition, dissension, civil discord. vii. 28.

sēditiosus, a, um, adj., (sēditio), *turbulent, seditious, factious.* i. 17.

Sedulius, i, m., chieftain of the Lemo-vicēs. vii. 88.

Sedūnī, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe in the Alps, in the modern Wallis, where the town *Sitten* preserves the name. iii. 1, 2, 7.

Sedūsī, ōrum, m. pl., a Germanic tribe between the Main and Neckar. i. 51.

seges, itis, f., a cornfield; a crop. vi. 36.

Sēgnī, ōrum, m. pl., a Belgic tribe between Eburōnēs and Trēverī. (Bourg-Sègne, a village near Givet, perhaps preserves the name.)

Segontiāci, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe in the south of Britain (modern Hampshire and Berkshire).

Segovax, actis, m., a king of the Britons. v. 22.

Segūsiāvī, ōrum, m. pl., a Celtic tribe between Rhodanus (Rhône), Arar (Aisne), and Liger (Loire). Capital: **Lugdūnum** (modern *Lyon*), founded 44 B.C. i. 10; vii. 64, 75.

semel, num. adv., (*SEM, one), *once.* i. 31.

sementis, is, f., (semen, seed), *a sowing.* i. 3.

sēmīta, ae, f., a footpath, path. v. 19, vii. 8.

semper, adv., ever, always. 10.

Semprōnius, i, m., *M. Semprōnius Rutilus*, a general of Caesar's cavalry. vii. 90.

senātor, ōris, m., (senex), *a senator.* ii. 28.

senātus, ūs, m., (senex), *senate.* 3.

senātūs cōsultum, i, n., a decree of the senate. i. 43.

senex, senis, adj., old, aged. **senex, senis, m.,** an old man. i. 29.

sēnī, ae, a, dist. num. adj., six each, six in six. i. 15, vii. 75.

Senonēs, um, m. pl., a mighty and power-

ful tribe in Celtic Gaul, between Loire and Marne. Town: **Vellaunodūnum**. Capital: **Agedincum** = modern *Sens*. ii. 2; v. 54, 56; vi. 2 ff.; vii. 4, 11, 34, 56, 58, 75; viii. 30. Their chieftains: **Moritasgus, Drappēs, Cavarinus, Accō.**

sententiae, ae, f., (sentiō), *a purpose, intention, design; a judgment, decision, sentence; a resolution.* 18.

sentiō, ire, sēnsī, sēnsus, to discern by the senses; to be sensible of, perceive, discover, observe; to imagine, suppose. 12.

sentis, is, m., a bramble, brier. ii. 17.

sēparātim, adv., (sēparō), *apart, separately.* i. 19, 29; vii. 36.

sēparātus, a, um, partic. pass., (sēparō), *distinct, separate.* iv. 1.

sēparō, āre, āvī, ātus, (sē + parō), *separate, divide.* iv. 1, vii. 63.

septem, seven. iv. 23, v. 49.

septentrionēs, um, m. pl., (septem triōnēs, plow-oxen), *the Great Bear, the Little Bear; Charles' Wain; the north; the North Pole.* 7.

septimus, a, um, num. adj., *the seventh.* 14.

septingentī, ae, a, num. adj., *seven hundred.* v. 13, vii. 51.

septuāgintā, num. adj., *seventy.* iv. 12.

sepultūra, ae, f., (sepeliō, bury), *the act of burying; a funeral, funeral rites; obsequies, burial.* i. 26.

Sēquana, ae, f., *the Seine.* i. 1; vii. 57, 58. 6.

Sēquani, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe in Celtic Gaul, between the Saône, Rhône, and Jura. Town: **Melodūnum**. Capital: **Vesontiō** = modern *Besançon*. i. 1 ff., 3, 6, 8 ff., 19, 31 ff., 38, 40, 44, 48, 54, iv. 10; vi. 12; vii. 66 f., 75, 90. See **Casticus**. Chieftain: **Catamantaloedēs**. **Sēquanus, a, um, adj.,** *Sequanian.* 40.

sequor, **i**, **secūtus**, dep., *to go, come, or follow after; to follow, attend, accompany; to pursue; to aim at, seek for.* 31.

sermō, **ōnis**, m., *a discourse, talk, conversation.* v. 37, 41; vi. 13.

sērō, adv., *late, too late.* v. 29.

serō, ere, **sēvī**, satus, *to sow, plant.* v. 14.

Sertōrius, **i**, m., Q., propraetor in Spain in 82 B.C., assassinated 72 B.C. In the first Civil War he joined Marius' party. iii. 23.

servilis, **e**, adj., (**servus**), *servile, of slaves.* i. 40, vi. 19.

serviō, ire, **ivī**, itus, (**servus**), *to be a slave; to be subject to, devote one's self to, give heed to.* iv. 5, vii. 34.

servitūs, **ūtis**, f., (**servus**), *servitude, slavery.* 15.

servō, āre, **āvī**, ātus, *to keep, preserve, watch, guard; to observe.* 11.

servus, **i**, m., *a bondman, slave, servant.* 3.

sēsquipedālis, **e**, adj., (**sesqui**, *half as much, + pēs*), *a foot and a half in length, breadth, or diameter.* iv. 17.

sētius, adv., (comp. of **secus**), *differently, less, otherwise.* 4.

seu, conj., *whether.* 8.

sevēritās, **ātis**, f., (**sevērus**, *strict*), *harshness, rigor.* vii. 4.

sēvocō, āre, **āvī**, ātus, (**sē + vocō**), *to call off or aside.* v. 6.

sēvum, **i**, n., *tallow, fat.* vii. 25.

sex, **siz**. 13.

sexāgintā, num. adj., *sixty.* ii. 4.

sexcentī, **ae**, **e**, num. adj., (**sex + centum**), *six hundred.* 8.

Sextius, **i**, m. (1) *T.*, one of Caesar's legates. vi. 1; vii. 49, 51, 90; viii. 11.

(2) *P. Sextius Baculus*, a centurion in Caesar's army. ii. 25, iii. 5, vi. 38.

sī, conj., (old locative of a pronoun stem, meaning *in this case*), *if, whether.* 172.

Sibuzātēs, **um**, m. pl., a tribe in Aquitania, near the Pyrenees (modern *Sau-busse*, between Dax and Bayonne).

sīc, adv., (**sī** + particle **c[e]**), *in this way*, *in this manner; thus.* 29.

siccitās, **ātis**, f., (**siccus**, *dry*), *dryness, drought.* iv. 38, v. 24.

sīcut or **sīcutī**, adv., (**sīc** + **ut** or **utī**), *as if, just as, as it were, like.* **sīcut**, 6; **sīcutī**, 4.

sīdus, **eris**, n., *star, constellation.* vi. 14.

signifer, **erī**, m., (**signum** + **ferō**), *a standard bearer.* ii. 25.

significātiō, **ōnis**, f., (**significō**), *intimation, expression, declaration; sense, import.* 5.

significō, āre, **āvī**, ātus, (**signum** + **faciō**), *to make a sign; to signify, indicate, show, intimate, declare.* 7.

signum, **i**, n., *a sign, mark; a watchword, signal; an ensign, a standard.* 46.

Silānus, **i**, m., *M.*, a legate of Caesar. vi. 1.

silentium, **i**, n., (**silēns**, *still*), *stillness, silence.* 10.

Sillus, **i**, m., *T.*, a military tribune. iii. 7, 8.

silva, **ae**, f., *forest, wood.* 54.

silvestris, **e**, adj., (**silva**), *wooded, woody.* 6.

similis, **e**, adj., *resembling, like, similar.* 11.

similitūdō, **inis**, f., (**similis**), *likeness, resemblance, affinity, similarity.* vii. 50, 53.

simul, adv., *together, at once, at the same time; simul — simul, partly — partly; simul ac, as soon as.* 22.

simulācrum, **i**, n., (**simulō**), *a likeness or representation; a picture, image, effigy, figure.* vi. 16, 17.

simulātiō, **ōnis**, f., (**simulō**), *pretense, disguise, counterfeiting, deceit, hypocrisy.* 7.

simulō, āre, āvī, ātus, to feign, pretend, counterfeit. i. 44, iv. 4.

simultās, ātis, f., (simul), rivalry, jealousy, enmity, hatred. v. 44.

sīn, conj., (sī + ne), but if; if however. i. 13, v. 35.

sincērō, adv., (sincērus, genuine), frankly, sincerely, candidly. vii. 20.

sine, prep. with abl., (reflexive stem se + ne), without. 41.

singillātim, adv., (singulus, one by one), one by one, singly. iii. 2; v. 4, 52.

singulāris, e, adj., (singulus, one by one), single, one only; extraordinary, excellent, remarkable, singular. 8.

singulī, ae, a, dist. num. adj., separate, single, individual, each, every. 34.

sinister, tra, trum, adj., left, on the left; adverse, contrary; pernicious, bad. 7.

sinistrōrsus, adv., (sinister + vorsus, turned), towards the left hand; on the left. v. 25.

sīnō, ere, sīvī, situs, to permit, allow, suffer; to give one leave. iv. 2.

siquandō, adv., (sī + quandō), if ever. iii. 12.

sīquis, sīqua. See quis.

sistō, ere, stitī, status, to set, place; to stand still, stop. See **circumsistō**.

situs, ūs, m., (sīnō), position, situation, site. 5.

sive, conj., (sī + ve), or, whether; if, either; sive — sive, whether — or. 9.

socer, erī, m., a father-in-law. i. 12.

societās, ātis, f., (socius), a company, union, conjunction, alliance, league, confederacy. vi. 12.

socius, a, um, (sequor), comrade, partner, associate. 11.

sōl, sōlis, m., the sun. 14.

sōlātium, ī, n., comfort, consolation. vii. 15.

soldūrii, ōrum, m. pl., retainers (Celtic word). iii. 22.

soloō, ēre, itus, semi-dep., to be wont; to be accustomed. vi. 15, vii. 35.

sōlitūdō, inis, f., (sōlus), wilderness, desert. iv. 18, vi. 23.

sollertia, ae, f., adroitness, shrewdness; expertness, skill. vii. 22.

sollicitō, āre, āvī, ātus, to rouse, move, urge, induce, incite; to investigate. 12.

sollicitūdō, inis, f., anxiety, disquiet, trouble, uneasiness. v. 53, vii. 40.

solum, ī, n., the soil, ground; foundation, bottom. 4.

sōlum, adv., alone, only. 12.

sōlus, a, um, adj., alone, only, single, sole. 9.

solvō, ere, solvī, solūtus, to untie, unbind, loose. See Idioms. 5.

sonitus, ūs, m., a noise, sound. vii. 60, 61.

Sontiātēs, um, m. pl., a tribe in Aquitania (modern town Sôs, in the Département Lot et Garonne). iii. 20, 21. Chieftain: **Adiatunnus**.

sonus, ī, m., noise, sound. vii. 47.

soror, ōris, f., a sister. i. 18, 53.

sors, sortis, f., chance, lot, fate, destiny. i. 50, 53 (twice).

spatium, ī, n., distance, space; an interval. 43.

speciēs, ēī, f., a form, figure, fashion, shape, appearance; a spectacle, sight; pretense, semblance. 12.

spectō, āre, āvī, ātus, to see, observe; to endeavor; to tend; to examine, prove; to look, face, lie towards; to expect, wait for. 6.

speculātor, ōris, m., (speculor), spy, scout. ii. 11, v. 49.

speculātōrius, a, um, adj., (speculātor), for scouting, of observation. iv. 26.

speculor, āri, ātus, dep., (specula, watch-tower), to watch, observe, reconnoiter, wait for. i. 47.

spērō, āre, āvī, ātus, to trust, hope, expect. 12.

spēs, ei, f., *expectation, hope.* 52.

spiritus, ūs, m., (spīrō, *breath*), *spirit, breath; haughtiness, arrogance.* i. 33, ii. 4.

spoliō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to spoil, strip, plunder, deprive.* v. 6, vii. 66.

sponde, abl., *of one's own will, voluntarily.* 5.

stabiliō, ire, ivī, itus, *to fix, settle; to make firm.* vii. 73.

stabilitās, ātis, f., (stabilis, *steadfast*), *firmness, steadiness.* iv. 33.

statim, adv., (stō, cf. our expression on the spot), *forthwith, immediately.* 9.

statiō, ōnis, f., (stō), *a post, station; outpost, picket, guard, sentinel, sentry.* 11.

statuō, ere, ī, ūtus, (status), *to raise, erect, set up, place, station, establish; to decide, conclude.* 18.

statūra, ae, f., (status), *stature.* ii. 30, vi. 21.

status, ūs, m., (stō), *posture, condition, state.* vi. 12; vii. 54, 55.

stimulus, ī, m., *spur, goad; pointed stake.* vii. 73, 82.

stipendiārius, a, um, (stipendium), *adj., tributary.* i. 30, 36; vii. 10.

stipendium, ī, n., *tribute, tax.* 7.

stipes, itis, m., *post, log, stake.* vii. 73 (twice).

stirpis, stirpis, f., *stock, stem, stalk, lineage.* vi. 34 (twice).

stō, āre, stetī, status, *to stand; to persist, remain.* 4.

strāmentum, ī, n., (sternō, *strew*), *straw, thatch; covering, coverlet.* v. 43, vii. 45.

strepitus, ūs, m., (strepō, *roar*), *a din, noise, uproar, tumult.* ii. 11, iv. 33, vi. 7.

studeō, ēre, uī, —, *to pay attention to, cultivate; strive after, be eager for.* 16.

studiōsē, adv., (studiōsus, *eager*), *zealously, eagerly, attentively.* vi. 28 (twice).

studium, ī, n., *zeal, eagerness; attachment, devotion; vocation; exertion.* 15.

stultitia, ae, f., (stultus, *foolish*), *foolishness, folly.* vii. 77.

sub, prep. with acc., *under, beneath; by, at the base of; about, towards, during, on, in; within.* In composition, *under, from under, up, hiddenly, slightly.* 10.

subāctus, a, um. See subigō.

subdolus, a, um, adj., (sub + dolus), *cunning, crafty.* vii. 31.

subducō, ere, dūxī, ductus, (sub + dūcō), *to withdraw, draw off, take away, remove; to draw up on the shore.* 6.

subductiō, ōnis, f., (subducō), *a hauling ashore, a drawing up.* v. 1.

subeō, ire, īi, itus, (sub + eō), *to come or go under; to advance, proceed; to endure, encounter, undergo.* 7.

subesse. See subsum.

subfodiō, ere, fōdī, fossus, (sub + fodiō), *to dig under, undermine, dig below.* iv. 12.

subiciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, (sub + iaciō), *to throw under, place under, subject.* 8.

subigō, ere, ēgī, āctus, (sub + agō), *to force, compel, constrain, oblige; to drive; to subdue, reduce.* vii. 77.

subitō, adv., (subitus), *quickly, suddenly.* 30.

subitus, a, um, adj., (subeō), *unexpected, sudden.* iii. 7, 8.

sublātus, a, um, partic. pass., (tollō), *proud, elated.* 11.

sublevō, āre, āvī, ātus, (sub + levō), *to lift, support, lessen, diminish; to relieve, ease.* 9.

sublica, ae, f., *a pile, stake.* iv. 17 (twice), vii. 35.

subluō, ere, —, lūtus, (sub + luō, *wash*), *to wash beneath; to flow near* vii. 69.

subministrō, āre, āvī, ātus, (sub + ministrō, attend), to afford, supply. i. 40, iii. 25, iv. 20.

submittō, ere, mīsī, missus, (sub + mittō), to send after; to send, dispatch. 9.

submoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, (sub + moveō), to displace, dislodge, drive back. 5.

subruō, ere, ī, tus, (sub + ruō, fall), to dig under, undermine; to pull down, overturn. ii. 6, iv. 27.

subsequor, ī, secūtus, dep., (sub + sequor), to follow after, follow immediately. 15.

subsidiū, ī, n., (cf. subsidō), a reënforcement; help, defense, remedy. 27.

subsidō, ere, sēdī, sessus, (sub + sidō, for si-s[e]d-ō, same root as sedeō, sit), to sink down, remain, stay behind. vi. 36.

substō, ere, stitī, —, (sub + sistō), to halt, stand still; to hold out, withstand. i. 15, v. 10.

subsum, esse, —, —, (sub + sum), to be under; to be near. 4.

subtrahō, ere, trāxī, trāctus, (sub + trahō), to remove, withdraw; to take away secretly. i. 44, vii. 22.

subvectiō, ōnis, f., (subvehō), transportation, conveyance. vii. 10.

subvehō, ere, vexī, vectus, (sub + vehō), to convey, carry or bring up. i. 16.

subveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus, (sub + veniō), to come up; to help, assist, aid, succor. 4.

succēdō, ere, cessī, cessus, (sub + cēdō), to go under; to go towards, approach; to come behind, follow after, succeed; to be successful; to prosper. 14.

succendō, ere, ī, cēnsus, (candeō, glow), to kindle, set on fire, burn. 5.

successus, ūs, m., (sub + cēdō), approach, advance, success. ii. 20.

succidō, ere, cīdī, cīsus, (sub + caedō), to cut off, mow, cut down. iv. 19, 38; v. 9.

succumbō, ere, cubī, —, (sub + cumbō, lie), to sink under, yield, surrender, succumb, be overcome. vii. 86.

succurrō, ere, currī, cursus, (sub + currō), to run to one's assistance; to help, aid, succor, assist. v. 44, vii. 80.

sudis, is, f., a pile, stake. 4.

sūdor, ōris, m., toil, sweat. vii. 8.

Suēbī, ōrum, m. pl., collective name for the Germanic tribes between Thüringerwald, Böhmerwald, and Schwarzwald, in the modern Sachsen-Meiningen, Coburg, Bavaria, and Württemberg (modern name: German, *Schwaben*; English, *Suebia*). i. 37, 51, 53, 54; iv. 1 ff., 7, 8, 16, 19; vi. 9, 10, 29. Chieftains: Cimbrius, Ariovistus.

Suessiōnēs, um, m. pl., a Belgic tribe between the modern Marne and Isère. Capital: Noviodūnum = modern Soissons. ii. 3 f., 12 f.; viii. 6. Chieftains: Galba, Diviciacus.

sufficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, (sub + faciō), to give, supply; to be sufficient, supplied with; to hold out. vii. 20.

suffrāgium, ī, n., (sub + frangō), a vote, voice, suffrage. vi. 13, vii. 63.

Sugambri, ōrum, m. pl., a Germanic tribe from the river Sieg to the river Lippe. iv. 16, 18; vi. 35.

suggestus, ūs, m., (suggerō, put under), a raised place; a stage, platform, tribunal. vi. 3.

suī, sibi, sē, refl. pron., of himself, herself, itself, or themselves. 639.

Sulla, ae, m., L. Cornēlius, Marius' adversary, Dictator, died 78 B.C. i. 21.

Sulpicius, ī, m. (1) P. Sulpicius Rūfus, a legate of Caesar. iv. 22, vii. 90. (2) S. Sulpicius Galba, see Galba (1)

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *to be, continue; to happen, take place.* 999.

summa, ae, f., (summus), *the main thing, chief point; sum, amount, sum total, aggregate, whole.* 18.

summus, a, um, adj., (sup. of superus), *the highest, greatest, very great; most important, consummate; the summit of, surface of.* 84.

sūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *to take up or away; to assume, claim, appropriate; to undertake, begin.* See Idioms. 8.

sūmptuōsus, a, um, adj., (sūmptus), *costly, expensive.* vi. 19.

sūmptus, ūs, m., (sūmō), *cost, expense, charge.* i. 18.

sūmptus, a, um. See sūmō.

superbō, adv., *haughtily, proudly, insolently, arrogantly.* i. 31.

superfui. See supersum.

superior, us, adj., (comp. of superus), *higher, upper; superior, greater, stronger, more powerful; past, preceding.* 64.

superō, āre, āvī, ātus, (superus), *to excel, surpass, overcome, outstrip, subdue, conquer; to remain, survive.* 26.

supersedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessus, (super + sedeō, sit), *to sit alone, forbear, restrain from; to omit, desist from.* ii. 8.

supersum, esse, fuī, —, (super + sum), *to be left, remain, exist still, survive.* 7.

superus, a, um, adj., *above, upper, over.* See superior.

suppetō, ere, ivī, itus, (sub + petō), *to be present, be in store, be at hand.* 5.

supplēmentum, ī, n., (suppleō, fill up), *a filling up, supply, recruiting, reinforcements, supplies.* vii. 7, 9, 57.

supplex, icis, adj., (sub + plicō, fold), *humble, submissive, suppliant.* ii. 28.

supplicātiō, ōnis, f., (sub + plicō, fold), *a prayer; a thanksgiving; a*

day set apart for prayer. ii. 35, iii 38, vii. 90.

suppliciter, adv., (supplex), *humbly, submissively, suppliantly.* i. 27.

supplicium, ī, n., (supplex), *penalty, punishment.* 12.

supportō, āre, āvī, —, (sub + portō), *to carry, bring, convey up or to.* 5.

suprā, prep. with acc., and adv., *over, on the top, above; formerly, before, previously.* 26.

suscipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, (sub + capiō), *to take up, lift up; to undertake, assume, enter upon; to undergo, suffer; to engage in, begin.* 11.

suspectus, a, um, partic. pass., (suspicō, look askance at), *mistrusted, suspected, suspicious.* v. 54.

suspiciātus, a, um. See suspicor.

suspiciō, ōnis, f., (suspicō, look askance at), *mistrust, distrust, suspicion.* 11.

suspisor, āri, ātus, dep., (cf. suspiciō, look askance at), *to mistrust; to surmise, suppose, believe, apprehend.* 6.

sustentō, āre, āvī, ātus, (sustineō), *to hold up, support, sustain, maintain; to hold out, endure, suffer.* 4.

sustineō, ēre, tinuī, tentus, (sub + teneō), *to hold up, keep up, support, sustain, restrain, check; to undergo, withstand, endure, make a stand, hold out.* 38.

suus, a, um, poss. adj. pron., *one's own; belonging or relating to him, her, it, or them.* 357.

T

T., for Titus.

tabernāculum, ī, n., (taberna, hut), *a tent.* i. 39, vi. 38, vii. 46.

tabula, ae, f., *a plank, board; a picture, painting; a tablet, register.* i. 29.

tabulātum, ī, n., (cf. tabula), *a story in a building; a boarded floor.* vi. 29.

taceō, ēre, uī, itus, *to be silent, say nothing; to keep secret, disregard.* i. 17 (twice).

tacitus, a, um, adj., (taceō), *silent.* i. 32.

tālea, ae, f., *staff, stick; rod, bar.* v. 12, vii. 73.

tālis, e, adj., *such, of this or that kind, such like.* 5.

tam, adv., (acc. fem. sg. of the demonstrative, cf. *quam*, acc. fem. sg. of the relative), *so much, so very, so.* 14.

tamen, conj., (tam), *nevertheless, yet, however, at least.* 76.

Tamesis, is, m., *the Thames in England.* v. 11, 18.

tametsi, conj., (tamen + etsi), *though, although, notwithstanding.* 4.

tandem, adv., *at last, at length, finally, however, yet, still.* 6.

tangō, ere, tetigi, tāctus, *to border upon, touch.* v. 3.

tantopere, adv., *so greatly, so much.* i. 31.

tantulus, a, um, adj. dim., (tantus), *so little, so small, so trifling.* 4.

tantum, adv., *so far, so much; only, alone, merely; nōn tantum — sed etiam, not only — but also.* 5.

tantummodo, adv., (tantum modo), *merely, only.* iii. 5.

tantundem, adv., *just as far, so far, just as much.* vii. 72.

tantus, a, um, adj., *so great, so much, such; so little, so small; quantō — tantō, the — the.* 92.

Tarbelli, ōrum, m. pl., *a tribe in Aquitania, between the Pyrenees and the river Aturis (Adour).* iii. 27.

tardē, adv., (tardus), *slowly, tardily.* iv. 23.

tardō, āre, āvī, ātus, (tardus), *to hinder, retard, impede, delay.* 9.

tardus, a, um, adj., *tardy, slow.* ii. 25.

Tarusātēs, ium, m. pl., *a tribe in Aquitania, in the modern Département des Landes. The name is preserved in modern town Tartas on the Adour.* iii. 23, 29.

Tasgētius, ī, m., *chieftain of the Carnutēs.* v. 25, 29.

taurus, ī, m., *a bull.* vi. 28.

Taximagulus, ī, m., *chieftain of the Britons.* v. 22.

taxus, ī, f., *the yew tree.* vi. 31.

Tectosagēs, um, m. pl. See *Volcae*.

tēctum, ī, n., (tegō), *the covering or roof of a house; a house, dwelling.* i. 36, vii. 66.

tēctus, a, um. See *tegō*.

tegimentum, ī, n., (tegō), *a covering.* ii. 21, vi. 21.

tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctus, *to cover, conceal, disguise; to protect, defend.* 5.

tēlum, ī, n., *a weapon; a javelin, dart, spear.* 40.

temerārius, a, um, adj., *inconsiderate, rash, imprudent.* i. 31, vi. 20.

temerē, adv., *without reason, thoughtlessly, at random; readily, easily.* 4.

temeritās, ātis, f., (temerō), *inconsiderateness, rashness, indiscretion.* 5.

tēmō, ōnis, m., *the beam, pole, or tongue of a carriage, etc.* iv. 33.

temperantia, ae, f., (temperāns, forbearing), *moderation, temperance, abstinence, self-control.* i. 19.

temperātus, a, um, partic. pass., (temperō), *temperate, moderate, sober, mild.* v. 12.

temperō, āre, āvī, ātus, (tempus), *to moderate, restrain; to forbear, refrain from, abstain.* i. 7, 33.

tempestās, ātis, f., (tempus), *time; a period, season; weather; storm, tempest.* 18.

temptō, āre, āvī, ātus, *to feel, examine; to try, attempt, put to the test, prove, tamper with, sound; to incite, urge.*

tempus, oris, n., *season; time.* 111.

Tencteri, ōrum, m. pl., a Germanic tribe near the mouth of the Rhine. iv. 1, 4, 16, 18; v. 55; vi. 35.

tendō, ere, tetendi, tentus or tēnsus, to stretch, stretch out; to go, advance; to encamp, tent. For transfer in meaning see under contendō. 4.

tenebrae, ārum, f. pl., darkness. vii. 81.

teneō, ēre, uī, —, to hold, hold fast; to keep, have, occupy, possess; to continue, keep on; to defend; to keep back, detain. 50.

tener, era, erum, adj., tender, soft; young. ii. 17.

tenuis, e, adj., slender, thin; mean, low, poor; feeble, delicate. v. 40, vi. 35.

tenuitās, ātis, f., (tenuis), fineness, thinness; poverty. vii. 17.

tenuiter, adv., (tenuis), thinly, slightly. iii. 13.

ter, num. adv., three times. i. 53.

teres, etis, adj., (terō, rub), slender, smooth; rounded, long. vii. 73.

Tergestini, ōrum, m. pl., the inhabitants of Tergeste (modern Trieste). viii. 24.

tergum, ī, n., the back of men or animals; the rear; ā tergō, in the rear; post tergum, in the rear. 12.

terni, ae, a, dist. num. adj., three each, every three, three. iii. 15; vii. 73, 75.

terra, ae, f., the earth; ground, land, district; a region; orbis terrārum, the earth, the world. 14.

Terrasidius, ī, m., a military tribune. iii. 7, 8.

terrēnus, a, um, adj., (terra), earthy, of the earth. i. 43.

terreō, ēre, uī, itus, to frighten, alarm, terrify; to deter. 4.

territō, āre, —, (territus, frightened), to frighten, terrify, affright. 4.

terror, ōris, m., fear, terror, affright. 5.

tertius, a, um, num. adj., (ter), third, the third. 34.

testāmentum, ī, n., (testor, witness), a will. i. 39.

testimōnium, ī, n., (testis), testimony, proof, evidence. 4.

testis, is, m. and f., a witness. 4.

testūdō, inis, a tortoise; a wooden covering or shed, under which the besiegers stood and applied the battering ram; see p. 48; a shelter of shields. 6.

Teutomatus, ī, m., king of the Nitiobrogēs. vii. 31, 46.

Teutoni, ōrum, m. pl., a Germanic tribe on the shores of the East Sea, who united with the Cimbri. They invaded Italy in 113 B.C., but were defeated by Marius, in 102 B.C., near Aquae Sextiae. i. 33, 40; ii. 4, 29. Gen. plur. Teutonum, vii. 77.

tēxi. See tegō.

tignum, ī, n., a log, stick, beam. iv. 17 (twice).

Tigurini, ōrum, m. pl., one of the four Helvetian clans in the modern cantons Freiburg and Waadt. i. 12; pāgus Tigurinus, i. 12.

timeō, ēre, uī, —, to fear, be afraid of; to dread, fear for. 16.

timidē, adv., (timidus), fearfully, timidly. iii. 25, v. 33.

timidus, a, um, adj., (cf. timeō), fearful, cowardly, afraid. i. 39, iii. 24, vi. 40.

timor, ōris, m., dread, fear. 34.

Titūrius, ī, m., Q. Titūrius Sabinus, one of Caesar's legates. ii. 5, 9, 10; iii. 11, 17 ff.; iv. 22, 38; v. 24, 26 ff., 36 ff.; vi. 1, 32, 37.

tolerō, āre, vī, ātus, to bear, bear patiently; to support, tolerate, endure; to nourish, maintain; to hold, keep. 4.

tollō, ere, sustuli, sublātus, to raise, lift up, set up, send up; to carry off, remove; to kill, destroy, break off. 20.

Tolōsa, *ae*, *f.*, capital of the Volcae Tectosagēs in Gallia Provincia, the modern Toulouse. iii. 20.

Tolōsātēs, *ium*, *m. pl.*, the inhabitants of Tolōsa, *q.v.* i. 10, vii. 7.

tormentum, *i*, *n.*, (torqueō, twist), a hurling engine for throwing stones, darts, etc.; a cord, rope; torture, torment. 8.

torreō, *ēre*, *uī*, tostus, to dry, roast, scorch, bake, burn, parch. v. 43.

tot, indecl. adj., so many. 7.

totidem, indecl. adj., (toti- [cf. tot] + dem), just as many, as many. 7.

tōtus, *a*, *um*, gen. tōtius, adj., all, the whole, total, the entire. 63.

trabs, trabis, *f.*, rafter, beam. 6.

trāctus, *a*, *um*. See trahō.

trādō, *ere*, didī, ditus, (trāns + dō), to give, consign, deliver; to pass from hand to hand; to surrender; to transmit; to commend, intrust. 28.

trādūcō or **trānsdūcō**, *ere*, dūxī, ductus, (trans + dūcō), to carry or bring over, transport, transfer, lead, convey. 34.

trāgula, *ae*, *f.*, a dart, javelin. 4.

trahō, *ere*, trāxī, trāctus, to drag along, drag away; to protract, put off, detain, spin out. i. 53, vi. 38.

trāiciō. See trānsiciō.

trāiectus, *ūs*, *m.*, (trāiciō), crossing over; a passage. iv. 21, v. 2.

trānō, *āre*, *āvī*, —, (trāns + nō, swim), to swim across or over. i. 53.

tranquillitās, *ātis*, *f.*, (tranquillus, quiet), a calm; stillness, calmness, rest, quiet, tranquillity. iii. 15, v. 23.

trāns, prep. with acc., across, over, beyond. In composition, through, across. 23. ◆

trānsalpīnus, *a*, *um*, adj., (trans + Alpēs), transalpine, beyond the Alps. trānsalpina Gallia, *f.*, transalpine Gaul. vii. 1, 6.

trānsceṇdō, *ere*, *i*, —, (trāns + scan-dō, climb), to climb or mount over, pass, surmount, cross. iii. 15, vii. 70.

trānseō, *īre*, *īi* or *īvī*, itus, (trāns + eō), to go, cross, or pass over; to elapse, pass away. 64.

trānsferō, *ferre*, tullī, lātus, (trāns + ferō), to carry or bring over; to transport. vi. 3, 13; vii. 8.

trānsfigō, *ere*, fixī, fixus, (trāns + figō, fix), to pierce or thrust through; to pierce, transfix. i. 25, v. 44, vii. 62.

trānsfodiō, *ere*, fōdī, fossus, (trāns + fodiō), to thrust through, pierce, stab through; to transfix. vii. 82.

trānsgredior, *i*, gressus, dep., (trāns + gradior, step), to go or pass over; to cross. ii. 19; vii. 25, 46.

trānsiciō, *ere*, iēcī, iectus, (trāns + iaciō), to throw or cast over; to transport across; to thrust or pierce through, transfix. 4.

trānsitus, *ūs*, *m.*, (trānseō), a passing or going over; crossing, passage. v. 55, vi. 7, vii. 57.

trānslātus, *a*, *um*. See trānsferō.

trānsmarīnus, *a*, *um*, adj., (trāns + mare), beyond the sea; foreign. vi. 24.

trānsmissus, *ūs*, *m.*, (trānsmittō), a passage. v. 2, 13.

trānsmittō, *ere*, misī, missus, (trāns + mittō), to send over, transmit. vii. 61.

trānsportō, *āre*, *āvī*, ātus, (trāns + portō), to carry over, convey, transport. 10.

trānsrhēnānus, *a*, *um*, adj., (trans + Rhenus), across the Rhine. iv. 16, v. 2, vi. 5. trānsrhēnānī, ōrum, *m. pl.*, the tribes on the left side of the Rhine. iv. 16, vi. 5. Trānsrhēnānī Germānī. v. 2.

trānstrum, *i*, *n.*, a cross-beam. iii. 13.

trānsversus, *a*, *um*, adj., (trāns + ver-tō), lying across, crosswise, athwart, oblique. ii. 8.

Trebius, *i*, *m.*, *M. Trebius Gallus*, military tribune. iii. 7, 8.

Trebōnius, *i*, *m.*, *C.* (1) A Roman knight. vi. 40. (2) A legate of Caesar. v. 17, 24; vi. 33; vii. 11, 81; viii. 6, 11, 14, 46, 54.

trecentī, *ae*, *a*, num. adj., (*trēs* + *centum*), *three hundred*. iv. 37, v. 9, vi. 36.

tredecim, num. adj., (*trēs* + *decem*), *thirteen*. vii. 51.

trepidō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, (*trepidus*, *terrified*), *to hurry with alarm; to be in a state of alarm; to run up and down in fear and confusion; to hasten about; to be alarmed, agitated*. v. 33, vi. 37.

trēs, *tria*, *three*. 36.

Trēverī, *ōrum*, *m. pl.*, a tribe of Germanic origin, in Celtic Gaul, on both sides of the Mosel. Capital: **Augusta Trēverōrum** = modern *Trèves*. See *Nasua*. i. 37; iii. 11; iv. 6, 10; v. 2 ff., 24, 26, 47, 53; vi. 2 ff., 5 ff., 29, 32, 44; vii. 63; viii. 25, 45, 52; *equitēs Trēverī*, ii. 24. Their chieftains: *Indutiomārus*, *Cingetorix*.

Trēvir, *irī*, *m. sing.* of *Trēverī*, a *Trevirian*.

Tribōcī, *ōrum*, or **Tribōces**, *um*, *m. pl.*, a German tribe on both sides of the Rhine, about the modern *Strassburg*. i. 51; iv. 10.

tribūnus, *i*, *m.*, (*tribus*, *tribe*), a *tribune*. *tribūnus militum*, a *tribune of the soldiers*, an officer of the army; each legion had six. 20.

tribuō, *ere*, *i*, *ūtus*, (*tribus*, *tribe*), *to assign, distribute, give; to impute, attribute; to grant, allow*. 7.

tribūtum, *i*, *n.*, (*tribuō*), *tribute, impost, tax*. vi. 13, 14.

triduūm, *i*, *n.*, (*trēs* + *diēs*), *three days*. 10.

triennium, *i*, *n.*, (*trēs* + *annus*), *three years*. iv. 4.

trīgintā, num. adj., *thirty*. vi. 35.

trinī, *ae*, *a*, dist. num. adj., *three each, every three, three*. 4.

Trinobantēs, *um*, *m. pl.*, a tribe in the south of Britain. Capital: **Camalodūnum** = modern *Colchester*. v. 20 ff. **tripartitō**, *adv.*, (*tripartitus*, *divided in three*), *in three parts, in three divisions*. 4.

triplex, *icis*, *adj.*, (*trēs* + *plicō*, *fold*), *triple, three, threefold*. 4.

triquetrus, *a*, *um*, *adj.*, (*tri* + *quattuor*), *triangular, three-cornered*. v. 13.

tristis, *e*, *adj.*, *sorrowful, sad*. i. 32.

tristitia, *ae*, *f.*, (*tristis*, *sad*), *sadness, sorrow*. i. 32.

truncus, *i*, *m.*, *the trunk or stock of a tree*. iv. 17, vii. 73.

tū, *tui*, *pers. pron.*, *m. and f.*, *you, thou*. v. 30 (twice).

tuba, *ae*, *f.*, a *trumpet*. ii. 20; vii. 47, 81. **tueor**, *ērī*, *tuitus*, or *tūtus*, *to behold, look at, watch, guard, defend, protect; to support, keep, maintain*. 8.

tulī. See *ferō*.

Tulingī, *ōrum*, *m. pl.*, a Germanic tribe in the southern part of the modern *Baden*. i. 5, 25, 28, 29.

Tullius, *i*, *m.* See *Cicerō*.

Tullus, *i*, *m.* See *Volcatius*.

tum, *adv.*, (acc. of *pron. stem to*), *then*. 48.

tumultuor, *ārī*, *ātus*, *dep.*, (*tumultus*), *to make a disturbance, raise a tumult; to be in confusion*. vii. 61.

tumultuōsē, *adv.*, (*tumultuōsus*, *turbulent*), *tumultuously*. vii. 45.

tumultus, *us*, *m.*, (*tumulus*), a *tumult, broil, disturbance, uproar; sedition, mutiny, insurrection*. 7.

tumulus, *i*, *m.*, (*tumēō*, *swell*), a *hillock, hill, mound*. 6.

tunc, *adv.*, (*tum* + particle *c[e]*), *then*. v. 41.

turma, *ae*, *f.*, a *squadron of thirty horsemen*. 5.

Turonī, ōrum, m. pl., a Celtic tribe on both sides of the Liger (Loire). Capital: Caesarodūnum = modern Tours.

turpis, e, adj., *ugly, deformed, unseemly; dishonorable, infamous, scandalous*. 6.

turpiter, adv., (turpis), *disgracefully, basely*. vii. 20 (twice), 80.

turpitūdō, inis, f., (turpis), *dishonor, shame, disgrace*. ii. 27.

turris, is, f., a tower. 29.

tūtō, adv., (tūtus), *safely, securely, without danger*. iii. 13, 24; vii. 36.

tūtus, a, um, adj., (tueor), *secure, safe, out of danger, protected*. 9.

tuus, a, um, poss. adj. pron., *your*. v. 44.

U

ubi, adv., *where, when*. 58.

ubicumque, adv., *wherever*. vii. 3.

Ubiī, ōrum, m. pl., a German tribe on the right side of the Rhine; later under Augustus they emigrated to the left side. In 50 B.C. their capital received the name Colōnia Agrippīna = modern Cologne. i. 54; iv. 3, 8, 11, 16, 19; vi. 9 f., 29.

ubique, adv., (ubi + que), *everywhere; wherever; anywhere*. iii. 16.

ulciscor, ī, ultus, dep., *to avenge, revenge*. 5.

ullus, a, um, gen. ūllius, adj., *any, any one*. 25.

ulterior, us, gen. ōris, comp. adj., (cf. ultrā), *farther, on the farther side; more distant, more remote*. 8.

ultimus, a, um, adj., (sup. of ulterior), *the most distant, last, the most remote, farthest*. 5.

ultrā, prep. and adv., *beyond, past, farther*. i. 48, 49.

ultrō, adv., *beyond; on both sides, to and fro; moreover, besides, further; actually, voluntarily, spontaneously*. 11.

altus, a, um. See **ulciscor**.

ululātus, ūs, m., (ululō, *howl*), *a yelling, howling, shout*. v. 37, vii. 80.

umquam, adv., *ever, at any time*. 4.

ūnā, adv., (cf. ūnus), *together; at the same time, along with*. 31.

unde, adv., *whence, from which, from whom*. 10.

ūndecim, num. adj., (ūnus + decem), *eleven*. vii. 69, 87.

ūndecimus, a, um, num. adj., *the eleventh*. ii. 23, v. 46.

undique, adv., *from all parts, from every part; on all sides, everywhere*. 26.

ūniversus, a, um, adj., (ūnus + versus), *whole, entire; all together*. 9.

ūnus, a, um, (gen. ūnius), num. adj., *one, one alone; the same, one and the same*. 115.

urbānus, ā, um, adj., (urbs), *of a city; of the city (Rome)*. vii. 1, 6.

urbs, urbis, f., *a city; the city (Rome)*. 9.

urgeō, ēre, ursī, —, *to press upon, urge, drive, impel; to press hard, weigh down, oppress*. ii. 25, 26.

ūrus, ī, m., *a kind of ox*. vi. 28.

Usipetēs, um, m. pl., a German tribe, driven out of their seats by the Suēbī. They settled near the mouth of the Rhine. iv. 1, 4, 16, 18; vi. 35.

ūsītātus, a, um, adj., (ūsitor, *use often*), *usual, accustomed, ordinary, common, customary*. vii. 22.

ūsque, adv., *even, quite, as far as; with eō, to such a degree*. 10.

ūsus, a, um. See **ūtor**.

ūsus, ūs, m., *use, practice, exercise; skill; advantage, benefit, profit; occasion; necessity, need; ūsū venire, to happen, occur*. 34.

ut or **utī**, conj. and adv., (for quo-ti, *whereby*), *that; so that, in order that; so as to, to; as; though, although; that not (after verbs of fearing)*. ut, 380; utī, 56.

uter, tra, trum, gen. utrius, adj., *which, which of the two*. 4.

uterque, traque, trumque, gen. utriusque, adj., (uter + que), *both, each*. 36.

uti. See ut.

ūtills, e, adj., (ūtor), *useful, profitable, advantageous*. iv. 7; vii. 20, 76.

ūtilitās, ātis, f., (ūtills), *usefulness, profit, advantage*. iv. 19, vii. 23.

ūtor, ī, ūsus, dep., *to use, make use of, enjoy; to exercise, practice; to employ; to show; to manage*. 52.

utrimque, adv., *on both sides*. 5.

utrum, conj., *whether*, in indirect questions; in double questions *an* or *necne* follows. i. 40, 50, 53.

Uxellodūnum, ī, n., a town of the Cadurci on an isolated steep rock near the river Oltis (modern *Lot*).

uxor, ōris, f., *a wife*. 9.

V

v, the upper half of x (cf. x, the sign for 10), used by the Romans as the sign for 5.

Vacalus, ī, m., the western branch of the Rhēnus, Rhine, *q.v.*, modern name *Waal*. iv. 10.

vacātiō, ōnis, f., (vacō), *exemption, respite, immunity, freedom*. vi. 14.

vacō, āre, āvi, ātus, *to be empty, free from, without, vacant, without a possessor*. 4.

vacuus, a, um, adj., *free from; empty; destitute; vacant*. 5.

vadum, ī, n., (cf. vadō, *go*), *a ford, a shallow place*. 13.

vāgīna, ae, f., *scabbard, sheath*. v. 44.

vagor, āri, ātus, dep., (*vagus, wandering*), *to wander about, roam, ramble*. 9.

valeō, ēre, uī, itūrus, *to enjoy health; to be powerful, strong; to have inter-*

est, weight, or influence; to have force. 13.

Valērius, ī, m. (1) *C. Flaccus*, proprætor in Gaul in 83 B.C. i. 47. (2) *L. Præcōnius*, legate in Gaul before the time of Caesar. iii. 20. (3) *C. Cabūrus*, a Celt honored with the rights of a Roman citizen. i. 47; vii. 65. His sons (4) *C. Procillus*. i. 19, 47, 53; and (5) *C. Donotaurus*. vii. 65.

Valetiācus, ī, m., brother of the Haudan Cotus. vii. 32.

valētūdō, inis, f., (valeō), *good health, ill health, disease*. v. 40, vii. 78.

vallis or vallēs, is, f., *a valley*. 9.

vāllum, ī, n., (vāllus), *a rampart set with stakes or palisades; intrenchments, earthworks*. 35.

vāllus, ī, m., *a stake, palisade*. See vāllum.

Vangionēs, um, m. pl., a German tribe on the left side of the Rhine near the modern Worms. i. 51.

varietās, ātis, f., (varius), *variety, in respect to colors; variety, diversity*. vi. 27, vii. 23.

varius, a, um, adj., *variegated, changing, changeable; different*. ii. 22, vii. 77.

Vārus, ī, m. See Atius.

vāstō, āre, āvi, ātus, (vāstus), *to lay waste, ravage, desolate*. 10.

vāstus, a, um, adj., *vast, huge, enormous, immense*. iii. 9, 12.

vāticinātiō, ōnis, f., (vāticinor, *foretell*), *a foretelling, prophecy, divination*. i. 50.

Vatinius, ī, m., *T.*, legate of Caesar. viii. 46.

ve, enclit. conj., = *vel*, *or; either*. See *vel*.

vectigal, ālis, n., (cf. vehō), *a tax, impost, duty; revenue*. i. 18, 36; v. 22.

vectigālis, e, adj., *tributary*. iii. 8; iv. 3.

vectōrius, a, um, adj., (**vehō**), *for carrying or transportation.* v. 8.

vehementer, adv., (**vehemēns**, *violent*), *exceedingly, eagerly, impetuously, ardently, vehemently, strongly.* 9.

vehō, ere, vexī, vectus, *to bear, carry, convey.* i. 43.

vel, conj., (old second person imperative of **volō**), *or, even*; **vel** — **vel**, *either — or.* 12.

Velānius, ī, m., Q., military tribune. iii. 7.

Veliocassī, ōrum, or **Veliocassēs**, ium, m. pl., a tribe on the right side of the Sēquana (Seine). Capital: **Rotomagus** = modern *Rouen* (Normandy). ii. 4, vii. 75, viii. 7.

Vellaunodūnum, ī, n., a town of the Senonēs between Agedincum and Cēnabum. vii. 11, 14.

Vellāvī, ōrum, m. pl., a Celtic tribe in the Cévennes. vii. 75.

vēlōcitās, ātis, f., (**vēlōx**), *fleetness, swiftness, velocity, speed, rapidity.* vi. 28.

vēlōciter, adv., (**vēlōx**), *swiftly, rapidly, quickly, speedily.* v. 35.

vēlōx, ōcis, adj., *quick, swift, fleet, rapid, speedy.* i. 48.

vēlum, ī, n., *a sail.* iii. 13 (twice), 14.

velut, adv., (**vel** + **ut**), *as, like as, just as.* i. 32.

vēnātīō, ōnis, f., (**vēnor**, *hunt*), *the chase, hunting.* iv. 1; vi. 21, 28.

vēnātor, ōris, m., (**vēnor**, *hunt*), *a hunter.* vi. 27.

vēndō, ere, didī, ditus, (**vēnum**, *sale* + **dō**), *to sell.* ii. 33, iii. 16, iv. 2.

Venelli, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe in the northwest of the modern Normandy. ii. 34; iii. 11, 17; vii. 75. (*Civitas Aremorica*.) Their chieftain: **Viridovix**, q.v.

Venetī, ōrum, m. pl., a Celtic tribe in the

modern Bretagne. Capital: **Venetae** = modern *Vannes*. ii. 34; iii. 7 ff., 11, 16 ff.; iv. 21; vii. 75. (*Civitas Aremorica*.)

Venetia, ae, f., *the land of the Veneti*, q.v. iii. 9.

Veneticus, a, um, adj., *of the Venetia*, Venetian. iii. 18, iv. 21.

venia, ae, f., *indulgence, favor, forgiveness, pardon, forbearance.* vi. 4, vii. 15.

veniō, īre, vēnī, ventus, *to come, arrive.* 133.

ventitō, āre, āvī, —, (cf. **veniō**), *to resort; to come often.* iv. 3, 32; v. 27.

ventus, ī, m., *the wind.* 11.

vēr, vēris, n., *the spring.* vi. 3.

Veragri, ōrum, m. pl., a Celtic tribe near the union of Dranse and Rhone. iii. 1, 2. Town: **Octodūrus**.

Verbigenus pāgus, m., one of the four Helvetian clans, probably between the Rhine and Jura. i. 27.

verbum, ī, n., *a word, expression, remark, saying.* 4.

Vercassivellaunus, ī, m., an Arvernian, cousin of **Vercingetorix**. vii. 76, 83, 85, 88.

Vercingetorix, īgis, m., son of Celtillus, an Arvernian, chieftain of the Gauls. vii. 4, 8, 9, 12, 14.

vereor, ērī, itus, dep., *to fear.* 25

vergo, ere, —, —, *to incline.* 4.

vergobretus, ī, m., (the Latin representation of two Celtic words meaning *powerful* and *law*, i.e. *powerful in the exercise of the law*), the title of the chief magistrate among the Haeduan. i. 16.

vērīsimilis, e, adj., (**vērus** + **similis**), *likely, probable.* See **vērum**.

veritus, a, um. See **vereor**.

vērō, adv., (**vērus**), *indeed, in truth, assuredly.* 24.

versō, āre, āvī, ātus, (**vertō**), *to turn often, twist, change; to agitate, exer-*

- cise; to employ; to exert; to occupy; to be busy.* v. 44.
- versor**, āri, ātus, pass., *to remain, dwell, stay; to be engaged in, busy one's self with; to be associated with; to occupy.* 11.
- versus**, adv. and prep., (vertō), *towards.* 5.
- versus**, ūs, m., (vertō), *a line, verse.* vi. 14.
- Verticō**, ōnis, m., a Nervian. v. 45, 49.
- Vertiscus**, ī, m., chieftain of the Rēmī. viii. 12.
- vertō**, ere, ī, **versus**, *to turn, turn round; to alter, change, transform.* 6.
- Verucloetius**, ī, m., ambassador of the Helvetians. i. 7.
- vĕrum**, ī, n., (vĕrus), *the truth.* 4.
- vĕrus**, a, um, adj., *real; true; reasonable; right.* See vĕrum.
- verutūm**, ī, n., *a javelin, dart.* v. 44 (twice).
- Vesontio**, ōnis, m., capital of the Sĕ-quanī, modern *Besançon*. i. 38, 39.
- vesper**, eris and erī, m., *evening, the evening star.* 5.
- vester**, tra, trum, poss. adj. pron., (old vos-ter), *yours, your; of you, of yours.* 5.
- vestigium**, ī, n., *the print of a footstep; a track, trace; a place, spot; an instant, a moment; ē vestigiō, immediately, on the spot.* 4.
- vestiō**, ĩre, ivī, itus, (vestis), *to attire, clothe, cover.* v. 14; vii. 23, 31.
- vestis**, is, f., *clothing, garment.* vii. 47.
- vestitus**, ūs, m., (vestiō), *dress, clothing.* iv. 1, vii. 88.
- veterānus**, a, um, adj., (vetus), *veteran, old.* i. 24.
- vetō**, āre, uī, itus, *to forbid, prevent, prohibit.* ii. 20, v. 9, vii. 33.
- vetus**, eris, adj., (a neuter noun, which became used as an adjective. The cognate Greek word means *year*), olā, *former, ancient.* 12.
- vexillum**, ī, n., (vehō), *a military ensign, standard, banner, flag.* A red cavalry flag displayed from the general's tent as a signal for action. See illustration, p. 33. ii. 20; vi. 36, 40.
- vexō**, āre, āvī, ātus, *to harass, distress, annoy, molest, trouble, agitate.* 4.
- via**, ae, f., *a road, way, passage.* 20.
- viātor**, ōris, m., (cf. via), *a traveler.* iv. 5.
- vicĕsimus**, a, um, num. adj., *the twentieth.* vi. 21.
- vici**. See vincō.
- viciĕs**, num. adj., *twenty times.* v. 13.
- vicinitās**, ātis, f., (vicinus, *neighboring*), *neighborhood, vicinity; the neighbors.* vi. 34.
- vicis**, (gen.), f., *succession, change, alternation; in vicem, by turns, alternately; mutually.* iv. 1, vii. 85.
- victima**, ae, f., *a victim, sacrifice.* vi. 16.
- victor**, ōris, m., (vincō), *a conqueror; adj., victorious.* 9.
- victōria**, ae, f., (victor), *victory.* 9.
- victus**, a, um. See vincō.
- victus**, us, m., (vivō), *sustenance, food, provisions; mode of living.* 4.
- vicus**, ī, m., *a village.* 18.
- videō**, ĩre, vidī, visus, *to see, behold, observe, perceive; videor, ĩrī, vĭsus, pass., to seem, appear; to seem good or fit.* 144.
- Vidomarus**, ī, m., a Haeduan. vii. 38, ff. 54, 55, 63, 76.
- Vienna**, ae, f., capital of the Allobrogēs in Gallia Prōvincia, modern *Vienne*. vii. 9.
- vigilia**, ae, f., *a watching, being awake; guard, watch; the watch, sentinels.* A watch among the Romans was equal to one fourth of the night. 19.
- vīgintī**, twenty. i. 31, iv. 38.

vīmen, inis, n., a twig, osier. ii. 33, vi. 16, vii. 73.
vinciō, ire, nxi, nctus, to bind, fasten. i. 53.
vincō, ere, vici, victus, to conquer, overcome, subdue, vanquish, prevail, succeed. 18.
vinctus, a, um See **vinciō**.
vinculum, i, n., (**vinciō**), a fetter, chain, bond; in **vincula**, into prison. 4.
vindicō, āre, āvi, ātus, (**vindex**, defender), to lay claim to, maintain; to liberate, rescue, free; to revenge, punish. iii. 16, vii. 1, 76.
vīnea, ae, f., a shed, built like an arbor, under which soldiers assailed the walls of towns. 8.
vīnum, i, n., wine. ii. 15.
violō, āre, āvi, ātus, to violate, injure, hurt; to lay waste. vi. 23, 32.
vir, viri, m., a man, husband. 10.
virēs. See **vis**.
virgō, inis, f., a maiden, maid, virgin. v. 14.
virgultum, i, n., a copse, bush, shrub. iii. 18.
Viridovix, Igis, m., chieftain of the Venelli. iii. 17, 18.
viritim, adv., (**vir**), man by man, singly, individually. vii. 71.
Viromandui, ōrum, m. pl., a Belgic tribe in the modern Vermandois (Picardy). ii. 4, 16, 23.
virtus, ūtis, f., (**vir**), manhood, manliness, bravery; firmness, constancy; excellence, worth; virtue. 70.
vis, vis, f., power, strength, force, energy, vigor; influence; efficiency; number, multitude; pl. **virēs**. 44.
visus, a, um. See **videō**.
vita, ae, f., life. 19.
vītō, āre, āvi, ātus, to shun, seek to escape, avoid, beware of. 9.
vitrum, i, n., woad, a plant used for dyeing blue. v. 14.

vīvō, ere, vixi, victus, to live on, live. iv. 1, 10; v. 14.
vivus, a, um, adj., living, alive. 5.
vix, adv., hardly, scarcely, with difficulty. 12.
Vocātēs, ium, m. pl., a tribe in Aquitania about the Garumna. iii. 23, 27.
Vocciō, ōnis, m., king in Noricum. i. 53.
vocō, āre, āvi, ātus, (cf. **vōx**), to call, summon; to name. 7.
Vocontii, ōrum, m. pl., a tribe in Gallia Prōvincia, between the Isara (Isère) and Druentia (Durance). i. 10.
Volcae, ārum, m. pl., a tribe in Gallia Prōvincia, between the Rhone and Garonne. (1) *Volcae Tectosagēs* with capital *Tolōsa* (Toulouse). (2) *Volcae Arecomici*, with capital *Nemausus* (Nîmes). vii. 7, 64. See also *Narbō*.
Volcātius, i, m., *C. Volcātius Tullus*, one of Caesar's party. vi. 29.
volō, velle, volui, —, to be willing; to wish, desire; to intend, purpose; to ordain, appoint; to command. 66.
voluntārius, a, um, adj., (**volēns**, willing), willing, voluntary, spontaneous; **voluntārius, i, m.,** a volunteer. v. 56.
voluntās, ātis, f., (**volēns**, willing), will, wish, choice, desire, inclination; favor, affection, good will; approbation; willingness, consent. 18.
voluptās, ātis, f., enjoyment, pleasure, delight, joy. i. 53 (twice), v. 12.
Volusēnus, i, m., *C. Volusēnus Quadrātus*, military tribune and general of Caesar's cavalry. iii. 5; iv. 21, 23; vi. 41; viii. 23, 48.
Vorēnus, i, m., *L.*, a centurion. v. 44.
vōs. See **ego**. 7.
Vosagus, i, m., the Vosges; French, *les Vosges*; German, *Vogesen*. iv. 10.
voveō, ēre, vōvi, vōtus, to promise solemnly, vow. vi. 16.
vōx, vōcis, f., word; voice; saying; speech. 13.

Vulcānus, ī, m., *Vulcan*, the god of fire.
vi. 21.

vulgō, adv., (*vulgus*), *commonly, generally; everywhere; here and there.* i. 39,
ii. 1, v. 33.

vulgus, ī, n., *the multitude, people, public; the populace; a throng, crowd.* 8.

vulnerō, āre, āvī, ātus, (*vulnus*), *to wound.* 12.

vulnus, eris, n., *a wound.* 21.

vultus, ūs, m., (*volō*), *the countenance, looks, features, aspect, mien, expression, visage.* i. 39 (twice).

PARALLEL REFERENCES

PARALLEL REFERENCES TO ALLEN AND GREENOUGH'S LATIN GRAMMARS

TO ACCOMPANY HARPER AND TOLMAN'S CAESAR

OLD	NEW	OLD	NEW	OLD	NEW
40, e	49, d	190, b	348, a	225 e	365
56, a, i	75, b	191	290	227	367
63, f	81	193	293	228	370
71, b	94, c	196	299	229	381
73	97	f	301, f	230	372
74, a	98, N.	197, d, Ex. 2	302, d	231	373
75, c	100, c	198, a	305	232	374
93, a	291, a	199	306	233	382
b	291, c	b	306, b	a	382, 1, N. ?
c	313, b	200	307	234, a	384
94, e	134, d	a	307, a	e	432, a
95, a	137, a	b	307, b, N.	235	376
b	137, b	b, N. }	307	a	377
104, a	149	Ex. 2 }	307	238, b	390, e, d
105, d	151, e	e	307, d	239, b	395
106, c	414, a	203, c	315, c	c	396
III, a, N.	156	205, b	317, b	c, N. 1	396, a
III, b, i	158	c	317, d	2, N. 2	396, b [N. 2
128, a	181	c, i	317	240, a	390, c, d, &
129	193-196	210, c	332, b	b, last ex.	397, a, last
135, b	190, b	211	334	243	400 [ex.
143, a	205	214, c	343, b	e	411
146, c	208, d	d	343, c	e, R.	411, b
153	221	215, b	345	244	403
155, a, Ex. 4	224, a, Ex. 4	c	345	245	404
156, a	324, a, b	216	346	b	404, b
164, a	243	c	346, c	c	404, c
167, b	263, 2	3	346, 3	246, b	405, b
179	277	217	348	247	406
180, f	308, f	218, a	349, a	c	407, c
184	282	219	350	c, N.	406
186, c	282, b, c	221, b	354, b	248	412
187, a	287, 1, 2	222	355	c	409
188	288	223, e	359, b	249	410
190, a	302, d	225, d	364	a	410, a

PARALLEL REFERENCES

OLD	NEW	OLD	NEW	OLD	NEW
25C	414	288, a	486	329, I	562, 4
N.	414	291, b	495	330, b	582
25I	415	292, a	497	c	582, a
252	416	C.	497, b	e	579, ftn. 1
a	417	292, R.	496, N. 1	f, N.	580, c
253	418	Ex. 5	496	331	563
255	419	294, d	500, 4	b	563, b
a	419, a	296	503	e, 2	558, b
256	423	298	504	f	564
I	423	a	504, c	331, f, R.	565
257	425	R.	504, a, N. 1	332	568
b	425, b	300	506 & N. 1	a	569
258	426, 1, 2, 3	301	507	b	571, a
a	427, 1	302	509	e	568, N. 1
b	427, 2	303	510	g	558
d	427, a, & ftn.	R.	510, N. 2	333	572
f	429	306	515	334	573, 575
g	429, a	307	516	c	576
259, d	424, f	f	516, f	f	576, a
e	424, g	308	517	335	578
261, a	432, a	315, a	525	336	580
266, c	527	317	531	b	583
270	452	b	531, a	B	585
271	456	2	531	I, 2	579, 580
272	459	319	537	2	580
b	581, N. 3	d	558, 559	337	589
275	463	320	535	338	586
276, e	556	a	535, a	a	587
3	556	c	535, c	339	588
277	470	e	535, e	340	591
b	470	321	540	341	592
281, R.	478, N.	325	545, 546	a	592
285	482	Ex. 2	545	d	592, 3
286	483	326	549	342	593
287	485	327	550, 551	376	631
c	485, c	328	552, 553	385, No. 13	640
e	486, e	329	560, 561		

